



~~Pat. M. A.~~

SCS #1372

SOLD BY  
PATON & RITCHIE  
Booksellers & Stationers  
10, South Hanover

Thomas F. Torrance



SCS #1372

THE  
ASSEMBLY'S  
SHORTER CATECHISM

EXPLAINED,

BY WAY OF QUESTION AND ANSWER.

IN TWO PARTS.

PART I.—OF WHAT MAN IS TO BELIEVE CONCERNING GOD.

PART II.—OF WHAT DUTY GOD REQUIRES OF MAN.

By JAMES FISHER,  
AND OTHER MINISTERS OF THE GOSPEL.

---

“ Hold fast the form of sound words.”—2 Tim. i. 13.

---

THE TWENTY-SECOND EDITION.



EDINBURGH:  
OLIVER & BOYD, TWEEDDALE COURT.  
LONDON: SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO.

---

MDCCCXLIX.



## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

---

THE Shorter Catechism, composed by the Assembly of Divines at Westminster, with assistance of Commissioners from the Church of Scotland, being approved by the General Assembly of the said church 1648, and ratified by the estates of Parliament in the year following, is above any recommendation of ours, having its praises already in all the Churches of Christ, abroad and at home, among whom it has been justly admired as a masterpiece of its kind, both for the fulness of its matter, and the compendious and perspicuous manner in which it is expressed.

Although it is only a human composure, yet being "a form of sound words," agreeable unto and founded on the Word of God, it ought to be held fast, and earnestly contended for, by all the lovers of truth, in opposition to the contrary errors that are revived and raging in our day; and in order hereto, it ought to be considered, that a divine faith is due to the words of the Holy Ghost supporting it, as the evident proofs thereof.

Nothing tends more to the advantage and well-being of the church than sound standards of doctrine, worship, and government, established by ecclesiastic and civil authority as ours are; because, as they are a strong bulwark against contrary errors and opinions, so they tend to preserve truth in its purity, and the professors of it in unity and harmony among themselves. On the other hand, there is nothing more galling to the adversaries of truth, than such public standards, because they are a very severe check and curb upon their unbounded and licentious liberty, being directly levelled against their erroneous schemes, and plainly discovering the harmonious chain of scripture-truth in opposition unto them.

The divine warrant for such composures is abundantly clear from 2 Tim. i. 13, where we read of the "form of sound words," wherein Paul instructed Timothy; and in Heb. v. 12, of "the first principles of the oracles of God;" and chap. vi. 1, of "the principles of the doctrines of Christ." Besides, there are several summaries, or compendious systems of divine truth, recorded in scripture; such as Exod. xx. 2—18; Matth. vi. 9—14; 1 Tim. iii. 16; and Tit. ii. 11

—15; with many others, which are the exemplars, or patterns, upon which the Christian churches, both in ancient and later times, have deduced, from the pure fountain of the Word, the principal articles of their holy religion, as a test and standard of orthodoxy amongst them.

The Shorter Catechism sets forth the principles of Christianity in the most excellent method and order. It would be tedious to give a particular analysis, or division, of the several heads of divinity, according to the order of the Catechism; but, in general, the method thereof may be taken up under these four comprehensive articles, namely, the *chief end*, the *only rule*, the *glorious object*, and the *great subject* of the Christian religion.

I. The *chief end* of the Christian religion, which is the glorifying of God, and the enjoying him for ever. Quest. 1.

II. We have the *only rule* of the Christian religion described, 1st, In its matter, which is the word of God, contained in the scriptures of the Old and New Testament. Quest. 2. 2dly, In its principal parts; which are, first, what man is to believe concerning God, and then the duty which God requires of man. Quest. 3.

III. The *glorious object* of the Christian religion, which is God, considered, 1st, Essentially, in his spiritual nature, infinite perfections, and in his most perfect unity and simplicity. Quest. 4, 5. 2dly, Relatively or personally, in the three distinct persons of the Godhead, and in the consubstantiality and absolute equality of these persons. Quest. 6. 3dly, Efficiently, in his acts and operations, which are either immanent and essential, such as, his decrees; or, transient and external, such as, his works of creation and providence, wherein he executes his decrees. Quest. 7—12.

IV. The *great subject* of the Christian religion, which is man; considered, 1st, In his state of innocency, where the covenant of works is opened. Quest. 12. 2dly, In his state of nature, together with the sinfulness and misery of that state. Quest. 13—20. 3dly, In his state of grace, or begun recovery; where the Catechism treats, (1.) Of the nature of the covenant of grace. Quest. 20. (2.) Of the Mediator of the covenant; who is described, in his person, offices, humiliation, exaltation, and in the application of his purchased redemption by the Holy Spirit. Quest. 21—32. (3.) Of the benefits of the covenant; in this life, at death, at the resurrection, and through all eternity. Quest. 32—39. (4.) Of the duties, whereby we evidence our covenant-relation and gratitude to God, in the Ten Commandments, as connected with their Preface. Quest. 39—82.

(5.) Of man's utter inability to obey the law in this life. Quest. 82. (6.) Of the aggravation and desert of sin. Quest. 83, 84. (7.) Of the means whereby our salvation is carried on, and perfected at death; the eternal means, faith and repentance; the external means, the Word, sacraments, and prayer. Quest. 85, to the end.

The First Part of this catechetical Treatise ends with Quest. 38. What benefits do believers receive from Christ at the resurrection? containing the doctrines we are to believe concerning God. The Second Part respects the duty which God requires of man.

The materials of the following Catechism are collected by several ministers; and it was recommended to three of their number to revise what should be done by so many hands, that there might be a uniformity of style and method, and that repetitions might be prevented as much as possible. It has pleased the Lord to take home to himself one\* of these three, who assisted in composing and revising of this First Part; but though he be dead, he yet speaketh, and will be spoken of, for his excellent works (which have already, or may hereafter see the light), by all those who shall have any relish or taste for sound doctrine and experimental godliness. Whatever loss the Second Part of this Catechism may sustain by the removal of such an able and skilful hand, the other two make not the least doubt but the Lord would carry on this work with as great or greater advantage, though they were laid in the grave likewise.

Meantime, that what is here presented to public view may be blessed of God, for the edification of souls, is, in the name of our brethren, the earnest prayer of

EBENEZER ERSKINE.  
JAMES FISHER.

FEBRUARY, 1753.

\* The Rev. Mr Ralph Erskine of Dunfermline.

## ADVERTISEMENT TO THE THIRD EDITION.

---

THE words of the Shorter Catechism being devised with the greatest judgment, and with a peculiar view, both for establishing scripture-truth, and likewise for refuting contrary errors, they are therefore, in this Edition, particularly taken notice of; and to distinguish them they are put in *Italics*, that the Reader may the more easily discern how they are explained in this Treatise.

As the Confession of Faith, and Larger Catechism, are granted to be the best interpreters of the Shorter, the latter is carefully explained by the former, and several of the following questions and answers framed from these standards, as will easily appear by the quotations taken from them, and the references made unto them on the margin.

In this Edition, almost every answer is confirmed by the scriptures; many are added, where they were formerly wanting, and severals exchanged for those that are more apposite. In the former impressions, the scripture proofs were mostly subjoined to the end of the answer; but now each scripture is immediately annexed to that part of the answer it is designed to confirm, that it may be consulted with greater certainty, and less trouble, by those who incline to bring every position here advanced to the unerring rule and standard of the Word. Some of the longer answers are divided into two or more, for sake of the memory; and some additional questions are interspersed through the whole, for illustration. A short Index is likewise annexed, of the most material things in both Parts.

I have employed my spare time for several months, in studying to make this Edition as correct and useful to the Public as I could; and now I leave it in the hands of the God of Truth, that he may use it for the purposes of his own glory, in edifying the body of Christ, till they all come, in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ.

JAMES FISHER.

GLASGOW, Jan. 14, 1765.

THE  
SHORTER CATECHISM  
EXPLAINED.

---

1. Q. WHAT is the chief end of man ?

A. Man's chief end is to glorify God, and to enjoy him for ever.

Q. 1. What is meant by man's *chief end* ?

A. That which ought to be man's chief aim and design ; and that which he should seek after as his chief happiness.

Q. 2. What ought to be man's chief aim and design ?

A. The glory of God, 1 Chron. xvi. 28, 29. " Give unto the Lord, ye kindreds of the people,—give unto the Lord the glory due unto his name."

Q. 3. What should he seek after as his chief happiness ?

A. The enjoyment of God, Isa. xxvi. 8.—" The desire of our soul is to thy name, and the remembrance of thee."

Q. 4. What connexion is there betwixt the glorifying God, and the enjoying of him ?

A. They are connected by rich and sovereign grace, persuading and enabling the sinner to embrace Jesus Christ as the only way to God and glory, Eph. ii. 8.—" By grace are ye saved, through faith ; and that not of yourselves : it is the gift of God." John xiv. 6.—" I (says Christ) am the way ; no man cometh unto the Father but by me."

Q. 5. Does the chief end exclude subordinate ends ?

A. No ; for, in aiming principally at the glory of God, men may use the supports of natural life for refreshing their bodies, 1 Cor. v. 31, and be diligent in their particular callings, that they may provide for themselves and their families, 1 Thess. iv. 11, 12. 1 Tim. v. 8.

Q. 6. Why ought the glory of God to be the chief end and design of man ?

A. Because it is God's chief end in man's creation, preservation, redemption, and regeneration, Prov. xvi. 4.—" The Lord hath made all things for himself ;" and therefore it ought to be man's chief end likewise, 1 Cor. vi. 19, 20.—" Ye are not your own ; for ye are bought with a price ; therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's."

Q. 7. How manifold is the glory of God ?

A. Twofold, his essential and declarative glory.

Q. 8. What is God's essential glory ?

A. It is what he is absolutely in himself, Exod. iii. 14.—  
"I AM THAT I AM."

Q. 9. What is his declarative glory ?

A. His showing or making known his glory to, in, and by the creatures, Isa. xlv. 23 ; 2 Thess. i. 10.

Q. 10. Can any creature whatsoever add any thing to God's essential glory ?

A. No ; for his essential glory is infinite, eternal, and unchangeable, Job xxxv. 7.

Q. 11. Do not the heavens, and the earth and all inferior creatures glorify God ?

A. Yes ; in a passive way all his works praise him, Psal. xix. 1, and cxlv. 10.

Q. 12. How ought man to *glorify* God ?

A. Man being endued with a reasonable soul, ought to glorify God in an active way, Psal. lxiii. 4, by declaring his praise, Psal. ciii. 1, 2, and essaying to give him the glory due to his name, Psal. xcvi. 7.

Q. 13. How was man to glorify God in a state of innocence ?

A. By a perfect, personal, and perpetual obedience to his law, Gen. i. 27, and by giving him the glory of all his works, chap. ii. 19.

Q. 14. Has man answered his chief end ?

A. No ; for "all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God," Rom. ii. 23.

Q. 15. Has God then lost his end in making man ?

A. No ; for God will glorify his justice and power upon some, and his grace and mercy upon others of Adam's family, Rom. ix. 22, 23.

Q. 16. Was ever God glorified by a perfect obedience since Adam's fall ?

A. Never, until Christ, the second Adam, appeared as a new covenant-head, Isa. xlii. 21, and xlix. 3.

Q. 17. How did Christ, the second Adam, glorify God as our surety and representative on earth ?

A. By finishing the work the Father gave him to do, John xvii. 4.

Q. 18. What was the work the Father gave him to do ?

A. It was to assume a holy human nature, Luke i. 35, to yield a perfect sinless obedience to the whole law, Matth. iii. 15, and to give a complete satisfaction to justice for man's sin, by his meritorious sufferings and death, Luke xxiv. 26.

Q. 19. How does Christ glorify God in heaven ?

A. By appearing in the presence of God for us, Heb. ix. 24, and applying, by the power of his Spirit, that redemp-

tion which he purchased by the price of his blood on earth, Tit. iii. 5, 6.

Q. 20. When is it that a sinner begins uprightly to aim at the glory of God?

A. When, through a faith of God's operation, he believes in Christ, Acts viii. 37, 39.—“The eunuch answered and said, I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God.—And he went on his way rejoicing.”

Q. 21. Can no man glorify God acceptably, unless he first believe in Christ?

A. No; for “without faith it is impossible to please him,” Heb. xi. 6, and “whatsoever is not of faith is sin,” Rom. xiv. 23.

Q. 22. How is it that faith in Christ glorifies God?

A. As it sets to its seal to the record of God, John iii. 33, and unites us to Christ, from whom only our fruit is found, Hos. xiv. 8.

Q. 23. Is not God glorified by the good works of believers?

A. Yes; “Herein (says Christ) is my Father glorified, that ye bear much fruit,” John xv. 8.

Q. 24. What are these fruits brought forth by believers whereby God is glorified?

A. They may be summed up in faith working by love, Gal. v. 6, or, their aiming, in the strength of Christ, at universal obedience to the law, as the rule of duty, Phil. iv. 13. “I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me.”

Q. 25. How should we glorify God in eating and drinking?

A. By taking a right to the supports of natural life, through the second Adam, the heir of all things, who has purchased a covenant-right to temporal as well as spiritual mercies for his people, 1 Cor. iii. 21, 22, 23, and thankfully acknowledging God for the same, 1 Tim. iv. 4, 5.

Q. 26. How must we glorify God in our religious worship and other acts of obedience?

A. By doing all that we do in the name of the Lord Jesus, Col. iii. 17, worshipping God in the spirit, rejoicing in Christ Jesus, and having no confidence in the flesh, Phil. iii. 3.

Q. 27. What is it, next to the glory of God, we should aim at?

A. Next unto God's glory, we should aim at the enjoyment of him, Psal. lxxiii. 25, 26.

Q. 28. Why should we aim at the enjoyment of God?

A. Because he is the chief good of the rational creature, Psal. cxvi. 7, and nothing else, besides him, is either suitable to the nature or satisfying to the desires of the immortal soul, Psal. cxliv. 15.

Q. 29. How may a finite creature *enjoy* an infinite God?

A. By taking and rejoicing in him, as its everlasting and up-making portion, Psal. xvi. 5, 6, and xlvi. 14.

Q. 30. Did our first parents, in a state of innocence, enjoy God?

A. Yes; there was perfect friendship and fellowship between God and them: for "God made man upright," Eccl. vii. 29.

Q. 31. What broke that blessed friendship and fellowship?

A. Sin: "Our iniquities have separated between us and our God, and our sins have hid his face from us," Isa. lix. 2.

Q. 32. Can a sinner, in a natural state, enjoy God, or have any fellowship with him?

A. No; "For what communion hath light with darkness? and what concord hath Christ with Belial?" 2 Cor. vi. 14, 15.

Q. 33. How may a lost sinner recover the enjoyment of God, and fellowship with him?

A. As we lost it by our fall in the first Adam, so it can only be recovered by union with a second Adam, Rom. v. 18, 19: for there is no coming to God but by him, John xiv. 6.

Q. 34. When is it that a sinner begins to enjoy God?

A. When, having received Christ by faith, he rests upon him, and upon God in him, for righteousness and strength, Isa. xlv. 24; and out of his fulness receives, and grace for grace, John i. 16.

Q. 35. What are the external means by or in which we are to seek after the enjoyment of God?

A. In all the ordinances of his worship, public, private, and secret, such as the Word read and heard, the sacraments, prayer, meditation, fasting, thanksgiving, and the like.

Q. 36. Are the saints of God admitted to enjoy him in these?

A. Yes; they are the trysting-places where his name is recorded, and to which he has promised to come and bless them, Exod. xx. 24.—"In all places where I record my name I will come unto thee, and I will bless thee."

Q. 37. What scripture evidence have we of their enjoying God in the duties and ordinances of his appointment?

A. We find them much employed in religious duties, Song iii. 1, 2, 3, and expressing the utmost regard for the ordinances of his grace, Psal. lxxxiv. 1, 2.

Q. 38. What satisfaction has the soul in the enjoyment of God?

A. Unspeakably more gladness than when corn, wine, and all earthly comforts do most abound, Psal. iv. 7.

Q. 39. Is there any difference betwixt the enjoyment of God in this life and that which the saints shall obtain in the life to come?

A. Not an essential, but a gradual difference, as to the manner and measure of it.

Q. 40. What is the difference as to the manner of the enjoyment here and hereafter?

A. Here the enjoyment is mediate by the intervention of means; hereafter it will be immediate without any use of these means.—“Now we see through a glass darkly; but then **FACE TO FACE**,” 1 Cor. xiii. 12.

Q. 41. What is the difference as to the measure of the enjoyment in this life and that which is to come?

A. In this life the enjoyment is only partial; in that which is to come, it will be full and complete, 1 John iii. 2: here the enjoyment is only in the seed, or first fruits; there it will be in the full harvest, Psal. cxxvi. 5, 6.

Q. 42. Is the partial enjoyment of God in grace here a sure pledge of the full enjoyment of him in glory hereafter?

A. It is both the pledge and earnest thereof, Eph. i. 13, 14. Psal. lxxxiv. 11.

Q. 43. Doth the gracious soul, in that state, fully receive its chief end?

A. Yes; in regard that then it shall be brimful of God, and celebrate his praises with high and uninterrupted hal-lujahs through all eternity, Psal. xvi. 11. Isa. xxxv. 10.

Q. 44. Why is the glorifying God made the leading part of man's chief end, and set before the enjoyment of him?

A. Because, as God's design in glorifying himself was the reason and foundation of his design in making man happy in the enjoyment of him, Rom. xi. 36, so he has made our aiming at his glory, as our chief end, to be the very way and means of our attaining to that enjoyment, Psal. l. 23.

Q. 45. Whether is our happiness, in the enjoyment of God, to be our chief end?

A. No; but the glory of God itself, Isa. xlii. 8, in our aiming at which chiefly, we cannot miss the enjoyment of him, Psal. xci. 14, 15.

Q. 46. Is not our delighting in the glory of God to be reckoned our chief end?

A. No; we must set the glory of God above our delight therein, otherwise our delight is not chiefly in God, but in ourselves, Isa. ii. 11. Our subjective delighting in the glory of God belongs to the enjoyment of him whose glory is above the heavens, and infinitely above our delight therein, Psal. cxliii. 4.

Q. 47. Whom does God dignify with the enjoyment of himself, in time and for ever?

A. These whom he helps actively to glorify and honour him; for he has said, "Them that honour me, I will honour," 1 Sam. ii. 30.

Q. 48. Does any thing so much secure our happy enjoyment of God, as the concern that the glory of God has therein?

A. No; for as God cannot but reach the great end of his own glory, so, when he hath promised us eternal life in Christ, before the world began, Tit. i. 2, we cannot come short of it, because it stands upon the honour of his faithfulness to make it good, Heb. x. 23.—"He is faithful that promised."

Q. 49. How does it appear that the enjoyment of God, which is connected with the glorifying of him, shall be *for ever*?

A. Because he who is the object enjoyed is the everlasting God, Isa. xl. 28, and the enjoyment of him is not transitory, like the passing enjoyments of time, but the eternal enjoyment of the eternal God, Psal. xlviii. 14.

2. Q. What rule hath God given to direct us how we may glorify and enjoy him?

A. The word of God, which is contained in the scriptures of the Old and New Testament, is the only rule to direct us how we may glorify and enjoy him.

Q. 1. What necessity is there of a rule to direct us how to glorify and enjoy God?

A. It is necessary, because, since God will be glorified by the reasonable creature, nothing can be a perfect rule for that end, but his own revealed will, Rom. xii. 2.

Q. 2. Can man, by any wisdom or power of his own, ever attain to the glorifying of God, and the enjoyment of him, which he has come short of, by his fall in the first Adam?

A. No; his wisdom and knowledge in the things of God, are become folly and ignorance, Job xi. 12, and his power to do good is turned into utter impotency, John vi. 44.

Q. 3. Where has God revealed the way how man may recover and attain the end of his creation?

A. In *the word of God, which is contained in the scriptures of the Old and New Testament*, John v. 39, "Search the scriptures."

Q. 4. How do you know the scriptures of the Old and New Testament to be the word of God?

A. By the print of God that is evidently to be seen upon them; for as none works like God, Isa. xliii. 13, so none speaks like him, John vii. 46.

Q. 5. What do you understand by the print or impress of God that is so discernible in the scriptures ?

A. That majesty, holiness, light, life, and efficacy, which shine in the word itself, Rom. i. 16; Psal. xix. 7.

Q. 6. What may be said of those who do not see that print of God in the word, though they read it ?

A. It may be said, "The god of this world hath blinded the minds of them that believe not," 2 Cor. iv. 4.

Q. 7. Since all men are spiritually blind by nature, is it not in vain for them to read the scriptures ?

A. No; it is the will of God that they should read and search the scriptures, John v. 39, and the entrance of his word gives light and sight to them that are blind, Psal. cxix. 130.

Q. 8. What should a man do that the Bible may not remain a sealed book unto him ?

A. Whenever he looks into the word of God, he should look up to God, the author of it, saying, "Open thou mine eyes, that I may behold wondrous things out of thy law," Psal. cxix. 18.—"O send out thy light and thy truth, let them lead me," Psal. xliii. 3.

Q. 9. By what arguments may we persuade men that are infidels to receive the scriptures as the word of God ?

A. We may deal with them by rational arguments drawn from their antiquity; the heavenliness of the matter; the majesty of the style; the harmony of all the parts, though written in different ages; the exact accomplishment of prophecies; the sublimity of the mysteries and matters contained in the word; the efficacy and power of it, in the conviction and conversion of multitudes; the scope of the whole to guide men to attain their chief end; the glory of God in their own salvation; and the many miracles wrought for the confirmation of the truth of the doctrines contained in them.\*

Q. 10. Can these, or the like rational arguments, ever produce a divine faith ?

A. No; for rational argument can only produce a mere rational faith, founded on reason; but a divine and saving faith rests wholly upon the divine testimony inherent in the word itself; or upon a "Thus saith the Lord."

Q. 11. How is this inherent testimony discovered ?

A. By the same Spirit of God that dictated the word, 2 Pet. i. 21, he being an Interpreter, one among a thousand, John xvi. 13.

Q. 12. What is it that will fully persuade and assure a person that the scriptures are indeed the word of God ?

\* See Confession of Faith, chap. i. § 5.

A. "The spirit of God bearing witness by, and with the scriptures in the heart of man, is alone able fully to persuade it, that they are the very word of God, John xvi. 13, 14; 1 John ii. 27."\*

Q. 13. Whether does the authority of the scripture, for which it ought to be believed, and obeyed, depend upon the testimony of the church or wholly upon God?

A. "Wholly upon God (who is truth itself) the author thereof; and therefore it is to be received, because it is the word of God, 1 John v. 9; 1 Thess. ii. 13."†

Q. 14. Why cannot the authority of the scriptures depend upon the church?

A. Because the true church of Christ depends, in its very being, on the scriptures; and therefore the scriptures cannot depend upon it, as to their authority, Eph. ii. 20, 22.

Q. 15. Are not the light of nature, and the works of creation and providence, sufficient to direct us how we may glorify and enjoy God?

A. These "do so far manifest the goodness, wisdom, and power of God, as to leave men inexcusable, Rom. ii. 14, 15, and i. 19, 20, yet are they not sufficient to give that knowledge of God, and of his will, which is necessary unto salvation, 1 Cor. ii. 13, 14."‡

Q. 16. What makes a farther revelation than nature's light necessary?

A. The glory of the Divine perfections, particularly his mercy, grace, love, and faithfulness, Psal. lxxxv. 8, 10, 11, the gross ignorance and degeneracy of mankind, 1 Cor. i. 20, 21, the sublimeness of the things revealed, which otherwise had never been known by men or angels, John i. 18: it is also necessary for trying the spirits and doctrines of men, and for unmasking the impostures of the devil, 1 John iv. 1, 2, 3.

Q. 17. How doth it appear that the scriptures are not an imposition upon mankind?

A. If the penmen of the scriptures had inclined to deceive they would have accommodated themselves to the dispositions of the people with whom they conversed, and connived at their lusts; but, on the contrary, we find they faithfully exposed the errors and vices of men, and impartially set themselves against every thing that corrupt nature is fond of; and that though they were laid open to the greatest hardships and sufferings for so doing, Acts v. 29, 30, 31—40, 41.

Q. 18. What is the meaning of the word *scriptures*?

A. It signifies writings; and the word of God is em-

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 4.

† Confession, chap. i. § 4.

‡ Confession, chap. i. § 1.

phatically so called, because God has therein written to us the great things of his law and covenant, Hos. viii. 12.

Q. 19. Why was the word of God committed to writing?

A. "For the better preserving and propagating of the truth; and for the more sure establishment and comfort of the church, against the corruption of the flesh, and the malice of Satan and the world," Luke i. 3, 4; Prov. xxii. 20, 21.\*

Q. 20. How was the will of God made known to the church, before it was committed to writing?

A. By immediate revelations, Gen. ii. 16, 17, and iii. 15; by frequent appearances of the Son of God, delighting, beforehand, to try on the human likeness, Gen. xviii. 2, compared with ver. 3, Judges xiii. 11, compared with ver. 18, 19; by the ministry of the holy angels, Gen. xix. 1, 15, Heb. ii. 2, and of the patriarchs, Jude, ver. 14, 15, Heb. xi. 7.

Q. 21. Why are the Scriptures of the Old and New Testament called *the word of God*?

A. Because "all scripture is given by inspiration of God," 2 Tim. iii. 16, being immediately indited by the Holy Ghost, 2 Pet. i. 21.

Q. 22. Why are they commonly called the Bible?

A. The word Bible signifying a book, the holy scriptures are so called by way of eminence, because they are incomparably the best of all books, as containing the invariable grounds of faith in Christ for life eternal: John xx. 31, "These are written that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ the Son of God, and that believing ye might have life through his name."

Q. 23. Why are the holy scriptures called a *Testament*?

A. Because they are the last will of the glorious Testator, first typically, and then actually confirmed by his death, concerning the vast legacies therein bequeathed to his spiritual seed: Heb. ix. 16, "Where a testament is, there must also of necessity be the death of the testator."

Q. 24. Why are the writings of Moses and the prophets called the *Old Testament*?

A. Because the will of the testator, Christ, was veiled, legally dispensed, and typically sealed by the blood of sacrificed beasts; upon which account it is called comparatively faulty, Heb. vii. 7, 8, and was therefore to vanish away, ver. 13.

Q. 25. To whom were the oracles of God, under the Old Testament, committed?

A. To the church of the Jews: Rom. iii. 1, 2, "What advantage hath the Jew?—Much every way: chiefly because unto them were committed the oracles of God."

\* Confession, chap. i. § 1.

Q. 26. Why are the Scriptures from Matthew to the end of the Revelation, called the *New Testament*?

A. Because they contain the most clear and full revelation, and actual ratification of the covenant of promise, by the death of Christ the Testator, who is also the living executor of his own Testament: Rev. i. 18, "I am he that liveth, and was dead; and behold I am alive for evermore," John xiv. 19.—"Because I live ye shall live also."

Q. 27. Will this New-Testament dispensation of the grace of God ever undergo any other alteration?

A. No; it will remain new and unalterable, till the second coming of the Lord Jesus, Matth. xxvi. 29.

Q. 28. Do the scriptures of the Old Testament continue to be a rule of faith and practice to us who live under the New?

A. Yes; because they are the record of God concerning Christ, as well as the scriptures of the New Testament; for all the prophets prophesied of him; to him they did all bear witness, Acts x. 43, and Christ commands all to search them, because eternal life is to be found in them, and they testify of him, John v. 39.

Q. 29. How could the Old Testament be of force, when it was not confirmed by the death of the Testator?

A. The death of Christ, the Testator, was typified in all the expiatory sacrifices of that dispensation; hence is he called, "The Lamb slain from the foundation of the world," Rev. xiii. 8.

Q. 30. Is not that typical dispensation now quite abolished under the New Testament?

A. Yes; for it was promised that the Messiah should cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease; and accordingly Christ being come,—"Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood, he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us," Heb. ix. 11, 12.

Q. 31. Why was that ceremonial dispensation abolished?

A. Because it was only a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things; that is, not the very things themselves, Heb. x. 1.

Q. 32. Wherein doth the New Testament excel the Old?

A. Amongst other things, it excels it, in respect of evidence, worship, extent, gifts, and duration.

Q. 33. Wherein does the New Testament excel the Old in respect of evidence?

A. The Old Testament speaks of a Messiah to come, but the New presents him as already come, John i. 29, 41, the Old was dark and cloudy, but the New clear and perspicuous, 2 Cor. iii. 18.

Q. 34. How does it excel in respect of worship?

A. The worship of the Old Testament was a yoke of bondage; but the worship of the New is free, spiritual, and easy, Gal. v. 1.

Q. 35. How does the New Testament excel in respect of extent?

A. The Old was confined to the Jews, Psal. cxlvii. 19, 20, and a few proselytes among the Gentiles, Exod. xii. 48, but the New extends to all the world, Mark xvi. 15, and its converts are vastly more numerous than under the old dispensation, Rev. vii. 9.

Q. 36. How does it excel in respect of gifts?

A. The gifts of the Spirit are more plentiful, and more efficacious under the New, than under the Old, Acts ii. 17, 18.

Q. 37. How does the New Testament excel in respect of duration?

A. The dispensation of the Old Testament, by types and sacrifices, was only for a time, Heb. viii. 13; but the dispensation of the New is to continue unalterable to the end of the world, Matth. xxviii. 20.

Q. 38. Why are the scriptures said to be *the only rule* to direct us how we may glorify and enjoy God?

A. Because none but God, the author of the scriptures, could by them show the way how he himself is to be glorified and enjoyed by fallen sinners of mankind, Mich. vi. 6, 9, Matth. xi. 25, 28.

Q. 39. Although the light of nature, or natural reason, should not be the only rule, yet may it not be admitted as a sufficient rule to direct us how to glorify and enjoy God?

A. By no means; because of its utter incapacity to give the smallest discovery of Christ, the Mediator of the New Covenant, 1 Cor. ii. 14, who is the only way of salvation for lost sinners of Adam's family, John xiv. 6.

Q. 40. Is it enough to assert, that the word of God is the principal rule to direct us?

A. No; because this would leave room for us to conceive of another rule beside the scriptures, which, though it might not be called the principal one, yet might be in itself abundantly good and sufficient for directing sinners to their chief end; which is false, and contrary to scripture, Luke xvi. 29, 31; Isa. viii. 20; Acts iv. 12.

Q. 41. Wherein consists the perfection of the scriptures?

A. It consists in this, "That the whole council of God concerning all things necessary for his own glory, man's salvation, faith, and life, is either expressly set down in scripture, or by good and necessary consequence may be deduced from scripture, 2 Tim. iii. 15, 16, 17; Gal. i. 8, 9."\*

\* Confession, chap. i. § 6.

Q. 42. Are plain and necessary scripture consequences to be admitted as a part of the rule, as well as express scriptures?

A. Yes; as is evident from the instance of our Lord in proving the doctrine of the resurrection against the Sadducees, Matth. xxii. 31, 32.—“As touching the resurrection of the dead, have ye not read that which was spoken to you by God, saying, I am the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob? God is not the God of the dead, but of the living.”

Q. 43. Are the scriptures a clear and perspicuous rule?

A. All things necessary to be known, believed, and observed for salvation, are so clearly laid down in one place of scripture or other, that every one in the due use of ordinary means may attain to a sufficient understanding of them, Psal. cxix. 105, 130.\*

Q. 44. Are human and unwritten traditions, how ancient soever, to be admitted as a part of the rule?

A. No; all human traditions are to be examined by the scriptures; and if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them, Isa. viii. 20.

Q. 45. Can the heathens, by all the helps they have, without revelation, attain to such a knowledge of God, and his will, as is necessary to salvation?

A. By no means; for they are declared to be “without God, and without hope in the world,” Eph. ii. 12; and “where there is no vision, the people perish,” Prov. xxix. 18, there being “no other name under heaven, given among men, whereby we must be saved,” but that of Jesus, Acts iv. 12.

Q. 46. Is the light within men, or the Spirit without the word, which is pretended to by Quakers, and other enthusiasts, to be used as any rule for our direction?

A. No; because whatever light or spirit is pretended to without the word, it is but darkness, delusion, and a spirit of error, 1 John iv. 1, 6.

Q. 47. In what language were the scriptures originally written?

A. The Old Testament was written originally in Hebrew, and the New Testament in Greek.

Q. 48. Why ought the scriptures to be translated into the vulgar language of every nation where they come?

A. Because sinners of mankind have a right unto, and interest in the scriptures, Prov. viii. 4, and are commanded, in the fear of God, to read and search them, John v. 39.

Q. 49. Who is the supreme judge, in whose sentence we are to rest, in determining all controversies of religion, and examining the decrees and doctrines of men?

\* Confession, chap. i. § 7.

A. "No other but the Holy Spirit speaking in the scripture, Matth. xxii. 29 ; Acts xxviii. 25."\*

Q. 50. Why are the books called the Apocrypha to be rejected as no part of the canon of scripture ?

A. Because they were not written in the original language of the Old Testament ; nor acknowledged for scripture by the Jews, to whom the oracles of God were committed ; and have nothing of that impress of majesty, holiness, and efficacy, which shines so conspicuously in the scriptures of the Old and New Testament ; and because they were written after Malachi, whose book is called the end of the prophets ; and do contain many false things, contradictory, and heretical.

Q. 51. Wherein consists the incomparable excellence and usefulness of the scriptures ?

A. They are the well-furnished dispensatory of all sovereign remedies, Psal. cvii. 20, the rich magazine of all true comfort, Rom. xv. 4, the complete armoury of all spiritual weapons, Eph. vi. 13—18, and the unerring compass to guide to the haven of glory, 1 Pet. i. 19.

3. Q. What do the scriptures principally teach ?

A. The scriptures principally teach, what man is to believe concerning God, and what duty God requires of man.

Q. 1. What is it to believe what the scriptures teach ?

A. It is to assent and give credit to the truths thereof, because of the authority of God, whose word the scriptures are, John iii. 33. "He that hath received his testimony, hath set to his seal that God is true."

Q. 2. Are we to believe nothing in point of faith, and do nothing in point of duty, but what we are taught in the scripture ?

A. No ; because the scripture is the only book in the world of divine authority ; and the revealed will and command of God therein being so exceeding broad, nothing is incumbent on us to believe and do, but what is either directly or consequentially prescribed therein, Isa. viii. 20.

Q. 3. Why are the scriptures said *principally* to teach matters of faith and practice ?

A. Because though all things revealed in the scripture be equally true, yet every thing therein is not equally necessary to salvation, 1 Cor. vii. 12, 13.

Q. 4. What is the order of doctrine laid down in this question ?

A. Faith or believing is made the foundation of duty or

\* Confession, chap. i. § 10.

obedience; and not our obedience, or duty, the foundation of our faith, Tit. iii. 8.

Q. 5. Why are the things to be believed set before the things to be practised?

A. To distinguish between the order of things in the covenant of grace, from what they were in innocency, under the covenant of works, Gal. iii. 12.

Q. 6. What was the order of things in the covenant of works?

A. Doing, or perfect obedience to the law, was the foundation of the promised privilege of life; "The man which doth those things shall live by them," Rom. x. 5.

Q. 7. Is this order inverted in the covenant of grace, or gospel-revelation?

A. Yes; the promise is to be believed, and the promised privilege, namely, life, must be freely received; and upon this follows our obedience to the law, from gratitude and love, Jer. xxxi. 18, 19.

Q. 8. How doth it appear that this is the order of gospel-doctrine?

A. Because this is the order that God laid, in delivering the law at Mount Sinai, the foundation of faith is first laid in these words of the preface, "I am the Lord thy God," &c. which is the sum and substance of the covenant of grace; and then follow the Ten Commandments, which are, as it were, grafted upon this grant of sovereign grace and love, Exod. xx. 18.

Q. 9. Is this the order of doctrine laid down in the standards of the church of Scotland?

A. Yes; as appears from the answer to that question in the Shorter Catechism, "What does the preface to the Ten Commandments teach us?" The answer is, "That, because God is the Lord, and our God, and Redeemer; therefore we are bound to keep all his commandments."\*

Q. 10. Are we then to keep the commandments, that God may become our God?

A. No; for this were to slide into a covenant of works, but we are to keep them, "because he is our God," according to the tenor of the covenant of grace, Psal. xlv. 11, in metre, "Because he is thy Lord, do thou him worship reverently."

Q. 11. Why do men naturally think that upon their doing so and so, God will be their God?

A. Because of the natural bias of the heart of man to the order in the covenant of works, "Do, and live," Rom. ix. 32, and chap. x. 3.

Q. 12. Does not this order make void the law, or weaken our obligation to the duties thereof?

\* See also Confession, chap. xvi. § 2. Larger Catechism, quest. 101, 104.

A. By no means ; but rather establishes the law, and settles our obligation to duty upon its proper foundation, Rom. iii. 31. " Do we then make void the law through faith ? God forbid ; yea, we establish the law."

Q. 13. How is this order of doctrine further evinced ?

A. From the method of doctrine observed by the apostle Paul, who tells us, that all true gospel-obedience is the obedience of faith, Rom xvi. 26. And accordingly, in his epistles, he first lays down the doctrine of faith to be believed ; and upon that foundation proceeds to inculcate the duties that are to be practised.

Q. 14. Does gospel-obedience interest us in God, as our God ?

A. No ; but it is a fruit and evidence of our interest in him, 1 John ii. 3, 5.

Q. 15. Is there any danger of inverting this order, and of making duty done by us the foundation of believing the Lord to be our God ?

A. There is exceeding great danger ; for it is the very soul of Popery. By inverting this order they were led back to a covenant of works, and the doctrine of the merit of good works, which is the foundation of the whole Antichristian superstructure.

Q. 16. But do not we find frequently in scripture a reward promised to good works, Psal. xix. 11, " In keeping of thy commandments there is great reward ;" Psal. lvi. 11, " Verily there is a reward to the righteous" ?

A. True ; but this is a reward of grace, not of debt ; the man that is rewarded must be a believer in Christ, whose person is first accepted, through his union to Christ by faith, and the imputation of his righteousness, before any of his works or duties can be accepted, Eph. i. 6 ; Gen. iv. 4.

Q. 17. What may be said of the works of a man that has no faith ?

A. They are dead works, and so cannot please a living God. An evil tree cannot bring forth good fruit, Matth. vii. 18 ; and without Christ, and union with him, we can do nothing, John xv. 4, 5.

Q. 18. What is to be thought of those who inculcate moral duties, without discovering the necessity of the new birth, and union with Christ by faith, as the spring of all acceptable obedience ?

A. They are foolish builders, laying their foundation on the sand, perverting the gospel of Christ ; against whom the apostle denounces an awful doom, Gal. i. 9. " If any man preach any other gospel to you than that ye have received, let him be accursed."

4. Q. What is God ?

A. God is a Spirit, infinite, eternal, and unchangeable in his being, wisdom, power, holiness, justice, goodness, and truth.

*Of the Nature and Perfections of God in general.*

Q. 1. What is the first fundamental truth to be believed, and upon which all other truths do depend ?

A. That God is ; or, that there is a God, Heb. xi. 6. " He that cometh unto God, must believe that he is."

Q. 2. Is this fundamental truth known by the light of natural reason ?

A. Yes ; as the apostle declareth, Rom. i. 20. " The invisible things of God, from the creation of the world, are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead."

Q. 3. In what volumes has God discovered the knowledge of himself to all mankind ?

A. In the great volumes of creation and providence, which he opens to all the world.

Q. 4. What says the volume of creation as to the being of a God ?

A. All creatures in general, and every creature in particular, say that God made us, and not we ourselves, Psal. c. 3.

Q. 5. What says the volume of providence ?

A. It says that the same God who gave us our being, upholds us therein ; and governs us to the end for which he made us, Heb. i. 3.

Q. 6. Is not every man's own being a convincing evidence that there is a God ?

A. Yes ; for in him we live, move, and have our being. No man can have any hand in his own formation in the womb, Psal. cxxxix. 15, 16, nor can he add a cubit unto his stature, or make one hair of his head either white or black, Matth. vi. 27, and v. 36.

Q. 7. Though the works of creation and providence declare that God is, can they also tell us what God is ?

A. They afford us some dark glimpses of his eternal power, wisdom, greatness, and goodness ; but it is only by and through the scriptures of truth, set home on the soul by his Spirit, that we can attain the saving knowledge of God, and of his perfections, John v. 39 ; 2 Pet. i. 19 ; Rom. xv. 4.

Q. 8. Who is it that reveals God to the sons of men in the world ?

A. Christ the eternal Son of God : " No man hath seen

God at any time, the only-begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the father, he hath declared him," John i. 18.

Q. 9. What account of himself has God given us in the scriptures?

A. There are three short, but comprehensive descriptions which he has given of himself there. 1. That God is light, 1 John i. 5. 2. That God is love, 1 John iv. 8, 16. 3. That God is a Spirit, John iv. 24.

Q. 10. Why is God said to be light?

A. Because of his infinite purity and omniscience, Hab. i. 13, Heb. iv. 13, and because he is the fountain and father of all light, whether material, natural, gracious, or glorious, James i. 17.

Q. 11. Why is God said to be love?

A. Because, according to the manifestation he has made of himself in Christ, love is the reigning excellency of his nature, which gives a dye or tincture to all his other perfections, in their egress, or exercise about the salvation of mankind sinners, John iii. 16; 1 John iv. 8, 9, 10.

Q. 12. Why is he said to be a *Spirit*?

A. Because he is necessarily and essentially a living intelligent substance; incorruptible, incorporeal, without flesh or bones, or bodily parts, Luke xxiv. 39.

Q. 13. How far doth God transcend all created spirits?

A. He is as infinitely above the being of all created spirits as he is above the conception of all intelligent creatures, Job xxxvii. 23. "Touching the Almighty, we cannot find him out."

Q. 14. Since God is a most simple and pure Spirit, why are bodily parts, such as eyes, ears, hands, face, and the like, ascribed unto him in scripture?

A. Such figurative expressions ought not to be understood in their literal sense, but according to the true scope and intent of them: which is, to set forth some acts and perfections of the divine nature, whereunto these members of the body bear some faint resemblance: thus, when eyes and ears are ascribed to God, they signify his omniscience; hands are designed to denote his power; and his face the manifestation of his favour; and in this light, other metaphors of like nature, when applied to God, ought to be explained.

Q. 15. Is it lawful to form any external image of God with the hand, or any internal imaginary idea of him in the fancy?

A. It is absolutely unlawful and idolatrous, condemned in the second commandment, and other scriptures, Deut. iv. 12, 15; Rom. i. 23. Man cannot form an imaginary idea of his own soul or spirit, far less of him who is the Father of spirits.

Q. 16. What may we learn from God's being a Spirit?

A. To worship him in spirit and in truth, John iv. 24.

Q. 17. What is it to worship him in spirit and in truth?

A. It is to worship him from a real and saving knowledge of what he is in Christ to lost sinners of mankind, John xvii. 3.

Q. 18. Is it possible for man to attain the real and saving knowledge of God?

A. Although neither men nor angels can have a comprehensive knowledge of God, Job xi. 7, 8, 9, yet, besides the speculative and merely rational knowledge of him, which men have, and may have much of, by the light of nature, a saving and satisfying knowledge of him is attainable, and is promised in the word, Jer. xxiv. 7. "I will give them a heart to know me, that I am the Lord." And John vi. 45, "It is written in the prophets, They shall be all taught of God."

Q. 19. Wherein consists the saving knowledge of God?

A. It is like the "white stone" and "new name," which no man knows but he that receives it, Rev. ii. 17; and he that attains it cannot make language of it, but silently admires what he cannot comprehend: only, there is no saving knowledge of God, but in and through Christ the Saviour, 2 Cor. iv. 6.

Q. 20. What is the language of the soul that sees God and knows him savingly in Christ?

A. It is like that of Moses, Exod. xv. 11, "Who is like unto thee, O Lord!—who is like unto thee, glorious in holiness, fearful in praises, doing wonders? Or that of the Psalmist, Psal. xlvi. 14, "This God is our God for ever and ever; he will be our guide even unto death."

Q. 21. What are the rays of divine glory in the face of Jesus Christ, whereby we come to know God savingly?

A. They are the attributes and perfections of nature, whereby he is pleased to manifest himself; such as, that he is *infinite, eternal, and unchangeable in his being, wisdom, power, holiness, justice, goodness, and truth.*

Q. 22. Are these attributes of God distinct things from God himself, or the divine essence?

A. By no means; for, whatever is in God, is God himself; and therefore the infinity of all perfection is inseparable from the divine essence.

Q. 23. Are the divine attributes separable from one another, so as that which is infinite should not be eternal, and that which is infinite and eternal, should not be unchangeable, and so of the rest?

A. All perfections whatsoever being inseparable from God, they must also be inseparable from one another; for though

we, through weakness, must think and speak of them separately, yet all of them taken together are, properly speaking, but the one infinite perfection of the divine nature, which cannot be separated therefrom, without granting that God is not infinitely perfect, which would be the height of blasphemy to suppose.

Q. 24. Why are the perfections of God called his attributes?

A. Because they are attributed or ascribed unto him, as the essential properties of his nature, 1 Chron. xxix. 11.

Q. 25. How are the attributes of God commonly divided?

A. Into incommunicable and communicable.

Q. 26. What are the incommunicable attributes of God, mentioned in the answer?

A. His infinity, eternity, and unchangeableness.

Q. 27. Why called incommunicable?

A. Because there is not the least resemblance of them to be found among the creatures.

Q. 28. What are the attributes that are called communicable?

A. They are,—being, wisdom, power, holiness, justice, goodness, and truth.

Q. 29. Why called communicable?

A. Because there is some faint resemblance or similitude of them to be found among the creatures, namely, angels and saints: hence they are proposed in scripture for our imitation, Psal. xi. 6. “The righteous Lord loveth righteousness,” 1 Pet. i. 16. “Be ye holy, for I am holy.”

Q. 30. Can these communicable attributes be ascribed to any creature, as they are in God?

A. No; for they are in God infinitely, eternally, and unchangeably; he is infinite, eternal, and unchangeable in his being; infinite, eternal, and unchangeable in his wisdom, and so on of the rest, which would be blasphemy to affirm of any creature: hence it is said, Matth. xix. 17, “There is none good but one, that is God.” None infinitely, eternally, and unchangeably good, but he only.

#### Of God's Infinity.

Q. 1. What is it for God to be *infinite*?

A. It is to be absolutely without all bounds or limits in his being and perfections, Job xi. 7, 8, 9.

Q. 2. What does the infinity of God imply in it?

A. His incomprehensibleness, immensity, and omnipresence.

Q. 3. What is it for God to be incomprehensible?

A. It is infinitely to transcend the most enlarged capacity of men or angels, as to his being and perfections, Psal. cxlv. 3; Job xxxvi. 26.

Q. 4. What is the immensity of God ?

A. As it includes his omnipresence, it is that perfection of his nature whereby he is every where present with all and every one of his creatures ; and infinitely exceeds all their limits and boundaries, 1 Kings viii. 27.

Q. 5. What is the difference betwixt the omnipresence and immensity of God ?

A. The omnipresence of God is included in his immensity, and though not separable therefrom, yet may be conceived as having a respect to created substances, with every one of which he is intimately present ; whereas his immensity extends infinitely beyond the boundaries of all created substance, 2 Chron. vi. 18.

Q. 6. Is God every where present only as to his knowledge and power ?

A. He is every where present also as to his essence or being, as is evident from Jer. xxiii. 23, 24.

Q. 7. How may this be evinced also from reason ?

A. Reason teacheth us, that no creature can subsist by itself, without the presence of God to uphold it in its being and operation, Acts xvii. 28. " In him we live, and move, and have our being."

Q. 8. How is God present with the Church here on earth ?

A. He is present with the Church visible, by the ordinances and symbols of his institution, Exod. xx. 24, and with the church invisible, or believers, by the inhabitation and operation of his Holy Spirit, Ezek. xxxvi. 27.

Q. 9. How is he present in heaven ?

A. By the most bright and immediate displays of his glory ; all the inhabitants of the upper sanctuary seeing him as he is, and enjoying him without interruption for ever, 1 John iii. 2 ; Psal. xvi. 11.

Q. 10. How is he present in hell ?

A. In a way of tremendous power and justice, upholding the damned in their being, that they may lie under the stroke of his vindictive wrath for evermore, Psal. xc. 11 ; Matth. xxv. 46.

Q. 11. What may we learn from God's omnipresence ?

A. That no affliction or temptation can befall the saints without his knowledge and sympathy, Isa. xliii. 2.

### *Of God's Eternity.*

Q. 1. What is the difference betwixt time and eternity ?

A. Time hath a continual succession, the former time passeth away, and another succeeds ; but eternity is an infinite immutable duration.

Q. 2. What is it for God to be *eternal*?

A. It is that perfection of his nature whereby he continually exists, without all beginning, end, or succession of time.

Q. 3. How do you prove that God is without beginning?

A. From Psal. xc. 2. "Before the mountains were brought forth, or ever thou hadst formed the earth and the world, even from everlasting to everlasting thou art God:" that is, since thou didst exist before the mountains were brought forth, or before the beginning of time, thou art absolutely eternal.

Q. 4. How do you prove that God is without end?

A. From Psal. cii. 12, 27. "Thou, O Lord, shalt endure for ever,—and thy years shall have no end:" for that which had no beginning of duration, can never have an end of it, but must always necessarily exist.

Q. 5. How do you prove that he is without succession of time?

A. From Psal. xc. 4. "A thousand years are in thy sight but as yesterday, when it is past:" and 2 Pet. iii. 8. "One day is with the Lord as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day." He doth not only always remain in being, but is always the same in that being, Psal. cii. 27.

Q. 6. What is the difference betwixt God's eternity and the eternity of angels, and the souls of men?

A. God's eternity is essential, absolute, and independent, without beginning, as well as without end; but the eternity of angels, and the souls of men, is quite of another nature; for as they had a beginning, so their duration admits of a succession, as long as time lasts: and though they shall never have an end, yet this eternity of theirs is not necessary and essential to their nature, but flows from the will and power of God; who, if he pleased, could bring them to an end, as well as he gave them a beginning.

Q. 7. What use should the wicked make of God's eternity?

A. It should be matter of the greatest terror to them, while they continue in their wickedness; for, in this case, God will be their eternal foe, and will punish them with everlasting destruction, 2 Thess. i. 9.

Q. 8. What use should the godly, or believers in Christ, make of it?

A. They should improve it as matter of unspeakable comfort; because their God being the eternal God, he will therefore be the strength of their heart, and their portion for ever, Psal. lxxiii. 26.

### Of God's Unchangeableness.

Q. 1. What do you understand by God's being *unchangeable*?

A. His most perfect constancy, whereby he is infinitely free of any actual or possible change, but is always the same.

Q. 2. How is God's unchangeableness proved from scripture?

A. From Mal. iii. 6. "I am the Lord, I change not;" and James i. 17. "The Father of lights, with whom is no variableness, neither shadow of turning."

Q. 3. How may it be proved from reason?

A. Reason teaches, that if God did change, it behoved either to be to the better, or to the worse; neither of which is consistent with his absolute perfection, Matth. v. 48.

Q. 4. Can any creature be unchangeable in its nature?

A. No; because every creature depends upon God for being and operation, Acts xvii. 28.

Q. 5. Are not holy angels, and glorified saints, unchangeable?

A. They are in a state of unchangeable happiness, Eph. i. 10; but this is owing to sovereign grace, and not to their own natures, Rom. vi. 23.

Q. 6. Did creation make any change in God?

A. It made a change in the creature from nothing to being; but none in God, because his will and power to create were the same from eternity.

Q. 7. How is God unchangeable, when he is sometimes said in scripture to repent, as in Gen. vi. 6; Jonah iii. 10?

A. When in these or the like places he is said to repent, it imports only an alteration of his way, or outward conduct, according to his infallible foresight, but no change of his mind or will, Job xxiii. 13.

Q. 8. What may we learn from God's unchangeableness?

A. That he will accomplish his promise, Micah vii. 20; rest in his love, Zeph. iii. 17; and finish the good work which he hath begun in the soul, Phil. i. 6.

Q. 9. Wherein is God infinite, eternal, and unchangeable?

A. *In his being, wisdom, power, holiness, justice, goodness, and truth?*

#### Of God's Being.

Q. 1. What is understood by God's *being*?

A. It is what is usually called his essence.

Q. 2. What is the divine essence?

A. It is the glorious and transcendent nature of God, whereby he is what he is, infinitely blessed in himself, and comprehended by none but himself.

Q. 3. What is the highest perfection of being?

A. That to which nothing can be added, and from which nothing can be taken, and is independent on all things else, Job xxxv. 6, 7, 8.

Q. 4. Can being itself, or being in a proper and strict sense, be attributed to any, but to God only?

A. No; for though the heavens and the earth, angels and men, have a being, yet there is no infinite, eternal, and unchangeable being, but God only. It is God alone that can say, I AM, *Exod. iii. 14.*

Q. 5. What is the import of that name, I AM?

A. It is of the same import with the name *JEHOVAH*: as if he had said, I am being itself, the author and fountain of all beings, in heaven or earth.

Q. 6. What are all other beings, in comparison with the being of God?

A. All other beings are but created, contingent, and shadowy beings, if compared with his, who spoke them into beings, *Psal. xxxiii. 6, 9.*

Q. 7. What says God concerning those that are taken up with created beings, without ever reflecting upon the supreme, infinite, and eternal Being?

A. That they are brutish among the people; fools destitute of wisdom, *Psal. xciv. 8*, more brutish than the ox that knoweth his owner, *Isa. i. 3.*

Q. 8. Are not all created beings, with their perfections, originally in God, and from him?

A. Yes; as is evident from the unanswerable reasoning of the Spirit of God, *Psal. xciv. 9, 10*, "He that planted the ear, shall not he hear? He that formed the eye, shall not he see? He that teacheth man knowledge, shall not he know?"

Q. 9. What may we learn from God's being?

A. That as he gave being to all the creatures, so he will give being to all his promises, in their full accomplishment, *Exod. vi. 3.*

*Of God's Wisdom.*

Q. 1. Is not omniscience, or infinite knowledge and understanding, inseparably connected with infinite *wisdom*?

A. Yes; "For the Lord is a God of knowledge, and by him actions are weighed," *1 Sam. ii. 3.*

Q. 2. What is God's omniscience?

A. It is that perfection of his nature, whereby he knows all things most perfectly in himself, by one eternal act, *Acts xv. 18.*

Q. 3. How do you prove from scripture that he knows all things?

A. From *1 John iii. 20*. "God is greater than our heart, and knoweth all things."

Q. 4. How doth God's omniscience appear from reason?

A. He who made all things, cannot but know and comprehend his own workmanship, *Psal. xciv. 9.*

Q. 5. How doth it appear that he hath a perfect knowledge of intelligent creatures?

A. If he did not perfectly know them, and their actions, he could not be their supreme governor and judge, Heb. iv. 13.

Q. 6. What is the object of the divine knowledge or omniscience?

A. God himself, Matth. xi. 27, and all other things whatsoever, John xxi. 17.

Q. 7. How is it evident that God has a most perfect knowledge of himself, and his own glorious excellencies?

A. Because otherwise his understanding would not be infinite, as it is asserted to be, Psal. cxlvii. 5, in regard all other objects, beside himself, are but finite.

Q. 8. Is the knowledge of God absolutely independent upon the creature?

A. It is so independent of the creature, "as nothing is to him contingent or uncertain, Acts xv. 18; Ezek. xi. 5."\*

Q. 9. How doth it appear that God has a certain and infallible knowledge of contingent actions, or of such things as seem casual and accidental to us?

A. It appears from this that future events, which depend upon the freedom of man's will, or upon second causes, are expressly foretold in scripture, and therefore certainly foreknown by God; such as, Joseph's preferment, and Israel's oppression in Egypt; Ahab's death, though by an arrow shot at a venture; Cæsar's decree, that all the world should be taxed, bringing about Christ's birth at Bethlehem; and many other instances.

Q. 10. How doth God know things that are only possible?

A. He knows them in his power, which could easily bring them to pass, if he had so decreed, Matth. xix. 26.

Q. 11. How doth he know things future, or such as actually come to pass in time?

A. He knows them, not only in his power, as able to effect them, but in his will, as determining their futurity, or after existence, Gen. xvii. 21.

Q. 12. Is God's knowledge of things general or particular?

A. It is a particular knowledge of every individual creature, and of every circumstance about it, Psal. cxxxix. 2; Matth. x. 29, 30.

Q. 13. Is there any succession in his knowledge, or doth he know one thing before another?

A. As there is no succession in his essence, so there is none in his knowledge: he knows all things eternally, infallibly, and immutably, by one single act of his infinite under-

\* Confession of Faith, chap. ii. § 2.

standing: Heb. iv. 13. "All things are naked and opened unto the eyes of him with whom we have to do."

Q. 14. What conception may we have of the difference betwixt the infinite knowledge and wisdom of God?

A. His infinite knowledge comprehends all things in heaven and earth by one intuitive glance of his infinite mind; but his infinite wisdom directs all these things to the proper ends, for which he gave them their being, Rom. xi. 36.

Q. 15. How doth the wisdom of God appear in the work of creation?

A. It appears in the excellent order, beauty, and harmony, that is to be seen in all the parts of the creation, Psal. xix. 1, 7; in the subserviency of one thing to another, Hos. ii. 21, 22; and the tendency of the whole to manifest the glory of God, Rev. iv. 11; and calculated also for the good of man as his peculiar favourite, Psal. cxv. 16.

Q. 16. How does the wisdom of God appear in the work of providence?

A. In adjusting the whole of his administrations according to the plan laid in his infinite mind from eternity; or his most judicious and regular putting his counsels into execution, Psal. xxxiii. 10, 11.

Q. 17. How doth the wisdom of God shine in the work of redemption?

A. In making an honourable egress and vent for his mercy and love to sinners of mankind, in the way of satisfying his justice to the full, by the obedience and death of the blessed Surety, Rom. v. 21.

Q. 18. What encouragement ought we to take from the wisdom of God?

A. That he will make all things work together for our good, Rom. viii. 28, and that no plot can be so deeply laid for our ruin but his wisdom can easily frustrate and disappoint it, Job. v. 13.

*Of God's Power.*

Q. 1. What is the *power* of God?

A. It is that essential perfection of his nature, whereby he can do whatsoever he pleases, in heaven and earth, in the seas, and all deep places, Psal. cxxxv. 6.

Q. 2. What is the object of divine power, or whereunto doth it extend?

A. To all things possible, though limited, by his will,—to those things only which he hath decreed to be done, Matth. xxvi. 53, 54.

Q. 3. Is it any impeachment of God's omnipotence that he cannot lie,—cannot deny himself?

A. By no means; for, on the contrary, God is therefore

omnipotent, because it is impossible for him to do evil, or depart from the infinite rectitude of his own will: 1 Sam. xv. 29. "The strength of Israel will not lie."

Q. 4. Wherein doth God manifest his infinite power?

A. In creation, providence, and redemption.

Q. 5. How is the power of God manifested in creation?

A. In calling "those things that be not, as though they were," Rom. iv. 17, without the assistance and instrumentality of any whosoever, Isa. xlv. 24.

Q. 6. How is it displayed in the conduct of providence?

A. In upholding and preserving all his creatures from sinking into their original nothing, Heb. i. 3, and particularly in protecting and defending his church, in midst of all the dangers and enemies with which it is surrounded, Matth. xvi. 18.

Q. 7. How is the power of God illustrated in the glorious work of redemption?

A. By laying the chief corner-stone thereof in the union of the human nature unto the person of the Son of God; supporting him under the inconceivable load of divine wrath, for our sins; and spoiling principalities and powers in that very nature which Satan had vanquished at first: hence is he called "the power of God," 1 Cor. i. 24; "the arm of the Lord," Isa. liii. 1; and "the man of his right hand," Psal. lxxx. 17.

Q. 8. How is the power of God denied or abused by men?

A. By limiting it, as Israel did, Psal. lxxviii. 19; by trusting more to an arm of flesh than to the arm of God, Jer. xvii. 5; and by fearing the wrath of man more than the displeasure of God, Isa. li. 12, 13.

Q. 9. What improvement may faith make of the power of a promising God?

A. It can fasten thereupon, for the performance of his gracious word, Rom. iv. 20, 21; for resisting and conquering sin, Satan, and the world, saying, "If God be for us, who can be against us?" Rom. viii. 31; and for the practice of any commanded duty, however difficult, saying, "I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me," Phil. iv. 13.

### Of God's Holiness.

Q. 1. What is the *holiness* of God?

A. It is that essential rectitude or integrity of his nature, whereby he infinitely delights in his own purity, and in every thing agreeable to his will, Hab. i. 13, and hath a perfect hatred and abhorrence of every thing contrary thereunto, Jer. xlv. 4.

Q. 2. Is God necessarily holy?

A. Holiness is as necessary to him as his being: he is as

necessarily holy, as he is necessarily God : "Who shall not fear thee, O Lord?—for thou only art holy," Rev. xv. 4.

Q. 3. What peculiar honour doth God put upon his own holiness?

A. He singles it out as the attribute to swear by, for the accomplishment of his promises and threatenings, Psal. lxxxix. 35. "Once have I sworn by my holiness, that I will not lie unto David."

Q. 4. Are finite creatures able to behold the brightness of God's holiness?

A. No; for when the angels themselves view his infinite holiness, as manifested in Christ, they are represented as covering their faces with their wings, Isa. vi. 2.

Q. 5. How are sinners of mankind made partakers of his holiness?

A. By regenerating grace, and spiritual ingraftment into the second Adam, John xv. 4, 5; by faith's improvement of the great and precious promises, 2 Pet. i. 4; and by beholding the glory of this attribute, as it shines in the person and sufferings of the Son of God, presented to our view in the glass of the gospel revelation, 2 Cor. v. 21.

Q. 6. Doth every thing pertaining to God bear a stamp and impress of his holiness?

A. Yes; he is "holy in all his works," Psal. cxlv. 17; his word is holy, Rom. i. 2; his covenant or promise is holy, Psal. cv. 42; his Sabbath is holy, Isa. lviii. 13; his people are holy, chap. lxii. 12; his ministering spirits are the holy angels, Rev. xiv. 10; and the place where he dwells is the high and holy place, Isa. lvii. 15.

Q. 7. Wherein did the holiness of God appear in the creation of man?

A. In making him upright, Eccl. vii. 29; after his own image, Gen. i. 27; and writing a law upon his heart, which was the transcript of this holiness, Rom. vii. 12.

Q. 8. How hath God discovered his holiness in his providential procedure?

A. In not sparing the angels who sinned; and in the visible and remarkable judgments which he has inflicted upon notorious offenders in this life, 2 Pet. ii. 4, 5, 6.

Q. 9. What was the highest display of God's holiness and detestation of sin?

A. His hiding his face from his own beloved Son, as bearing our iniquity, Matth. xxvii. 46.

Q. 10. What is the great opposite of the holiness of God?

A. Sin; therefore called that abominable thing which God hates, Jer. xliv. 4.

Q. 11. How doth God hate sin?

A. He hates it necessarily, and with a perfect hatred, Psal. v. 4, 5, 6.

Q. 12. Since God thus hates sin, how doth his permission thereof consist with his holiness?

A. It fully consists therewith, because his permission of sin hath no influence upon the commission thereof, which entirely flows from the free will of the sinner, James i. 13, 14. Besides, God thereby takes occasion to give a brighter display of his holiness and detestation of sin, than though Adam had continued in innocency; when he spared not his own Son, but gave him unto death on account of it, Rom. viii. 32.

Q. 13. What improvement ought we to make of the holiness of God?

A. To give thanks at the remembrance of his holiness, Psal. xxx. 4; to proclaim the glory thereof, Exod. xv. 11; and to study holiness in all manner of conversation, 1 Pet. i. 15.

Q. 14. How may we know if we have suitable impressions of God's holiness?

A. If we stand in awe to offend him, Gen. xxxix. 9, and have an habitual desire after more conformity unto him, 1 John iii. 3.

#### *Of God's Justice.*

Q. 1. What is the *justice* of God?

A. It is that essential attribute of his nature, whereby he is infinitely righteous, and equal in himself, and in all his ways towards his creatures, Deut. xxxii. 4.

Q. 2. How may the justice of God be considered?

A. Either as it relates to himself, or to rational creatures.

Q. 3. What is God's justice as it relates to himself?

A. It is his making his own glory the fixed and invariable rule of the whole of his procedure, Isa. xlii. 4.

Q. 4. What is God's justice in relation to rational creatures?

A. It is his righteous government of them, according to their nature and the law he hath given them, Rom. ii. 12, 14, 15.

Q. 5. How is it usually distinguished?

A. Into legislative and distributive justice.

Q. 6. What is legislative justice?

A. It is his giving most holy, just, and good laws to rational creatures, commanding and forbidding them what is fit for them to do or forbear, Isa. xxxiii. 22.

Q. 7. Hath man a power to give obedience to these laws?

A. He once had power, but by the fall hath lost it, Rom. iii. 23.

Q. 8. How doth it consist with the justice of God to demand that obedience which man hath not power to give?

A. God cannot lose his right to demand obedience to his laws, though man hath lost his power to give it; especially as man's inability was contracted by his own voluntary apostasy and rebellion, Eccl. vii. 29. "Lo! this only have I found, that God hath made man upright: but they have sought out many inventions."

Q. 9. What is God's distributive justice?

A. It is his constant will to render to rational creatures their due, according to law, without respect of persons, Job xxxiv. 11; 1 Pet. i. 17.

Q. 10. What are the laws according to which God will distribute justice among men?

A. They are two; the law of works, and the law of faith.

Q. 11. Where are they mentioned?

A. In Rom. iii. 27. "Where is boasting then? It is excluded. By what law? of works? Nay; but by the law of faith."

Q. 12. What is understood by the law of works, and the law of faith?

A. By the law of works is understood the covenant of works; and by the law of faith the covenant of grace.

Q. 13. What is due to the sinner in justice, according to the law of works?

A. Death and the curse; which include all wo and misery in time and through eternity, Rom. vi. 23; Gal. iii. 10.

Q. 14. What is the sinner's due according to the law of faith?

A. Acquittance and acceptance, on account of the surety-righteousness imputed to him, and apprehended by faith, Rom. iii. 24, and viii. 1.

Q. 15. Is God just in dealing thus with the ungodly sinner, who believes in Christ?

A. Yes; his righteousness is declared in so doing, Rom. iii. 25, 26. "Whom God hath set forth for a propitiation, through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness,—that he might be just, and the justifier of him which believeth in Jesus."

Q. 16. Doth God reward the sincere, though imperfect, obedience of his people to the law, as a rule of life?

A. In keeping of his commandments there is indeed great reward, Psal. xix. 11; but then this reward is entirely of free grace, and not of debt, Rom. iv. 4, 5; it is not on account of any worth in their obedience, Psal. cxv. 1, but only on account of what Christ hath merited, by his obedience to the death, 1 Pet. ii. 3.

Q. 17. How is this kind of justice called?

A. Remunerative or rewarding justice, Psal. lviii. 11. "Verily there is a reward for the righteous."

Q. 18. Is not God's taking vengeance on transgressors a righteous act of justice?

A. Yes; for every transgression and disobedience receives a just recompense of reward, Heb. ii. 2. "It is a righteous thing to recompense tribulation to them that trouble you," 2 Thess. i. 6. Hence, says the same apostle, Rom. iii. 5, 6, "Is God unrighteous who taketh vengeance? God forbid; for then how shall God judge the world?"

Q. 19. How is this justice of God called?

A. Vindictive or punishing justice, Acts xxviii. 4.

Q. 20. What is vindictive justice?

A. It is God's inflicting the punishment upon sin which is threatened in the law, Gen. ii. 17; Ezek. xviii. 4.

Q. 21. Could God of his own free will have pardoned sin, without a satisfaction to his justice?

A. No; for he hath declared, that in "forgiving iniquity, transgression, and sin, he will by no means clear the guilty," namely, without a satisfaction, Exod. xxxiv. 7.

Q. 22. How do you prove that vindictive, or punishing justice, is essential to God?

A. From the infinite holiness of God, who cannot but hate, and consequently punish sin, Hab. i. 12, 13; from his faithfulness in the threatening, Gen. ii. 17; Psal. xcv. 11: from the remarkable judgments that have been inflicted on sinners in this life, Jude, ver. 5, 7; and from the sufferings and death of God's only begotten Son, whom he would surely have spared, if there had been any other possible way of pardoning sin but through his satisfaction, Matth. xxvi. 42; 2 Cor. v. 21.

Q. 23. What improvement ought we to make of the justice of God, as glorified by the satisfactory death of his own Son?

A. To plead the perfect and full satisfaction thereof by the Surety, as the honourable channel in which we expect all mercy and grace to flow plentifully unto us, as the Psalmist did, Psal. xxv. 11. "For thy name's sake, O Lord, pardon mine iniquity, for it is great."

### Of God's Goodness.

Q. 1. What is the *goodness* of God?

A. It is that essential property of his nature whereby he is infinitely good in himself, and the author and fountain of all good to others, Psal. cxix. 68.

Q. 2. How may the goodness of God be distinguished?

A. Into his absolute and relative goodness.

Q. 3. What is his absolute goodness?

A. It is the essential goodness of his nature, without con-

sidering it in relation to the creatures, Matth. xix. 17.  
"There is none good but one, that is God."

Q. 4. What is his relative goodness?

A. It is the relation that his goodness bears unto the creatures, both in the propensity of his nature to do them good, Exod. xxxiii. 19, and in the actual manifestation and communication of the blessings of his bounty unto them, in creation, providence, and redemption, chap. xxxiv. 6, 7.

Q. 5. How is the goodness of God manifested in the work of creation in general?

A. In giving being to his creatures, when he stood in no need of them, being infinitely happy in himself though no creature had ever been made, Psal. xvi. 2, and in making all things very good, Gen. i. 31.

Q. 6. How is the goodness of God displayed in the creation of man in particular?

A. In making him after his own image, furnishing the world with such a variety of creatures for his use, giving him dominion over them, Gen. i. 27, 28, and in entering into covenant with him, chap. ii. 16, 17.

Q. 7. How is the goodness of God manifested in his providence?

A. In preserving his creatures, and making bountiful provision for them, Psal. cxlv. 9, 15, 16.

Q. 8. How is this goodness distinguished?

A. Into common and special goodness.

Q. 9. What is his common goodness?

A. His dispensing the good things of this life promiscuously among his creatures, Matth. v. 45. "He maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust."

Q. 10. Is God good even to the wicked who are his enemies?

A. Yes; for he not only provides for them, "filling their hearts with food and gladness," Acts xiv. 17, but exercises long-suffering patience towards them, Neh. ix. 17, and affords such of them as are within the visible church the means of salvation, Acts xiii. 26.

Q. 11. What is the special goodness of God?

A. It is his distinguishing love to a certain number of mankind lost, manifested in their redemption through Christ, Rev. v. 9.

Q. 12. Wherein doth the goodness of God appear in the work of redemption?

A. Both in the contrivance and execution thereof.

Q. 13. How doth the goodness of God appear in the contrivance of redemption?

A. In remembering us in our low estate, Psal. cxxxvi. 32;

laying our help on his own Son, the mighty One, Psal. lxxxix. 19; and in setting him up as a new-covenant head from everlasting, Prov. viii. 23.

Q. 14. How doth it appear in the execution of our redemption?

A. In sending his Son to assume our nature, and therein to fulfil all righteousness for us, John iii. 16; Jer. xxiii. 6, and, on the foundation of that righteousness, giving us grace and glory, and every good thing, from a cup of cold water to a seat with him on his throne, Psal. lxxxiv. 11; Rev. iii. 21.

Q. 15. What are the streams in which the special goodness of God doth flow out?

A. In the streams of love, grace, and mercy, according to his name, Exod. xxxiv. 6. "The Lord, the Lord God, merciful and gracious," &c.

Q. 16. What is the difference betwixt the love, grace, and mercy of God?

A. They are much the same, only love considers the sinner simply as God's creature; grace views him as ill deserving; and mercy, through a satisfaction, respects him as in misery.

Q. 17. Who are the objects of God's special goodness?

A. His chosen ones, Psal. cvi. 4, 5. "O visit me with thy salvation, that I may see the good of thy chosen."

Q. 18. Can this special goodness of God be expressed in words?

A. No; for "eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him," 1 Cor. ii. 9; and Psal. xxxi. 19. "Oh! how great is thy goodness which thou hast laid up for them that fear thee."

Q. 19. Where is this goodness of God laid up?

A. It is laid up in Christ, who hath received the gifts of God's goodness for men, Psal. lxxviii. 18. "When he ascended up on high, he—gave gifts unto men," Eph. iv. 8, and therefore God hath "made him most blessed for ever," Psal. xxi. 6.

Q. 20. How is this goodness laid out and brought near to us?

A. It is laid out in the exceeding great and precious promises, 2 Pet. i. 4, and brought near in the full, free, and generous offer of the gospel, Mark xvi. 15.

Q. 21. How are we savingly interested in all this goodness?

A. By faith, receiving and resting upon Christ alone for salvation, as he is freely offered in the gospel, John i. 12; 1 Cor. iii. 22, 23.

Q. 22. What are the properties of this goodness?

A. It is seasonable goodness, Heb. iv. 16, it is soul-satisfying, Psal. cvii. 7, and it is immutable and everlasting, Psal. lii. 1.

Q. 23. What improvement ought we to make of the goodness of God?

A. We ought to "praise the Lord for his goodness, and for his wonderful works to the children of men," Psal. cvii. 8; to be influenced to repentance from the consideration of his goodness, Rom. ii. 4; and to imitate God therein, Heb. xiii. 16.

*Of God's Truth.*

Q. 1. What is the *truth* of God?

A. It is that essential perfection of his nature, whereby he cannot but fulfil and accomplish whatever he hath spoken, or do as he has said, Numb. xxiii. 19.

Q. 2. What is it that this perfection of God has a special relation unto?

A. To the revelation of his will in his word: hence the whole scripture is infallible truth; "one jot, or one tittle, shall in no wise pass therefrom, till all be fulfilled," Matth. v. 18. "For the word of the Lord endureth for ever," 1 Pet. i. 25.

Q. 3. What is God's truth, as respecting his word, commonly called?

A. His faithfulness or veracity, Heb. x. 23. "He is faithful that promised."

Q. 4. To what is the truth and faithfulness of God opposed?

A. To all change of mind, Job xxiii. 13. "He is in one mind, and who can turn him?" and to all lying and dissimulation, Heb. vii. 18. "It is impossible for God to lie."

Q. 5. Can there be any inconsistency in his words?

A. No; for truth always hangs with itself, and he "keepeth truth for ever," Psal. cxlvi. 6.

Q. 6. Can he possibly forget what he has said?

A. No, surely; "for he will ever be mindful of his covenant," Psal. cxi. 5.

Q. 7. Wherein is the truth and faithfulness of God manifested?

A. In the exact accomplishment of his promises, Josh. xxiii. 14, and certain execution of his threatenings, Zech. i. 6.

Q. 8. How do we give God the honour of his truth and faithfulness?

A. By faith, which sets to the seal that God is true, John iii. 33, and judges him faithful who hath promised, Heb. xi. 11.

Q. 9. By what sin is this attribute of God most dishonoured?

A. By the sin of unbelief, which makes God a liar, because it believes not "the record that God gave of his Son," 1 John v. 10.

Q. 10. What record doth God give of his Son?

A. "This is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son," 1 John v. 11.

Q. 11. To whom is this record given?

A. To all the hearers of the gospel, as a ground of faith, Mark xvi. 15. "Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature." Acts ii. 39. "The promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God shall call."

Q. 12. How doth it appear that this record is given as a ground of faith to all the hearers of the gospel?

A. If it were not so, it were impossible that unbelievers, under the gospel, could make God a liar; "for if they have no concern in this record, and are not bound to believe it with application to themselves, their rejecting of it could not be their sin," because, "where no law is, there is no transgression," Rom. iv. 15.

Q. 13. If the record, or promise of a God of truth, be made to every one of the hearers of the gospel, is he not, in that case, obliged to fulfil it to every one?

A. By no means; because the unbeliever wilfully rejects the promise, and will have no benefit by it, Psal. lxxxvi. 10, 13.

Q. 14. By what example, in scripture, may this be illustrated?

A. By the example of the promise of Canaan, made indefinitely to all Israel who came out of Egypt, Exod. vi. 6, 8, yet many of them "could not enter in because of unbelief," Heb. iii. 19; even so, the promise of eternal life is made to all the hearers of the gospel, yet many of them come short of it, because "the word preached doth not profit them, not being mixed with faith in them that hear it," Heb. iv. 1, 2.

Q. 15. What then is the deplorable case of unbelievers under the gospel?

A. They are "condemned already," and "the wrath of God abideth on them," John iii. 18, 36.

Q. 16. What improvement ought we to make of the truth and faithfulness of God?

A. We ought to choose the way of truth, Psal. cxix. 30; walk in it, 3 John, ver. 4; bear witness for it before the world, Heb. x. 23; to praise God for his truth, Psal. cxxxviii. 2; and trust him on his word, without staggering at the promise through unbelief, Rom. iv. 20.

5. Q. Are there more gods than one?

A. There is but one only, the living and true God.

Q. 1. How doth it appear from scripture, that there is but *one God only*?

A. From Deut. vi. 4. "Hear, O Israel, the Lord our God is one Lord," Isa. xlv. 22. "I am God, and there is none else."

Q. 2. How doth reason demonstrate this truth, that there is but one God?

A. Reason says, that there is but one first cause and ultimate end of all things; and that there cannot be two or more infinite, eternal, and unchangeable beings.

Q. 3. Why is God's omnipotence commonly adduced to prove that he can be but one only?

A. Because he could not be omnipotent, or almighty, if any other could oppose or resist him, Job ix. 12.

Q. 4. How may it be proved from his government of the world?

A. There could not be a uniform governing of all things in the world, to one certain end, if the infinitely wise Governor, who is at the helm, were not one only.

Q. 5. How are some of the divine perfections expressed in scripture, for proving the unity of the essence?

A. They are expressed in the abstract; for instance, God is said to be light, 1 John i. 5; to be love, chap. iv. 8; to be strength, 1 Sam. xv. 29; all which, and the like abstract properties, plainly denote that God is one only.

Q. 6. Is God compounded of the several perfections of his nature, as the Socinians speak?

A. By no means; for all the several attributes of God are but the one infinite perfection of his most simple and uncompounded nature; which infinite perfection, because of our weakness, is described by parts, according to the several objects about which it is conversant.

Q. 7. Are the vast variety of the divine decrees any argument against the divine unity?

A. No; because the decrees are various, only with respect to the different objects and effects to which they extend, but not with respect to the act of the divine will, which is but one.

Q. 8. Are there not severals in scripture who are called gods?

A. Yes; angels, magistrates, and the idols of the Heathen nations.

Q. 9. Why are angels called gods? Psal. xcvi. 7.

A. Because of the excellency of their nature, power, and wisdom, Psal. ciii. 20.

Q. 10. Why are magistrates so called? Exod. xxii. 28.

A. Because they are God's deputies for government and justice among men, Rom. xiii. 4.

Q. 11. Why are the idols of the Heathen nations called gods? 1 Chron. v. 27.

A. Because ignorant and brutish persons have honoured them as such; but there is no reason at all to be "afraid of them, for they cannot do evil, neither is it in them to do good," Jer. x. 5.

Q. 12. Why is Satan called the god of this world? 2 Cor. iv. 4.

A. Because he reigns and rules over the greatest part of the world, as his servants and slaves; for he is "the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience," Eph. ii. 2.

Q. 13. Why are covetous men called idolaters? Eph. v. 4.

A. Because the world has that room in their hearts which God should have.

Q. 14. What may we learn from God's being one only?

A. To beware of mistaken notions of him, as if he were partly in heaven, and partly on earth; for he is so much one that he is wholly every where present, Jer. xxiii. 24.

Q. 15. Why is this one only God said to be the *living* God?

A. Because he has life essentially in himself, John v. 26, and is the author and giver of that life that is in any living creature, Acts xvii. 28, and likewise in opposition to dead and dumb idols, Psal. cxv. 4, 5, 6, 7.

Q. 16. Why is he called the *true* God?

A. In opposition to all false and imaginary gods, Jer. x. 10, 11.

Q. 17. Why are living and true put together in the answer?

A. Because they are inseparably conjoined in the infinitely perfect nature of God. He who is the living God is the only true God; and the true God, the only living God, 1 Thess. i. 9.

Q. 18. What may we learn from his being the living God?

A. To present our bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable to God, which is our reasonable service, Rom. xii. 1.

Q. 19. What may we learn from his being the only true God?

A. To worship him in spirit and in truth, John iv. 24, because he desires truth in the inward parts, Psal. li. 6; and likewise to beware of setting up an idol, or regarding any iniquity in our hearts, otherwise he will not hear us, Psal. lxvi. 18.

6. Q. How many persons are there in the Godhead?

A. There are three persons in the Godhead, the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost; and these three are one God, the same in substance, equal in power and glory.

Q. 1. Whence is it, that this article of our holy religion has been much opposed by adversaries, in every period of the church?

A. The devil and his instruments have warmly opposed it, because they know it is the primary object of our faith and worship; it not being enough for us to know what God is, as to his essential attributes, without knowing who he is, as to his personality, according as he has revealed himself in his word, to be Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, 1 John ii. 23. "Whosoever denieth the Son, the same hath not the Father."

Q. 2. Is this doctrine of the Trinity then a fundamental article, upon a belief whereof our salvation depends?

A. Beyond all doubt it is; because without the knowledge and belief of the Trinity of persons, we ~~would remain ignorant of the love of the Father, the merit of the Son, and the sanctifying influences of the Holy Ghost, in the purchase and application of redemption~~; without which there could be no salvation: John xvii. 3. "This is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom thou hast sent."

Q. 3. Can the Trinity of persons be proven from the Old Testament?

A. Yes; not only from the history of man's creation, where God speaks of himself in the plural number, "Let us make man," Gen. i. 26, but likewise from such passages as expressly restrict this plurality to three persons; such as, Psal. xxxiii. 6, "By the word of the Lord, or Jehovah, were the heavens made; and all the host of them by the breath or spirit of his mouth." Where there is mention made of Jehovah, the Word, and the Spirit, as concurring in the creation of all things: accordingly we are told that all things were made by the Word, John i. 3, and that the Spirit garnished the heavens, Job xxvi. 13. The same truth is also evident from Isa. lxiii. 7, 9, 10, where we read of the loving-kindness of Jehovah; of the Angel of his presence saving them; and of their vexing his Holy Spirit,—a plain discovery of a Trinity of persons.

Q. 4. What is the meaning of the word Trinity, so commonly used in expressing this doctrine?

A. It signifies the same with Tri-unity, or, three in one; that is, three distinct persons, in one and the same individual or numerical\* essence, 1 John v. 7.

Q. 5. Is not a Trinity of persons, in the divine essence, an unsearchable mystery?

A. Yes; and so is every perfection of God, which infinitely transcends our thoughts and finite capacities, Col. ii. 2; Job xi. 6, 7.

Q. 6. Is it not unreasonable to require a belief of what we cannot understand?

A. It is not at all unreasonable in matters that are entirely supernatural; but, on the contrary, it is the highest reason we should believe what God says of himself, and of the manner of his own subsistence, John xx. 31; besides, it is the peculiar office of faith to subject our reason to divine revelation, Heb. xi. 1.

Q. 7. How hath God revealed this mystery in his word?

A. He hath therein told us, that "there are three that

\* *i. e.* Particular.

bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost, and these three are one," 1 John v. 7, or as our Confession expresseth it, chap ii. § 3, "In the unity of the Godhead there be three persons, of one substance, power, and eternity; God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Ghost," Matth. iii. 16, 17, and xxviii. 19; 2 Cor. xiii. 14.

Q. 8. What is meant by the word *Godhead*?

A. The divine nature or essence, Rom. i. 20, compared with Gal. iv. 8.

Q. 9. What is meant by a *person* in the Godhead?

A. A complete, intelligent, and individual subsistence, which is neither a part of, nor sustained by any other; but is distinguished by an incommunicable property in the same undivided essence.

Q. 10. Has each person then a distinct nature or essence of his own?

A. No; but the same divine nature, or essence, is common to all the three glorious persons, 1 John v. 7. "These three are one;" not only united in will and affection, but in one and the same common nature or essence: it being the transcendent and incommunicable property of the divine nature to reside in more persons than one.

Q. 11. What was the heresy of the Sabellians and Tritheists, in opposition to this fundamental doctrine of the Trinity?

A. The Sabellians maintained, that there is but one person in the Trinity under three different names; the Tritheists, that the three persons are three Gods.

Q. 12. Is the word *person*, as applied to this mystery, made use of in scripture?

A. Yes; for the Son is said to be the express image of his Father's person, Heb. i. 3.

Q. 13. How do you prove that there are *three persons* in the Godhead?

A. From the institution of baptism, Matth. xxviii. 19; from the apostolical blessing, 2 Cor. xiii. 14; from John's salutation to the seven churches, Rev. i. 4, 5; and from the baptism of Christ, Matth. iii. 16, 17, where the Father is manifested by a voice from heaven; the Son, by his bodily appearance upon earth; and the Holy Ghost, by his lighting on him in the shape of a dove.

Q. 14. How is it further evident that they are three distinct persons?

A. From the distinct capacities in which they are represented to act; for in the work of redemption, we find in scripture the Father ordaining, the Son purchasing, and the Holy Ghost applying it, 1 Pet. i. 2.

Q. 15. How are the persons in the Godhead distinguished from each other?

A. By their personal properties, which are incommunicable to each other.

Q. 16. What is the personal property of the Father?

A. To beget the Son, and that from all eternity, Psal. ii. 7.

Q. 17. What is the personal property of the Son?

A. To be eternally begotten of the Father, John i. 14. "We beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father."

Q. 18. What is the personal property of the Holy Ghost?

A. To proceed eternally from the Father and the Son, John xv. 26. "When the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me."

Q. 19. How doth it appear that the Holy Ghost proceedeth from the Son, as well as from the Father, when it is not expressly affirmed that he doth so in the above text?

A. Because he is called "the Spirit of the Son," Gal. iv. 6; "the Spirit of Christ," Rom. viii. 9; the Spirit is said to receive all things from Christ, John xvi. 14, 15; to be sent by him, John xv. 26; and the Father is said to send him in Christ's name, John xiv. 26; from all which it may be safely gathered, that he proceedeth from the Son, as well as from the Father.

Q. 20. What is the difference betwixt a personal and an essential property?

A. A personal property is peculiar to one of the persons only, but an essential property is common to them all.

Q. 21. Why are the personal properties called incommunicable?

A. Because each of them is so proper to one of the persons in the Trinity, that it cannot be affirmed of any of the other two.

Q. 22. Is it the divine essence that begets, is begotten, or proceeds?

A. No; for these are not essential, but personal acts. It is the Father who begets the Son; the Son who is begotten of the Father; and the Holy Ghost who proceeds from both.

Q. 23. Are the terms, necessary existence, supreme Deity, and the title of the only true God, essential or personal properties?

A. They are essential properties of the divine nature, and so common to all the persons of the adorable Trinity, who have all the same essence, wholly, equally, and eternally.

Q. 24. May the above terms be taken, or are they by sound authors taken, in a sense that includes the personal property of the Father, and so not belonging to the Son and Holy Ghost?

A. They may not be, and never are, by sound authors, taken in that sense; for this would be to make the Son and Holy Ghost inferior to, and dependent upon the Father for being or existence, which is the very soul of Arianism.

Q. 25. Doth not the Father, being called the first ; the Son, the second ; and the Holy Ghost, the third person in the Godhead, imply an inequality, or preference of one person to another ?

A. These are only terms of mere order, and imply no preference or priority, either of nature, excellency, or duration ; and therefore we find in scripture, that sometimes the Son is named before the Father, as in 2 Cor. xiii. 14 ; Gal. i. 1 ; and sometimes the Spirit before the Son, as in Rev. i. 4, 5.

Q. 26. Are not each of these glorious persons truly and properly God ?

A. Each of these persons is God, in the true and proper sense of the word ; though none of them can be called the Deity exclusively of the rest ; in regard the Deity, being the same with the Divine nature, or essence, is common to them all.

Q. 27. But does not our Lord say, that the Father is the "only true God," John xvii. 3. "This is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God ?"

A. Our Lord does not say that the Father only is the true God, exclusive of the other persons of the Trinity ; but that he is the only true God (as each of the other persons is) in opposition to idols, or gods, falsely so called.

Q. 28. How doth it appear that the *Father* is God ?

A. From his being expressly so called every where in scripture, particularly 1 Cor. viii. 6, and xv. 24 ; Gal. i. 1, 3, &c.

Q. 29. Is it proper to say, that the Father is the fountain of the Deity ?

A. The expression is dangerous, and now used by adversaries in an unsound sense, to exclude self-existence and independency from the Son and Holy Ghost, and therefore to be avoided.

Q. 30. How doth it appear from scripture, that Christ, the *Son*, is truly and properly the supreme God, equal with the Father ?

A. From the same names, attributes, work, and worship ascribed to him in scripture, as are ascribed unto the Father, and in as full and ample a sense.\*

Q. 31. What are the names ascribed to Christ that prove him to be equal with the Father ?

A. He is expressly called "God," John i. 1 ; "the great God," Tit. ii. 13 ; "the mighty God," Isa. ix. 6 ; "the true God," 1 John v. 20 ; "the only wise God," Jude, ver. 25 ; and **JEHOVAH**, which is a name never ascribed to any in scripture but the living and true God, Jer. xxiii. 6 ; Psal. lxxxiii. 18.

Q. 32. What are the divine attributes ascribed unto Christ, that prove him to be the supreme God ?

A. Eternity, in the strict and proper sense of the word,

\* Larger Catechism, Quest. 11.

Mic. v. 2; unchangeableness, Heb. xiii. 8; omniscience, John xxi. 17; omnipotence, for he calls himself "the Almighty," Rev. i. 8; omnipresence, "Lo!" says he, "I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world," Matth. xxviii. 20; and supremacy, Rom. ix. 5.

Q. 33. What are these works which manifest Christ to be the true God?

A. The creating and preserving of all things, Col. i. 16, 17; the obtaining eternal redemption for us, Heb. ix. 12; the working of miracles by his own power, Mark v. 41; the forgiving of sins, Mark ii. 5; the raising of the dead at the last day, John v. 28, 29; and his judging the world, Rom. xiv. 10.

Q. 34. What is that worship ascribed unto Christ which proves him to be the supreme God?

A. The same divine worship and adoration that is given unto the Father, John v. 23; we are commanded to believe in him equally with the Father, John xiv. 1; and we are baptized in his name, as well as in the name of the Father, Matth. xxviii. 19.

Q. 35. In what sense does Christ say, John xiv. 28, "My Father is greater than I?"

A. He does not speak in that place of his nature as God, but of his office as Mediator, in which respect he is the Father's servant, Isa. xlii. 1.

Q. 36. How do you prove the supreme Deity of the *Holy Ghost*?

A. From the same arguments whereby the Deity of the Son was proved; for, (1.) He is expressly called God, Acts v. 3, 4. (2.) Attributes, which are peculiar only to God, are ascribed unto him, Heb. ix. 14; 1 Cor. ii. 10; Luke ii. 26; Psal. cxxxix. 7. (3.) Works, which can be accomplished by none but God, are performed by him, Psal. xxxiii. 6; Job xxiv. 13; Luke i. 35; 2 Peter i. 21; John xvi. 13; Rom. xv. 16. (4.) The same divine worship is paid to him as to the Father and Son, Matth. xxviii. 19; 2 Cor. xiii. 14.

Q. 37. Could the Trinity of persons, in the unity of essence, have been discovered by the light of nature?

A. By no means; for then it would be no mystery, seeing divine mysteries are such secrets as the wisdom of man could never have found out, Matth. xi. 27; 1 Cor. ii. 9, 10, 14.

Q. 38. Is it lawful to explain this mystery by natural similitudes?

A. No; for there is no similitude amongst all the creatures, that has the remotest resemblance to this adorable mystery of the three-one God. By making similes or comparisons of this kind, men have become vain in their ima-

ginations, and their foolish minds have been darkened, Rom. i. 21—26 ; and, therefore, as this doctrine is entirely a matter of faith, it becomes us to adore it, without prying curiously into what is not revealed.

Q. 39. Doth the asserting of three persons in the Godhead, with distinct personal properties, infer any separation, or division, in the divine essence ?

A. No ; for the persons in the Godhead are not separated, but distinguished from one another by their personal properties. As the unity of the essence doth not confound the persons, so neither doth the distinction of persons imply any division of the essence, 1 John v. 7.

Q. 40. Can any worship God aright, without the faith of this mystery of the Trinity ?

A. No ; “ for he that cometh to God must believe that he is,” Heb. xi. 6 ; namely, that he is God, Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.

Q. 41. How is our worship to be directed to this three-one God ?

A. We are to worship the Father, in Christ the Son, by the Spirit ; and thus when we pray, we are to ask the Father, in the name of the Son, by the Holy Ghost, Eph. ii. 18, and v. 20.

Q. 42. Will not this mystery be more fully known and displayed in heaven ?

A. Yes ; for, says Christ, “ At that day ye shall know that I am in my Father,” John xiv. 20. See also 1 Cor. xiii. 12 ; 1 John iii. 2.

Q. 43. What comfortable instruction may we learn from the doctrine of the Trinity ?

A. That the gift of eternal life, in the promise and offer of the gospel, to sinners of mankind, is attested by the three famous witnesses in heaven, who are above all exception, 1 John v. 7, 11 ; and consequently that a portion, infinitely rich, is ensured by the covenant of grace to all them that believe, when it makes over all the three persons to them as their God, Jer. xxxi. 33.

Q. 44. What is the duty of the judicatures of the church, with reference to Arians, Socinians, and Deists, who deny this fundamental doctrine of the Trinity ?

A. It is their duty, “ after the first and second admonition,” to “ reject” them as heretics, Tit. iii. 10.

7. Q. What are the decrees of God ?

A. The decrees of God are his eternal purpose, according to the counsel of his will, whereby, for his own glory, he hath fore-ordained whatsoever comes to pass.

Q. 1. What doth the word *counsel*, as ascribed unto God import?

A. Not the receiving the knowledge of things from another, or in the way of study and advisement, as among men; but the eternity, wisdom, and immutability of his determination, Psal. xxxiii. 11; Prov. xix. 21.

Q. 2. Doth the scripture speak expressly of God's decrees?

A. Yes; in many places, as Isa. x. 22; Jer. v. 22, &c.

Q. 3. Whether, by *the decrees of God*, are we to understand the things decreed, or the act decreeing?

A. The act decreeing, or discerning.

Q. 4. Is the decreeing act of God one simple act only?

A. Yes; because of the perfect oneness or simplicity of his nature, on account whereof he could not but decree all things at once; because all things are naked and opened unto his omniscient eye, Heb. iv. 13, and because of his immutability, Mal. iii. 6.

Q. 5. Why then do we speak of the divine decrees as various or many?

A. Because of the many objects which the decreeing act of God doth respect: the things decreed are many, but the act decreeing is but one only.

Q. 6. What are the properties of the divine decrees?

A. That they are eternal, most wise, absolute, and unchangeable.

Q. 7. How do ye prove the decrees of God to be eternal?

A. The decrees of election, and publishing the gospel, are eternal, as is evident from Eph. i. 4, and 1 Cor. ii. 7, and therefore all other decrees must be eternal likewise, because he decreed all things at once by one simple act, Acts xv. 18.

Q. 8. Wherein does the wisdom of God's decrees appear?

A. In the beautiful order wherein they are executed, Mark vii. 37. "He hath done all things well."

Q. 9. Why are the divine decrees said to be absolute?

A. Because they depend upon no condition without God himself, but entirely and solely upon his own sovereign will and pleasure, Eph. i. 11.

Q. 10. Are there not certain means whereby the decrees of God are executed?

A. Yes; but these means are decreed as well as the end, 2 Thess. ii. 13.

Q. 11. How doth it appear from scripture, that the means and the end are connected in the decree?

A. From the preservation of Paul, and those who were with him in the ship: God had decreed to preserve them all, Acts xxvii. 24, yet lawful means were to be used; the shipmen must

not get leave to flee out of the ship, otherwise the rest cannot be saved, as Paul tells the centurion and the soldiers, ver. 31.

Q. 12. What is the difference betwixt the means of execution, and decreeing conditionally?

A. The means of execution are stated in the decree; but to decree a thing conditionally, is to decree it upon an uncertain event, which may or may never take place.

Q. 13. What is the absurdity of conditional decrees?

A. They make the will of God, which is the first cause, to depend upon the will of the creature; and they plainly suppose, that either God is ignorant of the event, or incapable to accomplish it, or that he hath determined nothing certainly about it; all which are blasphemously absurd.

Q. 14. Are all the decrees of God then unchangeable?

A. Yes; "from all eternity, he hath, for his own glory, unchangeably fore-ordained whatsoever comes to pass in time,"\* Eph. i. 11.

Q. 15. How do you prove the decrees of God to be unchangeable?

A. From scripture and from reason.

Q. 16. How is it proven from scripture?

A. Job xxiii. 13. "He is in one mind, and who can turn him?" Isa. xlvi. 10. "My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure."

Q. 17. How do you prove from reason, that the divine decrees are unchangeable?

A. From this one argument,—That there is in God no defect of wisdom, power, or faithfulness, from whence any change of his will may flow, as is the case among men, when they alter their resolutions.

Q. 18. Doth the immutability of God's decree destroy the liberty of man's will, or the contingency of second causes?

A. No; there is thereby no "violence offered to the will of the creatures, nor is the liberty or contingency of second causes taken away, but rather established,"† Matth. xviii. 12; Acts ii. 23.

Q. 19. Whence is it, that the absolute or unchangeable decree does not take away the liberty of the will?

A. Because God, in the execution of his decree, does not change the nature of things, but suffers rational agents to act freely and voluntarily, as being under no more constraint or compulsion, than though there had been no such decree.

Q. 20. How is this made clear from scripture?

A. By the instance of Pilate and the Jews, when they crucified the Lord of glory: what they did was with full freedom

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 12.

† Confession, chap. iii. § 1.

of their will, and yet they did nothing but what God's "hand and counsel determined before to be done," Acts iv. 27, 28.

Q. 21. Doth any thing come to pass in time, but what was decreed from eternity?

A. No; for the very reason why any thing comes to pass in time, is because God decreed it, Eph. i. 11; Acts xv. 18.

Q. 22. Are things that are casual or accidental, positively decreed?

A. Yes; as is evident from the instances of Joseph's advancement in Egypt, and the not breaking a bone of Christ, and many others.

Q. 23. What has the decree of God fixed with respect to man's continuance in this world?

A. It has immovably fixed the precise moment of every one's life and death, with every particular circumstance thereof.

Q. 24. How may it be proved, that the precise moment of every one's death is unalterably fixed in the decree?

A. From express scripture-testimony, Job xiv. 5; Psal. xxxix. 4; from the reason given why the Jews could not lay hands on Christ, namely, "because his hour was not yet come," John vii. 30; and from God's numbering the hairs of our head, Matth. x. 30, much more the days and moments of our life.

Q. 25. Were there not fifteen years added to Hezekiah's days, after the prophet said to him, "Set thine house in order; for thou shalt die and not live," Isa. xxxviii. 1, 5?

A. The sentence of death by the prophet, was not an intimation of the decree of God, that Hezekiah was presently to die; but of the nature of his disease, which, according to the ordinary course of second causes, was mortal, if the power of God had not miraculously interposed.

Q. 26. How does the decree of God extend to things naturally and morally good?

A. Effectively, because God is the author and efficient of all good, Phil. ii. 13.

Q. 27. How does it extend to things morally evil?

A. Permissively and directively only, Acts xiv. 16.

Q. 28. Is the permissive decree a bare inactive permitting of evil?

A. No; it determines the event of the evil permitted, and overrules it to a good end; contrary to the intention both of the work and worker.

Q. 29. What scripture example is there hereof?

A. God permits Joseph's brethren to sell him into Egypt, and Potiphar to throw him unjustly into prison, and yet overrules both these evils, and makes them means, contrary to the intention both of the work and the workers, for executing the

decree of his advancement to the greatest honour, Gen. xlv. 5, 6, 7, 8, and l. 20. "Ye thought evil against me (says Joseph to his brethren), but God meant it unto good."

Q. 30. How can the decree of God be permissive and efficacious at the same time?

A. It is permissive with respect to the sinfulness of the action as a moral evil; and efficacious with respect to the matter of it as a natural act.

Q. 31. How do you prove that God cannot be the author of sin?

A. From the contrariety of it to his holy nature and law, and the indignation he has manifested against it, in what Christ suffered on account of it; for he can never be the author of that whereof he is the avenger.

Q. 32. What is the great end of all God's decrees?

A. *His own glory*, Prov. xvi. 4, "The Lord hath made all things for himself;" and particularly the glory of his mercy and justice, Rom. ix. 22, 23, and next to his own glory, the good of the elect, both here and hereafter, Rom. viii. 28.

Q. 33. Who are the special objects of God's decree?

A. Angels and men.

Q. 34. What is God's decree concerning angels and men commonly called?

A. His predestinating of them.

Q. 35. What is meant by predestination?

A. It is God's unchangeable purpose or decree, concerning the last end and eternal state of angels and men, 1 Tim. v. 21; Jude, ver. 6; Exod. xxxiii. 19; Rom. ix. 11, 13, 18.

Q. 36. Is the precise number of angels and men, thus predestinated, particularly and unchangeably designed?

A. Yes; "their number is so certain and definite, that it cannot be either increased or diminished,"\* 2 Tim. ii. 19; John xiii. 18.

Q. 37. How is the decree of predestination usually divided?

A. Into the decrees of election and reprobation.

Q. 38. What is God's decree of election, as it respects men?

A. It is his choosing a certain number of mankind into Christ, unto eternal life, and the means thereof, to the praise of his glorious grace, Eph. i. 4; 2 Thess. ii. 13, 14.

Q. 39. Was it the foresight of faith, or good works, or perseverance in either of them, or any other thing whatsoever in the creature, that moved God to make choice of some men, and not of others?

A. By no means; but his mere free grace and love, Eph. i. 6, 12.

\* Confession, chap. iii. § 4.

Q. 40. What is God's decree of reprobation, as it respects men?

A. It is his passing by, and ordaining all the rest of mankind, whom he hath not chosen, to dishonour and wrath, to be for their sin inflicted, to the praise of the glory of his justice, Rom. ix. 17, 18, 22; 1 Pet. ii. 8.

Q. 41. Since God hath appointed the elect unto glory, hath he not also fore-ordained all the means thereunto?

A. Yes; for "they who are elected, being fallen in Adam, are redeemed by Christ,"\* 1 Thess. v. 9, 10; and free grace reigns, through his righteousness, unto their eternal life, Rom. v. 21.

Q. 42. Do the decrees of election and reprobation import any partiality, or injustice, in God?

A. No more than a potter is esteemed partial or unjust, in making out of the same lump, one vessel to honour, and another to dishonour, Rom. ix. 20, 21.

Q. 43. Whether is sin in the reprobate the cause of their damnation, or of their reprobation?

A. Their sin is indeed the cause of their damnation, Rom. vi. 23. "The wages of sin is death:" but the sovereign will and pleasure of God is the cause of their reprobation, Matth. xi. 25, 26; Rom. ix. 18.

Q. 44. Are the secret decrees of God, concerning the eternal state of men, the rule of faith and practice?

A. No; but the revealed will of God only, Deut. xxix. 29.

Q. 45. Doth not this doctrine of particular election and reprobation limit the general call of the gospel?

A. No; for Christ's commission is to "go into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature," Mark xvi. 15; not as they are elect and reprobate, but as they are lost sinners of Adam's family, Matth. ix. 13; therefore all that hear the gospel have an equal warrant to believe, 1 John iii. 23.

Q. 46. Hath it a tendency to make men careless in the use of the means of salvation?

A. No; Because God hath chosen us to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth, 2 Thess. ii. 13.

Q. 47. Ought we then to improve the means of salvation, without regard to the decree?

A. We ought no more to regard the decree, in the matter of believing to the salvation of our souls, than in eating, drinking, buying, selling, or any other common action of life; because "the secret things belong unto the Lord our God, but those things which are revealed belong unto us, and to our children for ever," Deut. xxix. 29.

\* Confession, chap. iii. § 6.

Q. 48. What improvement ought we to make of the doctrine of absolute election ?

A. We ought thereby to be encouraged to believe in Christ ; considering that electing love pitches on the chief of sinners, Ezek. xvi. 6 ; that it flows not from, nor is founded upon, any condition to be performed by men, Rom. ix. 11 ; and that it contains in it all things pertaining to life and godliness, 2 Pet. i. 3.

8. Q. How doth God execute his decrees ?

A. God executeth his decrees in the works of creation and providence.

Q. 1. What is it for God to execute his decrees ?

A. It is to bring them to pass ; or give an actual being in time, to what he purposed from eternity, Isa. xlvi. 10.

Q. 2. Doth not God leave the execution of his decrees to second causes ?

A. Whatever use God may make of second causes, in the execution of his decrees, yet they are all but tools in his overruling hand, to bring about his glorious designs ; they are his servants, and must do all his pleasure, Acts iv. 27, 28.

Q. 3. What difference is there between the decree and the execution thereof ?

A. The decree is an immanent or inherent act in God, and is nothing else but God decreeing ; but the execution is a transient or passing act of his infinite power, bringing the thing decreed into an actual existence, 2 Pet. i. 3.

Q. 4. Is there an exact harmony, or correspondence, between God's decree and the execution thereof ?

A. When the thing decreed is brought actually into being, it exactly corresponds unto the idea or platform of it in the infinite mind of God, Psal. cxxxix. 16, as the tabernacle of Moses answered the pattern given of it in the mount, Exod. xxv. 40.

Q. 5. Can none of the decrees of God be defeated, or fail of execution ?

A. By no means ; “ the counsel of the Lord shall stand, and he will do all his pleasure,” Isa. xlvi. 10 ; “ who hath resisted his will ?” Rom. ix. 19. “ None can stay his hand, or say unto him, What dost thou ?” Dan. iv. 35.

Q. 6. What are the works of God, wherein his decrees are executed ?

A. They are *the works of creation and providence.*

Q. 7. To which of these works of God doth redemption belong ?

A. To the providence of God, as the most glorious part thereof towards men.

Q. 8. What then is the first external work of God?

A. It is creation: which is therefore called "The beginning of his ways," Prov. viii. 22.

Q. 9. What is the difference betwixt God's executing the work of creation, and that of providence?

A. He executed the work of creation entirely without means, by the word of his power; but he executes the work of providence, for ordinary, in the use of them.

Q. 10. What may we learn from God's executing his decrees?

A. That all his promises shall be punctually accomplished, and not one of them fall to the ground, Mark xiii. 31.

9. Q. What is the work of creation?

A. The work of creation is, God's making all things of nothing, by the word of his power, in the space of six days, and all very good.

Q. 1. How do you know the world had a beginning?

A. The light of nature teaches, that there must be a first cause; besides, "through faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God," Heb. xi. 3.

Q. 2. Might not this world have existed from eternity?

A. No; it is impossible: this supposition is not only contrary to scripture, but to common sense and reason, which tell us, that what is created, and hath a duration by succession of time, must have had a beginning.

Q. 3. From whom did this world receive its being and beginning?

A. From God only, who is being itself, and gives being unto all things, Neh. ix. 6.

Q. 4. What is it for God to create?

A. It is his *making all things of nothing*.

Q. 5. When did God create this world?

A. In the beginning of time, Gen. i. 1.

Q. 6. Was there any pre-existent matter out of which God created the world?

A. No; for by his powerful word he called "those things which be not, as though they were," Rom. iv. 17; "so that things which are seen, were not made of things which do appear," that is, of any pre-existent matter, Heb. xi. 3.

Q. 7. In what time did God create all things?

A. *In the space of six days*, Exod. xx. 11.

Q. 8. Could he not have created all things in a moment of time?

A. Yes; but he saw it more for his own glory, and the good of mankind, to set them an example of working six days, and resting the seventh.

Q. 9. On which of the six days is it reckoned that the angels were created ?

A. It is probable they were created upon the first day, as would seem from Job xxxviii. 4, 7. "Where wast thou when I laid the foundations of the earth—when the morning-stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy?"

Q. 10. Can creating power be imparted unto any creature ?

A. No ; it implies a contradiction for a creature to create, because this would vest a finite creature with infinite power, Isa. xlv. 12.

Q. 11. Is it not then a clear proof of the Supreme Deity of the Son of God, that all things were made by him ?

A. No doubt it is ; for none but he, who is truly and properly God, can command things that are not into being, Isa. xlv. 24.

Q. 12. Is creation a work common to all the persons of the Trinity ?

A. Yes ; for all the external works of God are common to each person ; every one of the three adorable persons being the same in substance, equal in power and glory, 1 John v. 7. "These three are one."

Q. 13. For what end did God make all things ?

A. He made all things for himself, or for the display of his matchless excellencies, Prov. xvi. 4.

Q. 14. What are these excellencies or perfections of God, which are more especially displayed in the work of creation ?

A. His infinite power, extensive goodness, and manifold wisdom, Rom. i. 20.

Q. 15. How does the infinite power of God shine forth in creating the world ?

A. In bringing all things of a sudden out of nothing by his bare word, Psal. xxxiii. 6.

Q. 16. What was that bare word ?

A. Let such a thing be, Gen. i. 3.

Q. 17. How is his manifold wisdom displayed in this work ?

A. In the vast variety of creatures, great and small, which he has made ; the order and harmony of them all ; and their subserviency one to another, Psal. civ. 24.

Q. 18. Why is it said that he made all things *very good* ?

A. Because God, upon a survey of his works, declared them to be so, Gen. i. 31. "God saw all that he had made, and, behold, it was very good."

Q. 19. Wherein consists the goodness of the creatures of God ?

A. In the perfection of their nature, their being fit to answer the end of their creation ; and their usefulness to man, being both profitable and pleasant to him.

Q. 20. Are not many creatures hurtful unto man ?

A. They were not so at their first creation, and while man continued in his allegiance to God ; but, through his sinning against God, he has brought a curse on himself, and the whole creation, Gen. iii. 17. "Cursed is the ground for thy sake."

Q. 21. Is not God said to create evil, Isa. xlv. 7 ?

A. Not the evil of sin, but of punishment, as a just Judge, Rom. iii. 5, 6 ; Amos iii. 6.

Q. 22. How then came sin and death into the world ?

A. Man is the parent of sin, and sin opened the door to death : "By one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin," Rom. v. 12.

Q. 23. Upon what day did God rest from creating the world ?

A. Upon the seventh day, Gen. ii. 2, 3, which was therefore appointed to be the weekly Sabbath, till the resurrection of Christ.

Q. 24. Doth this resting on the seventh day, say that he was weary with working ?

A. No ; "The everlasting God, the Creator of the ends of the earth, fainteth not, neither is weary," Isa. xl. 28.

Q. 25. What then is meant by his resting ?

A. It is spoken after the manner of men, and the meaning is, that God ceased to create any other sorts of creatures than he had already made.

Q. 26. Is not the same power that created all things exerted in sustaining them in their being ?

A. Yes ; for he, by whom the worlds were made, is said to uphold all things by the word of his power, Heb. i. 2, 3.

Q. 27. Do not the scriptures speak of a new creation, as well as of the old ?

A. Yes ; the Spirit of God, in scripture, speaks of a new world of grace, under the name of new heavens and a new earth, Isa. lxvi. 22 ; Rev. xxi. 1.

Q. 28. What is to be understood by this new creation, or new world of grace ?

A. The true church of Christ, particularly under the New Testament, not excluding the church triumphant in heaven.

Q. 29. By whom is this new world created ?

A. By the same God that made the old world : "Behold, I create new heavens, and a new earth," Isa. lxv. 17.

Q. 30. Who are the inhabitants of this new world ?

A. They are all new creatures, taken out of the old world, 2 Cor. v. 17.

Q. 31. How came they out of this material, into that spiritual world ?

A. By the new birth : for, except a man be born again, he

cannot enter into it, John iii. 3; flesh and blood, or corrupted nature, continuing such, cannot inherit it, 1 Cor. xv. 50.

Q. 32. Is there any difference of nations, sexes, or persons, in this new world?

A. No; for "there is neither Greek nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, Barbarian, Scythian, bond nor free; but Christ is all, and in all," Col. iii. 11.

Q. 33. By what door do men enter into this new world of grace?

A. Christ says, "I am the door; by me if any man enter in, he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture," John x. 9, and chap. xiv. 6. "I am the way, —no man cometh unto the Father but by me."

Q. 34. Wherein lies the happiness of the inhabitants of this new world of grace?

A. None so happy as they, because they dwell in God, and God dwells in them as in a temple, 1 Cor. iii. 16; and walks in them as in his garden of pleasure, 2 Cor. vi. 16; and at death they are transported, by the ministry of angels, to the world of glory above, Luke xvi. 22.

Q. 35. What may we learn from the doctrine of the creation?

A. That we ought to contemplate God in all his creatures, Psal. xix. 11, acknowledge him as the rightful proprietor and sovereign disposer of them all, 1 Chron. xxix. 11, and believe that the same almighty power of God, which was put forth in creating all things, shall be exerted in defence and support of his church and people, in the time of their need, Psal. cxxi. 2.

10. Q. How did God create man?

A. God created man, male and female, after his own image, in knowledge, righteousness, and holiness, with dominion over the creatures.

Q. 1. Upon which day of creation was *man* made?

A. Upon the sixth day, Gen. i. 26, and 31, compared.

Q. 2. Why was the creation of man delayed, or put off, to the sixth day?

A. To discover the great regard God had to man's happiness and welfare, in that he would first plnish the great house of the creation for him, before he brought him into it, Psal. viii. 6, 7, 8.

Q. 3. Was there any more solemnity observed in the creation of man, than in making the rest of the creatures?

A. Yes; for as to the rest of the creatures, he just commanded them into being; but when man is to be created, a council of the Trinity is held about his formation, Gen. i. 26. "Let us make man."

Q. 4. Why so much solemnity about man's formation, beyond other creatures?

A. Because man was to be God's viceroy in this lower world, the only image of his Creator in his moral perfections; and it was the purpose of God, though not revealed, that the second person of the Godhead was to become man.

Q. 5. What is it that constitutes the human nature, or nature of man?

A. A true body and reasonable soul united together.

Q. 6. Whereof was the body of man formed?

A. Of the dust of the ground, Gen. ii. 7; hence God is resembled unto a potter, and man unto the clay, and a potsherd, Isa. lxiv. 8, and xlv. 9.

Q. 7. What should this teach us?

A. To remember we are dust, Eccl. iii. 20; to admire the condescension of the Son of God in coming into our tribe, and assuming a human body, 1 Tim. iii. 16; to consider that we are in God's hand, as the clay is in the hand of the potter, Jer. xviii. 6, and that, in this our fallen state, we are to return to the dust again, Gen. iii. 19.

Q. 8. How was the first woman formed?

A. Of a rib taken from the man's side, Gen. ii. 21, 22.

Q. 9. Whereof was this a figure?

A. Of Christ and the church, Eph. v. 31, 32.

Q. 10. In what respect was the formation of the woman a figure of these?

A. Inasmuch as the church was, as it were, taken out of the pierced side of Christ, when the Lord God caused the deep sleep of death to fall upon him: first, typically, in the sacrifices; and then actually, in his decease which he accomplished at Jerusalem.

Q. 11. Why was marriage instituted of God before the fall?

A. To show that it belongs to the law of nature; and that mankind, as such, have a title thereunto, Heb. xiii. 4. "Marriage is honourable in all."

Q. 12. What is the other part of man's nature?

A. A reasonable soul.

Q. 13. How was the soul of man made?

A. God breathed into his nostrils the breath of life, and he became a living soul, Gen. ii. 7.

Q. 14. Why is the creation of the soul of man thus expressed?

A. To show, that as the Lord is "the God of the spirits of all flesh," Numb. xxvii. 16, who creates them immediately, and by himself, without the intervention of second causes, Zech. xii. 1, so he has an absolute dominion over them, and can call them back to himself when he pleases, Eccl. xii. 7.

Q. 15. Wherein doth the soul of man differ from the body?

A. The body is a corporeal, but the soul a spiritual and immaterial substance.

Q. 16. Wherein doth the soul of man differ from the spirit or life of a beast?

A. The spirit or life of a beast goeth downward to the earth, and perisheth at its death, Eccl. iii. 21; but the soul of man, being rational and immortal, "returns to God who gave it," Eccl. xii. 7.

Q. 17. How do you prove the immortality of the soul of man?

A. (1.) From the great price paid for the redemption of the soul, which had ceased for ever, without a ransom of infinite value, Psal. xlix. 8. (2.) From the promises of eternal life, and the threatenings of eternal death, Mark xvi. 16. (3.) Christ tells us, that they who kill the body, cannot kill the soul, Matth. x. 28. (4.) Christ and his dying saints commit their spirits, or souls, into the hand of God, Psal. xxxi. 5; Luke xxiii. 46; Acts vii. 59, and the soul of the thief went to paradise with the soul of Christ that day they died, Luke xxiii. 43. In a word, if the soul perished with the body, the saints of God would be of all men the most miserable, 1 Cor. xv. 19.

Q. 18. What should this teach us?

A. To be more concerned for the salvation of our souls than for all things in the world; "For," says Christ, "what is a man profited, if he gain the whole world and lose his own soul?" Matth. xvi. 26.

Q. 19. Why did God create man *male* and *female*?

A. For the propagation of mankind, Gen. i. 28, and mutual helpfulness to each other, chap. ii. 18.

Q. 20. Why were both the man and the woman called Adam, Gen. v. 2?

A. To intimate that their original was of the earth; that they were both of the same nature; that the promises and threatenings concerned them both equally, Rom. v. 12, and to teach us that, notwithstanding hereof, the man was the representing head of the covenant, 1 Cor. xv. 22.

Q. 21. After whose image did God create man?

A. *After his own image*, Gen. i. 26, 27.

Q. 22. Did this image of God lie in any outward shape of man's body?

A. By no means; for God is a pure Spirit, without all bodily parts, John iv. 24.

Q. 23. What then was the proper seat thereof?

A. The soul of man was the painting-table on which this image of God was expressed and delineated, Gen. ii. 7; James iii. 9.

Q. 24. Wherein did the soul of man bear a likeness to God?

A. In its spiritual and immortal nature; and in the faculties of understanding and willing with which it was endued.

Q. 25. Wherein did the image of God, which was drawn on man's soul, chiefly consist?

A. "*In knowledge, righteousness, and holiness,*" Col. iii. 10; Eph. iv. 24.

Q. 26. What knowledge was man endowed with at his creation?

A. A perfect knowledge of God, of his will, and works, so far as was necessary to render him happy, and fit for universal obedience.

Q. 27. What righteousness had man at his creation?

A. Not an imputed, but an inherent righteousness; which consisted in a perfect conformity of all the powers and faculties of his soul to the pure nature of God, and the moral law written upon his heart, Eccl. vii. 29.

Q. 28. Wherein consisted his holiness?

A. In the lustre and beauty of his perfect knowledge and inherent righteousness, shining both in his heart and life.

Q. 29. Was the will of man, in a state of innocency, absolutely indifferent to good and evil?

A. No; God sent man's will only towards good; yet it was moveable to evil, and that only by man himself, to whom God gave a sufficient power to stand in his integrity, if he had pleased, Eccl. vii. 29.

Q. 30. What was the necessary consequence of this image of God, drawn upon our first parents?

A. The immortality of the whole man, and *dominion over the creatures.*

Q. 31. Would they have been immortal if they had not sinned?

A. Yes; for it was only in case of sin that death was threatened, Gen. ii. 17.

Q. 32. How could their bodies have been immortal, when made of the dust?

A. The perfect purity or holiness of their souls would have preserved their bodies from sickness, death, and corruption, Rom. v. 12, and vi. 23.

Q. 33. Wherein did man's dominion over the creatures consist?

A. In his princely power over the inferior creatures; whereby he could rule and use them as he pleased, for God's glory and his own good, without any injustice, Gen. i. 28, and ii. 19, 20.

Q. 34. Where did God put the man when he had formed him after his own image?

A. In the garden of Eden ; a place eminent for pleasantness, where nothing was wanting, either for necessity or delight, Gen. ii. 8, 9.

Q. 35. What may we learn from the holy and happy state in which man was created ?

A. The unspeakable difference betwixt man's former and present condition : formerly, in a state of innocency, man's understanding was a lamp of light, his will lay straight with the will of God, and his affections were pure and holy, free from all disorder and distemper ; but now, the very reverse : so that we may say, " How is the gold become dim ! how is the most fine gold changed ! " Lam. iv. 1. " The crown is fallen from our head ; wo unto us that we have sinned ! " chap. v. 16.

11. Q. What are God's works of providence ?

A. God's works of providence are, his most holy, wise, and powerful preserving and governing all his creatures, and all their actions.

Q. 1. How doth it appear that there is a *providence* ?

A. From scripture, and by reason.

Q. 2. How doth the scripture evidence that there is a providence ?

A. It tells us, that the Lord preserveth man and beast, Psal. xxxiv. 6 ; that he gives " rain from heaven, and fruitful seasons, filling our hearts with food and gladness," Acts xiv. 17 ; " that he giveth to all life, and breath, and all things," Acts xvii. 25.

Q. 3. How may providence be proved by reason ?

A. The admirable order and harmony among such a vast variety of creatures in the world, continuing for so many ages, notwithstanding of their different and opposite natures ; the accomplishment of future events, exactly according to the predictions of them long beforehand ; the revolutions of kingdoms ; the orderly returns of seedtime and harvest ; and the preservation of a church on earth, against the fury of hell and wicked men : all these plainly evince to the rational world, that there is a providence.

Q. 4. Can providence be denied without denying the being of God ?

A. No ; for the same arguments that prove the one, prove the other ; to deny that God governs the world, is to deny that God is, Isa. xli. 24.

Q. 5. What is the object of God's providence, or to what does it extend ?

A. *To all his creatures, and their actions.*

Q. 6. What is God's providence towards the angels ?

A. He permitted some of them to fall wilfully and irrecoverably into sin and damnation, Jude, ver. 6, and established the rest in holiness and happiness, 1 Tim. v. 21.

Q. 7. Are the smallest and meanest of the creatures the objects of God's providence, as well as the greatest and most considerable?

A. God's providence disdains not the meanest worm, more than the mightiest prince; he counts the hairs of our head, Matth. x. 30, as well as the number of the stars, Psal. cxlvii. 4.

Q. 8. Does it reflect any dishonour upon the providence of God, to take care of the meanest creatures?

A. It can reflect no dishonour upon divine providence, to preserve what infinite wisdom saw meet to create, be it ever so mean in our view, Neh. ix. 6.

Q. 9. Does providence extend to all the *actions* of the creatures, as well as unto the creatures themselves?

A. Yes; otherwise the creatures would be independent in their actions; and God would not be in all things the first cause, Gen. xlv. 7.

Q. 10. Are casual or contingent actions subject to divine providence?

A. What is casual to us is ordained by God: nothing can be more casual than a lot, "yet the whole disposing thereof is of the Lord," Prov. xvi. 33.

Q. 11. Are voluntary or free actions subject to it likewise?

A. Yes; for though "there are many devices in a man's heart, nevertheless the counsel of the Lord, that shall stand," Prov. xix. 21.

Q. 12. How is the providence of God conversant about good actions?

A. Not by compelling, but sweetly inclining and determining the will, both to the action, and the right manner of performing it, Phil. ii. 13. "It is God who worketh in you both to will and to do, of his good pleasure."

Q. 13. How is it conversant about sinful actions?

A. In permitting them to be done, Acts xiv. 16, and in limiting and directing them to good and holy ends, contrary both to the nature of sin and the intention of the sinner, 2 Kings xix. 28.

Q. 14. What scripture-instance may be given of God's overruling the sinful actions of men to holy ends?

A. The worst action that ever was committed, the crucifying the Lord of glory, was ordered and directed by God, for bringing about the greatest mercy, the redemption of a lost world, Acts ii. 23, and iv. 28.

Q. 15. What are the *works* of providence about the creatures and their actions?

A. They are two; God's preserving them, and his governing them.

Q. 16. What is God's *preserving* work of providence?

A. It is his upholding all the creatures in their being and operation by the same power whereby he made them at first, Heb. i. 3,—“upholding all things by the word of his power.”

Q. 17. What would be the consequence of God's withholding from the creatures his preserving providence?

A. They would presently sink into their original nothing, Psal. civ. 29.

Q. 18. What is God's *governing* work of providence?

A. His directing and leading all his creatures to the proper ends which he has prescribed and appointed, Prov. xvi. 9. “A man's heart deviseth his way, but the Lord directeth his steps.”

Q. 19. How do you prove that God governs, as well as preserves, his creatures?

A. From their dependence upon him for operation, as well as for being: for in him they live and move, as well as have their being, Acts xvii. 28; and it is expressly said, that God “ruleth by his power for ever,” Psal. lxvi. 7.

Q. 20. Does God's governing providence include in it his immediate concurrence with every action of the creature?

A. Yes; God not only efficaciously concurs in producing the action, as to the matter of it; but likewise pre-determines the creature to such or such an action, and not to another, Isa. x. 6, 7, shutting up all other ways of acting, and leaving that only open which he had determined to be done, Ezek. xxi. 21, 22.

Q. 21. How can God concur with the sinful actions of men without sin, whereof he cannot be the author?

A. Although God not only preserves and supports the faculties wherewith a man sinneth, but likewise previously, immediately, and efficaciously concurs to the substance, matter, or entity of the action; yet he by no means concurs to the sinfulness or wickedness of the act, Isa. x. 6, 7.

Q. 22. Wherein doth the sinfulness of an action properly consist?

A. Not in the matter of the action, but in the form of it; that is, not in the action itself, considered as an act, but in the deficiency or swerving of that act from the rule of the law, 1 John iii. 4. “Sin is the transgression of the law.”

Q. 23. How may the difference betwixt the matter and form of an action be illustrated by an example?

A. In the stoning of Achan and Naboth; the matter of the action was the same, namely, the throwing of stones;

but the form of the action, in point of conformity or disconformity to the law, was vastly different: the stoning of Achan, condemned by God and all Israel, was an act of just punishment, agreeable to the law, but the stoning of Naboth, an innocent man, was an act of unjust murder, quite contrary to the law, Exod. xx. 13.

Q. 24. From whence then doth the sinfulness or viciousness of actions proceed?

A. Although the power of acting be from God, yet the viciousness or malignity of the action is entirely from the inherent corruption of our own natures, James i. 13, 14.

Q. 25. Doth not God present the object which is the occasion of sinning?

A. Sin doth not arise from the object which God in his providence presents to us, but from our own inward depravity, called "the corruption that is in the world through lust," 2 Pet. i. 4. God delivered Christ to the Jews; he presented him to them; but neither infused that malice into them, whereby they crucified him, nor did excite it, but it was entirely of themselves, Acts ii. 23.

Q. 26. What are the properties of God's providence?

A. It is *most holy*, *wise*, and *powerful*.

Q. 27. Why is the providence of God called *most holy*?

A. Because of the infinite holiness and purity that shines in all his administrations, Psal. cxlv. 17.

Q. 28. Wherein doth the holiness of God's providence appear?

A. In bringing glory to his mercy and justice out of sin.

Q. 29. How doth he bring glory to his mercy out of sin?

A. In making the worst of sinners become the choicest of saints, as in the instance of Paul, 1 Tim. i. 12, 13, and others.

Q. 30. How doth he bring glory to his justice out of sin?

A. By the judgments which he executes upon sinners, even in this life, Psal. ix. 16.

Q. 31. Why is the providence of God said to be *wise*?

A. Because it makes all things subservient to the end which God had fixed for himself, Rom. viii. 28.

Q. 32. How is the wisdom of providence manifested?

A. In the exact harmony of all the motions thereof with the word, Hos. xiv. 9.

Q. 33. Why is God's providence called *powerful*?

A. Because it cannot be resisted, Dan. iv. 35. "He doth according to his will in the army of heaven, and among the inhabitants of the earth: none can stay his hand, or say unto him, What dost thou?"

Q. 34. How does the power of providence discover itself?

A. In bringing about great events by small and con-

temptible-like means ; thus, he makes worm Jacob to thrash the mountains, Isa. xli. 15, and by the foolishness of preaching saves them that believe, 1 Cor. i. 21.

Q. 35. How is the providence of God usually distinguished?

A. Into ordinary and extraordinary, common and special.

Q. 36. What is the ordinary providence of God?

A. It is his observing the order of things which he appointed from the beginning, Hos. ii. 21, 22.

Q. 37. What is the extraordinary providence of God?

A. It is his going beyond, or contrary to, the natural order of things ; and such events are called miraculous.

Q. 38. What is a miracle?

A. It is such an astonishing and surprising effect, contrary to the ordinary course of nature, as surpasses the power of all created beings, and can be produced by divine omnipotence only ; such as, dividing the waters of the Red Sea and Jordan, making the sun to stand still, raising the dead, giving eyesight to the born-blind, curing all manner of diseases by a word, and the like.

Q. 39. What is common providence?

A. It is that which is exercised about all the creatures in general, Acts xvii. 28, called God's natural government.

Q. 40. What is special providence?

A. It is that which is exercised about rational creatures in particular, Deut. xxx. 16, 17, 18, called his moral government.

Q. 41. What are the special providences which God exercises about his church and people?

A. His " eyes run to and fro throughout the whole earth, to show himself strong in behalf of them whose heart is perfect towards him," 2 Chron. xvi. 9, and he makes all things work together for their good, Rom. viii. 28.

Q. 42. Are not all the dispensations of providence, prosperous or adverse, to be carefully observed?

A. Yes ; for, " whoso is wise, and will observe these things, even they shall understand the loving-kindness of the Lord," Psal. cvii. 43.

Q. 43. How are the providences of God to be observed?

A. With humility and reverence, under a sense of our weakness to penetrate into them, Rom. xi. 34, and with gratitude and thankfulness, because there is always some mixture of mercy with judgment in this life, Psal. ci. 1.

Q. 44. Is it not dangerous to overlook the operations of divine providence?

A. Yes ; for it is said, Psal. xxviii. 5, " Because they regard not the works of the Lord, nor the operation of his hands, he shall destroy them, and not build them up."

Q. 45. Are not some dispensations of providence very dark and mysterious?

A. Yes; his ways are many times in the sea, and his paths in the great waters, and his footsteps are not known, Psal. lxxvii. 19.

Q. 46. Wherein doth the mystery of providence appear?

A. In the mysterious track, and mysterious outward appearance thereof.

Q. 47. How is providence mysterious in the track of it?

A. In attaining its end by contrary-like means; such as, making Joseph's imprisonment the step to his being second in the kingdom, and the casting of Daniel into the lions' den, the path to his higher preferment.

Q. 48. Wherein is providence mysterious in the outward appearance of it?

A. In that "all things come alike unto all;" there being "one event to the righteous and to the wicked;" and no man knowing love or hatred, by all that is before him in this life, Eccl. ix. 1, 2.

Q. 49. How do you prove that love or hatred cannot be known by the outward dispensations of providence in this life?

A. From the parable of the rich man and Lazarus; the rich man, in his lifetime, received good things, and Lazarus evil things; and yet, after death, Lazarus is comforted, and the other tormented, Luke xvi. 19—27.

Q. 50. Is this seemingly unequal appearance of providence in this life any reflection upon the wisdom and righteousness thereof?

A. No; for though good men may be sometimes put to a stand by the outward prosperity of the wicked, and the straits and wants of the godly, as Jeremiah was, chap. xii. 1, "Wherefore doth the way of the wicked prosper? wherefore are all they happy who deal very treacherously?" yet, if the enjoyments of the one, and wants of the other, are laid in the balance, it will be found, that "a little that a righteous man hath, is better than the riches of many wicked," Psal. xxxvii. 16.

Q. 51. What is our duty when providence seems to run cross to the promise?

A. It is to believe the promise, and that providence is running in a direct line to the accomplishment thereof, though we cannot see it at the time, as Abraham did, "who against hope believed in hope, and staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief," Rom. iv. 18, 20.

Q. 52. Will not dark providences be opened to the saints some time or other?

A. Yes; for, says Christ, "What I do thou knowest not now, but thou shalt know hereafter," John xiii. 7.

Q. 53. When will the mystery of providence be opened to the saints?

A. It shall be fully unveiled at the end of the day, when the mystery thereof shall be finished, and all the labyrinths, wherein the saints were led, fully unwinded, Rev. x. 6, 7.

Q. 54. What will be the language of the saints, when the whole mystery of providence shall be explained?

A. They will say, "He hath done all things well," Mark vii. 37. "Not one thing hath failed of all the good things which the Lord—spake;—all are come to pass,—no one thing hath failed thereof," Josh. xxiii. 14.

Q. 55. What improvement ought we to make of this doctrine of providence?

A. To commit our way unto the Lord, "to trust also in him, and he shall bring it to pass," Psal. xxxvii. 5.

12. Q. What special act of providence did God exercise towards man in the estate wherein he was created?

A. When God had created man, he entered into a covenant of life with him, upon condition of perfect obedience; forbidding him to eat of the tree of knowledge of good and evil, upon the pain of death.

Q. 1. Was there any thing special in God's government of man when he was created, above the other creatures?

A. Yes; for God gave man a moral law, which the other creatures, not endued with reason, were not capable of, Job xxxv. 10, 11, "None saith, Where is God my maker?—who teacheth us more than the beasts of the earth, and maketh us wiser than the fowls of heaven."

Q. 2. What call you a moral law?

A. A moral law signifies a law of right manners, or good and suitable behaviour towards God and man, and adapted to man's rational nature, Rom. vii. 12.

Q. 3. How was this law first given unto man?

A. It was written upon the table of his heart, the moment that God created him in his own image, Gen. i. 27.

Q. 4. What do you understand by God's writing the law upon the table of his heart?

A. God's inlaying a principle of obedience in his heart, disposing him to obey out of love to God, and a singular regard to his authority, Eccl. vii. 29.

Q. 5. What was the peculiar favour which God manifested to man in a state of innocency, besides writing the law upon his heart?

A. The reducing that law into the form of a covenant, whereby man became confederate with heaven.

Q. 6. What is a covenant?

A. A mutual free compact and agreement betwixt two parties, upon express terms or conditions.

Q. 7. How many covenants are there relating to the life and happiness of man?

A. Two; the covenant of works, and the covenant of grace, Gal. iv. 24. "These are the two covenants."

Q. 8. Which of these was the covenant which God entered into with man when he was created?

A. The covenant of works, or of life.

Q. 9. Why called a covenant of works?

A. From the condition of it.

Q. 10. Why called *a covenant of life*?

A. From the promise of it.

Q. 11. How doth it appear that God entered into a covenant with man in innocency?

A. From the condition and penalty that were in the first covenant, Gen. ii. 16, 17, and from express mention in scripture of Adam's breach of that covenant, Hos. vi. 7. "But they like men (margin, like Adam) have transgressed the covenant."

Q. 12. How doth it appear that Adam gave that consent which was necessary in a mutual covenant?

A. His silent acquiescence in the will of his sovereign Creator implied a consent; and his consent could not be withheld by a creature made after the image of God, in knowledge, righteousness, and holiness.

Q. 13. What was the condition of the covenant of works?

A. *Perfect obedience* to the whole law of God, in heart and life.

Q. 14. What was the sum of that law which was the rule of man's covenant-obedience?

A. That man believe whatsoever God shall reveal, and do whatsoever he shall command, Rom. x. 5, and, in testimony thereof, not to *eat of the tree of knowledge of good and evil*, Gen. ii. 17.

Q. 15. Was this prohibition of not eating of the tree of knowledge of good and evil a moral or positive precept?

A. It was a positive precept, founded in the sovereign will of God.

Q. 16. Was it then a thing in itself indifferent, to eat, or not to eat, of that tree?

A. There could be no moral evil in eating of that tree more than any other, antecedent to the command of God forbidding it; but after that, it was no more indifferent, but highly sinful to do so.

Q. 17. Why did God extend the rule and matter of man's covenant-obedience to a thing in itself indifferent?

A. That man's obedience might turn upon the precise point of the will of God, which is the plainest evidence of true obedience, Psal. xl. 8.

Q. 18. Did man's life and death hang only upon this positive precept about the forbidden fruit?

A. Not upon this only, but likewise on the whole law, Gal. iii. 10. "Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things written in the book of the law to do them."

Q. 19. Was there any mercy or favour in restricting man from eating of this tree?

A. Much every way; for this restriction taught him, that though he was lord of the creatures, yet he was God's subject: it was a beacon set up before him, to beware of sin; and it pointed him away from the creatures to God himself for happiness.

Q. 20. What was the penalty in case of disobedience?

A. It was *the pain of death*:—"In the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die," Gen. ii. 17.

Q. 21. What kind of death was this which was threatened upon disobedience?

A. It was death, temporal, spiritual, and eternal.

Q. 22. Did Adam die a temporal or a natural death that day he sinned?

A. No; but he became a dead man in law, and his body got its death-wound, and became mortal, Rom. v. 12.

Q. 23. Why was the immediate execution of natural death suspended?

A. Because of his posterity then in his loins, and because of another covenant that was prepared, Job xxxiii. 24.

Q. 24. What was the spiritual death threatened?

A. The loss of his original righteousness, and the favour of God, Gen. iii. 8, 10, 24.

Q. 25. What is meant by eternal death?

A. The enduring of the wrath of God, in soul and body, in a state of separation from him for ever, Matth. xxv. 46.

Q. 26. What was the promise in this covenant, in case of obedience?

A. It was life.

Q. 27. How does it appear that life was promised, when the promise thereof is not expressly mentioned?

A. The promise of life is included in the threatening of death, "In the day that thou eatest thereof, thou shalt surely die;" which necessarily implies, if thou dost not eat thereof, thou shalt surely live, Gal. iii. 12.

Q. 28. What kind of life was it that was promised unto man in the covenant of works?

A. The continuance of his natural life, consisting in the

union of his soul and body; the continuance also of his spiritual life, consisting in the favour of God, Lev. xviii. 5, and his entering upon eternal life in heaven, after he had passed through the time of his trial upon earth, Rom. vii. 10.

Q. 29. How do you prove that eternal life in heaven was included in the promise of this covenant?

A. From eternal death in hell being included in the threatening of it, as the natural wages of sin; and from Christ himself expounding the promise of the covenant of works, of eternal life, Matth. xix. 16, when one puts the question to him, "What shall I do that I may inherit eternal life?" he answers, ver. 17, "If thou wilt enter into life (namely, eternal life, by doing), keep the commandments."

Q. 30. Was there any proportion betwixt Adam's obedience, though sinless, and the life that was promised?

A. There can be no proportion betwixt the obedience of a finite creature, however perfect, and the enjoyment of the infinite God, Job xxii. 2, 3. "Can a man be profitable to God? Is it any pleasure to the Almighty that thou art righteous? or is it any gain to him that thou makest thy way perfect?"

Q. 31. Why could not Adam's perfect obedience be meritorious of eternal life?

A. Because perfect obedience was no more than what he was bound unto, by virtue of his natural dependence on God, as a reasonable creature made after his image.

Q. 32. Could he have claimed the reward as a debt, in case he had continued in his obedience?

A. He could have claimed it only as a pactional debt, in virtue of the covenant promise, whereby God became debtor to his own faithfulness, but not in virtue of any intrinsic merit of his obedience, Luke xvii. 10.

Q. 33. What then was the grace and condescension of God that shined in the covenant of works?

A. In that he entered into a covenant at all with his own creatures; and promised eternal life as a reward of his work, though he had nothing to work with, but what he received from God, 1 Cor. iv. 7.

Q. 34. Did the covenant of works oblige man to seek life upon the account of his obedience?

A. It left man to expect it upon his obedience, but did not oblige him to seek it on that score; but only upon the account of the faithfulness of God in his promise, graciously annexing life to man's sinless obedience, Matth. xix. 16.

Q. 35. Did the covenant of works oblige man to make his own life and happiness the chief end of his obedience?

A. By no means; the promise of life was an encouragement to his obedience, but the glory of God was to be the chief end therein; to which any view of his own happiness was to be subordinate, otherwise his obedience had not been perfect.

Q. 36. Was the covenant of works a law as well as a covenant?

A. Yes; it was both the one and the other.

Q. 37. In what respect was it a law?

A. As it was not between equals, but enjoined by the sovereign Lawgiver.

Q. 38. In what respect was it a covenant?

A. As it contained a promise of reward, graciously annexed to the precept, Gal. iii. 12.

Q. 39. Is this covenant abrogated or still in force?

A. It was never abrogated, but is still binding upon all that are under it, Matth. v. 18, and xix. 17.

Q. 40. Did not man's sin abrogate this covenant?

A. No; his sin bound him under the curse of it, Gal. iii. 10.

Q. 41. Did not Christ's doing and dying abrogate this covenant of works?

A. No; it fulfilled both the precept and penalty thereof, Rom. x. 4.

Q. 42. Does not the law of faith abrogate the law of works?

A. No; "Do we make void the law through faith? God forbid; yea, we establish the law," Rom. iii. 31.

Q. 43. Are sinners that live under the Gospel dispensation, under the same obligation to obedience as the condition of life that Adam was under?

A. While they remain in unbelief, rejecting the surety of the "better testament," they keep themselves under an obligation to do the same law, and so are under the curse of it, Gal. v. 3, 4.

Q. 44. What may we learn from this doctrine?

A. It teacheth us that eternal death comes by the breach of the covenant of works in the first Adam; and that eternal life comes only by the fulfilling of the same covenant by the second Adam, Rom. v. 19.

13. Q. Did our first parents continue in the estate wherein they were created?

A. Our first parents being left to the freedom of their own will, fell from the estate wherein they were created by sinning against God.

Q. 1. What mean you by the *estate* wherein man was created?

A. His state of innocency, wherein he had been standing under God, as his great Lord Creator.

Q. 2. What standing had he under God in a state of innocency?

A. Perfect conformity to him; intimate fellowship and communion with him; and an ample dominion over all the work of his hands, in this lower world, the tree of knowledge of good and evil only excepted.

Q. 3. By what charter did man hold this estate of his great Creator?

A. By the charter of the covenant of works.

Q. 4. What remarkable and significant circumstances appertained to this charter?

A. The tree of knowledge of good and evil, and the tree of life.

Q. 5. What did the tree of knowledge of good and evil signify?

A. It signified, that as Adam knew much of his Creator's goodness by what he had done for him, so he was to know much of his displeasure and indignation, if he tasted the fruit of that tree.

Q. 6. What did the tree of life signify to man?

A. That upon his fulfilling the condition of the covenant, by a course of obedience, he was to live for ever.

Q. 7. What understand you by the course of obedience which Adam had to go through, in order to found his covenant-title to eternal life?

A. A continuance in perfect obedience, during the time which God had appointed for his state of probation.

Q. 8. When was a state of probation only applicable to man?

A. It was only applicable to man while in innocency, before the breach of the covenant of works; and by no means applicable to man in any other state since the fall.

Q. 9. Why is it that man, since the fall, can justly be said to be in a state of probation in this world?

A. Because the covenant of works being broken, all the children of men are either in a natural state, in the first Adam, or in a gracious state in the second; and consequently under a dispensation either of divine justice or mercy.

Q. 10. Are not men to have rewards given them according to their good or evil works, and consequently may be said to be in a state of probation as well as Adam was?

A. The consequence will not hold; because these rewards are of another kind than could have taken place under the covenant of works, though it had been fulfilled; for now they are either rewards of impartial justice for

evil works, the wages of sin being death; or rewards of free mercy to the doing persons, not for their good works, but according to them, 2 Cor. v. 10.

Q. 11. What is it for God to dispense rewards of free mercy to his people, not for their good works, but according to them?

A. It is to bestow these rewards, not on account of any worth or merit that is in their good works, in themselves considered; but as they are evidences of union with Christ, in whom their persons and performances are accepted, and through whom the rewards of grace are freely conferred; for "the gift of God is eternal life, through Jesus Christ, our Lord," Rom. vi. 23.

Q. 12. Is there any danger in asserting that men are now in a state of probation as Adam was?

A. No; because though they cannot now be in that state, yet God still deals with them as rational creatures, under a moral government, and capable of rewards, whether of justice or mercy, of debt or grace, according to their state and works: hence men are judged at the great day according to their state, as sheep or goats separated from one another, and then according to their works, Matth. xxv. 32, 46.

Q. 13. What then is the dangerous consequence of asserting, that fallen man is still in a state of probation in this life?

A. This dangerous consequence would follow, that mankind are hereby supposed to be still under a covenant of works that can justify the doer; or under a law that can give life, besides the law of faith, mentioned Rom. iii. 27, which is false; "for if there had been a law given, which could have given life, verily righteousness should have been by the law," Gal. iii. 21.

Q. 14. What improvement ought we to make of this doctrine about the state of probation?

A. To be restless in the use of all appointed means till we get in to Christ; that in the way of believing, and walking in him, we may share of the "sure reward," promised through grace, "to him that soweth righteousness," Prov. xi. 18.

Q. 15. How did our first parents fall from the estate wherein they were created?

A. *By sinning against God*, Gen. iii. 6, 7.

Q. 16. Were they not sufficiently furnished with every thing necessary for yielding perfect obedience to the will of God?

A. Yes; for they had perfect knowledge in their understanding, freedom and inclination to good in their will, and spotless holiness in their hearts and affections, Eccl. vii. 29. "God made man upright."

Q. 17. How then did man's sin and apostasy come about?

A. Though he was a perfect, yet he was but a mutable creature, *left to the freedom of his own will*, which was subject to change.

Q. 18. Wherein did the freedom of man's will, in a state of innocency, consist?

A. In a perfect liberty and "power to will and to do that which is good and well pleasing to God;" but yet mutably, so as that he might fall from it, Eccl. vii. 29; Gen. ii. 16, 17, and iii. 6.\*

Q. 19. Why did not God make man immutable?

A. Because immutability, or unchangeableness of nature, is the essential property of God alone, Mal. iii. 6; "I am the Lord, I change not," James i. 17.

Q. 20. Are not elect angels and saints made immutably good?

A. The elect angels are confirmed in a state of immutable happiness; and the saints, in virtue of union with Christ, are fixed in an unchangeable state of grace here, and glory hereafter; but the unchangeable state of the one and the other is not owing to any thing in their own natures, but to the free love and favour of God, Eph. i. 10.

Q. 21. What freedom of will has man since the fall unto any spiritual good?

A. He "has wholly lost all freedom and ability of will to any spiritual good accompanying salvation," so as that he can neither "convert himself, nor prepare himself thereunto," John vi. 44, 66.†

Q. 22. What freedom of will have they who are regenerated?

A. They are enabled, by grace alone, freely to will and to do that which is spiritually good, Rom. vi. 18; yet so as that, by reason of remaining corruption, they do not perfectly and only that which is good, but likewise frequently that which is evil, chap. vii. 15, 19, 21.‡

Q. 23. When is the will of man made perfectly and immutably free to that only which is good?

A. In the state of glory only, Eph. v. 13; 1 John iii. 2.

Q. 24. What is it for man to be left to the freedom of his own will?

A. It was God's leaving him with a sufficient stock in his hand, without any promise of supernatural aid, or further assistance to improve the stock of grace already received.

Q. 25. How was he left to abuse the freedom of his will?

A. God did not incline him to abuse it, but only withheld that further grace, which he was no way obliged to

\* Confession, chap. ix. § 2.

† Ibid. chap. ix. § 3.

‡ Ibid. chap. ix. § 4.

give, for preventing his will from yielding to the temptation; and was pleased, according to his wise and holy counsel, to permit this abuse, having purposed to order it to his own glory, Rom. xi. 32.

Q. 26. At whose door then must the fall be laid?

A. Only at man's door, who willingly yielded to the temptation of the devil, James i. 14.

Q. 27. What was the devil's agency in the fall of man?

A. He entered into a serpent, and therein, by seducing words, enticed the woman to take and eat the forbidden fruit; and she gave to her husband, and he did eat likewise, Gen. iii. 5, 6.

Q. 28. Why did Satan make use of the serpent, as his instrument to seduce the woman?

A. Because "the serpent was more subtle than any beast of the field," Gen. iii. 1, and so the most fit tool of any other to serve his subtle and murderous designs, John vii. 44.

Q. 29. Why was not Eve afraid to entertain converse with a serpent, lest it might be actuated by some evil spirit?

A. It is supposed that Adam and Eve knew nothing as yet of the fall of the angels; and sin not having as yet entered into this lower world, they were not afraid of hurt from any of the good creatures of God.

Q. 30. Why was there no confirmatory clause annexed to the covenant of works, to secure man's standing in the estate wherein he was created?

A. Because it so pleased God; and, no doubt, Infinite Wisdom had another scene to open, through the occasion of man's fall, by his breaking the first covenant.

Q. 31. What was that scene?

A. A scene of redeeming love and grace, which will be matter of Hallelujahs, or praises to the Lord God and the Lamb for ever and ever, Rev. v. 8.

Q. 32. Was then the covenant of works a scaffold erected for carrying on a more glorious fabric?

A. Yes, it was; for God had said, and purposed from eternity, that mercy should be built up for ever, Psal. lxxxix. 2.

Q. 33. What improvement ought we to make of this doctrine of the fall of Adam?

A. To be persuaded that the best of creatures, if left to themselves, cannot be in safety one moment, Psal. xlix. 12; that since man could not be his own keeper, much less can he be his own saviour, 2 Cor. iii. 5; to see how dangerous it is to parley with sin and Satan, and how much we need an interest in the second Adam, to get the loss we sustained by the first repaired with advantage; for he has "restored that which he took not away," Psal. lxxix. 4.

14. Q. What is sin ?

A. Sin is any want of conformity unto, or transgression of the law of God.

Q. 1. Wherein consisted man's apostasy from God ?

A. In sinning against him, Lam. v. 16.

Q. 2. How doth it appear that there is such a thing as sin in the world ?

A. The God of truth declares that all have sinned, Rom. iii. 23 ; the broken law cries for vengeance against transgressors, and by it is the knowledge of sin, Gal. iii. 10 ; Rom. iii. 20 ; conscience, God's deputy in every man's bosom, tells him he is guilty, Jer. xiv. 7 ; the reign of death, and the groans of the creatures round about us, Rom. viii. 22, do all bear testimony that there is such a thing as sin in the world.

Q. 3. Can there be any sin where there is no law ?

A. No ; " for where there is no law there is no transgression," Rom. iv. 15.

Q. 4. Of whose law is sin the transgression ?

A. Of the law of God.

Q. 5. What understand you by *the law of God* ?

A. All the precepts or commandments God hath given unto man, as the rule of his obedience.

Q. 6. Where is this law of God to be found ?

A. There was a bright and fair copy of it written upon the heart of man in innocency ; but that being in a great measure lost by the fall, God has written again to us the great things of his law, in the scriptures of truth, Psal. cxlvii. 19, 20.

Q. 7. Are all the laws of God mentioned in scripture of binding force now under the New Testament ?

A. No ; the ceremonial law, which was a shadow of good things to come, is now abrogated upon the coming of Christ in the flesh ; and many of the judicial laws, in so far as they had a particular relation to the state of the Jewish nation, are laid aside ; but the moral law is perpetually binding on all mankind, in all ages and periods of the world, Psal. cxix. 160.

Q. 8. Doth God require a perfect conformity to this law ?

A. Yes ; for there is a curse pronounced against every one that continueth not in all things written in the book of the law to do them, Gal. iii. 10.

Q. 9. Why is the nature of sin expressed by a *want of conformity* to the law ?

A. To let us know that our very natures since the fall are sinful, Isa. i. 5, 6 ; that we are now quite destitute of that original righteousness and holiness which we had at

our creation, Gen. vi. 5; and that every swerving from the holy law, even in omitting what it commands, is sin, as well as committing what it forbids, Isa. xliii. 22.

Q. 10. Why is sin called a *transgression of the law*?

A. Because the law is the boundary of all our actions; and whenever we sin, we break the boundary and limit that God hath set us, and so are exposed unto the curse of the law, Eccl. x. 8; Gal. iii. 10.

Q. 11. Doth the law of God extend to the first motions of sin in the heart?

A. Yes; for, says the Apostle, Rom. vii. 7, "I had not known lust, except the law had said, Thou shalt not covet."

Q. 12. How many kinds of sin are there?

A. Two kinds,—original and actual.

Q. 13. What do you understand by original sin?

A. The sin of our nature, which is called original sin, because we were "shapen in iniquity," and conceived in sin, Psal. li. 5, and because it was the first sin of man, and is the original and fountain of all actual sin, Matth. xv. 19.

Q. 14. What do you understand by actual sin?

A. Every thing that is inconsistent with and contrary to the law, in thought, word, or deed, 1 John iii. 4.

Q. 15. How are actual sins divided?

A. Into sins of omission and commission.

Q. 16. What is a sin of omission?

A. It is a neglecting, or forgetting to do that good which the law commands, James iv. 17.

Q. 17. What is a sin of commission?

A. It is a doing of what the law of God forbids, Psal. li. 4.

Q. 18. Is every sin mortal or deadly?

A. Yes; in its own nature, Rom. vi. 16, 21, 23. "The wages of sin is death."

Q. 19. Are all sins pardonable through grace?

A. There is pardon through the blood of Christ for all sins except one, namely, the "sin against the Holy Ghost," Matth. xii. 31, 32; Mark iii. 28, 29.

Q. 20. What is the sin against the Holy Ghost?

A. It is a wilful, malicious, and avowed rejecting of Christ and salvation through him, by a blaspheming apostasy, after manifest conviction of the truth of the Gospel-report, and some kind of approbation thereof, by the common influence or operation of the Spirit, Heb. vi. 4, 5, 6, and x. 27; 1 John v. 16; Mark iii. 29, 30.

Q. 21. Why is this sin called blasphemy against the Holy Ghost, Matth. xii. 31?

A. Because it is an opprobrious and reproachful speaking of, and against the testimony of the Holy Ghost, in the

word, concerning Christ, with a direct intention to disparage his glory, and to disgrace his truth and way; hence called "a putting him to an open shame," Heb. vi. 6.

Q. 22. What is the object of this sin against which it is directly levelled?

A. It is Christ, and salvation through him, as held out in the Gospel-revelation: for it is a treading under foot the Son of God, and accounting the blood of the covenant, wherewith he was sanctified, an unholy thing, Heb. x. 29.

Q. 23. What are the acts of this dreadful sin?

A. A wilful rejecting and obstinate opposing of the truth of the Gospel; a spiteful scoffing at Christianity and the professors of it, joined sometimes with a malicious persecuting of them; and all these as fruits and concomitants of a total and final apostasy from the faith.

Q. 24. What are the aggravations of this sin?

A. Its being committed after a person hath "received the knowledge of the truth, and tasted the good word of God, and the powers of the world to come," Heb. vi. 5, and x. 26.

Q. 25. Why is it said that blasphemy against the Holy Ghost shall not be forgiven unto men, Matth. xii. 31?

A. Not because it is above the virtue of the blood of Jesus to cleanse from it, but because it despises the only sacrifice for sin and means of pardon, there being "no other name under heaven given among men, by which we must be saved," but that of Jesus, Acts iv. 12, who is contemptuously rejected by it, Heb. ii. 2, 3.

Q. 26. How may a person be assured that he is not guilty of this sin?

A. He may be well assured that this sin is not charged upon him if he is afraid that he is guilty of it; or in the least concerned about his unbelief; or has any desire after salvation through Christ; and is content to be a debtor to the riches of his grace.

Q. 27. What may we learn from the nature of sin in general?

A. That it is exceeding sinful, the greatest of all evils, Rom. vii. 13; and consequently, that it must be the sorest judgment in the world to be given up to it, Ezek. xxiv. 13; and the greatest mercy to be delivered therefrom, Matth. i. 21.

15. Q. What was the sin whereby our first parents fell from the estate wherein they were created?

A. The sin whereby our first parents fell from the estate wherein they were created was their eating the forbidden fruit.

Q. 1. Why is this fruit called *forbidden fruit*?

A. Because the eating thereof was forbidden, under the severest penalty, Gen. ii. 17. "But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die."

Q. 2. Why did God forbid the eating of this fruit?

A. To try the obedience of our first parents, and to manifest his dominion over them as Lord of all.

Q. 3. Were not our first parents guilty of sin before their eating the forbidden fruit?

A. Yes; they were guilty in hearkening to the devil and believing him, before they did actually eat thereof.

Q. 4. Why then is their eating of it called their first sin?

A. Because it was the first sin finished, James i. 15; and an express violation of the positive precept, Gen. iii. 11.

Q. 5. Where was this first sin committed?

A. In Paradise, where God had placed the man, and created the woman, Gen. ii. 8, 22, and iii. 6.

Q. 6. Was there any aggravation of this sin, arising from the place where it was committed?

A. Yes; for in Paradise our first parents had abundance of other fruit, and of every thing necessary and delightful; yea, that place being a type of heaven, should have put them on their guard against this and all other sins.

Q. 7. When did our first parents eat the forbidden fruit?

A. It is certain that it was done very soon after they were created, from Psal. xlix. 12, "Man being in honour, abideth not."

Q. 8. Why did the devil make such haste in tempting man to sin?

A. Because he did not know how soon man might be confirmed in a holy and happy state, and in that case impregnable against all his temptations.

Q. 9. How did Satan lay his train for enticing our first parents to eat the forbidden fruit?

A. He attacks the woman in the absence of her husband; endeavours to make her doubt of the truth of God's threatening: he presents the object, fruit pleasant to the eye; he pretends a greater regard and concern for them than God himself; and he labours to persuade them that they should be like God, in the largeness of their knowledge, upon their eating: all which may be gathered from Gen. iii. 1—6.

Q. 10. Did the enemy prevail by this stratagem?

A. Yes; "The woman—took of the fruit, and did eat, and gave also to her husband with her, and he did eat," Gen. iii. 6.

Q. 11. What was the nature of this first sin?

A. However light and trivial it may appear in the carnal eye to eat of a little fruit ; yet, if it is weighed in God's balance, it will be found to be a most heinous sin, and to have many other sins against the law of God in its womb, Hos. vi. 7, " They, like men (margin, like Adam), have transgressed the covenant."

Q. 12. How doth that appear ?

A. From our first parents being guilty of manifest unbelief, the highest ingratitude, the most intolerable pride and ambition, unaccountable inadvertency, most unnatural rebellion, and most cruel murder, in their eating the forbidden fruit.

Q. 13. How is unbelief included in that sin ?

A. In their giving more credit to the devil than to God about the truth of the threatening, Gen. ii. 17, and iii. 4.

Q. 14. How were they guilty of ingratitude ?

A. In contradicting the orders of their bountiful Lord and Creator, who had allowed them the use of all the other trees of the garden besides, Gen. ii. 16.

Q. 15. What pride and ambition was there in the first sin ?

A. In aspiring to equality with God in his inimitable attributes, particularly in infinite knowledge, Gen. iii. 5, 6. " Ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil. And the woman saw that the tree was good,—and a tree to be desired to make one wise."

Q. 16. What inadvertency were our first parents guilty of about eating the forbidden fruit ?

A. In entering into communication with a creature of any kind, and however much disguised, about violating the express inhibition of their Creator.

Q. 17. How were they guilty of rebellion in the committing this sin ?

A. By entering into a confederacy with Satan against God, and thereby choosing him for their god and sovereign, instead of the true God, who made them and all other creatures besides.

Q. 18. What murder were they guilty of in eating of this fruit ?

A. They were thereby guilty of their own death, and the death of all their posterity, Rom. v. 12.

Q. 19. How was this sin of eating the forbidden fruit aggravated ?

A. In being committed when man had full light in his understanding ; a clear copy of the law in his heart ; when he had no vicious bias in his will, but enjoying perfect liberty ; and when he had a sufficient stock of grace in his hand, whereby to withstand the tempting enemy ; in being

committed after God had made a covenant of life with him, and given him express warning of the danger of eating this fruit.

Q. 20. What may we learn from our first parents being seduced by Satan to eat the forbidden fruit?

A. To resist the first motions of sin in the heart, and the temptations of Satan thereunto, Psal. lxxvi. 18; James iv. 7; that since man in innocency fell before the temptation, how easy a prey must fallen man be if not kept by the power of God, through faith, unto salvation, Psal. xxxix. 5; 1 Pet. i. 5; and therefore to be strong only in the Lord, and in the power of his might, Eph. vi. 10.

16. Q. Did all mankind fall in Adam's first transgression?

A. The covenant being made with Adam, not only for himself, but for his posterity, all mankind, descending from him by ordinary generation, sinned in him, and fell with him in his first transgression.

Q. 1. How many public persons, representing mankind before God, do we read of in scripture?

A. Of two; the first and the last Adam, 1 Cor. xv. 45.

Q. 2. Of what *covenant* was the first Adam the head?

A. Of the covenant of works, Gen. ii. 16, 17.

Q. 3. Of what covenant was the last Adam the head?

A. Of the covenant of grace and promise, Psal. lxxxix. 3, 28.

Q. 4. Whom did the first Adam represent in the covenant of works?

A. He represented *all mankind descending from him by ordinary generation*, Rom. v. 12, 14.

Q. 5. Whom did the last Adam represent in the covenant of grace?

A. All his spiritual seed given him of the Father, John xvii. 6.

Q. 6. Is there any similitude betwixt the first and the last Adam?

A. Yes; the first Adam was the figure of him that was to come, Rom. v. 14.

Q. 7. Wherein did that figure, or similitude, consist?

A. It consisted chiefly in their being, each of them, a representing head of their respective seed, 1 Cor. xv. 22.

Q. 8. Wherein consist the dissimilitude or disparity betwixt these two public persons?

A. It is infinitely great beyond all conception: the "first Adam was made a living soul; the last Adam was made a quickening spirit: the first man is of the earth, earthy, a mere man; the second man is the Lord from heaven; Im-

manuel, God with us," 1 Cor. xv. 45, 47; Matth. i. 23; the first Adam, in his best estate, was but a mutable creature; the last Adam, the unchangeable God, Heb. xiii. 8.

Q. 9. What relation hath the first Adam to all mankind?

A. A twofold relation; that of a covenant-head, and of a natural root.

Q. 10. How doth it appear that he was a covenant-head, or that the covenant of works was made with him, *not only for himself but for his posterity*?

A. From the imputation of his first sin to his posterity, Rom. v. 12; and the sentence of death passed upon all mankind on that account, ver. 17.

Q. 11. Was it reasonable that Adam should represent his posterity in the covenant of works?

A. Nothing could be more reasonable, seeing he was to be the common parent of all mankind, and was created perfectly holy, with full power to fulfil the condition of the covenant, and thereby to entail happiness upon himself and his posterity.

Q. 12. What happiness would Adam have entailed upon himself and his posterity if he had stood?

A. Eternal life would have become due to him and them by pactional debt.

Q. 13. Would not the title of every one of his posterity to life in that case have been founded upon their own perfect and personal obedience?

A. No; their title to eternal life would have been founded upon the perfect obedience of their covenant-head; and their own personal obedience would have been the fruit of the promise of the covenant.

Q. 14. How doth this appear?

A. Since Adam's disobedience is imputed to his posterity for their condemnation, Rom. v. 18, it necessarily follows, that his obedience would have been imputed to them for their justification and life.

Q. 15. Why is the first Adam called the natural root of his posterity?

A. Because all of them, descending from him by ordinary generation, are as so many branches sprung out of him, as their root and stock.

Q. 16. Did all Adam's natural offspring fall in his first sin?

A. Yes; "death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned," Rom. v. 12.

Q. 17. How could Adam's posterity, being then unborn, fall in his first sin?

A. Because they were considered as IN HIM, 1 Cor. xv. 22. "In Adam all die."

Q. 18. How were they in him when he first sinned?

A. They were in him virtually as a natural root ; and representatively as a covenant-head.

Q. 19. Why is it said, *all mankind descending from him by ordinary generation, sinned in him, and fell with him in his first transgression ?*

A. That Christ might be expected, who descended, as to his human body, from Adam ; but not by ordinary generation.

Q. 20. What was there extraordinary in the generation of Christ's body ?

A. It was conceived in the womb of a virgin, by the power of the Highest overshadowing her, Luke i. 35, on which account she is said to be "found with child of the Holy Ghost," Matth. i. 18.

Q. 21. What was the reason of this extraordinary generation ?

A. That the human nature of Christ might not be stained or tainted with original sin, which is conveyed from Adam to his posterity, by the way of ordinary generation : hence what was born of the virgin is called "that holy thing," Luke i. 35.

Q. 22. Was ever the human nature of Christ represented in the first Adam as a federal head ?

A. By no means ; Christ's human nature was never in Adam as its representative, but he derived it legally, after Adam ceased to be a public person.

Q. 23. How did he derive it legally ?

A. In virtue of his being considered as one in law with his spiritual seed, whom he represented as their surety, according to his undertaking from eternity, Prov. viii. 23, and therefore behoved to assume the same nature with them, Heb. ii. 11, 14.

Q. 24. Was ever any exempted from Adam's first sin, except Christ ?

A. No ; for all others descended from Adam by ordinary generation, and were represented by him as their covenant-head, and therefore sinned in him, and fell with him in his first transgression, Rom. v. 12 ; 1 Cor. xv. 22.

Q. 25. What may all this teach us ?

A. That "as by one man's disobedience, many were made sinners ; so by the obedience of one, shall many be made righteous," Rom. v. 19 ; and that as we have borne the image of the earthy, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly Adam, 1 Cor. xv. 49.

17. Q. Into what estate did the fall bring mankind ?

A. The fall brought mankind into an estate of sin and misery.

Q. 1. Why is man's apostasy from God called the *fall*?

A. Because man is not now where God set him at his creation, but is fallen by his iniquity, Hos. xiv. 1.

Q. 2. Where did God set man at his creation?

A. Upon the high pinnacle of holiness and happiness, Eccl. vii. 29.

Q. 3. Where is he now?

A. He is fallen into the depth of sin and misery, called in scripture, an "horrible pit, and miry clay," Psal. xl. 2, and "the pit wherein is no water," Zech. ix. 11.

Q. 4. Why is man's estate, by the fall, called an *estate of sin*?

A. Because he is now under the guilt of sin, Rom. iii. 19, which hath dominion over him, chap. vi. 14.

Q. 5. Why is it called an *estate of misery*?

A. Because, according to the penalty of the law, death and the curse involve him into all manner of misery, Rom. v. 12.

Q. 6. Why is the estate of sin put before the estate of misery?

A. Because there could be no misery if there were no sin; sin being the procuring cause of all misery, Rom. vi. 23.

Q. 7. How came man into this estate of sin and misery?

A. By the abuse of his free will: hence mankind-sinners are called self-destroyers, Hos. xiii. 9. "O Israel, thou hast destroyed thyself."

Q. 8. How doth the Spirit of God, in scripture, express man's estate of sin and misery into which he is fallen?

A. By a state of darkness, Eph. v. 8; a state of distance, Eph. ii. 13; a state of condemnation and wrath, John iii. 18, 36; a state of bondage or captivity, Isaiah xlix. 24, 25; and a state of death, both spiritual and legal, Eph. ii. 1.

Q. 9. Is man in any capacity to help himself out of this sinful and miserable estate?

A. No more than a new-born infant "cast out in the open field," which, of all creatures, is the most helpless, Ezek. xvi. 4, 5.

Q. 10. Hath he a desire and will to be helped out of a state of sin and misery, when help is offered?

A. No; his nature is become enmity against God and the way of salvation proposed in the gospel, Rom. viii. 7; Psal. lxxxii. 11; and therefore he rejects the only help of God's appointment, John v. 40.

Q. 11. What may we learn from this?

A. That the whole world being guilty before God, every mouth had been for ever stopped, though he had left all mankind to perish eternally with the fallen angels, with whom they had "a confederacy," Rom. iii. 19, and there-

fore to admire the infinite love of God, in sending his only-begotten Son to save us from sin, as the only way of being saved from misery, Heb. ii. 14, 16.

18. Q. Wherein consists the sinfulness of that estate whereinto man fell?

A. The sinfulness of that estate whereinto man fell, consists in the guilt of Adam's first sin, the want of original righteousness, and the corruption of his whole nature, which is commonly called original sin, together with all actual transgressions which proceed from it.

Q. 1. What do you understand by *original sin*?

A. The sin we have from our original, that is, when the soul is united to the body, or the human nature completed, Psal. li. 5.

Q. 2. How is original sin usually distinguished?

A. Into original sin imputed, and original sin inherent.

Q. 3. What is original sin imputed?

A. *The guilt of Adam's first sin.*

Q. 4. What is original sin inherent?

A. *The want of original righteousness, and the corruption of the whole nature.*

Q. 5. What do you understand by the *guilt* of sin?

A. An obligation to punishment on account of sin, Rom. vi. 23.

Q. 6. How are all mankind guilty of Adam's *first sin*?

A. By imputation, Rom. v. 19. "By one man's disobedience, many were made sinners."

Q. 7. Upon what account is Adam's first sin imputed to his posterity?

A. On account of the legal union betwixt him and them, he being their legal head and representative, and the covenant made with him, not for himself only, but for his posterity likewise, 1 Cor. xv. 22. "In Adam all die."

Q. 8. Why was Adam's first sin imputed and none of his after sins?

A. Because the covenant being broke by his first sin, his federal headship thereby ceased; for being then legally dead, and his posterity in him and with him, he stood afterwards but as a single person for himself, and no longer in the capacity of their public representative in that covenant of life which, by that first sin, brought him and them under the sentence of death, Rom v. 12, 13.

Q. 9. When Adam ceased to be the federal head, by breaking the covenant of works, did that covenant cease likewise?

A. No; that covenant, though broken, stands binding, so

as the obligation to pay the debt of obedience to the precept, and satisfaction now to the penalty thereof remains upon every one of his posterity, while in a natural state, under the law, as a covenant of works, Gal. iii. 10.

Q. 10. How doth it appear from scripture, that all Adam's posterity had his first sin imputed unto them?

A. From their being said to be made sinners, by one man's disobedience, Rom. v. 19, and to have the judgment, or sentence, by one to condemnation, ver. 16; and surely there can be no condemnation passed by a righteous judge, where there is no crime, Rom. iv. 15.

Q. 11. Is it not said, Ezek. xviii. 20, "The son shall not bear the iniquity of the father?"

A. The prophet is there speaking of particular private parents, not of Adam as a federal head; he is speaking of adult children, who were preserved from some grosser violations of the law, which their parents were guilty of, and who did not imitate them therein: not of the posterity of Adam in general, as exempting them from his first sin, which the scriptures, quoted in answer to the former question, plainly proved them chargeable with.

Q. 12. What is meant by the *want of original righteousness*?

A. The want of that rectitude and purity of nature, which Adam had in his first creation; consisting in a perfect conformity of all the powers and faculties of his soul to the holy nature of God and to the law which was written on his heart, Eccl. vii. 29.

Q. 13. How doth it appear that all mankind are now destitute of this original righteousness?

A. From the express testimony of God, that, among all Adam's race, there is none righteous, no not one; and that by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight, Rom. iii. 10, 11, 12, 20.

Q. 14. What follows upon this want of original righteousness?

A. That all mankind are naked before God; and that their fig-leaf coverings will stand them in no stead before his omniscient eye, nor answer the demands of his holy law, Rom. iii. 17; Isa. lxiv. 6.

Q. 15. Doth the law of God demand original righteousness from mankind-sinners, though they now want it?

A. Yes; their want of it can never derogate from the right of the law to demand it, because God endued man with this part of his image at his creation; and his want of it was owing to his own voluntary apostasy from God.

Q. 16. Under what penalty doth the law demand this original righteousness?

A. Under the penalty of death and the curse, Rom. vi. 23; Gal. iii. 10.

Q. 17. Is there no help for a sinner in this deplorable state?

A. None in heaven or in earth, but in Christ, the last Adam, the Lord our righteousness, Jer. xxiii. 6, on whom our help is completely laid, Psal. lxxxix. 19.

Q. 18. Doth original sin consist in a mere privation or want of righteousness?

A. It consists also in the corruption of the whole nature, Tit. i. 15; Rom. iii. 10—19.

Q. 19. What is meant by *the corruption of the whole nature*?

A. The universal depravation both of soul and body, in all the faculties of the one and members of the other, Isa. i. 5, 6.

Q. 20. How doth this corruption of the whole nature appear?

A. In an utter impotency, and bitter enmity to what is spiritually good, Rom. viii. 7, and in the strongest inclination and bias to what is evil, and to that only and continually, Gen. vi. 5.

Q. 21. How may we be certain that our *whole nature* is corrupted?

A. From the word of God, and from experience and observation.

Q. 22. How doth the word of God assure us of the universal corruption of our nature?

A. It tells us that the image after which man was at first made, and the image after which he is now begotten, are quite opposite the one to the other; Adam was at first made in the likeness of God, but, having fallen, he begat a son in his own likeness, after his own image, Gen. v. 1, 3. The scripture assures us, that "none can bring a clean thing out of an unclean," Job xiv. 4; that we are shapen in iniquity, and that in sin did our mothers conceive us, Psal. li. 5; that "that which is born of the flesh, is flesh," John iii. 6, and that we are by "nature children of wrath," Eph. ii. 3.

Q. 23. How may we know the corruption of our nature by the experience and observation of things without us?

A. The flood of miseries which overflow the world; the manifold gross outbreakings of sin therein; and the necessity of human laws, fenced with penalties, are clear outward evidences of the corruption of our nature.

Q. 24. What inward evidences may every one of us experience within ourselves, of the corruption of our natures?

A. Each of us may sadly experience a natural disposition to hearken to the instruction that causeth us to err, Prov. xix. 27; a caring for the concerns of the body more than those of the soul, Matth. xvi. 26; a discontentment with some

one thing or other in our lot in a present world, 2 Kings vi. 33; an aversion from being debtors to free grace, and an inclination to rest upon something in ourselves, as the ground of our hope, Rom. x. 3; every one of which may be an evidence to ourselves that our nature is wholly corrupted.

Q. 25. How is the corruption of nature propagated since the fall?

A. By natural generation, Job xv. 14. "What is man, that he should be clean? and he that is born of a woman, that he should be righteous?"

Q. 26. How can this corruption be propagated to the soul, seeing it is created immediately by God, and not generated with the body?

A. As the creating and infusing of the soul are precisely at one and the same time, so the very moment the soul is united unto the body, we become children of fallen Adam, not only as our natural, but as our federal head, Rom. v. 19.

Q. 27. What is the consequence of becoming the children of fallen Adam, as our federal head?

A. The consequence is, that the moment we are so, his first sin is imputed to us, and thereby we become legally and spiritually dead, under the curse; not only wanting original righteousness, but having our whole nature corrupted and depraved, 1 Cor. xv. 22. "In Adam all die."

Q. 28. Since then the soul of every one is a part of that person which is cursed in Adam, does God, in the creating thereof, infuse any sin or impurity therein?

A. By no means; but only, as a righteous Judge in creating the soul, he denies or withholds that original righteousness which it once had in Adam; and this he does as a just punishment of Adam's first sin.

Q. 29. What follows upon God's withholding original righteousness from the soul in its creation?

A. The soul being united to the body in the moment of its creation, the universal corruption of the whole man follows as naturally upon that union as darkness follows upon the setting of the sun.

Q. 30. Can it follow then from this doctrine, that God is the author of sin?

A. So far from it, that on the contrary it evidently follows, that our state, both of sin and misery, is the bitter fruit of our own voluntary apostasy in the first Adam, as our covenant-head, having sinned in him, and fallen with him, in his first transgression.

Q. 31. Doth the holiness of the parents prevent the propagation of original corruption to their children?

A. By no means ; the saints are holy but in part, and that by grace, not by nature : wherefore, as after the purest grain is sown we reap corn with the chaff ; so the holiest parents beget unholy children, and cannot communicate their grace to them, as they do their nature, Gen. v. 3.

Q. 32. Hath this poison of corruption run through the whole man ?

A. Yes ; “ The whole head is sick, and the whole heart is faint : from the sole of the foot to the head there is no soundness in it,” &c., Isa. i. 5, 6.

Q. 33. Wherewith is the understanding corrupted ?

A. With darkness and blindness, so that we cannot know and receive the things of the Spirit of God, 1 Cor. ii. 14.

Q. 34. Wherewith is the will corrupted ?

A. With enmity and rebellion against God ; with opposition to his law and gospel ; with aversion from the chiefest good ; and inclination to all evil, Rom. viii. 7.

Q. 35. How are the affections corrupted ?

A. By being displaced and disordered, set upon trifling vanities and sinful pleasures, instead of God the supreme good, Psal. v. 2, 6 ; Isa. lv. 2.

Q. 36. How is the conscience corrupted ?

A. By not discharging its office faithfully according to the law, in accusing or excusing, but many times calling “ evil good, and good evil,” &c., Isa. v. 20.

Q. 37. How is the memory corrupted ?

A. It is like the riddle, or sieve, that lets through the pure grain, and keeps the refuse ; it retains what is vain and unprofitable, and forgets what is spiritual and truly advantageous, Psal. cvi. 13, 21.

Q. 38. How is the body corrupted ?

A. All the members of it are become instruments, or weapons “ of unrighteousness unto sin,” Rom. vi. 13.

Q. 39. Is original sin of its own nature damning ?

A. Beyond all doubt it is ; because it is a state of sin and spiritual uncleanness we are born in, Psal. li. 5. And “ there shall in no wise enter into the heavenly Jerusalem any thing that defileth,” Rev. xxi. 27. The blood of Christ is necessary to cleanse from it, as well as from actual sin ; for Christ is “ the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world,” both original and actual, John i. 29.

Q. 40. How may we know the being of original sin, antecedent to the commission of any actual transgression ?

A. From the sore troubles and distresses which infants are liable to, and from death passing upon them before they

are capable of sinning “ after the similitude of Adam’s transgression ;” that is, of committing actual sin, Rom. v. 14.

Q. 41. What do you understand by *actual transgression* or sin ?

A. Every deviation from the law of God in our actions, whether internal or external.

Q. 42. How may actual sin be distinguished from original ?

A. As the act is distinguished from the habit ; or a fault of the person from a fault of the nature.

Q. 43. Is omission of what is required an actual sin as well as the commission of what is forbidden ?

A. Yes ; because all omissions are either accompanied with some act of the will consenting, directly or indirectly, thereunto ; or flow from some antecedent act, which is either the cause, occasion, or impediment of the duty omitted ; as excess in eating and drinking is frequently the cause or occasion of omitting the public or private duties of God’s worship.

Q. 44. From whence do all actual transgressions flow ?

A. They all proceed from original sin, or the corruption of nature, as impure streams from a corrupt fountain, Eph. ii. 3 ; James iii. 11.

Q. 45. What may we learn from the doctrine of original sin ?

A. That it is no wonder the grave opens its devouring mouth for us as soon as we come into the world, seeing we are all, in a spiritual sense, dead-born, Eph. ii. 1 ; that as every thing acts agreeably to its own nature, so corrupt man acts corruptly, Matth. vii. 17, 18 ; and consequently we may learn the necessity of regeneration, and ingraftment in a second Adam, without which it is impossible we can enter into the kingdom of heaven, John iii. 3.

19. Q. What is the misery of that estate whereinto man fell ?

A. All mankind, by their fall, lost communion with God, are under his wrath and curse, and so made liable to all the miseries of this life, to death itself, and to the pains of hell for ever.

Q. 1. What are the branches of man’s misery, expressed in this answer, as the effects of the fall ?

A. They are these three ; the happiness man hath lost ; the evil he lies presently under ; and the future misery and punishment he is liable unto.

Q. 2. Is the loss which man has sustained by the fall great and grievous ?

A. Yes ; it is so great that we have all reason to cry out

with the church, "Wo unto us that we have sinned!" Lam. v. 16. "How is the gold become dim! how is the most fine gold changed!" chap. iv. 1.

Q. 3. What is that great loss which man has sustained by the fall?

A. He has lost all that good that was promised him in the covenant of works, upon condition of his perfect obedience.

Q. 4. What was the good promised?

A. Life in its full latitude and extent; or all the happiness man was capable of, either in this world or that which is to come.

Q. 5. What was man's chief happiness in that state wherein he was created?

A. His chief happiness lay in his enjoyment of fellowship and *communion with God*.

Q. 6. Wherein did that fellowship and *communion* consist?

A. In the most agreeable intimacy and familiarity that man had with God, in the uninterrupted enjoyment of his gracious presence.

Q. 7. How doth it appear that man hath *lost* this by the fall?

A. It appears from his being without God in the world, Eph. ii. 12, and alienated from the life of God, chap. iv. 18.

Q. 8. Did this breach of fellowship between God and man immediately follow upon the first sin?

A. Yes; for we find that our first parents immediately essayed to run from the presence of God, and to hide themselves from him among the trees of the garden, Gen. iii. 8.

Q. 9. Upon what footing had man fellowship with God before the fall?

A. Upon a law-footing, namely, his continuing in his integrity of nature, and yielding perfect obedience to the holy law.

Q. 10. Is that door of access to God, and fellowship with him, condemned and shut against all mankind?

A. Yes; because "all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God," Rom. iii. 23; the broken law, and its curse, stand as an insuperable bar in our way to God and glory, upon the footing of the first covenant, Gal. iii. 10.

Q. 11. What is the second branch of man's misery?

A. His being under the *wrath* and *curse* of God.

Q. 12. What is it to be under the *wrath* of God?

A. It is to be under his anger, in the sad and dismal effects of it, whether in a more visible or more secret way, Psal. xi. 6, and l. 21.

Q. 13. What is it to be under his *curse*?

A. It is to be under the sentence of his law, denouncing all evil upon the transgressor, Gal. iii. 10.

Q. 14. How doth it appear that man is now under the wrath and curse of God ?

A. From these passages of scripture where God is said to be angry with the wicked every day, Psal. vii. 11 ; that his wrath is revealed from heaven against all unrighteousness and ungodliness of men, Rom. i. 18 ; that he who believes not is condemned already, and the wrath of God abideth on him, John iii. 18, 36.

Q. 15. Is the wrath of an infinite God tolerable by a finite creature ?

A. Oh ! no ; “ Who shall dwell with devouring fire ! who shall dwell with everlasting burnings ! ” Isa. xxxiii. 14. “ Who knows the power of his anger ? ” Psal. xc. 11. “ It makes the whole creation groan,” Rom. viii. 22, and when it lighted upon the Son of God for our iniquities, it crushed his human body down to the dust of death, and melted his soul like wax in the midst of his bowels, Psal. xxii. 14, 15.

Q. 16. Can any man hide himself from the presence of an angry God ?

A. No ; there is no flying from the presence of that God who is every where, Psal. cxxxix. 7—13.

Q. 17. What is the third branch of man's misery by the fall ?

A. He is *liable to all the miseries of this life, to death itself, and to the pains of hell for ever.*

Q. 18. What are these miseries which man is liable to in *this life* ?

A. They are such as extend both to his soul and body.

Q. 19. What are these soul-miseries and maladies that sin has entailed upon us ?

A. The precious soul is quite defaced, deformed, and debased from its original beauty and excellency, being stricken with “ blindness of mind, Eph. iv. 18 ; hardness of heart, Rom. ii. 5 ; a reprobate sense, Rom. i. 28 ; strong delusions, 2 Thess. ii. 10 ; a horror of conscience, Isa. xxxiii. 14 ; vile affections, Rom. i. 26 ; ”\* and thralldom and bondage of Satan, Eph. ii. 2.

Q. 20. Is there no medicine against these soul-maladies and miseries ?

A. Yes ; there is “ balm in Gilead, and a physician there,” Jer. viii. 22, who is “ able to save to the uttermost,” Heb. vii. 25 ; and who says, “ Look unto me and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth,” Isa. xlv. 22.

Q. 21. What are these external miseries we are liable to in *this life* ?

A. They are either more public, such as sword, famine, pestilence, desolation by fire and water, captivity, persecution, and

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 28.

the like, Ezek. v. 17 ; or more private and personal, such as, diseases of all sorts, reproach and calumny, toil and labour, poverty and crosses of all kinds, Deut. xxviii. 17, &c.

Q. 22. Do not all these external miseries come alike unto all, both godly and wicked ?

A. Yes, as to the external conduct of providence, Eccl. ix. 2 ; but to the godly they are only fatherly chastisements, and work together for their good, Rom. viii. 28 ; whereas to the wicked they come in a way of vindictive anger, and are but the beginnings of sorrows, unless the goodness of God do lead them to repentance, Rom. ii. 5.

Q. 23. Has sin any other retinue attending it than what has been already mentioned ?

A. Yes ; for like the pale horse, Rev. vi. 8, it has death, and then hell, following after it.

Q. 24. What *death* is here intended ?

A. A corporeal or bodily death, which lies in the separation of soul and body.

Q. 25. Is sin the cause of death ?

A. It is both the cause of death, Rom. v. 12, and the sting of it, 1 Cor. xv. 55, 56.

Q. 26. Is the connexion between sin and death inseparable ?

A. Yes ; they are inseparable by the appointment of the righteous God, who hath said, " The soul that sinneth shall die," Ezek. xviii. 4 ; and " It is appointed unto men once to die," Heb. ix. 27.

Q. 27. How did this appointment of heaven hold in the case of Enoch and Elias ?

A. They underwent what was equivalent to death in their translation to heaven ; it fared with them as with the saints that shall be alive at Christ's second coming, concerning whom it is said, " We shall not all sleep, but we shall be changed," 1 Cor. xv. 51.

Q. 28. What is the difference between the death of believers and the death of the wicked ?

A. To the wicked it comes standing under a covenant of works, but to believers as standing under a covenant of grace : to the one, in the hand of Christ, saying, Death is yours ; to the other, in the hand of Satan, as God's executioner, having the power of death : to the one without, but to the other as armed with a fearful sting ; to the one as an everlasting and irreparable loss ; to the other as eternal and unspeakable gain : to the one as a conqueror, dragging the sinner to the prison of hell ; to the other as a vanquished enemy, paving the way to heaven and glory.

Q. 29. What will be the believer's language when he views death approaching in this light ?

A. Faith will cry out, "O death! where is thy sting?"  
1 Cor. xv. 55.

Q. 30. What will be the language of the wicked when they see death approaching as the king of terrors?

A. It will be like that of Ahab to Elijah, 1 Kings xxi. 20, "Hast thou found me, O mine enemy?"

Q. 31. What misery has sin made us liable to after death?

A. *To the pains of hell for ever.*

Q. 32. What do you understand by *hell*?

A. A state and place of torment, prepared for the devil and his angels, Matth. xxv. 41.

Q. 33. If it was prepared for the devil and his angels, what concern have any of mankind with it?

A. Though it was prepared for the devil and his angels, yet the wicked of the world shall be turned into it also, and the nations that forget God, Psal. ix. 17.

Q. 34. Why must the wicked and ungodly world be turned into hell, with the devil and his angels?

A. Because they served and obeyed the devil as their god, and were in a confederacy with him against the living and true God, Isa. xxviii. 15; Eph. ii. 2.

Q. 35. How manifold are the punishments of the damned in hell?

A. Twofold; the punishment of loss, and the punishment of sense.

Q. 36. What loss shall the damned in hell sustain?

A. They shall lose God, the chief good, Matth. xxv. 41; they shall lose the vision and fruition of the glorious Immanuel, Matth. vii. 23; they shall lose their own souls, Matth. xvi. 26, and all the pleasures of sin and sense, where-in they placed their happiness in this world, Luke xvi. 25.

Q. 37. What will be the punishment of sense which the wicked shall suffer in hell?

A. It is set forth in scripture by their being shut up in utter darkness, Matth. viii. 12; in a lake of fire and brimstone, Rev. xx. 10; where the smoke of their torment shall ascend up for ever, Rev. xiv. 11; which is called the second death, chap. xxi. 8, the worm that never dies, and the fire that shall never be quenched, Mark ix. 44.

Q. 38. How do you prove from scripture, that *the pains of hell* shall be *for ever* or everlasting?

A. The wicked are said to be "cast into everlasting fire," Matth. xviii. 8; "to go away into everlasting punishment," Matth. xxv. 46; to be "punished with everlasting destruction," 2 Thess. i. 9; to have the "mist of darkness reserved for them for ever," 2 Pet. ii. 17; to be "tormented day and

night for ever and ever," Rev. xx. 10, and several other expressions of the like nature.

Q. 39. Is eternity of punishment essential to the threatening or penal sanction of the law ?

A. No ; else there never had been a satisfaction for sin.

Q. 40. Whence then arises the eternity of punishment ?

A. From the nature of the creature, which, being finite, can never be capable to endure the uttermost of infinite wrath, Psal. xc. 11. "Who knoweth the power of thine anger?"

Q. 41. How can it consist with the justice of God to inflict eternal punishment for temporal sinning ?

A. Because sin, objectively considered, is an infinite evil, as being committed against an infinitely holy God ; and therefore nothing can expiate it but a satisfaction of infinite worth, which mere creatures can never yield, 1 Pet. i. 18, 19.

Q. 42. What sort of sinners shall undergo the most dreadful degree of punishment in hell ?

A. The despisers of Christ and the gospel : it will be more tolerable for Sodom and Gomorrah, for Tyre and Sidon, who never heard of Christ, than for Chorazin, Bethsaida, and Capernaum, and other cities, nations, and persons, unto whom Christ and his great salvation have been offered, and yet rejected through unbelief, Matth. xi. 21—25 ; Heb. ii. 3.

Q. 43. What should all this teach us ?

A. That however sin be sweet in the mouth, it will be bitter in the belly, even lamentation, mourning, and wo, in the latter end, Ezek. ii. 10 ; it should teach us to fly from the wrath to come, to the horns of the New-Testament altar, the satisfaction and intercession of Christ ; there being no name whereby we can be saved from sin and wrath but the name of Jesus only, Acts iv. 12.

20. Q. Did God leave all mankind to perish in the estate of sin and misery ?

A. God having out of his mere good pleasure, from all eternity, elected some to everlasting life, did enter into a covenant of Grace, to deliver them out of the estate of sin and misery, and to bring them into an estate of salvation by a Redeemer.

Q. 1. What became of the angels that fell, by their sinning against God ?

A. God left them without remedy in that state of sin and misery into which they plunged themselves ; and hath "delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment," 2 Pet. ii. 4.

Q. 2. When man joined with the devil in a conspiracy against God, did God treat him the same way?

A. No; he had a purpose of grace and love towards some of Adam's race, and therefore, immediately after the fall, declares his fixed intention of assuming the human nature in the person of the Son, that therein he might redeem lost man, and bruise the head of the old serpent that had ruined him, Gen. iii. 15.

Q. 3. When did God's purpose of grace and love, towards any of Adam's family, commence or begin?

A. It never had a beginning; for he loved them from everlasting, Jer. xxxi. 3; Eph. i. 4.

Q. 4. Can any reason be given why God has *elected* fallen man, rather than fallen angels, and why he elected some of Adam's race, and not others of them?

A. It is dangerous to dive into the reasons of holy and adorable Sovereignty; it becomes us to acquiesce in this, that God did it *out of his mere good pleasure*, Eph. i. 5; Matth. xi. 6.

Q. 5. To what happiness did God ordain his elect from among men?

A. He ordained them to *everlasting life*, Acts xiii. 48. "As many as were ordained to eternal life believed."

Q. 6. Did God make choice of any to eternal life, because of their foreseen faith and holiness?

A. No; because faith and holiness are the fruits and effects of election, and therefore can never be the cause thereof, Eph. i. 4, 5, 6.

Q. 7. Is Christ the cause of election?

A. No; the free love of God sent Christ to redeem the elect, and therefore he could not be the cause of electing love, John iii. 16.

Q. 8. Did not Christ procure God's love to an elect world?

A. No; the Father himself loved them, John xvi. 27.

Q. 9. If Christ is not the cause of election, why are the elect said to be chosen in him?

A. Because, in one and the same decree of election, the love of God lighted both upon the head, and upon the members considered as in him, Eph. i. 4.

Q. 10. By whom is it that God brings any of Adam's race unto eternal life?

A. *By a Redeemer*, Rom. xi. 26.

Q. 11. How are sinners of mankind to be viewed in relation to a Redeemer?

A. As lawful captives, Isa. xlix. 24.

Q. 12. What is it to redeem the lawful captives?

A. It is to pay down a sufficient ransom to offended justice

for their deliverance, and to rescue them by mere force and power out of the hands of Satan, Isa. xlix. 25.

Q. 13. What ransom is laid down to offended justice for their deliverance?

A. Nothing less than the precious blood of Christ, or his obedience unto the death, 1 Pet. i. 19.

Q. 14. What right and title has the Redeemer to take the captives by force out of the hands of Satan?

A. The demands of law and justice being satisfied, he has a lawful right, both by donation and purchase, to rescue his captives out of the hands of Satan by his divine power, John xvii. 2.

Q. 15. Why did the Redeemer, in dealing with justice, lay down a price; but in dealing with Satan, act by way of power?

A. Because God being the creditor, had a right to demand a price, but Satan being only the jailor, has no law-right to detain the prisoner after the creditor is satisfied; and yet refusing to quit hold of his captives, the Redeemer's power must be put forth for their deliverance, Luke xi. 22.

Q. 16. Was there a covenant-transaction entered into for their deliverance by price and power?

A. Yes, Psal. lxxxix. 3, "I have made a covenant with my Chosen."

Q. 17. How is that covenant called?

A. *A covenant of grace.*

Q. 18. Why called a covenant of grace?

A. Because it is a covenant of eternal life and salvation to sinners, to be given them in a way of free grace and mercy, Jer. xxxi. 33, 34.

Q. 19. Are not heaven and earth both concerned in this covenant?

A. Yes; because it is a covenant of peace betwixt them, Isa. liv. 9, 10.

Q. 20. Who is the party-contractor on heaven's side?

A. It is God himself, the proposer of the covenant, and the offended party, Psal. lxxxix. 3.

Q. 21. Whether is it God essentially considered, or as in the person of the Father, that is the party-contractor on heaven's side?

A. God essentially considered is the party-contractor on heaven's side, in the person of the Father.

Q. 22. Who is the party-contractor on man's side?

A. It is Christ, the Chosen of God, as he is called, Luke xxiii. 35.

Q. 23. Wherein consists the making of this covenant?

A. In the mutual agreement betwixt God and his chosen One.

Q. 24. When was this covenant made?

A. From all eternity, or before the world began, Tit. i. 2.

Q. 25. With whom was the covenant of grace made?

A. "With Christ as the second (or last) Adam, and in him with all the elect as his seed," Gal. iii. 16.\*

Q. 26. Why is Christ called the last Adam, 1 Cor. xv. 45?

A. Because, as the first Adam was the federal head of all his natural offspring, in the covenant of works, so Christ is the last Adam, because he was the federal head of his spiritual seed in the covenant of grace; the last covenant that ever will be made about man's eternal happiness.

Q. 27. How was the covenant of grace made with Christ as the second or last Adam?

A. The Father purposed that a remnant of lost mankind should be the members of Christ's body, and gave them to him for that end; and Christ, standing as a second Adam, accepted the gift, John xvii. 6; as also, the Father proposed to him, as the last Adam, the covenant of grace in the full tenor, condition, and promises thereof, to which he consented: and thus the covenant of rich grace was concluded between them, Zech. vi. 13. "The council of peace shall be between them both."

Q. 28. How are we to conceive of the covenant of grace, in respect of order and being?

A. Although the covenant of grace was the second covenant, in respect of order and manifestation to the world, yet it was first in respect of being, because it was actually made with Christ from eternity, Tit. i. 2.

Q. 29. How do you prove, from scripture, that there was such a covenant made with Christ?

A. From Isa. xlii. 6; "I will give thee for a covenant of the people;" and Heb. viii. 6, where Christ is called "the Mediator of a better covenant;" and from Heb. xiii. 20, where we read of "the blood of the everlasting covenant."

Q. 30. What was the ancient usage in making of covenants?

A. It was to cut a beast in twain, and to pass between the parts of it, Jer. xxxiv. 18.

Q. 31. What doth this usage import, as applied to God's making a covenant with his chosen?

A. It imports, that it was a "covenant by sacrifice," Psal. l. 5.

Q. 32. What was the sacrifice in this covenant?

A. It was Christ himself, the party-contractor on man's side, Heb. ix. 26.

Q. 33. What was the sword that cut this sacrifice asunder?

A. It was divine justice, Zech. xiii. 7.

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 31.

Q. 34. How is Christ, the party-contractor on man's side, to be considered in this covenant ?

A. He is to be considered as the head and representative of his spiritual seed, Isa. lix. 21.

Q. 35. How doth it appear that Christ is the head and representative of his spiritual seed in this covenant ?

A. From his making of the promises originally to him ; and from his being the surety of the covenant.

Q. 36. When were the promises made unto him ?

A. Before the world began ; which, in scripture-style, is the same as from eternity, Tit. i. 2. " In hope of eternal life, which God, who cannot lie, promised before the world began." And there was none before the world began, to whom the promise of eternal life could be made personally, but to Christ, as the head and representative of his seed.

Q. 37. How do you prove, from scripture, that Christ was surety for his spiritual seed in this covenant ?

A. From Heb. vii. 22. " By so much was Jesus made a surety of a better testament."

Q. 38. In what sense was he surety for them ?

A. He was their surety in a way of satisfaction for all their debt of obedience and punishment, by taking it wholly on himself, as for persons utterly insolvent.

Q. 39. How is Christ's being the surety of the covenant an evidence of its being made with him as the representative of his seed ?

A. Because, by his being surety for them, he became one with them in the eye of the law : hence is Christ said, not only to be made sin for us, but we are said to be " made the righteousness of God in him," 2 Cor. v. 21.

Q. 40. Why was the covenant of grace made with Christ as the head and representative of his spiritual seed ?

A. That the love of God, and the covenant of grace, might be of the same eternal date ; for as the love of God is an " everlasting love," Jer. xxxi. 3, so the covenant of grace is an " everlasting covenant," Heb. xiii. 20.

Q. 41. Who is the party represented and contracted for in the covenant of grace ?

A. The elect of mankind.

Q. 42. What understand you by the elect of mankind ?

A. A certain number of mankind, chosen from eternity, to everlasting life.

Q. 43. How doth it appear that the elect were the party represented and contracted for ?

A. Because the party with whom the covenant was made, is called God's CHOSEN, Psal. lxxxix. 3. " I have made a co-

venant with my Chosen ;” that is, with Christ, as contracting for all the chosen, or elect of God.

Q. 44. Why are the elect called Christ’s seed, Psal. lxxxix. 4?

A. Because he begets them with the word of truth, James i. 18; and they are born again to him in their regeneration, John iii. 3.

Q. 45. Why is Christ said to take on him “the seed of Abraham,” Heb. ii. 16, and not rather the seed of Adam?

A. To show that it was the elect only that he represented; inasmuch as the seed of Abraham are but a part of Adam’s seed, which includes all mankind.

Q. 46. How are the elect of God to be considered in this covenant and federal representation?

A. They are to be considered as lost sinners, and as utterly unable to help themselves in whole or in part, Hos. xiii. 9; and yet withal as given to Christ by the Father, as objects of eternal, sovereign, and free love, John xvii. 6, 9.

Q. 47. Wherein does the freedom of this electing love appear?

A. In pitching upon objects altogether unlovely, Ezek. xvi. 6.

Q. 48. Wherein does the sovereignty of it appear?

A. In pitching on some such unlovely objects, and passing by others in the same condition, Rom. ix. 21.

Q. 49. Was it any disparagement to the federal representation of the second Adam, that he represented only some of mankind, whereas the first Adam represented the whole of his race?

A. No; because it was unspeakably more for Christ to undertake and contract for one sinner, than for Adam to contract for a whole righteous world.

Q. 50. Is what is called by some divines the covenant of redemption a distinct covenant from the covenant of grace?

A. Although Christ alone engaged from eternity to pay the price of our redemption, on which account the covenant is wholly of free grace to us; yet there is no warrant from scripture to suppose a covenant of redemption distinct from the covenant of grace.

Q. 51. How many covenants are there for life and happiness to man in scripture reckoning?

A. There are but two in number; whereof the covenant of works is one, and consequently the covenant of grace must be the other.

Q. 52. How do you prove, from scripture, that there are but two covenants, whereof the covenant of works is one?

A. From Gal. iv. 24, where it is said, “These are the two covenants, the one from Mount Sinai, which gendereth to bondage.”

Q. 53. How doth it appear that the one from Mount Sinai, which gendereth to bondage, is the covenant of works?

A. Because the generating of bond-children excluded from the inheritance, Gal. iv. 30, is a distinguished character of the covenant of works, which cannot agree to the covenant of grace under any dispensation thereof.

Q. 54. Was then the covenant at Mount Sinai a covenant of works?

A. The covenant of works was only repeated at Mount Sinai, together with the covenant of grace; to show to all Israel, that the clearing of both the principal and penalty of the covenant of works was laid on Christ, as the condition of the covenant of grace.

Q. 55. Does the scripture make mention of the blood of any more covenants but one?

A. The scripture makes mention of the blood of the covenant, in the singular number, four several times, namely, Exod. xxiv. 8; Zech. ix. 11; Heb. x. 29; and xiii. 20; but nowhere speaks of the blood of the covenants in the plural number.

Q. 56. What is the native consequence of the scripture's mentioning the blood of the covenant, in the singular number, and not the blood of the covenants, in the plural number?

A. The consequence is, that the covenant, the blood whereof the scripture mentions, and upon which our salvation depends, is but ONE covenant and not two.

Q. 57. What is the received doctrine in our standards upon this head?

A. Our standards make no distinction between a covenant of redemption and a covenant of grace.\*

Q. 58. Is the covenant of grace conditional, or absolutely free?

A. It was strictly conditional to the Surety, Isa. xlix. 3, but is absolutely free to the sinner, Jer. xxxi. 33, 34.

Q. 59. What is the proper condition of the covenant of grace?

A. It is Christ, as representative and Surety, his "fulfilling all righteousness," owing unto God by his spiritual seed, in virtue of the broken covenant of works, Matth. iii. 15.

Q. 60. Wherein consists that righteousness which Christ had to fulfil, as the condition of the covenant of grace?

A. In the holiness of his human nature, perfect conformity to the law in his life, and satisfaction for sin in his death.

Q. 61. Why was holiness of nature necessary as a conditional article of the covenant?

\* For proof of this, See Larger Catechism, quest. 31. "With whom was the covenant of grace made? A. The covenant of grace was made with Christ as the second Adam, and in him with all the elect as his seed," Isa. liii. 10, 11; Rom. v. 15, to the end; Gal. iii. 16.

A. Because nothing being so opposite to God as an unholy nature, and yet the elect having their natures wholly corrupted, it was therefore necessary that Christ, their representative, should have a human nature perfectly pure and holy, fully answering, for them, the holiness and perfection of nature required by the law, Heb. vii. 26.

Q. 62. Why was righteousness of life, or perfect conformity to the law, necessary as a conditional article of the covenant?

A. Because Adam, as a public head, having failed in his obedience, there could be no entering into life for him, or any of his natural seed, without keeping the commandments by the Surety, Matth. xix. 17. "If thou wilt enter into life, keep the commandments."

Q. 63. Has Christ fulfilled this part of the condition?

A. Yes; for "he became obedient unto death," Phil. ii. 8.

Q. 64. Was satisfaction for sin any part of the condition of Adam's covenant?

A. No; holiness of nature, and righteousness of life, were the sole conditions of it.

Q. 65. How then came satisfaction for sin to be a conditional article in the new covenant?

A. Because the covenant of works being broken, and the penalty thereof incurred,—the holiness, justice, and veracity of God insisted that, without shedding blood, there could be no remission, Heb. ix. 22.

Q. 66. What was the conditional article of the covenant relative to satisfaction for sin?

A. That all the sins of an elect world, being summed up as so many breaches of the law, or covenant of works, Christ, as a public person, should satisfy fully and completely for them all, Isa. liii. 5, 6.

Q. 67. How was he to make this satisfaction?

A. By suffering, Luke xxiv. 26. "Ought not Christ to have suffered these things?"

Q. 68. What was it that he had to suffer?

A. The very same punishment the elect should have undergone for the breach of the covenant of works; and that is, death in its full latitude and extent, Gen. ii. 17, compared with 2 Cor. v. 14.

Q. 69. What is that death in the full latitude and extent thereof which Christ had to endure in a way of satisfaction for sin?

A. It was both the curse, or sentence, of the broken law, binding him over, as the Surety, to suffer all that revenging wrath which sin deserved; and likewise the actual execution of this sentence upon him to the uttermost, for the full satisfaction of justice, Gal. iii. 10; Ezek. xviii. 4.

Q. 70. Hath Christ fulfilled this part of the condition?

A. Yes; he was "made a curse for us," Gal. iii. 13, "and hath given himself for us, an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweet-smelling savour," Eph. v. 12.

Q. 71. How doth it appear that this righteousness of Christ is the condition of the covenant of grace?

A. Because his fulfilling all righteousness is the only ground of a sinner's right and title to eternal life, Rom. v. 21, and the sole foundation of his plea before God, Phil. iii. 8, 9.

Q. 72. Why may not faith, or believing, be the condition of the covenant of grace?

A. Because faith is promised in the covenant itself, Zech. xii. 10, and therefore cannot be the condition thereof.

Q. 73. May not faith be the condition, when the scripture saith, that Abraham's faith "was counted unto him for righteousness," Rom. iv. 3?

A. It was the object which Abraham's faith terminated upon, namely, Christ and his righteousness, and not his faith itself, or his act of believing, that was counted to him for righteousness.

Q. 74. What place then has faith in the covenant?

A. It has the place of an instrument and gift, and is necessary as such, savingly to interest us in Christ,\* John i. 12; and to determine us to acquiesce in his fulfilling the condition of the covenant for us, Isa. xlv. 24.

Q. 75. What may we learn from the conditional part of the covenant, as fulfilled by Christ?

A. That the redemption of the soul is precious, being ransomed at no less a sum than the holy birth, righteous life, and satisfactory death of the Son of God, 1 Pet. i. 19; and that the law is so far from being made void through faith, that it is established thereby, Rom. iii. 31.

Q. 76. Seeing in every covenant there is a promise, what are the promises of the covenant of grace?

A. They are such as have either their direct and immediate effect upon Christ himself, as the head, or such as have their direct and immediate effect on the elect, comprehended with him in the covenant.

Q. 77. What are these promises that have their direct and immediate effect on Christ himself, as the head of the covenant?

A. The promise of assistance in his work, Psal. lxxxix. 21; of the acceptance thereof, Isa. xlii. 21; and of a glorious reward to be conferred on him, as the proper merit of his work done, Isa. lii. 13.

\* See Larger Catechism, ans. to quest. 32.

Q. 78. What are the promises that have their direct and immediate effect upon the elect?

A. They are all the promises pertaining to life and godliness; the promises of grace and glory, and of every good thing, which may all be comprehended in this one, to wit, the promise of eternal life, mentioned Tit. i. 2; "In hope of eternal life, which God, that cannot lie, hath promised before the world began;" and 1 John ii. 25; "This is the promise that he hath promised us, even eternal life."

Q. 79. What is meant by the promise of eternal life?

A. It comprehends in it all true happiness, and the everlastingness thereof.

Q. 80. How is it evident that all true and eternal happiness is comprehended in the meaning of the promises of eternal life?

A. Inasmuch as the death threatened in the covenant of works comprehended all misery in this world, and in the world to come, so the life promised in the covenant of grace must needs comprehend all happiness in time and eternity, with all the means by which it is compassed, Rom. vi. 23.

Q. 81. To whom was this promise of eternal life made?

A. To Christ primarily, and to the elect secondarily, in and through him; as is evident from Tit. i. 2, compared with 1 John ii. 25.

Q. 82. To whom are the promises of the covenant indorsed or directed?

A. To all who hear the gospel, with their seed, Acts ii. 39. "The promise is to you and to your children."

Q. 83. What right to the promises have all the hearers of the gospel by this general indorsement of them?

A. A right of access to the promises, and all the good that is in them, so as to be rendered inexcusable if they believe not, John iii. 18.

Q. 84. What right doth faith, or believing, give unto the promises?

A. A right of possession, in virtue of union with Christ, in whom all the promises are "yea, and amen," John iii. 36. "He that believeth—HATH everlasting life."

Q. 85. What may we learn from the promissory part of the covenant?

A. That all the benefits thereof are the free gifts of grace, running in the channel of the obedience and death of Christ, and are in him perfectly sure to the elect seed, Isa. lv. 3.

Q. 86. Was there any penalty in the covenant of grace, as there was in the covenant of works?

A. Although there was a penalty in the covenant of

works, because Adam, with whom it was made, was a fallible creature; yet there could be none in the covenant of grace, because Christ, the party contracting on man's side, was absolutely infallible, and could not fail, Isa. xiii. 4.

Q. 87. Are not the elect, the party contracted for, fallible, even after they are brought to believe?

A. It is certain that believers are fallible, in respect of their actions, as long as they are in this world, Eccl. vii. 20; but not in respect of their state, Job xvii. 9; they can no more fall from their state of grace than the saints in heaven can, John xiii. 1.

Q. 88. Can fatherly chastisements be called a penalty in the covenant of grace, with respect unto believers?

A. No; because they are not vindictive, but medicinal, and do really belong to the promissory part of the covenant, as is evident from Psal. lxxxix. 30, 35; Isa. xxvii. 9; Heb. xii. 6, 7.

Q. 89. What security have believers against any proper penalty in this covenant?

A. They have the security of Christ's performing the condition of it for them, and his doing so legally sustained in their favours, 2 Cor. v. 21.

Q. 90. On whom is the administration of the covenant of grace devolved?

A. On Christ the second Adam alone, and that as a reward of his work, Isa. xlix. 8.

Q. 91. What do you understand by the administration of the covenant?

A. The entire management of it, whereby it may be rendered effectual to the end for which it was made, Psal. lxxxix. 28.

Q. 92. Who are the objects of this administration?

A. Sinners of mankind indefinitely, or any of the family of Adam without exception, John iii. 14, 15.

Q. 93. How doth he administer the covenant to sinners of mankind indefinitely?

A. In the general offer of the gospel, which is "good tidings to ALL PEOPLE," Luke ii. 10; and wherein all, without exception, are declared welcome, Prov. viii. 4; Mark xvi. 15.

Q. 94. What is the foundation of the unlimited administration of the covenant in the gospel-offer?

A. It is not founded on election, but on the intrinsic sufficiency on Christ's obedience and death, for the salvation of all, John i. 29.

Q. 95. For what end does he thus administer the covenant to sinners of mankind?

A. *To deliver them out of the estate of sin and misery, and to bring them into an estate of salvation, Gal. iii. 21, 22.*

Q. 96. How doth he bring them into an estate of salvation ?

A. By bringing them personally and savingly into the "bond of the covenant," Ezek. xx. 37, in the day of his power, when "one shall say, I am the Lord's,—and another subscribe with his hand unto the Lord," Isa. xlv. 5.

Q. 97. How long will he continue to be the administrator of the covenant ?

A. As he dispenses all the blessings of the covenant here, John iii. 35, so he will complete the happiness of the saints in the other world, by a perfect accomplishment of all the promises thereof unto them, Eph. v. 27.

Q. 98. How doth it appear that he will be the administrator of the covenant through eternity ?

A. Because he is to remain the eternal bond of union, Heb. vii. 25, and mean of communication, betwixt God and the saints for ever, Rev. vii. 17.

Q. 99. What is the first and fundamental act of his administration ?

A. It is his disposing the all things, which he hath in his hand as the appointed trustee of the covenant, unto poor sinners, by way of a TESTAMENT, Luke xxii. 29. "I appoint (or dispone) unto you a kingdom, as my Father hath appointed unto me."

Q. 100. What is the difference between a federal and a testamentary disposition ?

A. A federal disposition is made upon an onerous cause, or proper condition ; but a testamentary disposition is a deed, or conveyance, of grace and bounty, without all conditions, properly so called.

Q. 101. How is this applied to the Father's disposition and Christ's ?

A. The Father's federal disposition of all covenant-benefits to Christ was on condition of his making "his soul an offering for sin," Isa. liii. 10 ; but Christ's testamentary disposition to sinners, who have nothing, is "without money, and without price," chap. lv. 1.

Q. 102. Is Christ's testament of the same date with the covenant that was made with him ?

A. The covenant of grace was made with him from eternity ; but it is obvious that his commencing testator of this covenant, being an act of his administration thereof, could not take place till the covenant of works was broken.

Q. 103. At what time then did he make his testament ?

A. That very day wherein Adam fell, in the first promise, Gen. iii. 15.

Q. 104. How could his testament be of force (according to Heb. ix. 17) so long time before his actual death ?

A. He died typically in all the sacrifices of the Old Testament, hence called "the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world," Rev. xiii. 8.

Q. 105. Who are the legatees, or parties, in whose favour the testament was made?

A. Since Christ is authorized by the Father to administer the covenant to mankind-sinners indefinitely, John vi. 37, none of these can be accepted out of his testament, as to the external revelation and exhibition of it, any more than they are out of his administration, Rev. xxii. 17.

Q. 106. Who is the executor of his testament?

A. Although, in testaments among men, the testator and executor are always different persons, because the testator dying, cannot live again to see his will executed, yet here the testator, who was dead, is alive for evermore, as the executor of his own testament, by his spirit, Rev. i. 18; Rom. iv. 25.

Q. 107. What are the legacies left in his testament?

A. They are all the benefits of the covenant, even HIMSELF, and ALL THINGS in and with him, Rom. viii. 32; Rev. xxi. 7.

Q. 108. By what means is it that sinners are possessed of these rich legacies?

A. By faith or believing in the Lord Jesus Christ, Acts xvi. 31.

Q. 109. Why is believing on Christ the appointed mean of instating sinners in the covenant, and legacies thereof?

A. Because hereby the grace of the covenant is preserved entire "to the end the promise might be sure to all the seed," Rom. iv. 16.

Q. 110. How may persons know if they are savingly and personally within the covenant of grace?

A. If they have found themselves unable to dwell any longer within the boundaries of the covenant of works, and "have fled for refuge" from that covenant, "to lay hold upon the hope set before them," Heb. vi. 18.

Q. 111. Wherein do the covenant of works and grace DIFFER from one another?

A. They differ in their nature, parties-contractors, properties, conditions, promises, the order of obedience, in their end and design, the manner of their administration, and in their effects.

Q. 112. Wherein do these two covenants of works and grace differ in their nature?

A. The covenant of works was a covenant of friendship, and supposed the parties to be in perfect amity; but the covenant of grace is a covenant of reconciliation, and supposes man to be at variance with God, and enmity against him, 2 Cor. v. 19.

Q. 113. Wherein do they differ as to the parties-contractors?

A. In the covenant of works, the parties-contractors were God, and innocent Adam, representing all his natural seed ; but in the covenant of grace the parties are God and CHRIST the second Adam, representing all his spiritual seed, Psal. lxxxix. 3, 4.

Q. 114. How do they differ in their properties ?

A. The covenant of works, as standing with the first Adam, was but shortlived ; but the covenant of grace, which stands fast with the second Adam, is an everlasting covenant, Heb. xiii. 20 ; the covenant of works denounced nothing but wrath and curses upon the transgressor ; but the covenant of grace is full of blessings to the sinner in Christ, Eph. i. 3.

Q. 115. Wherein do they differ in their conditions ?

A. The condition of the covenant of works was only the perfect obedience of a mere man, bearing no proportion to the life promised ; but the condition of the covenant of grace is the perfect righteousness of God-man, which is fully adequate to the promised reward, Jer. xxiii. 6.

Q. 116. How do they differ in their promises ?

A. The promise of the covenant of works was strictly conditional ; but the promises of the covenant of grace, as respecting us, are absolutely free, Jer. xxxi. 33, 34.

Q. 117. Wherein do they differ in the order of obedience ?

A. In the covenant of works, duty or obedience was the foundation of privilege : acceptance first began at the work, and then went to the person, if the work was perfectly right : but in the covenant of grace, this order is quite inverted ; for therein privilege is the foundation of duty ; and acceptance first begins at the person, and then goes on to the work, because flowing from a principle of faith, Gen. iv. 4, compared with Heb. xi. 4.

Q. 118. How do they differ in their end and design ?

A. The end of the covenant of works was to show man what he was to do towards God ; but the end of the covenant of grace is to show man what God is to do for him, and in him, Isa. xxvi. 12.

Q. 119. How do they differ in the manner of their administration ?

A. The covenant of works was dispensed by God absolutely considered ; but the covenant of grace is dispensed by a Mediator, who is himself the ALL of the covenant, Isa. xlii. 6.

Q. 120. Wherein do these two covenants differ in their effects ?

A. The covenant of works wounds and terrifies a guilty sinner, but the covenant of grace heals and comforts a wounded soul, Isa. xlii. 3 ; the covenant of works shuts up

to hell and wrath, but the covenant of grace casts open a door of escape, John x. 9, and xiv. 6.

Q. 121. What may we learn from this whole doctrine of the covenant of grace?

A. That it is our duty to believe, that **JESUS CHRIST** is the Saviour of the world, and our Saviour in particular, by his Father's appointment, and his own offer; and that by the same appointment and offer, his righteousness, which is the condition of the covenant, and eternal life, which is the promise thereof, are **OURS** in respect of right thereto, so as that we may lawfully and warrantably take possession of the same, and use them as our **OWN**, to all the intents and purposes of salvation, John iv. 42. "We know that this is indeed the Christ, the **SAVIOUR** of the World." Luke i. 47. "My spirit hath rejoiced in God **MY SAVIOUR**."

21. Q. Who is the Redeemer of God's elect?

A. The only Redeemer of God's elect is the Lord Jesus Christ, who, being the eternal Son of God, became man, and so was, and continueth to be God and man, in two distinct natures, and one person, for ever.

Q. 1. What is the greatest wonder that ever the world saw?

A. The incarnation of the son of God, John i. 14; Jer. xxxi. 22.

Q. 2. What makes this the greatest wonder?

A. Because thereby two natures, infinitely distant, are united in one person; hence called a "great mystery," 1 Tim. iii. 16.

Q. 3. Was this great event foretold before it came about?

A. Yes; God spake of it "by the mouth of his holy prophets, which have been since the world began," Luke i. 70.

Q. 4. By what names did they speak of his coming?

A. By a variety of names, such as Shiloh, Gen. xlix. 10; Messiah, Dan. ix. 25; Immanuel, Isa. vii. 14; the Branch, Zech. vi. 12; the Messenger of the covenant, Mal. iii. 1, and several others.

Q. 5. Is he now actually come into the world?

A. Yes, long ago; and it "is a faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptance, that Christ Jesus came into the world," 1 Tim. i. 15,— "not to condemn the world, but that the world through him might be saved," John iii. 17.

Q. 6. How do you prove, that our Lord Jesus Christ is the true promised Messiah?

A. By this one argument, that all things which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the Psalms concerning the Messiah, are literally fulfilled in Jesus of Nazareth, Luke xxiv. 44.

Q. 7. How doth this appear?

A. By comparing every prophecy and promise concerning him in the Old Testament, with the exact accomplishment thereof in the New, Acts iii. 18.

Q. 8. What silencing questions may be put to the Jews who deny that the Messiah is yet come in the flesh?

A. They may be asked, Where is the sceptre of civil government, which was not to depart from Judah until Shiloh came, according to Gen. xlix. 10? Where is the second temple, into which the Messiah was to come, and to make the glory of it greater than the glory of the former, by his personal appearance therein, according to Hag. ii. 9? Where is the sacrifice and oblation now offered? Has it not long ago ceased, according to Dan. ix. 27? And where is the family of David, out of which Christ was to spring, according to Isa. xi. 1? is it not now quite extinct? They are utterly incapable of answering any of these.

Q. 9. What doth the title of a *Redeemer* suppose with reference to the redeemed?

A. Bondage and captivity to sin, Satan, the world, death, and hell, through the breach of the first covenant, hence called lawful captives, Isa. xlix. 24.

Q. 10. Are all mankind, the elect of God as well as others, under this bondage and captivity by nature?

A. Yes; as is evident from Eph. ii. 1, 2, 3.

Q. 11. Why is Christ called the *only* Redeemer of God's elect?

A. Because there was none capable of the vast undertaking but himself, Isa. lxiii. 5.

Q. 12. How doth Christ redeem the elect from their spiritual bondage and captivity?

A. By price and power; or by ransom, 1 Pet. i. 19; and conquest, Isa. xlix. 25.

Q. 13. What ransom or price did he lay down?

A. His own life, Matth. xx. 28. "The Son of man came—to give his life a ransom for many."

Q. 14. How doth Christ redeem by power or conquest?

A. When, by his word and Spirit, he looses the bonds of the captives, and "says to the prisoners, Go forth; and to them that sit in darkness, Show yourselves," Isa. xlix. 9; and thus spoils "principalities and powers," Col. ii. 15.

Q. 15. Why is the Redeemer called *Lord*?

A. Because as God, whose name alone is *JEHOVAH*, he is most high over all the earth, Psal. lxxxiii. 18; and as Mediator, all power in heaven and earth is given unto him, Matth. xxviii. 18.

Q. 16. Why is he called *Jesus*?

A. Because he saves his people from their sins, Matth. i. 21.

Q. 17. Why is he called *Christ*?

A. Christ in the Greek, and Messiah in the Hebrew language, signify one and the same thing, John i. 41; to wit, the Anointed, Acts x. 38; which implies his designation unto his mediatory office, and his being fully qualified for it.

Q. 18. Whereupon is Christ's sufficiency for the great work of our redemption founded?

A. Upon the infinite dignity of his person, *as being the eternal Son of God*, 1 John v. 20.

Q. 19. Is Christ the Son of God by nature, or only by office?

A. Christ is the eternal Son of God by nature; his Sonship is equally natural and necessary with the Paternity of the Father, Matth. xxviii. 19; 2 John ver. 3.

Q. 20. What would be the danger of asserting that Christ is called the Son of God, only with respect to his mediatory office?

A. This would make his personality depend upon the divine will and good pleasure, as it is certain his mediatory office did, John iii. 16, and consequently he would not be the self-existent God.

Q. 21. Might not the Sonship of Christ be the result of the divine will, though his personality is not so?

A. No; because his Sonship is his proper personality; and therefore to make his Sonship the result of the divine will is to overturn the personal properties of the Father and Son, and consequently to deny both, 1 John ii. 23.

Q. 22. How do you prove from scripture, that Christ's Sonship is distinguished from his office?

A. From John vii. 29, where Christ, speaking of his Father, says, "I know him, for I am FROM him, and he hath SENT me:" Where it is evident, that his being FROM the Father, as to his eternal generation, is distinguished from his being SENT by him, as to his office.

Q. 23. What did this glorious person, the eternal Son of God, become, that he might be our Redeemer?

A. He *became Man*, John i. 14; Gal. iv. 4.

Q. 24. When he became man, did he cease to be God?

A. No; but he became Immanuel, God-man, Matth. i. 23.

Q. 25. What is the import of the name Immanuel?

A. It imports that God is in our nature; and that a God in our nature is not against us, but a God with us, and for us, to save us from the hands of all our enemies, Luke i. 71.

Q. 26. What moved God to become man in the person of the Son?

A. Nothing but matchless and undeserved grace and love, 1 John iv. 10.

Q. 27. How many *natures* hath Christ?

A. Two; namely, the nature of God, and the nature of man, 1 Tim. iii. 16.

Q. 28. Why are they called *two distinct* natures?

A. In opposition to the error of the Eutychians of old, who maintained that the two natures were mixed or blended together, so as to make but one nature.

Q. 29. Why is he said to have but *one person*?

A. In opposition to the error of the Nestorians, who maintained, that each nature was a person; or that he had two persons.

Q. 30. How doth it appear that the two natures of God and man are united in the person of the Son?

A. From Isa. ix. 6; "Unto us a child is born,—and his name shall be called,—the mighty God." It neither being possible nor true, that he who is the child born, could be the mighty God, but by the union of the divine and human natures in one person, Rom. ix. 5; 1 Tim. iii. 6.

Q. 31. Will ever the union betwixt the two natures be dissolved?

A. By no means; for he continues to be our Kinsman, Priest, and Representative, in both natures for ever, Heb. vii. 24, 25.

Q. 32. Does not each nature, notwithstanding of this union, still retain its own essential properties?

A. Yes; the divine nature is not made finite, subject to suffering or change; nor is the human nature rendered omniscient, omnipresent, and omnipotent, as the Lutherans, contrary to scripture and reason, do affirm.

Q. 33. Are not the acts and works of either of the two natures, to be ascribed to the person of Christ?

A. Yes; because all he did and suffered, or continues to do, as Mediator, must be considered as personal acts, and from thence they derive their value and efficacy, Acts xx. 28.

Q. 34. Why is the union of the two natures called an hypostatical or personal union?

A. Because the human nature is united unto, and subsists in the person of the Son of God, Luke i. 35.

Q. 35. What is the difference between the hypostatical union, and the union that takes place among the persons of the adorable Trinity?

A. The union that takes place among the persons of the adorable Trinity, is a union of three persons in one and the same numerical nature and essence; but the hypostatical is a union of two natures in one person.

Q. 36. What is the difference between the hypostatical union, and the union that takes place betwixt the soul and body?

A. Death dissolves the union that is betwixt the soul and the body ; but though the soul was separated from the body of Christ, when it was in the grave, yet both soul and body were even then united to the person of the Son as much as ever.

Q. 37. What is the difference betwixt the hypostatical union and the mystical union that is betwixt Christ and believers ?

A. Both natures in the hypostatical union are still but one person ; whereas, though believers be said to be in Christ, and Christ in them, yet they are not one person with him.

Q. 38. Why is it requisite that our Redeemer should be *man* ?

A. That being our kinsman and blood-relation, the right of redemption might devolve upon him ; and that he might be capable of obeying and suffering in our own nature, Heb. ii. 14.\*

Q. 39. Why was it requisite that our Mediator should be *God* ?

A. That his obedience and sufferings in our nature and room might be of infinite value for our redemption, Acts xx. 28 ; and that the human nature might be supported under the infinite load of divine wrath, which he had to bear for our sins, Rom. i. 4.†

Q. 40. “ Why was it requisite that the Mediator should be God and man in one person ? ”

A. “ That the proper works of each nature might be accepted of God for us, and relied on by us, as the works of the whole person,” Heb. ix. 14 ; 1 Pet. ii. 6.‡

Q. 41. What may we learn from the indissolvable union of the two natures in the person of Christ ?

A. That this union shall be an everlasting security for the perpetuity of the union betwixt Christ and believers : that the one shall never be dissolved more than the other ; for he hath said, “ Because I live, ye shall live also,” John. xiv. 19.

22. Q. How did Christ, being the Son of God, become man ?

A. Christ, the Son of God, became man, by taking to himself a true body and a reasonable soul, being conceived by the power of the Holy Ghost, in the womb of the virgin Mary, and born of her, yet without sin.

Q. 1. Did Christ assume the person of a man ?

A. No ; he assumed the human nature, but not a human person, Heb. ii. 16.

Q. 2. Had ever the human nature of Christ a distinct personality of its own ?

A. No ; it never subsisted one moment by itself, Luke i. 35.

Q. 3. What is the reason that the human nature of Christ never subsisted by itself ?

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 39. † Ibid. quest. 38. ‡ Ibid. quest. 40.

A. Because it was formed and assumed at once; for the same moment wherein the soul was united to the body, both soul and body subsisted in the person of the Son of God.

Q. 4. How came the human nature to subsist in the person of the Son?

A. The whole Trinity adapted and fitted the human nature to him; but the assumption thereof, into a personal subsistence with himself, was the peculiar act of the Son, Heb. ii. 14, 16.

Q. 5. Since the human nature of Christ has no personality of its own, is it not more imperfect than in other men, when all other men are human persons?

A. The human nature of Christ is so far from being imperfect by the want of a personality of its own, that it is unspeakably more perfect and excellent than in all other men; because to subsist in God, or in a divine person, is incomparably more noble and excellent than to subsist by itself.

Q. 6. Wherein lies the matchless and peculiar dignity of the human nature of Christ?

A. That it subsists in the second person of the Godhead, by a personal and indissolvable union.

Q. 7. What is the difference between the human nature and a human person?

A. A human person subsists by itself; but the human nature subsists in a person.

Q. 8. When Christ became man, did he become another person than he was before?

A. No; there was no change in his person; for he assumed our nature unto his former personality, which he had from eternity.

Q. 9. What is the reason that the assumption of the human nature made no change in the divine person of the Son?

A. Because the human nature was assumed by Christ without a human personality.

Q. 10. Whether is it more proper to say, that the human nature subsists in the divine nature, or in the divine person of Christ?

A. It is most proper to say, that it subsists in the divine person of Christ, because the natures are DISTINCT, but the person is ONE; and it was the divine nature only, as it terminates in the second person, which assumed the human nature into personal union.

Q. 11. Can we not say, in a consistency with truth, that the man Christ Jesus is God?

A. To be sure we may: because, in this case, we speak only of the person, which includes the human nature.

Q. 12. But can we say, in consistency with truth, that Christ Jesus, as man, is God?

A. No ; because in this case, we speak only of the human nature ; which does not include his divine person.

Q. 13. What is the human nature, or wherein does it consist ?

A. It consists in *a true body and a reasonable soul*, of which, the first Adam, and every man and woman descending from him are possessed.

Q. 14. Had our Redeemer always a true body and a reasonable soul, subsisting in his divine person ?

A. No ; until he came in the fulness of time, and then he took unto himself a true body and a reasonable soul.

Q. 15. How do you prove that he took this human nature to himself ?

A. From Heb. ii. 14, 16. " Verily, he took not on him the nature of angels, but he took on him the seed of Abraham."

Q. 16. Why is Christ said to take to himself a *true body* ?

A. To show that he had real flesh and bones as we have, Luke xxiv. 39 ; and that it was not only the mere shape and appearance of a human body as some ancient heretics alleged.

Q. 17. How doth it appear that he had a true and real body as other men have ?

A. He is called Man, and the Son of Man, Psal. lxxx. 17 ; he was conceived and born, Matth. i. 20, 25 ; he was subject to hunger, thirst, and weariness, like other men ; he was crucified, dead, and buried, and rose again : none of which could be affirmed of him, if he had not had a true body.

Q. 18. Had not he *a reasonable soul*, as well as a true body ?

A. Yes ; otherwise he had wanted the principal constituent part of the human nature ; accordingly we read, that his " soul was exceeding sorrowful, even unto death," Matth. xxvi. 38.

Q. 19. Why was not the human body created immediately out of nothing, or out of the dust of the earth, as Adam's body was ?

A. Because in that case, though he would have had a true body, yet it would have been akin to us, bone of our bone, and flesh of our flesh.

Q. 20. Did Christ bring his human nature from heaven with him ?

A. No ; for he was the seed of the woman, Gen. iii. 15.

Q. 21. How then is it said, 1 Cor. xv. 47, " The first man is of the earth, earthy ; the second man is the Lord from heaven ?"

A. The plain meaning is, the first man had his first original from the earth ; but the second man, as to his divine nature, is the eternal, independent, and sovereign Lord of heaven and earth, equally with the Father ; and as to his human nature, there was a more glorious concurrence of the adorable Trinity, in the formation of it, than in the making of the first Adam.

Q. 22. What was the peculiar agency of each person of the adorable Trinity in this wonderful work ?

A. The Father prepares a body, or human nature, for him, Heb. x. 5 ; the Holy Ghost forms it, by his overshadowing power, out of the substance of the virgin, Luke i. 35 ; and the Son assumes the entire human nature to himself, Heb. ii. 14, 16.

Q. 23. Why was Christ born of a *virgin* ?

A. That the human nature might be found again in its primitive purity ; and presented to God as spotless as it was in its first creation, free from the contagion of original sin, which is conveyed to all Adam's posterity by natural generation.

Q. 24. Was it necessary that Christ should be *conceived and born without sin* ?

A. It was absolutely necessary ; both because the human nature was to subsist in union with the person of the Son of God ; and likewise because it was to be a sacrifice for sin, and therefore behoved to be " without blemish," Heb. vii. 26.

Q. 25. What benefit or advantage accrues to us by the spotless holiness of the human nature of Christ ?

A. The spotless holiness of his human nature is imputed to us as a part of his righteousness, 1 Cor. i. 30 ; and it is a sure earnest of our perfect sanctification at last, Col. ii. 9, 10.

Q. 26. Was not the *virgin Mary*, the mother of our Lord, a sinner as well as others ?

A. Yes ; for she descended from Adam by ordinary generation ; Christ rebuked her for going beyond her sphere, John ii. 4 ; and she needed a Saviour as much as others ; and believed in him for salvation from sin, Luke i. 47.

Q. 27. What necessarily follows upon the union of the two natures ?

A. A communication of the properties of each nature to the whole person.

Q. 28. How doth the scripture apply this communication of properties to his person ?

A. By ascribing that to his person which properly belongs to one of his natures.

Q. 29. How is this illustrated in scripture ?

A. It is illustrated thus : though it was only the human nature that suffered, yet God is said to purchase his church with his own blood, Acts xx. 28 ; and though it was only the human nature that ascended to heaven, yet, by reason of the personal union, God is said to go up with a shout, Psal. xlvii. 5.

Q. 30. Can an imaginary idea of Christ, as man, be any way helpful to the faith of his being God-man ?

A. It is so far from being any way helpful, that it is

every way hurtful, because it is a diverting the mind from the object of faith to an object of sense; by the means whereof we cannot believe any truth whatsoever, divine or human: all faith being founded solely and entirely upon a testimony.

Q. 31. How then is the person of Christ, God-man, to be conceived?

A. It can be conceived no other way than by faith and spiritual understanding; or by the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him, Eph. i. 17.

Q. 32. What improvement ought we to make of Christ's incarnation?

A. To claim him as our own, in virtue of his wearing our nature, saying, "Unto us a child is born, unto us a Son is given," Isa. ix. 6; or, which is the same thing, to follow the practice of Ruth, in lying down at the feet of our blessed Boaz, saying, "Spread thy skirt over me;" that is, take me, a poor bankrupt sinner, into a marriage-relation with thee, "for thou art my near kinsman," Ruth iii. 9.

23. Q. What offices doth Christ execute as our Redeemer?

A. Christ, as our Redeemer, executeth the offices of a prophet, of a priest, and of a king, both in his estate of humiliation and exaltation.

Q. 1. What is the general office of Christ which respects the whole of his undertaking, and runs through the whole of the covenant made with him?

A. It is his being the only Mediator between God and man, 1 Tim. ii. 5. "There is one God, and one Mediator between God and man, the man Christ Jesus."

Q. 2. What doth the office of a Mediator between God and man suppose?

A. It supposes a breach between them, occasioned by sin on man's part, Isa. lix. 2.

Q. 3. Could a mere verbal intercession make up this breach?

A. By no means; nothing less than a full reparation for all the damages which sin had done to the honour of God, and his law, could do it away, Isa. liii. 10.

Q. 4. Was none but Christ fit for being Mediator in this respect?

A. None else; because there was no other who stood related to the two families of heaven and earth, which were at variance, in such a manner as he did.

Q. 5. How stood he related to these two families?

A. By being from eternity, God equal with the Father,

he stood naturally and essentially related to heaven, John x. 30; and by consenting to become man, he stood voluntarily and freely related to earth, Phil. ii. 6, 7.

Q. 6. What are the branches of Christ's mediatory office, or the particular offices included therein?

A. They are three, namely, his office of a *prophet*, Deut. xvii. 15; of a *priest*, Psal. cx. 4; and of a *king*, Psal. ii. 6.

Q. 7. Have each of these offices the same relation to the covenant whereof he is mediator?

A. His priestly office, as to the sacrificing part of it, respecting the condition of the covenant, belongs to the MAKING of it; but his prophetic and kingly offices, with the intercessory part of his priestly office, respecting the promises of the covenant, belong to the ADMINISTRATION thereof.

Q. 8. What respect have these offices to our misery by sin?

A. The prophetic office respects our ignorance, the priestly office our guilt, and the kingly office our pollution or defilement.

Q. 9. What is Christ made of God to us, in virtue of these offices for the removal of these miseries?

A. As a prophet he is made of God to us wisdom; as a priest, righteousness; and as a king, sanctification: and as vested with ALL these offices, he is made of God to us complete redemption, 1 Cor. i. 30.

Q. 10. Was he ordained or appointed unto these offices?

A. Yes; from all eternity, 1 Pet. i. 20. "Who verily was fore-ordained before the foundation of the world."

Q. 11. What were the necessary consequences of this eternal designation?

A. His mission and call.

Q. 12. Wherein consisted his mission?

A. In his being promised, Isa. vii. 14, and typified under the Old Testament, John iii. 14; and in his being actually sent, in the fulness of time, to assume our nature, and finish the work which was given him to do, Gal. iv. 4, 5.

Q. 13. Was he formally called unto his mediatory office?

A. Yes; he did not take "this honour unto himself, but was called of God, as was Aaron," Heb. v. 4, 5.

Q. 14. Of what parts did his call consist?

A. Of his unction and inauguration.

Q. 15. What do you understand by his unction?

A. The consecrating of him to all his mediatory offices, John x. 36; and the giving of the Spirit, with all his gifts and graces, without measure unto him, for his being fully furnished for the execution of these offices, John iii. 34.

Q. 16. In which nature was Christ anointed with the Spirit?

A. The person of Christ was anointed in the human nature, which was the immediate receptacle of all gifts and graces, Psal. lxxviii. 18. "Thou hast received gifts for men:" margin, in the man; that is, in the human nature.

Q. 17. When was he inaugurated into his mediatory offices?

A. Although in virtue of his assuming the human nature, he was born to the execution of them, yet he was not solemnly installed into the public exercise of these offices till his baptism.

Q. 18. What was the solemnity of his inauguration or instalment at that time?

A. "The heavens were opened, the Spirit of God descended like a dove, and lighted upon him: and lo, a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased," Matth. iii. 16, 17.

Q. 19. Why was Christ vested with this threefold office?

A. The nature of our salvation required that it should be revealed by him as a Prophet, purchased by him as a Priest, and applied by him as a King.

Q. 20. Did ever ALL these offices centre in any ONE person but Christ alone?

A. No; for in order to set forth the vast importance of these offices, as united in the person of Christ, none of those who were typical of him under the Old Testament were ever clothed with all the three: this honour was reserved for himself, as his peculiar dignity and prerogative, John xiv. 6. "I am the way, and the truth, and the life;" that is, the way in my death, as a Priest; the truth in my word, as a Prophet; and the life in my Spirit, as a King.

Q. 21. In what estates doth Christ execute all these offices?

A. *Both in his estate of humiliation* on earth, and in his estate of *exaltation* in heaven.

Q. 22. What do you understand by Christ's executing of his offices?

A. His doing or fulfilling what was incumbent upon him, in virtue of each of these offices, Matth. iii. 15.

Q. 23. Are the offices of Christ the proper fountain from whence the promises do flow?

A. No; the proper fountain and spring of all the promises, is the sovereign will and good pleasure of God; hence is the sovereign will of God set in the front of all the promises, "I WILL put my law in their inward parts; I WILL be their God: I WILL forgive their iniquity; and I WILL remember their sin no more," Jer. xxxi. 33, 34. "I WILL take away the stony heart out of your flesh; and I WILL give you an heart of flesh," &c., Ezek. xxxvi. 26, 27.

Q. 24. What connexion then have the promises with the offices of Christ?

A. They are revealed to us by Christ, as a Prophet, Heb. i. 2; confirmed by his blood as a Priest, Heb. ix. 16; and effectually applied by his power as a King, Psal. cx. 3.

Q. 25. Is the order in which the offices of Christ are here laid down the very order in which they are executed?

A. Yes; for it is the order laid down in scripture, 1 Cor. i. 30.

Q. 26. By whom is this order inverted?

A. By the Arminians and other legalists, who make Christ's kingly office the first which he executes in the application of redemption.

Q. 27. How do they make Christ's kingly office the first which he executes?

A. By alleging that Christ, as a king, has, in the gospel, given out a new preceptive law of faith and repentance, by obedience whereunto we come to be entitled unto Christ and his righteousness.

Q. 28. What is the danger of this scheme of doctrine?

A. It is a confounding of law and gospel, and a bringing of works into the matter and cause of a sinner's justification before God, contrary to Rom. v. 19, and Gal. ii. 16.

Q. 29. When faith closes with Christ, does it not close with him in all his offices?

A. Yes; for Christ is never divided: we must have him wholly, or none of him, John viii. 24.

Q. 30. Which of his offices doth faith act upon for justification?

A. Upon his priestly office only; for the great thing a guilty sinner wants is righteousness, to answer the charge of the law; and the enlightened sinner sees that Christ, in his priestly office, "is the end of the law for righteousness," Rom. x. 4.

Q. 31. What may we learn for encouragement from Christ's being clothed with this threefold office?

A. That since all these offices have a relation to us, we may warrantably employ him in every one of them; that in like manner as he is made over of God unto us, so we may actually have him for our "wisdom, righteousness, sanctification, and redemption," 1 Cor. i. 30.

24. Q. How doth Christ execute the office of a Prophet?

A. Christ executeth the office of a Prophet, in revealing to us, by his word and Spirit, the will of God for our salvation.

Q. 1. Is Christ expressly called a *Prophet* in scripture?

A. Yes, Acts iii. 22, where Peter applies the words of Moses to him, "A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you," &c.

Q. 2. Why does he bear this name?

A. Because he has made a full revelation of the whole counsel of God, concerning the salvation of lost sinners of mankind, Job. xv. 15.

Q. 3. By what other names is Christ described, with relation to his office?

A. By the names of an Apostle, Heb. iii. 1; of a Witness, Isa. lv. 4; and of an Interpreter, Job xxxiii. 23.

Q. 4. Why is he called an Apostle?

A. Because, he is a great Ambassador of Heaven, sent to declare the will of God unto men, John iii. 34; hence called "the Messenger of the covenant," Mal. iii. 1.

Q. 5. Why called a Witness?

A. Because, being a son of Adam, Luke iii. 38, he was the more fit to attest the will of God unto men; and being the eternal Son of God, was therefore liable to no error or mistake in his testimony: hence called "the Amen, the faithful and true Witness," Rev. iii. 14.

Q. 6. Why is he called an Interpreter?

A. Because the mystery of godliness lies so far beyond the reach of our natural understanding, that we could never take it up in a saving manner, unless "the Son of God gave us an understanding that we may know him that is true," 1 John v. 20.

Q. 7. What was the necessity of his bearing this office of a Prophet?

A. Because there could be no knowledge of the things of the Spirit of God, without a revelation of them, 1 Cor. ii. 14; and there could be no revelation of these things but through Christ, John i. 18.

Q. 8. By what means doth Christ reveal to us the will of God?

A. He reveals it to us outwardly by his *word*, and inwardly by his *Spirit*, 1 Pet. i. 11, 12.

Q. 9. To whom doth he reveal the will of God outwardly in his word?

A. To his church; which, on this account, is called "the valley of vision," Isa. xxii. 1.

Q. 10. Did he reveal the will of God to his church under the Old Testament?

A. Yes; for the Spirit of Christ was in the Old Testament prophets, 1 Pet. i. 11; he is said in the days of Noah to have preached unto the spirits *now* in prison, 1 Pet. iii. 19; and to have spoken with Moses in Mount Sinai, Acts vii. 38.

Q. 11. Does he continue to be the prophet and teacher of the church still under the New Testament?

A. Yes; and therefore said to speak from heaven, in his word and ordinances, Heb. xii. 25. "See that ye refuse not him that speaketh; for if they escaped not who refused him that spake on earth, much more shall not we escape, if we turn away from him that speaketh from heaven."

Q. 12. In what manner did he reveal the will of God under both Testaments?

A. Both immediately in his own person, and mediately by the intervention of others.

Q. 13. How did he reveal the will of God immediately in his own person?

A. By voices, visions, dreams, and divers other manners under the Old Testament, Heb. i. 1; and by his own personal ministry, while here on earth, under the New, Heb. ii. 3.

Q. 14. How doth he reveal the will of God mediately, or by the intervention of others?

A. By inspiring the prophets under the Old Testament, and his apostles under the New, to speak and write "as they were moved by the Holy Ghost," 2 Pet. i. 21; and by commissioning ordinary pastors to teach all things whatsoever he has commanded; and in so doing, promising to be with them "alway, even unto the end of the world," Matth. xxviii. 20.

Q. 15. Wherein doth Christ excel all other prophets and teachers whatsoever, whether ordinary or extraordinary?

A. They were all commissioned by him, as the original Prophet, Eph. iv. 11; none of them had ever any gifts or furniture but what they received from him, John xx. 22; and none of them could ever teach with such authority, power, and efficacy, as he doth, John vii. 46.

Q. 16. What will become of those who will not hear this Prophet?

A. They "shall be destroyed from among the people," Acts iii. 23.

Q. 17. May not a people enjoy a faithful ministry, have the word purely preached unto them, and yet not profit thereby?

A. No doubt they may; as was the case of many of the Jews in Isaiah's time, Isa. liii. 1; and of Chorazin and Bethsaida under the ministry of Christ himself, Matth. xi. 21.

Q. 18. What is the reason why the word purely preached doth not profit?

A. Because "it is not mixed with faith in them that hear it," Heb. iv. 2.

Q. 19. What commonly follows upon people's not profiting by the word preached?

A. The word of the Lord slays them, Hos. vi. 5, and proves the savour of death unto death unto them, 2 Cor. ii. 16.

Q. 20. Seeing the external dispensation of the word has so little influence upon the generality, what else is necessary to make it effectual?

A. The inward teaching of Christ by his Spirit, John vi. 63, and xiv. 26.

Q. 21. How doth this great Prophet teach inwardly by his Spirit?

A. He opens the understanding, and makes the entrance of his words to give such light, Psal. cxix. 130, as the soul is made to see a divine beauty and glory in the gospel-method of salvation, 1 Cor. ii. 10, 11, 12; and powerfully inclined to fall in therewith, 1 Tim. i. 35.

Q. 22. Doth Christ, as a Prophet, make all welcome to come and be taught by him?

A. Yes; for, in the outward dispensation of the gospel, he casts open the door to every man and woman, saying, "Come unto me,—and learn of me, for I am meek and lowly in heart," Matth. xi. 28, 29.

Q. 23. At what schools doth Christ, as a Prophet, train up his disciples?

A. At the school of law, the school of the gospel, and the school of affliction.

Q. 24. What doth he teach them at the school of the law?

A. The nature and the desert of sin; that thereby they are "without Christ,—having no hope, and without God in the world," Eph. ii. 12.

Q. 25. What doth he teach them at the school of the gospel?

A. That he himself is the great doer of all for them, and in them, Mark x. 51, and that their business is to "take the cup of salvation, and call upon the name of the Lord," Psal. cxvi. 13.

Q. 26. What doth he teach them at the school of affliction?

A. To justify God, Ezra ix. 13; to set their affections on things above, 2 Cor. iv. 17, 18; and to pray that their affliction may be rather sanctified than removed without being so, Isa. xxvii. 9.

Q. 27. How many persons know if they have profited under this great Prophet and Teacher?

A. They will follow on to know him more and more, Hos. vi. 3; they will delight in his company, Psal. xxvii. 4; grieve at his absence, Job xxiii. 3; and hide his word in their heart, Psal. cxix. 11.

25. Q. How doth Christ execute the office of a Priest?

A. Christ executeth the office of a Priest, in his once offering up of himself a sacrifice to satisfy divine justice

and reconcile us to God, and in making continual intercession for us.

Q. 1. What do you understand by a *Priest*?

A. A Priest is a public person, who, in the name of the guilty, deals with an offended God for reconciliation by sacrifice, which he offereth to God upon an altar, being thereto called of God, that he may be accepted, Heb. v. 1, 4.

Q. 2. What was the great thing which the priesthood under the law, especially the office of high-priest, did typify and point at?

A. It was Christ's becoming an high-priest to appear before God, in the name of sinners, to make atonement and reconciliation for them, Heb. viii. 1, 2, 3.

Q. 3. Of whom was the high-priest a representative, when bearing the names of the children of Israel upon his shoulders, and on the breast-plate? Exod. xxviii. 12, 29.

A. He was representative of all Israel; and so an illustrious type of Christ, as the representative of a whole elect world, Isa. xlix. 3.

Q. 4. Were not the ordinary priests, as well as the high-priest, types of Christ?

A. Yes; because, though the high-priest was a more eminent type of him, yet the apostle, Heb. x. 11, 12, compares every priest, who offered sacrifices, with Christ, as a type with the antitype.

Q. 5. Wherein did Christ excel the priests after the order of Aaron?

A. In his person, manner of instalment, and in the efficacy and perfection of his sacrifice.

Q. 6. How doth he excel them in his person?

A. They were but mere men,—he, the true God and eternal life, 1 John v. 20; they were sinful men,—he “is holy, harmless, undefiled, and separate from sinners,” Heb. vii. 26.

Q. 7. How did he excel them in the manner of his instalment?

A. Those priests were made without an oath; but this with an oath, by him that said unto him, “The Lord sware, and will not repent, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec,” Heb. vii. 21.

Q. 8. Why was Christ made a priest with the solemnity of an oath?

A. Because, as the weight of the salvation of sinners lay upon his call to this office, so his Father's solemn investing of him therein by an oath, gave him access to offer himself effectually, even in such sort as thereby to fulfil the condition of the covenant, and to purchase eternal life for them, Heb. ix. 12.

Q. 9. Wherein did Christ excel the Aaraonical priests in the efficacy and perfection of his sacrifice?

A. "It is not possible that the blood of bulls and of goats should take away sins:—But this Man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins, for ever sat down on the right hand of God," Heb. x. 4, 12.

Q. 10. After what order was Christ a priest?

A. After the order of Melchisedec, Psal. cx. 4.

Q. 11. What was the order of Melchisedec?

A. That being "made like unto the Son, he abideth a priest continually," Heb. vii. 3.

Q. 12. How could Melchisedec abide a priest continually, when he surely died like other men?

A. The meaning is, he came not unto his office by succession to any who went before him, and none succeeded him after his death.

Q. 13. Why then is Christ called a priest after the order of Melchisedec?

A. Because not succeeding unto, or being succeeded by any other in his office, but "continuing ever, hath an unchangeable priesthood; being made a priest, not after the law of a carnal commandment, but after the power of an endless life," Heb. vii. 24, 16.

Q. 14. What are the parts of Christ's priestly office?

A. His satisfaction on earth, Heb. xiii. 12; and his intercession in heaven, 1 John ii. 1.

Q. 15. Why behoved his satisfaction to be made upon earth?

A. Because this earth being the theatre of rebellion, where God's law was violated, and his authority trampled upon, it was meet that satisfaction should be made where the offence was committed: hence, says Christ, John xvii. 4, "I have glorified thee on the earth."

Q. 16. How did Christ make satisfaction on the earth?

A. By sacrifice, 1 Cor. v. 7. "Even Christ our passover is sacrificed for us."

Q. 17. What was the *sacrifice* which he offered?

A. It was *Himself*, Heb. ix. 26. "He appeared, to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself."

Q. 18. What was essentially necessary to every sacrifice?

A. The shedding of blood unto death, Heb. ix. 22. "Without shedding of blood is no remission."

Q. 19. Which of the two natures was the sacrifice?

A. The human nature, soul and body, Isa. liii. 10; Heb. x. 10; which were actually separated by death, John xix. 30.

Q. 20. What was necessary to the acceptance of every slain sacrifice?

A. That it be offered on such an altar as should sanctify the gift to its necessary value and designed effect, Matth. xxiii. 19. "Whether is greater, the gift or the altar that sanctifieth the gift?"

Q. 21. What was the altar on which the sacrifice of the human nature was offered?

A. It was the divine nature.

Q. 22. How did this altar sanctify the gift?

A. It gave an infinite value and efficacy thereunto, because of the personal union, Heb. ix. 14.

Q. 23. Was Christ a sacrifice only while on the cross?

A. The sacrifice was laid on the altar, in the first moment of his incarnation, Heb. x. 5; continued thereon through the whole of his life, Isa. liii. 3; and completed on the cross, and in the grave, John xix. 30; Isa. liii. 9.

Q. 24. Was there a necessity for a priest to offer this sacrifice?

A. Yes, surely; because, a priest and sacrifice being inseparable, without a priest there could be no sacrifice at all to be accepted, and consequently no removal of sin, Heb. viii. 3.

Q. 25. Who was the priest?

A. As Christ himself was both the sacrifice and the altar, none else but himself could be the priest, Heb. v. 5.

Q. 26. Did Christ truly and properly offer himself a sacrifice, not for our good only, but in our room and stead?

A. Yes; as is evident from all those Scriptures where Christ is said to have borne our sins, 1 Pet. ii. 24; to have died for us, Rom. v. 6; and to have redeemed us by his blood, Rev. v. 9.

Q. 27. How often did Christ offer up himself a sacrifice?

A. *Once* only, Heb. ix. 23. "Christ was ONCE offered to bear the sins of many."

Q. 28. Why could not this sacrifice be repeated?

A. Because, as once dying was the penalty of the law, so once suffering unto death was the complete payment of it, in regard of the infinite dignity of the sufferer, Heb. ix. 27, 28.

Q. 29. For what end did Christ once offer up himself a sacrifice?

A. *To satisfy divine justice*, 1 Pet. iii. 18.

Q. 30. Was satisfaction to justice absolutely necessary?

A. Yes; since God freely purposed to save some of mankind, it was absolutely necessary that it should be done in a consistency with the honour of justice, Exod. xxxiv. 7.

Q. 31. What did the honour of justice require as a satisfaction?

A. That the curse of the broken law be fully executed either upon the sinners themselves, Ezek. xviii. 4, or upon a sufficient substitute, Psal. lxxxix. 19.

Q. 32. What would have been the effect of executing the curse upon the sinners themselves?

A. The fire of divine wrath would have burnt continually upon them, and yet no satisfaction to revenging justice, Isa. xxxiii. 14.

Q. 33. Why would not revenging justice be ever satisfied ?

A. Because they were not only finite creatures, whose most exquisite sufferings could never be a sufficient compensation for the injured honour of an infinite God, but they were sinful creatures likewise, who would still have remained sinful, even under their eternal sufferings, Rev. xiv. 11.

Q. 34. How could satisfaction be demanded from Christ, who was perfectly holy and innocent ?

A. He voluntarily substituted himself in the room of sinners, Psal. xl. 7 ; their sins were imputed unto him, Isa. liii. 5, 6 ; he had full power to dispose of his own life, John x. 18 ; and therefore it was most just to exact the full payment of him.

Q. 35. Has Christ fully and perfectly satisfied divine justice ?

A. Yes ; his offering and sacrifice to God was for a sweet-smelling savour, Eph. v. 2, or a savour of rest, as it is said of Noah's typical sacrifice, Gen. v. 21, marg.

Q. 36. Why is his sacrifice said to be for a sweet-smelling savour, or savour of rest ?

A. Because it quite overcame the abominable savour arising from sin, and gave the avenging justice and wrath of God the calmest and profoundest rest.

Q. 37. How do you prove that Christ has perfectly satisfied the justice of God ?

A. He said, " It is finished," John xix. 30, and evidenced that it really was so by his resurrection from the dead, Rom. i. 4.

Q. 38. For whom did Christ satisfy justice ?

A. For the elect only, John x. 15, and not for all mankind, Eph. v. 25.

Q. 39. How is it evident that Christ satisfied for the elect only, and not for all mankind ?

A. From the satisfaction and intercession of Christ being of equal extent, so that the one reaches no farther than the other ; and he expressly affirms that he intercedes for the elect only, and not for the whole world of mankind, John xvii. 9. " I pray not for the world, but for them which thou hast given me."

Q. 40. What is the blessed effect and consequence of Christ's perfectly satisfying the justice of God ?

A. It is the reconciling us unto God, Rom. v. 10.

Q. 41. How doth the satisfaction of Christ *reconcile us to God* ?

A. It discovers the love of God, in providing such a ransom for us ; and this love, apprehended by faith, slays the natural enmity against God, 1 John iv. 10, 19.

Q. 42. When is it that the elect are actually reconciled to God?

A. When in a day of power they are determined to come to "Jesus the Mediator of the new covenant, and to the blood of sprinkling," Heb. xii. 24.

Q. 43. Why is the blood of Jesus called the blood of sprinkling?

A. To distinguish between the shedding of his blood and the application thereof, Exod. xxiv. 8; and to point out the necessity of the one as well as the other for reconciliation and pardon, Ezek. xxxvi. 25.

Q. 44. How may we know if we are reconciled to God?

A. If we are dead to the law as a covenant, Rom. vii. 4, and are content to be everlasting debtors to rich and sovereign grace, Psal. cxv. 1.

Q. 45. What may we learn from the first part of Christ's priestly office, his satisfaction for sin?

A. The exceeding sinfulness of sin, Rom. vii. 13; the infinite love of God, John iii. 16; and the necessity of an interest in this satisfaction, Heb. x. 29.

Q. 46. What is the SECOND PART of Christ's priestly office?

A. It is his *making continual intercession for us*, Heb. vii. 25.

Q. 47. Had Christ's intercession any place in the making of the new covenant?

A. No; the love and grace of God made the motion for a new covenant freely, Psal. lxxxix. 3, 20.

Q. 48. Could the breach between God and sinners be made up by a simple intercession?

A. No; justice could not be satisfied with pleading, but by paying a ransom, Heb. ix. 22.

Q. 49. To what part of the covenant then doth Christ's intercession belong?

A. As his sacrificing natively took its place in the making of the covenant, and fulfilling the condition thereof; so his intercession in the administration of the covenant and fulfilling the promises of it, Rom. viii. 34.

Q. 50. What occasion was there for an intercessor or advocate with the Father, when the Father himself loveth us? John xvi. 27.

A. That through Christ's obedience unto death, as the honourable channel thereof, his spiritual seed might have the blessed fruits and effects of the Father's everlasting love flowing into their souls in every time of need, Heb. iv. 14, 16.

Q. 51. What is the nature of Christ's intercession?

A. It is his WILLING that the merit of his sacrifice be applied to all those in whose room and stead he died, according to the method laid down in the covenant in their favours,

John xvii. 24. "Father, I WILL, that they whom thou hast given me be with me where I am," &c.

Q. 52. Who then are the objects of his intercession?

A. These only whom he, as second Adam, represented in the eternal transaction, John xvii. 9.

Q. 53. Is his intercession always prevalent on their behalf?

A. Yes, surely; for so he himself testifies, saying unto his Father, John xi. 42, "I knew that thou hearest me always."

Q. 54. What is the first fruit of Christ's intercession with respect to the elect?

A. His effectually procuring the actual inbringing of them into a covenant state of peace and favour with God, at the time appointed, John xvii. 20, 21.

Q. 55. Whence is it that the intercession of Christ obtains peace between heaven and earth?

A. Because he purchased it for them by the blood of his sacrifice, Col. i. 20, and it was promised to him on that score, Isa. liv. 13.

Q. 56. What does he by his intercession, in consequence of their being brought into a covenant-state?

A. He appears for them; and in their names takes possession of heaven; and all the other blessings they have a right unto in virtue of that covenant-state, Eph. ii. 6; Heb. vi. 20.

Q. 57. Having brought the elect into a state of peace, does he leave it to themselves to maintain it?

A. No; if that were the case, it would soon be at an end; but by his intercession he always prevents a rupture betwixt Heaven and them, Luke xxii. 32. "I have prayed for thee, that thy faith fail not."

Q. 58. How doth he maintain the peace between Heaven and them?

A. Upon the ground of his satisfaction for them he answers all accusations against them, and takes up all emerging differences between them and their covenanted God, 1 John ii. 1, 2.

Q. 59. Are not the saints on earth, being sinful, unfit to come into the presence of the King?

A. Yes; but the glorious Advocate introduceth them, procuring them access by his interest in the court: "for through him we have an access, by one Spirit, unto the Father," Eph. ii. 18.

Q. 60. How are their prayers acceptable to God, when there are so many blemishes attending them?

A. Their prayers made in faith, though smelling rank of the remains of corruption, yet being perfumed with the incense of his merit, are accepted in heaven, and have gracious returns made them, Rev. viii. 3.

Q. 61. What is the last fruit of Christ's intercession, on behalf of his elect, brought into a state of grace on this earth?

A. The obtaining their admittance into heaven in the due time, and continuing their state of perfect happiness there for ever and ever, John xvii. 24.

Q. 62. Is not Christ a Priest for ever, according to Psal. cx. 4?

A. He is not a sacrificing priest for ever, having "by one offering perfected for ever them that are sanctified," Heb. x. 14; but he is an interceding Priest for ever, Heb. vii. 27; "He ever liveth to make intercession."

Q. 63. What will be the subject of his intercession for ever in behalf of the saints in heaven?

A. The everlasting continuation of their happy state, John xvii. 21, 22.

Q. 64. What is the ground of his eternally willing the everlasting continuation of their happy state?

A. He doth it on the ground of the eternal redemption obtained for them, by the sacrificing of himself on this earth, Heb. ix. 12.

Q. 65. What then is the everlasting security that the saints in heaven have, for the uninterrupted continuation of their happiness?

A. That the infinite merit of Christ's sacrifice will be eternally presented before God in heaven itself, where in their nature he continually appears in the presence of God for them, Heb. ix. 24.

Q. 66. How will the happiness, issuing from the merit of Christ's sacrifice, be communicated by him unto the saints in heaven?

A. It will be communicated unto them by him as their Prophet and their King.

Q. 67. Will not these offices be laid aside in heaven?

A. No; for as he is "a Priest for ever," Psal. cx, 4, so "of his kingdom there shall be no end," Luke i. 33; "and the Lamb will be the light of the heavenly city," Rev. xxi. 23.

Q. 68. How will the saints' communion with God in heaven be for ever maintained?

A. It will be still in and through the Mediator, in a manner agreeable to their state of perfection, Rev. vii. 17. "The Lamb, which is in the midst of the throne, shall feed them, and shall lead them to living fountains of waters."

Q. 69. What is the difference betwixt the intercession of Christ, and the intercession of the Spirit, mentioned Rom. viii. 26?

A. CHRIST intercedes without us, by presenting the merit of his oblation for us, Heb. xii. 24; but the SPIRIT inter-

cedes within us, by bringing the promise to our remembrance, John xiv. 26, and enabling us to importune a faithful God to do as he has said, and not to let him go except he bless us, Gen. xxxii. 26.

Q. 70. Are there any other intercessors for us in heaven besides Christ?

A. None at all; for there is but "one Mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus," 1 Tim. ii. 5. He who is the only advocate with the Father is "Jesus Christ the righteous," 1 John ii. 1.

Q. 71. May we not apply to saints or angels to intercede for us, as the Papists do?

A. By no means; this would be gross idolatry; besides, they have no merit to plead upon, Rev. xxii. 9, nor do they know our cases and wants, Isa. lxiii. 16.

Q. 72. What may we learn from Christ's intercession?

A. That though the believer has nothing to pay for managing his cause at the court of heaven, yet it is impossible it can miscarry, seeing the Advocate is faithfulness itself, Rev. iii. 14, and pleads for nothing but what he has merited by his blood, John xvii. 4.

26. Q. How doth Christ execute the office of a King?

A. Christ executeth the office of a King, in subduing us to himself, in ruling and defending us, and in restraining and conquering all his and our enemies.

Q. 1. How doth it appear that Christ is a KING?

A. From his Father's testimony, Psal. ii. 6, and his own, John xviii. 36, concerning this matter.

Q. 2. When was he ordained or appointed to his kingdom?

A. He "was set up from everlasting," Prov. viii. 23.

Q. 3. When was he publicly proclaimed?

A. At his birth, Matth. ii. 2, and at his death, John xix. 19.

Q. 4. Did he not actually exercise his kingly power before that time?

A. Yes; he commenced the exercise of his kingly power ever after the first promise of his bruising the head of the serpent, Gen. iii. 15.

Q. 5. When was he solemnly inaugurated into his kingly office?

A. When he ascended, and "sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high," Heb. i. 3.

Q. 6. Where stands the throne of this great Potentate?

A. His throne of glory is in heaven, Rev. vii. 17; his throne of grace in the church, Heb. iv. 16; and his throne

of judgment is to be erected in the aerial heavens at his second coming, 1 Thess. iv. 17.

Q. 7. What sceptre doth he sway?

A. He hath a twofold sceptre; one whereby he gathers and governs his subjects, Psal. cx. 2; another whereby he dashes his enemies in pieces like a potter's vessel, Psal. ii. 9.

Q. 8. What is that sceptre whereby Christ gathers and governs his subjects?

A. It is the gospel of the grace of God, accompanied with the power of his Spirit, called therefore "the rod of his strength," Psal. cx. 2.

Q. 9. What is that rod of iron whereby he dashes his enemies in pieces?

A. It is the power of his anger, which no finite creature can know the uttermost of, Psal. xc. 11.

Q. 10. What armies doth this King command and lead?

A. His name is the Lord of hosts, and all the armies in heaven, whether saints or angels, follow him as upon white horses, Rev. xix. 14.

Q. 11. What other armies doth he command?

A. The devils in hell are the executioners of his wrath against the wicked of the world, who will not have him to rule over them; yea, he can levy armies of lice, frogs, caterpillars, locusts, to avenge his quarrel, as in the plagues of Egypt.

Q. 12. What tribute is paid to this mighty King?

A. He has the continual tribute of praise, honour, and glory paid him, by saints in the church-militant, Psal. lxxv. 1, and by both saints and angels in the church-triumphant, Rev. v. 9, 13.

Q. 13. Doth he levy a tribute also from among his enemies?

A. Yes; for the wrath of man shall praise him on this earth, Psal. lxxvi. 10; and he will erect monuments of praise to his justice in their eternal destruction hereafter, Rom. ix. 22.

Q. 14. Who are the ambassadors of this King?

A. He has sometimes employed angels upon some particular embassies, Luke ii. 10; but because these are ready to terrify sinners of mankind, therefore, for ordinary, he employs men of the same mould with themselves, even ministers of the gospel, whom he commissions and calls to that office, 2 Cor. v. 18, 19.

Q. 15. May any man intrude himself into the office of an ambassador of Christ?

A. No man may lawfully "take this honour unto himself, but he that is called of God, as was Aaron," Heb. v. 4.

Q. 16. What shall we think then of those who intrude themselves, or are intruded into the ministry without a scriptural call?

A. Christ declares them to be thieves and robbers, or, at best, but hirelings, John x. 8—12; that they shall not profit the people at all, because he never sent them, Jer. xxiii. 32; and that the leaders, and they that are led by them, shall “both fall into the ditch,” Matth. xv. 14.

Q. 17. How manifold is Christ’s kingdom?

A. It is twofold; his essential and his mediatorial kingdom.

Q. 18. What is his essential kingdom?

A. It is that absolute and supreme power which he hath over all the creatures in heaven and earth, essentially and naturally, as God equal with the Father, Psal. ciii. 19. “His kingdom ruleth over all.”

Q. 19. What is his mediatorial kingdom?

A. It is that sovereign power and authority in and over the church which is given him as Mediator, Eph. i. 22.

Q. 20. What is the nature of his mediatorial kingdom?

A. It is entirely “spiritual, and not of this world,” John xviii. 36.

Q. 21. Doth the civil magistrate then hold his office of Christ as Mediator?

A. No; but of him as God Creator, otherwise all civil magistrates, Heathen as well as Christian, would be church-officers; which would be grossly Erastian.

Q. 22. What are the ACTS of Christ’s kingly power?

A. They are such as have either a respect to his elect people, John i. 49; or such as have a respect to his and their enemies, Psal. cx. 2.

Q. 23. What are the acts of his kingly administration which have a respect to his elect people?

A. They are his *subduing* them to *himself*, Acts xv. 14; his *ruling* them, Isa. xxxiii. 22; and his *defending* them, Isa. xxxi. 2.

Q. 24. How doth Christ SUBDUER his elect people to himself?

A. By the power of his Spirit so managing the word, that he conquers their natural aversion and obstinacy, Psal. cx. 3; and makes them willing to embrace a Saviour, and a great one, as freely offered in the gospel, Isa. xlv. 5.

Q. 25. In what condition doth he find his elect ones, when he comes to subdue them to himself?

A. He finds them “prisoners and lawful captives,” Isa. lxi. 1.

Q. 26. How doth he loose their bonds?

A. By his Spirit, applying to them the whole of his satisfaction, whereby all demands of law and justice are answered to the full, John xvi. 8—12.

Q. 27. What is the consequence of answering the demands of law and justice, by the Spirit’s applying the satisfaction of Christ?

A. The law being satisfied, the strength of sin is broken, and therefore the sting of death is taken away, 1 Cor. xv. 56, 57.

Q. 28. What follows upon taking away the sting of death?

A. Satan loseth his power over them; and that being lost, the present evil world, which is his kingdom, can hold them no longer, Gal. i. 4.

Q. 29. What comes of them when they are separated from the world that lies in wickedness?

A. The very moment they are delivered from the "power of darkness, they are translated into the kingdom of God's dear Son," Col. i. 13.

Q. 30. Are they not in the world after this happy change?

A. Though they be in the world, yet they are not of it, but true and lively members of Christ's invisible kingdom, and therefore the objects of the world's hatred, John xv. 19.

Q. 31. When Christ as a king hath subdued sinners to himself, what other part of his royal office doth he exercise over them?

A. He RULES and governs them: hence called the "Ruler in Israel," Micah v. 2.

Q. 32. Doth the rule and government of Christ dissolve the subjection of his people from the powers of the earth?

A. By no means; he paid tribute himself, Matth. xvii. 27; and hath strictly commanded that every soul be subject to the higher powers, because "there is no power but of God; and the powers that be are ordained of God," Rom. xiii. 1.

Q. 33. In what things are the subjects of Christ's kingdom to obey the powers of the earth?

A. In every thing that is not forbidden by the law of God: but when the commands of men are opposite to the commands of God, in that case God ought always to be obeyed "rather than men," Acts v. 29.

Q. 34. How doth this glorious King rule his subjects?

A. By giving them the laws, Psal. cxlvii. 19, and ministering to them the discipline of his kingdom, Heb. xii. 16.

Q. 35. What are the laws of Christ's kingdom?

A. They are no other but the laws of the Ten Commandments, originally given to Adam in his creation, and afterwards published from Mount Sinai, Exod. xx. 3—18.

Q. 36. How doth Christ sweeten his law to his subjects?

A. Having fulfilled it as a covenant, he gives it out to his true and kindly subjects as a rule of life, to be obeyed in the strength of that grace which is secured in the promise, Ezek. xxxvi. 27.

Q. 37. Doth he annex any rewards to the obedience of his true subjects?

A. Yes; in keeping of his commandments "there is great reward," Psal. xix. 11.

Q. 38. What are these rewards ?

A. His special comforts and love-tokens, which he bestows for exciting to that holy and tender walk, which is the fruit of faith, John xiv. 21.

Q. 39. Why are these comforts called rewards ?

A. Because they are given to a working saint, as a farther privilege on the back of duty, Rev. iii. 10.

Q. 40. Is it the order of the new covenant, that duty should go before privilege ?

A. No, the matter stands thus: the leading privilege is the quickening Spirit, then follows duty; and duty, performed in faith, is followed with further privilege, till privilege and duty come both to perfection in heaven, not to be distinguished any more, 1 John iii. 2.

Q. 41. What is the discipline of Christ's kingdom ?

A. Fatherly chastisement, which, being necessary for the welfare of his true subjects, is secured for them in the promise, Psal. lxxxix. 30—35.

Q. 42. To what promise of the covenant doth fatherly chastisement belong ?

A. To the promise of sanctification, being an appointed mean for advancing holiness in them, Heb. xii. 10; Isa. xxvii. 9.

Q. 43. What other act of kingly power doth Christ exercise about his subjects besides subduing them to himself, and ruling of them ?

A. He DEFENDS them likewise, Psal. lxxxix. 18. "The Lord is our DEFENCE."

Q. 44. Against whom doth he defend them ?

A. Against all their enemies; sin, Satan, the world, and death, Luke i. 71; 1 John iv. 4; Hos. xiii. 14.

Q. 45. Who are their worst enemies ?

A. The remains of corruption within them, which are not expelled during this life, but left for their exercise and trial, Gal. v. 17.

Q. 46. How doth he defend them against these inward foes ?

A. By keeping alive in them the spark of holy fire, in the midst of an ocean of corruption, and causing it to make head against the same, until it quite dry it up, Rom. vii. 24, 25.

Q. 47. What are the acts of Christ's kingly office, with respect unto his people's enemies ?

A. They are his *restraining and conquering* of them, 1 Cor. xv. 25. "He must reign till he hath put all his enemies under his feet."

Q. 48. Whence is it that this glorious King and his subjects have the same enemies ?

A. He and they make up that one body whereof he is head,

and they are the members, 1 Cor. xii. 12; and therefore they cannot but have common friends and foes, Zech. ii. 8.

Q. 49. What is it for Christ to restrain his and his people's enemies?

A. It is to overrule and disappoint their wicked purposes, Isa. xxxvi. 29; to set limits to their wrath, and to bring a revenue of glory to himself out of the same, Psal. lxxvi. 10.

Q. 50. What restraints doth he put upon them?

A. He bounds them by his power, as to the kind, degree, and continuance of all their enterprises and attacks upon his people, Job i. 12, and ii. 6.

Q. 51. What is it for Christ to conquer all his and his people's enemies?

A. It is his taking away their power, that they cannot hurt the least of his little ones with respect to their spiritual state, Luke xi. 22.

Q. 52. How did he conquer them?

A. He hath already conquered them in his own person, as the head of the new covenant, by the victory he obtained over them in his death, Col. ii. 15; and he conquers them daily in his members, when he enables them by faith to put their feet upon the neck of their vanquished foes, Rom. xvi. 20.

Q. 53. What may we learn from Christ's executing his kingly office?

A. That though believers, while in this world, are in the midst of their enemies, "as lambs among wolves," Luke x. 3, yet by this mighty king, as the breaker, going up before them, Micah ii. 13, they shall be "more than conquerors through him that loved them," Rom. viii. 37.

27. Q. Wherein did Christ's humiliation consist?

A. Christ's humiliation consisted in his being born, and that in a low condition, made under the law, undergoing the miseries of this life, the wrath of God, and the cursed death of the cross; in being buried, and continuing under the power of death for a time.

Q. 1. What do you understand by Christ's *humiliation* in general?

A. His condescending to have that glory, which he had with the Father "before the world was," John xvii. 5, veiled for a time, by his coming to this lower world, to be "a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief," Isa. liii. 3.

Q. 2. Was Christ's humiliation entirely voluntary?

A. It was voluntary in the highest degree; for from eternity he rejoiced "in the habitable part of the earth, and his delights were with the sons of men," Prov. viii. 31.

Q. 3. What was the spring and source of Christ's humiliation?

A. Nothing but his own and his Father's undeserved love to lost mankind, Rom. v. 6; 1 John iv. 10.

Q. 4. What are the several steps of Christ's humiliation mentioned in the answer?

A. They are such as respect "his conception and birth, his life, his death, and" what passed upon him "after his death until his resurrection."\*

Q. 5. "How did Christ humble himself in his conception and birth?"

A. "In that, being from all eternity the Son of God, in the bosom of the Father, he was pleased, in the fulness of time, to become the Son of man, made of a woman, and to be born of her," in a very low condition, John i. 14, 18; Gal. iv. 4.†

Q. 6. What was the *low condition* wherein he was born?

A. He was born of a poor woman, though of royal descent; in Bethlehem, an obscure village; and there "laid in a manger, because there was no room for them in the inn," Luke ii. 4, 5, 7.

Q. 7. Why is the pedigree and descent of Christ, according to the flesh, so particularly described by the evangelists?

A. To evidence the faithfulness of God in his promise to Abraham, Gen. xxii. 18, and David, Psal. cxxxii. 11, that the Messiah should spring out of their seed.

Q. 8. Why was Christ born in such a low condition?

A. He stooped so low, that he might lift up sinners of mankind out of the horrible pit and miry clay into which they were plunged, Psal. xl. 2.

Q. 9. What improvement ought we to make of the incarnation and birth of Christ, in such circumstances of more than ordinary abasement?

A. To admire "the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that though he was rich, yet for our sakes he became poor, that we through his poverty might be rich," 2 Cor. viii. 9; and, by faith, to claim a relation to him as our kinsman, saying, "Unto us a Child is born, unto us a Son is given," Isa. ix. 6.

Q. 10. How did Christ humble himself in this life?

A. In his being *made under the law, undergoing the miseries of this life, and the wrath of God.*

Q. 11. What *law* was Christ made under as our surety?

A. Although he gave obedience to all divine institutions, ceremonial and political, yet it was the moral law, properly, he was made under as our surety, Gal. iv. 4, 5.

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 46.

† Ibid. quest. 47.

Q. 12. How doth it appear it was the moral law he was made under?

A. Because this was the law given to Adam in his creation, and afterwards vested with the form of a covenant of works, when he was placed in paradise; by the breach of which law, as a covenant, all mankind are brought under the curse, Gal. iii. 10.

Q. 13. Whether was Christ made under the moral law as a covenant of works, or as a rule of life only?

A. He was made under it as a covenant of works, demanding perfect obedience as a condition of life, and full satisfaction because of man's transgression.

Q. 14. How do you prove this?

A. From Gal. iv. 4, 5. "God sent forth his Son, made under the law, to redeem them that were under the law;" where it is obvious, that Christ behaved to be made under the law, in the very same sense in which his spiritual seed, whom he came to redeem, were under it; and they being all under it as a covenant, he behaved to be made under it as a covenant likewise, that he might redeem them from the curse thereof, Gal. iii. 13.

Q. 15. What would be the absurdity of affirming that Christ was made under the law as a rule and not as a covenant?

A. It would make the apostle's meaning, in the fore-cited Gal. iv. 4, 5, to be as if he had said, Christ was made under the law, as a rule to redeem them that were under the law as a rule, from all subjection and obedience to it; which is the very soul of Antinomianism, and quite contrary to the great end of Christ's coming to the world, which was not to destroy the law, but to fulfil it, Matth. v. 17.

Q. 16. Why is Christ's being made under the law mentioned as a part of his humiliation?

A. Because it was most amazing condescension in the great Lord and Lawgiver of heaven and earth to become subject to his own law, and that for this very end, that he might fulfil it in the room of those who were the transgressors of it, and had incurred its penalty, Matth. iii. 15.

Q. 17. What may we learn from Christ's being made under the law?

A. The misery of sinners out of Christ, who have to answer to God in their own persons for their debt both of obedience and punishment, Eph. ii. 12; and the happiness of believers, who have all their debt cleared, by Christ's being made under the law in their room, Rom. viii. 1.

Q. 18. What were the *miseries of this life* which Christ underwent in his estate of humiliation?

A. Together with our nature, he took on the sinless infirmities thereof, such as hunger, thirst, weariness, grief, and the like, Rom. viii. 3; he submitted to poverty and want, Matth. viii. 20; and endured likewise the assaults and temptations of Satan, Heb. iv. 15; together with the contradiction, reproach, and persecution of a wicked world, Heb. xii. 3.

Q. 19. Why did he undergo all these?

A. That he might take the sting out of all the afflictions of his people, Rom. viii. 28, and sympathize with them in their troubles, Isa. lxiii. 9.

Q. 20. Were these the greatest miseries he underwent in this life?

A. No; he underwent *the wrath of God* also, Psal. cxvi. 3.

Q. 21. What was it for him to undergo the wrath of God?

A. It was to undergo the utmost effects of God's holy and righteous displeasure against sin, Psal. xc. 11.

Q. 22. What was it that made the human nature of Christ capable of supporting under the utmost effects of the wrath of God?

A. The union thereof with his divine person, whereby it was impossible it could sink under the weight, Isa. l. 7.

Q. 23. How could Christ undergo the wrath of God, seeing he did always the things that please him?

A. He underwent it only as the surety for his elect seed, on account of their sins which were imputed to him, Isa. liii. 6. "The Lord laid on him the iniquity of us all."

Q. 24. How did it appear that he underwent the wrath of God?

A. It appeared chiefly in his agony in the garden, when he said "My soul is exceeding sorrowful, even unto death," Matth. xxvi. 38; at which time "his sweat was, as it were, great drops of blood, falling down to the ground," Luke xxii. 44; and again on the cross, when he "cried, with a loud voice, My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?" Matth. xxvii. 46.

Q. 25. Was he not the object of his Father's delight, even when undergoing his wrath on account of our sins?

A. Yes, surely; for though the sin of the world, which he was bearing, was the object of God's infinite hatred, yet the glorious person bearing it was even then the object of his infinite love, Isa. liii. 10. "It pleased the Lord to bruise him."

Q. 26. What may we learn from Christ's undergoing the miseries of this life, and the wrath of God?

A. "That we must, through much tribulation, enter into the kingdom of God," Acts xiv. 22, and that he is "pacified toward us, for all that we have done," Ezek. xvi. 63.

Q. 27. How did Christ humble himself in his death ?

A. In his undergoing *the cursed death of the cross*, Phil. ii. 8.

Q. 28. Why is the *death of the cross* called a *cursed death* ?

A. Because God, in testimony of his anger against breaking the first covenant by eating the fruit of the forbidden tree, had said, "Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree," Gal. iii. 13.

Q. 29. What evidences are there that Christ was made a curse for us in his death ?

A. Inasmuch as there was no pity, no sparing in his death : God spared him not, Rom. viii. 32 ; and wicked men were let loose upon him like dogs and bulls, Psal. xxii. 12, 16.

Q. 30. How doth the Scripture set forth the exquisite agony of his death ?

A. It tells us, that they pierced his hands and his feet ; that he was poured out like water ; that all his bones were out of joint ; his heart, like wax, melted in the midst of his bowels ; his strength dried up like a potsherd ; and his tongue made to cleave to his jaws, Psal. xxii. 14, 15.

Q. 31. How was Christ's death on the cross typified under the Old Testament ?

A. By the brazen serpent lifted up in the wilderness. " For as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the son of man be lifted up," John iii. 14.

Q. 32. Were the soul and body of Christ actually separated by death on the cross ?

A. Yes ; for when he " had cried with a loud voice, he said, Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit ; and having said thus, he gave up the ghost," Luke xxiii. 46.

Q. 33. Were either soul or body separated from his divine person ?

A. No ; it is impossible they could, because the union of the human nature to his divine person is absolutely inviolable, " Jesus being the same, yesterday, and to-day, and for ever," Heb. xiii. 8.

Q. 34. What may we learn from Christ's dying the cursed death of the cross ?

A. That " he hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us," Gal. iii. 13.

Q. 35. How did Christ humble himself in what passed upon him after his death ?

A. In being *buried*, and *continuing under the power of death for a time*, 1 Cor. xv. 4.

Q. 36. What respect was paid unto the dead body of Christ before its burial ?

A. "Joseph of Arimathea bought fine linen," Mark xv. 46; and "Nicodemus brought a mixture of myrrh and aloes, and they took the body of Jesus, and wound it in linen clothes, with the spices, as the manner of the Jews is to bury," John xix. 38, 40.

Q. 37. Where did they bury him?

A. In a new "sepulchre, wherein was never man yet laid," John xix. 41.

Q. 38. Why was it so ordered in providence, that he should be laid in a new sepulchre?

A. That none might have it to say, that it was another, and not he, that rose from the dead, Acts iv. 10.

Q. 39. What do you understand by these words in the CREED, He descended into hell?

A. Nothing else but his descending into the grave, to be under the power of death, as its prisoner, Psal. xvi. 10.

Q. 40. What was it that gave death and power dominion over Christ?

A. His being "made sin for us," 2 Cor. v. 21.

Q. 41. Were death and the grave able to maintain their dominion over him?

A. No; because of the complete payment of all demands which he had made as a surety, Rom. vi. 9.

Q. 42. How long *time* did he continue under the power of death?

A. Till he rose on the third day, 1 Cor. xv. 4.

Q. 43. Why did he continue so long under the power of death?

A. To show that he was really dead, this being necessary to be believed, 1 Cor. xv. 3.

Q. 44. What sign, or type, was there of his continuing so long in the grave?

A. The sign of the prophet Jonas, Matth. xii. 40. "As Jonas was three days and three nights in the whale's belly, so shall the Son of man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth."

Q. 45. Did he see corruption in the grave like other men?

A. No; being God's Holy One, absolutely free of sin, his body could see no corruption, Psal. xvi. 10.

Q. 46. What may we learn from Christ's being buried, and continuing under the power of death for a time?

A. That the grave being the "place where the Lord lay," Matth. xxviii. 6, it cannot but be sweet to a dying saint to think that he is to lie down in the same bed, and that in like manner, "as Jesus died and rose again, even so them also which sleep in Jesus will God bring with him," 2 Thess. iv. 14.

28. Q. Wherein consisteth Christ's exaltation?

A. Christ's exaltation consisteth in his rising again from the dead on the third day, in ascending up into heaven, in sitting at the right hand of God the Father, and in coming to judge the world at the last day.

Q. 1. What do you understand by Christ's *exaltation*?

A. Not the conferring of any new glory upon his divine person, which is absolutely unchangeable; but a manifestation, in the human nature (which had eclipsed for a while), of the same glory, of which he was eternally possessed, as the Son of God, John xvii. 5, "And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self, with the glory which I had with thee before the world was."

Q. 2. Why doth Christ's exaltation follow immediately upon the back of his humiliation?

A. Because it is the proper reward thereof, Phil. ii. 8, 9. "He humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross; wherefore, God also hath highly exalted him."

Q. 3. What is the consequence of Christ's exaltation with respect to himself?

A. That the ignominy of the cross is thereby fully wiped off, Heb. xii. 2.

Q. 4. What is the design thereof with respect unto us?

A. "God raised him up from the dead, and gave him glory, that our faith and hope might be in God," 1 Pet. i. 21.

Q. 5. What are the several steps of Christ's exaltation mentioned in the answer?

A. They are, his rising again from the dead, his ascending up into heaven, his sitting at the right hand of God, and his coming to judge the world at the last day.

Q. 6. What is the FIRST STEP of Christ's exaltation?

A. *His rising again from the dead on the third day*, 1 Cor. xv. 4.

Q. 7. Which day of the week did the *third day* fall upon?

A. Upon the first day of the week, which is ever since called the Lord's day, Rev. i. 10, and is to be observed to the end of the world as the Christian Sabbath, Acts xx. 7.

Q. 8. How can the day of Christ's resurrection be called the third day, when he was not two full days in the grave before?

A. It is usual in Scripture to denominate the whole day from the remarkable event that happens in any hour of it: thus Christ being crucified and buried on the evening before the Jewish Sabbath, and rising early in the morning after it, is said to rise again "the third day according to the Scriptures," 1 Cor. xv. 4.

Q. 9. How may the truth of Christ's resurrection be demonstrated?

A. From its being prefigured and foretold, and from its being attested by unquestionable witnesses and infallible proofs, Acts i. 3.

Q. 10. How was the resurrection of Christ prefigured?

A. By Abraham's receiving Isaac from the dead, as a figure or representation thereof, Heb. xi. 19.

Q. 11. Was his resurrection foretold in the Scriptures of the Old Testament?

A. The Apostle Paul expressly affirms that it was, Acts xiii. 32—38. "The promise," says he, "which was made unto the fathers, God hath fulfilled the same unto us their children, in that he hath raised up Jesus again; as it is also written in the second Psalm, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee;—and that he raised him up from the dead,—he said on this wise, I will give you the sure mercies of David (Isa. lv. 3). Wherefore he saith in another Psalm, Thou shalt not suffer thine holy one to see corruption," Psal. xvi. 10.

Q. 12. Did not Christ foretell his own resurrection before he died?

A. Yes; for he said, "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up, meaning the temple of his body," John ii. 19, 21; and trusted his disciples, before his death, to meet him in Galilee, after his resurrection, Matth. xxvi. 32. "After I am risen I will go before you unto Galilee."

Q. 13. By whom was the resurrection of Christ attested?

A. By angels, by the disciples, and many others who saw him alive after he was risen.

Q. 14. What testimony do the angels give unto his resurrection?

A. They tell the women who came to the sepulchre, "He is not here, for he is risen, as he said," Matth. xxviii. 6.

Q. 15. How did the disciples attest the truth of his resurrection?

A. They unanimously declare that "God raised him up the third day, and showed him openly, not to all the people, but unto the witnesses chosen before of God, even to us," says Peter, "who did eat and drink with him after he rose from the dead," Acts x. 40, 41.

Q. 16. Did Christ confirm the truth of his resurrection by frequent bodily appearances after it?

A. Yes; for on the very day he rose "he appeared first to Mary Magdalene," Mark xvi. 9; then he appeared to her in company with the other Mary, Matth. xxviii. 1, 9; afterwards he showed himself to the two disciples going to Em-

maus, Luke xxiv. 13, 15; then to Simon Peter alone, ver. 34; and "the same day at evening, being the first day of the week," he appeared to all the disciples, except Thomas, John xx. 19, 24; eight days thereafter he appeared to all the apostles, when Thomas was with them, ver. 26. "After all these things Jesus showed himself again to his disciples at the sea of Tiberias," John xxi. 1; then we read of his appearing to the eleven disciples on a mountain in Galilee, Matth. xxviii. 16; at which time, it is probable, he was seen of the five hundred brethren at once, mentioned 1 Cor. xv. 6; after that he was seen of James, ver. 7; and, lastly, on the day of his ascension he appeared to all the disciples on Mount Olivet, Acts i. 9, 12.

Q. 17. For how long time did Christ show himself alive to his disciples after his resurrection?

A. Forty days, Acts i. 3.

Q. 18. Why did he continue so long with them?

A. That they might be fully convinced of the truth of his resurrection, by his appearing frequently in their presence, and conversing familiarly with them, Acts x. 40, 41; and that they might be instructed in the nature of his kingdom, and government thereof, chap. i. 3.

Q. 19. How may we be sure, that the testimony of the disciples who were witnesses of the resurrection of Christ may be depended upon as an infallible proof thereof?

A. Because they testified of his resurrection, as a thing which they had certain and personal knowledge of, and proclaimed it in a most public and open manner, in the very place where that remarkable event happened, Acts iii. 15; and that under all the outward disadvantages of being imprisoned, beaten, Acts v. 18, 40, and persecuted unto death itself, for publishing and defending such a doctrine, Acts xii. 2, 3.

Q. 20. By whose power did Christ rise from the dead?

A. Although the resurrection of Christ be frequently ascribed to the Father, as in Eph. i. 20, yet in opposition to the Socinians, and other enemies of the Deity of Christ, it is to be maintained, that he rose also by his own divine power, as is evident from Rom. i. 4.

Q. 21. How may it further appear that he rose by his own divine power?

A. He expressly affirms, that he would raise up the temple of his body on the third day, John ii. 19; and that he had power to lay down his life, and to take it again, chap. x. 18.

Q. 22. In what capacity did he rise from the dead?

A. In the capacity of a public person, representing all his spiritual seed, and as having their discharge in his hand, Rom. iv. 25.

Q. 23. What was the necessity of Christ's resurrection ?

A. It was necessary in respect of God, in respect of Christ himself, and in respect of us.

Q. 24. Why was it necessary in respect of God ?

A. Because, since he is the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, it was necessary that he should not be the God of a dead but of a living Redeemer ; for he " is not the God of the dead, but of the living," Matth. xxii. 32.

Q. 25. Why was the resurrection of Christ necessary in respect of himself ?

A. Because, having fully paid the debt for which he was incarcerated, justice required that he should " be taken from prison, and from judgment," Isa. liii. 8 ; and that, since he purchased a kingdom by his death, he should rise again to possess it, Rom. xiv. 9.

Q. 26. Why was it necessary in respect of us ?

A. Because " if Christ be not risen, our faith is vain, and we are yet in our sins," 1 Cor. xv. 17.

Q. 27. Did Christ rise with the self-same body in which he suffered ?

A. Yes : for, says he to Thomas, " Reach hither thy finger, and behold my hands ; and reach hither thy hand, and thrust it into my side ; and be not faithless, but believing," John xx. 27.

Q. 28. What remarkable circumstances accompanied the resurrection of Christ ?

A. It was accompanied with a great earthquake, the attendance of angels, and such terror upon the keepers, that they " did shake and became as dead men," Matth. xxviii. 2, 4.

Q. 29. What pitiful shift did the high priests and elders take to smother the truth of his resurrection ?

A. They bribed the soldiers to say, " His disciples came by night and stole him away while we slept," Matth. xxviii. 12, 13.

Q. 30. How doth the falsehood of this ill-made story appear at first sight ?

A. From this, that it is not to be supposed the whole company of soldiers, who guarded the sepulchre, would be all asleep at once, especially considering the great earthquake that accompanied the rolling away the stone, and the severity of the Roman military discipline in like cases, Acts xii. 18 ; and if they were really asleep, how could they know that the disciples came and stole him away ?

Q. 31. What doth the doctrine of Christ's resurrection teach us ?

A. That he must needs be a " God of peace, who brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus," Heb. xiii. 20 ; that death and the grave are unstinged and vanquished, 1 Cor. xv. 55 ;

and that his resurrection is a certain pledge and earnest of the resurrection of his members at the last day, he having "become the first fruits of them that slept," ver. 20.

Q. 32. What is the SECOND STEP of Christ's exaltation?

A. *His ascending up into heaven*, Psal. lxxviii. 18.

Q. 33. Does not Christ's *ascending into heaven* presuppose his descending thence?

A. Yes; for so argues the apostle, "Now that he ascended, what is it but that he also descended first into the lower parts of the earth?" Eph. iv. 9.

Q. 34. Did Christ, when he is said to descend, bring a human nature from heaven with him?

A. By no means; for the human nature was made of a woman, on this earth, by the overshadowing power of the Holy Ghost, Luke i. 35; but his descending signifies his amazing condescension, in assuming our nature into personal union with himself, Phil. ii. 6, 7.

Q. 35. How is the ascension of Christ expressed in Scripture?

A. By his going away, John xvi. 7; his being "received up into heaven," Mark xvi. 19; and his having "entered in once into the holy place," Heb. ix. 12.

Q. 36. As to which of his two natures is he properly said to ascend?

A. Although Christ ascended personally into heaven, yet ascension is properly attributed unto his human nature, in regard the divine nature is every where present, John iii. 13.

Q. 37. From what part of the earth did Christ ascend unto heaven?

A. He ascended from Mount Olivet, which was nigh to Bethany, Luke xxiv. 50, compared with Acts i. 12.

Q. 38. What is considerable in this circumstance, that he ascended from Mount Olivet?

A. In the Mount of Olives was the place where his "soul was exceeding sorrowful even unto death;" and where he was in such an agony, that "his sweat was, as it were, great drops of blood falling down to the ground," Luke xxii. 39, 44; and therefore, in that very place, his heart is made glad, by a triumphant ascension into that fulness of joy, and those pleasures for evermore, that are at God's right hand, Psal. xvi. 11.

Q. 39. Whether did Christ ascend, or to what place?

A. He ascended up *into heaven*, Acts i. 10, 11.

Q. 40. When did Christ ascend into heaven?

A. When forty days after his resurrection were elapsed, Acts i. 3.

Q. 41. Who were the witnesses of his ascension?

A. The eleven disciples were eye-witnesses thereof; for

"while they beheld, he was taken up, and a cloud received him out of their sight," Acts i. 9.

Q. 42. What was he doing at his parting with them?

A. He was blessing them, Luke xxiv. 51. "And it came to pass, while he blessed them, he was parted from them, and carried up into heaven."

Q. 43. What was his parting word?

A. "Lo! I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world," Matth. xxviii. 20.

Q. 44. In what capacity did Christ ascend?

A. In a public capacity, as representing his whole mystical body; hence he is called the Forerunner, who "is, for us, entered within the veil," Heb. vi. 20.

Q. 45. With what solemnity did he ascend?

A. With the solemnity of a glorious triumph; for, having vanquished sin, Satan, hell, and death, he "ascended up on high, leading captivity captive," Eph. iv. 8.

Q. 46. Who went in his retinue?

A. Thousands of angels, sounding forth his praise, as a victorious conqueror, Psal. lxviii. 17.

Q. 47. What evidence did he give from heaven of the reality of his ascension?

A. The extraordinary effusion of the Holy Ghost on the day of Pentecost, within a few days after it, Acts ii. 1—3.

Q. 48. Why was this remarkable down-pouring of the Spirit delayed till after Christ's ascension?

A. That he might evidence his bounty and liberality, upon his instalment into the kingdom, by giving "gifts unto men," Eph. iv. 8.

Q. 49. For what end did Christ ascend up into heaven?

A. That he might take possession of the many mansions there, and prepare them for his people, by carrying in the merit of his oblation thither, John xvi. 2, 3; and likewise that he might make continual intercession for them, Heb. vii. 25.

Q. 50. What doth the ascension of Christ teach us?

A. That he has brought in an everlasting righteousness, because he has gone to his Father, John xvi. 10; and to believe that he will come again to receive us to himself, that where he is, there we may be also, chap. xiv. 3.

Q. 51. What is the THIRD STEP of Christ's exaltation?

A. His *sitting at the right hand of God the Father*, Eph. i. 20.

Q. 52. What is meant by the *right hand* in Scripture?

A. The place of the greatest honour and dignity, 1 Kings ii. 19.

Q. 53. What is meant by *sitting*?

A. It implies rest and quietness, Micah iv. 4. "They shall sit, every man under his vine and under his fig-tree, and none

shall make them afraid ;” and likewise power and authority, Zech. vi. 13. “ He shall sit and rule upon his throne.”

Q. 54. What then are we to understand by Christ's *sitting at the right hand of God the Father* ?

A. The quiet and peaceable possession of that matchless dignity, and fulness of power, wherewith he is vested, as the glorious King and Head of his church, Eph. i. 21, 22.

Q. 55. For what end doth he sit at the right hand of the Father ?

A. That he may represent his people there, and make his enemies his footstool.

Q. 56. How doth it appear that he represents his people at the right hand of God ?

A. Because they are said to sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus, which only can be meant of their sitting representatively in him, as their glorious head, Eph. ii. 6.

Q. 57. How are the enemies of Christ made his footstool ?

A. By the triumphant victory which is obtained over them, Psal. lxxii. 9 ; and the extremity of shame, horror, and confusion, with which they shall be covered, Psal. cxxxii. 18.

Q. 58. When shall his enemies be made his footstool ?

A. He has already triumphed over them in his cross, Col. ii. 15 ; but he will make his final conquest conspicuous to the whole world at the last day, Rev. xx. 10—14.

Q. 59. How long will Christ sit at the right hand of God the Father ?

A. For ever and ever, Psal. xlv. 6. “ Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever.”

Q. 60. Will Christ's mediatory power and authority, at the right hand of God, be the same in the church-triumphant in heaven, as it is in the church-militant on earth ?

A. It will be the same as to the essence or substance of it, but different as to the manner of its administration.

Q. 61. Wherein consists the essence of Christ's mediatory power and authority in heaven ?

A. In the relation wherein he stands to the members of his body : he will continue for ever to be the King, Head, and Husband of the church-triumphant, the fountain of all blessing and happiness unto them, and the bond of their perpetual fellowship and communion with God, Psal. xlvi. 14 ; Hos. ii. 19 ; Rev. vii. 17.

Q. 62. What is the difference betwixt the manner of the administration of his mediatory power here and hereafter ?

A. The administration of his kingdom on this earth is, by the ministry of the word, the dispensation of the sacraments, and the exercise of ecclesiastical government and discipline :

but in heaven there will be no use for any of these, Rev. xxi. 22. "I saw no temple therein; for the Lord God Almighty, and the Lamb, are the temple of it."

Q. 63. What is meant then by Christ's delivering up the kingdom to God, even the Father? 1 Cor. xv. 24.

A. The meaning is, Christ having completed the salvation of his church, will present all and every one of them to the Father, "not having spot or wrinkle, or any such thing," Eph. v. 27, saying, "Behold! I, and the children which God hath given me," Heb. ii. 13.

Q. 64. What is meant by Christ's putting down all rule and all authority, and power, in the above-cited? 1 Cor. xv. 24.

A. The meaning is, he will have no occasion to exercise his power and authority in such sort as he did before, in regard there will be no more elect to save, and no more enemies to conquer, Rev. xix. 8—20.

Q. 65. In what sense will the Son also himself be subject to him that put all things under him, as it is said, ver. 28?

A. The Son as Mediator, being the Father's servant in the great work of redemption, Isa. xlii. 1, shall then be "subject to him that put all things under him," in so far as, having finished his mediatorial service, in bringing all the elect to glory, he will render up his commission, as his Father's delegate, not to be executed any more in the former manner as ruling over his church in the midst of his enemies; "for he must reign till he hath put all his enemies under his feet," 1 Cor. xv. 25.

Q. 66. In what respect is it said, that God shall then be all in all?

A. In regard the glory of the three-one God, Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, will then be most clearly displayed, and no more a seeing "through a glass darkly, but face to face," 1 Cor. xiii. 12; and a seeing him as he is, 1 John iii. 2.

Q. 67. What may we learn from Christ's sitting at the right hand of God?

A. That we ought to seek the things that are above, where Christ is; and to "set our affections on things above, not on things on the earth," Col. iii. 1, 2.

Q. 68. What is the FOURTH STEP of Christ's exaltation?

A. His *coming to judge the world at the last day*, Rev. i. 7; John xii. 48.

Q. 69. How do you prove that there will be a general judgment?

A. The Scripture expressly asserts it; and the justice and goodness of God necessarily require it.

Q. 70. Where is it expressly asserted in Scripture?

A. In many places, particularly Acts xvii. 31. "He hath appointed a day in which he will judge the world in righteousness, by that man whom he hath ordained," &c. See also 2 Cor. v. 10; Jude, ver. 6; Rev. xx. 11, 12, 13.

Q. 71. Why do the justice and goodness of God require that there be a judgment?

A. Because they necessarily require that it be well with the righteous, and ill with the wicked; that every man be rewarded according to his works, which, not being done in this life, there must be a judgment to come. "Seeing it is a righteous thing with God to recompense tribulation to them that trouble you; and to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven," 2 Thess. i. 6, 7.

Q. 72. Who is to be the Judge?

A. The Son of man, the man Christ Jesus, Matth. xxv. 31; Rom. xiv. 10.

Q. 73. How will Christ, as God-man, be Judge, when it is said (Psal. l. 6) that God is Judge himself?

A. The three-one God, Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, is Judge, in respect of judiciary authority, dominion, and power; but Christ, as God-man Mediator, is the Judge in respect of dispensation, and special exercise of that power, John v. 22. "The Father—hath committed all judgment unto the Son."

Q. 74. Why is the judgment of the world committed to Christ as Mediator?

A. Because it is a part of that exaltation, which is conferred upon him in consequence of his voluntary humiliation, Phil. ii. 8, 9, 10.

Q. 75. When will Christ come to judge the world?

A. *At the last day*, John vi. 39, 40.

Q. 76. Why is it called the last day?

A. Because after it time shall be no more; there will be no more a succession of days and nights, but one perpetual day of light, comfort, and joy to the righteous, Rev. xxi. 23; and one perpetual night of outer darkness, misery, and wo unto the wicked, Matth. xxv. 30.

Q. 77. In what manner will Christ come to judge the world?

A. In a most splendid and glorious manner; for he will come "in the clouds of heaven, with power and great glory," Matth. xxiv. 30;—"in the glory of his Father, with the holy angels," Mark viii. 38.

Q. 78. Will the world be looking for him when he will come to judgment?

A. No; his coming will be a mighty surprise to the world; for "the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night," 2 Pet. iii. 10. See also Luke xvi. 26, 31.

Q. 79. What is the difference betwixt his first and second coming?

A. In his first coming he was made sin for us, though he knew no sin, 2 Cor. v. 21; but "he shall appear the second time without sin unto salvation," Heb. ix. 28.

Q. 80. Is the precise time of his second coming known to men or angels?

A. No; it is fixed in the counsel of God, but not revealed to us, Mark xiii. 32.

Q. 81. What will be the forerunners of his second coming?

A. The preaching of the gospel unto all nations, Matth. xxiv. 14; the downfall of Antichrist, Rev. xviii. 21; the conversion of the Jews, Rev. xvi. 12; and yet after all a general decay of religion, and great security, Luke xviii. 8.

Q. 82. What are the qualities of the Judge?

A. He will be a visible Judge, "every eye shall see him," Rev. i. 7; an omniscient Judge, "all things will be naked and open unto his eyes," Heb. iv. 13; a most just and righteous Judge, 2 Tim. iv. 8; and an omnipotent Judge, able to put his sentence into execution, Rev. vi. 17.

Q. 83. Who are the parties that shall compare?

A. All mankind, called all nations, Matth. xxv. 32; and likewise "the angels which kept not their first estate," Jude, ver. 6.

Q. 84. What summons will be given to the parties?

A. "The voice of the archangel, and the trump of God," 2 Thess. iv. 16.

Q. 85. Will any of them be able to sit the summons?

A. By no means; "all shall stand before the judgment-seat of Christ; and every one shall give account of himself to God," Rom. xiv. 10, 12.

Q. 86. Where will be his throne of judgment?

A. In the clouds, or aerial heavens; for we read of being "caught up in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air," 1 Thess. iv. 17.

Q. 87. By whom shall all mankind, great and small, be gathered unto the bar of the Judge?

A. By the angels, who shall gather together all the elect, Mark xiii. 27; and likewise the reprobate, Matth. xiii. 41.

Q. 88. Will the elect and reprobate stand together in one assembly to be judged?

A. No; they shall be "separated one from another, as a shepherd divideth his sheep from the goats," Matth. xxv. 32.

Q. 89. How will they be sorted and separated, the one from the other?

A. The elect, who are called the sheep, being "caught up together in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air" (1

Thess. iv. 17), shall be set on his right hand, and the reprobate, being the goats, are left on the earth, Matth. xxiv. 40, upon the Judge's left hand, Matth. xxv. 33.

Q. 90. What kind of separation will this be?

A. It will be a total and final separation, never to meet, or be mixed with one another any more, Matth. xxv. 46.

Q. 91. Will any man be a mere spectator of these two opposite companies?

A. No, surely; every man and woman must take their place in one of the two, and shall share with the company, whatever hand it be upon, Matth. xxv. 33.

Q. 92. What will be the subject-matter of the trial?

A. Men's works, "for God shall bring every work into judgment," &c., Eccl. xii. 14; their words, "every idle word that men speak, they shall give account thereof in the day of judgment," Matth. xii. 36; and their thoughts, for he "will make manifest the counsels of the heart," 1 Cor. iv. 5.

Q. 93. Why are books said to be opened at this solemn trial? Rev. xx. 12.

A. Not to prevent mistakes in any point of law or fact, for the Judge has an infallible knowledge of all things; but to show that his proceeding is most accurate, just, and well-grounded in every step of it, Gen. xvii. 25.

Q. 94. What are these books that shall be opened, and men judged out of these things which are written in the books?

A. The book of God's remembrance, Mal. iii. 16; the book of conscience, Rom. ii. 15; the book of the law, Gal. iii. 10; and the book of life, Rev. xx. 12.

Q. 95. What is the book of God's remembrance?

A. It is the same with his omniscience, whereby he knows exactly every man's state, thoughts, words, and deeds, whether good or bad, John xxi. 17. "Lord, thou knowest all things."

Q. 96. What will this book serve for?

A. It will serve for a libel against the ungodly, but with respect to the saints, it will be a memorial of all the good ever they have done, Matth. xxv. 35—41.

Q. 97. What kind of a book is that of conscience?

A. It is just a double of God's book of remembrance, so far as it relates to one's own state and case, Rom. ii. 15.

Q. 98. What is the book of the law?

A. It is the standard and rule of right and wrong, Rom. vii. 7; and likewise of the sentence that shall be passed upon those that are under it, Gal. iii. 10.

Q. 99. Why will this book be opened?

A. That all on the left hand may read their sentence therein before it be pronounced, Ezek. xviii. 4.

Q. 100. By what law will the Heathens be judged?

A. By the natural law, or light of nature, which bears, "that they which commit such things (as they shall be convicted of) are worthy of death," Rom. i. 32.

Q. 101. By what law shall Jews and Christians be judged?

A. By the written law, Rom. ii. 12. "As many as have sinned in the law (*i. e.* under the written law) shall be judged by the (written) law."

Q. 102. Whether will Christians or Heathens be most inexcusable?

A. It is beyond all doubt, that it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon, and other Heathen countries, at the day of judgment than for those who enjoy the light of the gospel, and despised it, Matth. xi. 22, 24.

Q. 103. Will the book of the law be opened for the sentence of the saints?

A. No; for being in this life brought under a new covenant, they are no more "under the law, but under grace," Rom. vi. 14, and therefore another book must be opened for their sentence.

Q. 104. What is that other book out of which the saints shall be judged?

A. It is the book of life, Rev. xx. 12.

Q. 105. What is registered in this book?

A. The names of all the elect, Luke x. 20. "Your names are written in heaven," Rev. iii. 5. "I will not blot out his name out of the book of life."

Q. 106. Why is it called the book of life?

A. Because it contains God's gracious and unchangeable purpose, to bring all the elect to salvation, or eternal life, "through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth," 2 Thess. ii. 13.

Q. 107. In whose hands is this book lodged?

A. In the hands of the Mediator Christ Jesus, Deut. xxxiii. 3. "All his saints are in thy hand."

Q. 108. What is the ground of the saints' absolution according to this book?

A. The book of life being opened, it will be known to all who are elected, and who not: Christ will, as it were, read out every man and woman's name recorded in this book, Rev. iii. 5. "I will confess his name before my Father, and before his angels."

Q. 109. Whether will the cause of the righteous or the wicked be first discussed?

A. As "the dead in Christ shall rise first" (1 Thess. iv. 16), so it appears from Matth. xxv. 34, and 41, compared,

that the judgment of the saints, on the right hand, will have the preference.

Q. 110. What is the blessed sentence that shall be pronounced upon the saints?

A. "Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world," Matth. xxv. 34.

Q. 111. For what reason will this sentence be pronounced first?

A. Because the saints are to sit in judgment, as Christ's assessors, against wicked men and apostate angels, 1 Cor. vi. 3, 4.

Q. 112. Upon what footing or foundation will this sentence pass?

A. Upon the footing of free grace alone, reigning through the imputed righteousness of the Surety unto eternal life, Rom. v. 21.

Q. 113. Is it not said, Rev. xx. 13, that they are judged every man according to their works?

A. The sentence passes upon the saints, ACCORDING to their works, as flowing from a heart renewed and sanctified, but not FOR their works, nor for their faith neither, as if eternal life were any way merited by them, Gal. iii. 18; for the kingdom is said to be prepared for them: they inherit it as children, Rom. viii. 17; but do not procure it to themselves, as servants do their wages, Col. iv. 1.

Q. 114. Are not good works mentioned as the ground of the sentence, Matth. xxv. 35, 36: "I was an hungered, and ye gave me meat?" &c.

A. These good works are mentioned, not as grounds of their sentence, but as evidences of their union with Christ, and of their right and title to heaven in him, John xv. 5, 8; even as the apostle says, in another case, of the unbelieving Jews, 1 Cor. x. 5. "With many of them God was not well pleased, for they were overthrown in the wilderness:" their overthrow in the wilderness was not the ground of God's displeasure with them, but the evidence of it.

Q. 115. Will there be any mention made of the sins of the righteous?

A. No; "In that time the iniquity of Israel shall be sought for, and there shall be none; and the sins of Judah, and they shall not be found," Jer. 1. 20. "Who shall lay any thing to the charge of God's elect? It is God that justifieth," &c., Rom. viii. 33, 34.

Q. 116. What will follow upon the saints receiving their sentence of absolution?

A. They "shall judge the world," 1 Cor. vi. 2.

Q. 117. In what way and manner shall they judge the world?

A. As assessors to Christ the judge, consenting to his judgment as just, Rev. xix. 2; and saying Amen to the doom pronounced against all the ungodly, Psal. cxlix. 6, 7, 8, 9.

Q. 118. What will be the sentence of damnation that shall pass upon the ungodly?

A. "Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels," Matth. xxv. 41.

Q. 119. How is the misery of the wicked aggravated by the pronouncing of this sentence?

A. Inasmuch as they are damned by him who came to save sinners, Heb. ii. 3; and must undergo the wrath of the Lamb, from which they can make no escape, Rev. vi. 16, 17.

Q. 120. Is there any injury or wrong done them by this sentence?

A. By no means; for, says our Lord, "I was an hungered, and ye gave me no meat," &c., Matth. xxv. 42, 43.

Q. 121. Are these evils no more than evidences of their cursed state?

A. They are not only evidences of their ungodly state, but they are the proper causes and grounds of their condemnation: for though good works do not merit salvation, yet evil works merit damnation, Rom. vi. 23, "The wages of sin is death."

Q. 122. Why are sins of omission only mentioned in the above passage?

A. To show, that if men shall be condemned for sins of omission, James ii. 13, much more of those of commission, Rom. ii. 23, 24.

Q. 123. What will follow upon the sentence of condemnation against the wicked?

A. The immediate execution thereof, without the least reprieve or delay, Matth. xxii. 13.

Q. 124. Will the devils also be judged?

A. Yes; they are "reserved unto the judgment of the great day," Jude, ver. 6.

Q. 125. How can they be said to be reserved unto the judgment of that day, when they are condemned already?

A. Though from the first moment of their sinning they were actually under the wrath of God, and ever since carry their hell about with them, yet their final sentence to farther judgment is reserved for that day, 2 Pet. ii. 4.

Q. 126. What is the final sentence, or farther judgment, unto which they are reserved?

A. It will be a most dreadful addition and accession to their present torments, not only by the holy triumph which the saints shall have over them, as vile, vanquished, and

contemptible enemies ; but likewise by the eternal restraint that shall be laid upon them from hurting the elect any more ; and that by their being shut up and closely confined to the prison of hell, under the utmost extremity of anguish and horror, for ever and ever, Rev. xx. 10.

Q. 127. Who will keep the field on that day ?

A. Christ, and his glorious company ; they shall see the backs of all their enemies, for the DAMNED shall go off first ; as seems to be intimated in the order mentioned, Matth. xxv. 46. " These shall go away into everlasting punishment, but the righteous into life eternal."

Q. 128. What improvement ought we to make of Christ's coming to judge the world at the last day ?

A. To be diligent, that we be " found of him in peace at that day," 2 Pet. iii. 14 ; by closing with him in the offer of the gospel now : to be looking for, and hasting unto the coming of the day of God," ver. 12 ; and having " our loins girded about, and our lights burning," Luke xii. 35, that so, when he comes, whether at death, or judgment, we may be able to say with joy, " Lo ! this is our God, we have waited for him," Isa. xxv. 9.

29. Q. How are we made partakers of the redemption purchased by Christ ?

A. We are made partakers of the redemption purchased by Christ by the effectual application of it to us by his Holy Spirit.

Q. 1. What do you understand by *redemption* in this answer ?

A. The whole of that salvation which is revealed and exhibited in the gospel, Psal. cxxx. 7, 8.

Q. 2. Why is redemption said to be *purchased* ?

A. Because having brought ourselves into a state of bondage and servitude, Gal. iv. 20, we could not be ransomed but at a great price, 1 Cor. vi. 20.

Q. 3. What was the price of our redemption ?

A. The precious blood of Christ, 1 Pet. i. 19.

Q. 4. What is it to be *partakers* of this redemption ?

A. It is to have a share therein, or to be entered upon the begun possession of it, 1 Cor. x. 17.

Q. 5. Can we make ourselves partakers of redemption ?

A. No ; we must be *made* partakers thereof, Heb. iii. 14. " We are made partakers of Christ," &c.

Q. 6. Why cannot we make ourselves partakers of it ?

A. Because we are altogether without strength, Rom. v. 6 : and utterly averse to all spiritual good, John v. 40.

Q. 7. How then are we made partakers of redemption ?

A. *By the application of it to us.*

Q. 8. What is meant by the *application* of redemption to us ?

A. The conferring of all the benefits of it upon us, and making them our own by way of free gift, John x. 28. "I give unto them eternal life."

Q. 9. How was the application of redemption typified under the Old Testament ?

A. By sprinkling the blood of the sacrifice upon the people, Exod. xxiv. 8.

Q. 10. Does not the application of redemption presuppose the purchase thereof ?

A. Yes ; it could never be applied, if it were not first purchased, Job xxxiii. 24.

Q. 11. How then could it be applied to the Old Testament saints, when it was not then actually purchased ?

A. It was applied upon the credit of the bond which the Surety gave from eternity, of making a meritorious purchase in the fulness of time, Prov. viii. 23, 31.

Q. 12. Can the purchase of redemption avail us, if it is not applied ?

A. No more than meat can feed, clothes warm, or medicines heal us, if they are not used, John i. 12.

Q. 13. When may the application of redemption be said to be *effectual* ?

A. When it produces the saving effects for which it is designed.

Q. 14. What are these saving effects ?

A. The opening of the eyes of sinners, and turning them "from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan to God," Acts xxvi. 18.

Q. 15. If the application of redemption be effectual, what need is there of any after endeavours to grow in grace and holiness ?

A. The giving us all things that pertain to life and godliness is the greatest encouragement and excitement to add to our faith, virtue, &c. ; that is, to use all suitable endeavours, in the strength of grace, after spiritual growth, 2 Pet. i. 3, 5.

Q. 16. Is there any application of redemption that is not effectual ?

A. Yes ; there is an outward application thereof in baptism, which is not of itself effectual, as is evident in the instance of Simon Magus, who was baptized and yet remained in the "gall of bitterness, and in the bond of iniquity," Acts viii. 13, 23.

Q. 17. By whom is the redemption purchased by Christ effectually applied?

A. *By his Holy Spirit*, Tit. iii. 5, 6.

Q. 18. Why is the application of redemption ascribed unto the *Spirit*?

A. To show that each of the three persons in the adorable Trinity is equally hearty and cordial in the work of man's redemption; the FATHER in ordaining, the SON in purchasing, and the SPIRIT in applying it, John vi. 57—63.

Q. 19. Why is the Spirit in this work called the *Holy Spirit*?

A. Because, as he is essentially holy, Psal. li. 11; so he is holy in all his works and operations, Rom. xv. 16.

Q. 20. Why is redemption said to be applied by the Spirit of Christ, or *His Holy Spirit*?

A. Because the Spirit is sent for this work more immediately by Christ, and through his mediation, John xiv. 16; as the leading fruit of his purchase, John xvi. 7.

Q. 21. What is the difference betwixt the purchase of redemption and the application of it?

A. The purchase of redemption is a work done without us, Isa. lxiii. 3; but the application of it takes place within us, Rom. viii. 16.

Q. 22. To whom is redemption effectually applied by the Spirit?

A. "To all those for whom Christ has purchased it," John x. 15, 16,\* and to none else.

Q. 23. Can they who have never heard the gospel, and so know not Jesus Christ, nor believe in him, be saved by their living according to the light of nature?

A. "They—cannot be saved, John viii. 24: be they ever so diligent to frame their lives according to the light of nature, 1 Cor. 20, 21; or the laws of that religion which they profess, John iv. 22; neither is there salvation in any other but Christ alone, Acts iv. 12; who is the Saviour only of his body, the church, Eph. v. 23."†

Q. 24. What means doth the Spirit make use of in the application of redemption?

A. The Spirit of God makes use of the reading, 2 Tim. iii. 15, 16; but especially the preaching of the word for this end, Rom. x. 17.

Q. 25. Are these means effectual of themselves?

A. No; without the power and efficacy of the Spirit accompanying them, 1 Thess. i. 5.

Q. 26. What is incumbent on us, in a way of duty, that the redemption purchased by Christ may be effectually applied unto us?

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 59.

† Ibid. quest. 60.

A. To search for the knowledge of Christ "as for hid treasure," Prov. ii. 4; and to pray for the Spirit to testify of Christ, John xv. 26, in the faith of his own promise. "He shall glorify me; for he shall receive of mine, and shall show it unto you," chap. xvi. 14.

30. Q. How doth the Spirit apply to us the redemption purchased by Christ?

A. The Spirit applieth to us the redemption purchased by Christ, by working faith in us, and thereby uniting us to Christ, in our effectual calling.

Q. 1. What is the special work of the Spirit in the application of redemption?

A. It is the *uniting us to Christ*, Rom. viii. 9, 11.

Q. 2. Can we have no share in the redemption purchased by Christ without union to his person?

A. No; because all purchased blessings are lodged in his person, John iii. 35; and go along therewith, 1 John v. 12.

Q. 3. What is it to be united to his person?

A. It is to be joined unto, or made one with him, 1 Cor. vi. 17.

Q. 4. Is it then a personal union?

A. No; it is indeed a union of persons, but not a personal union: believers make not one person with Christ, but one body mystical, whereof he is the head, 1 Cor. xii. 12, 27.

Q. 5. How can we be united to Christ, seeing he is in heaven and we on earth?

A. Although the human nature of Christ be in heaven, yet his person is every where, Matth. xxviii. 20.

Q. 6. Where can he be found on earth, in order to our being united unto him?

A. In the word, which is nigh to us, and Christ therein, Rom. x. 8, 9.

Q. 7. By what means are we united to Christ as brought nigh in the word?

A. By the means of *faith* or believing, Eph. iii. 17. "That Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith."

Q. 8. Is it the indispensable duty of all who hear the word to believe on Christ, or come to him by faith?

A. Yes, surely; for "this is his commandment, that we should believe on the name of his Son Jesus Christ," 1 John iii. 23.

Q. 9. Are any that hear the word able to believe of themselves?

A. No; faith is "not of ourselves, it is the gift of God," Eph. ii. 8.

Q. 10. How then come we by faith ?

A. By the Spirit's *working it in us*, and therefore called "the Spirit of faith," 2 Cor. iv. 13, because he is the principal efficient cause thereof.

Q. 11. Why can no less a worker than the Spirit of God work this faith ?

A. Because it is a work that requires Almighty power, even the same power "which was wrought in Christ when he was raised from the dead," Eph. i. 19, 20.

Q. 12. What is the end or design of the Spirit in working faith in us ?

A. It is the *uniting us to Christ*, Eph. iii. 17.

Q. 13. To whom are sinners united before union with Christ ?

A. To the first Adam, Rom. v. 12.

Q. 14. By what bond are they united to the first Adam ?

A. By the bond of the covenant of works, whereby Adam, who was the natural root of his posterity, became their moral root also, bearing them as their representative in that covenant, Rom. v. 19.

Q. 15. How is this union dissolved ?

A. By being "married to another, even to him who is raised from the dead," Rom. vii. 4.

Q. 16. Is Christ united to us before we be united to him ?

A. The union is mutual, but it begins first on his side, 1 John iv. 19.

Q. 17. How does it begin first on his side ?

A. By union, which is before union.

Q. 18. What understand you by union ?

A. It is the Spirit of Christ uniting himself first to us according to the promise. "I will put my Spirit within you," Ezek. xxxvi. 27.

Q. 19. How does the Spirit of Christ unite himself first unto us ?

A. By coming into the soul at the happy moment appointed for the spiritual marriage with Christ, and quickening it, so that it is no more morally dead but alive, having new spiritual powers put into it, Eph. ii. 5; "even when we were dead in sins he hath quickened us."

Q. 20. Whether is the Spirit of Christ, upon his first entrance, actively or passively received ?

A. The soul, morally dead in sin, can be no more but a mere passive recipient, Ezek. xxxvii. 14. "And I shall put my Spirit in you, and ye shall live."

Q. 21. What is the immediate effect of quickening the dead soul by the Spirit of Christ passively received ?

A. The immediate effect thereof is actually believing.

Christ being come in by his Spirit, the dead soul is thereby quickened, and the immediate effect thereof is, the embracing him by faith, whereby the union is completed, John v. 25.

Q. 22. What are the nature and properties of this union?

A. It is a spiritual, mysterious, real, intimate, and indissoluble union.

Q. 23. In what respect is it a spiritual union?

A. Inasmuch as the one Spirit of God dwells in the head and in the members, Rom. viii. 9.

Q. 24. Why is it called mystical or mysterious? Eph. v. 32.

A. Because it is full of mysteries: Christ in the believer, John xvii. 23; living in him, Gal. ii. 20; walking in him, 2 Cor. vi. 16; and the believer "dwelling in God," 1 John iv. 16; "putting on Christ," Gal. iii. 27; "eating his flesh, and drinking his blood," John vi. 56.

Q. 25. Why is it called a real union?

A. Because believers are as really united to Christ as the members of the natural body are to their head; "for we are members of his body, of his flesh, and of his bones," Eph. v. 30.

Q. 26. How intimate is this union?

A. It is so intimate, that believers are said to be one in the Father and the Son, as the Father is in Christ, and Christ in the Father, John xvii. 21. "That they all may be one, as thou, Father, art in me, and I in thee: that they also may be one in us."

Q. 27. Can this union ever be dissolved?

A. By no means; "neither death nor life, &c. shall be able to separate us from the love of God which is in Christ Jesus our Lord," Rom. viii. 38, 39.

Q. 28. Is it a legal union that is betwixt Christ and believers?

A. Though it is not a mere legal union, yet it is a union sustained in law, in so far as that upon that union taking place, what Christ did and suffered for them is reckoned in law as if they had done and suffered it themselves; hence they are said to be "crucified with Christ," Gal. ii. 20; to be "buried with him," Col. ii. 12; and to be "raised up together," Eph. ii. 6.

Q. 29. What are the bonds of this union?

A. The Spirit on Christ's part, 1 John iii. 24; and faith on ours, Eph. iii. 17.

Q. 30. Whether is it the Spirit on Christ's part, or faith on ours, that unites the sinner to Christ?

A. They both concur in their order: Christ first apprehends the sinner by his Spirit, 1 Cor. xii. 13; and the sinner thus apprehended, apprehends Christ by faith, Phil. iii. 12.

Q. 31. How may persons know if they are apprehended of Christ?

A. If he has engaged their love and esteem, and dissolved the regard they had to other things that come in competition with him, 1 Pet. ii. 7.

Q. 32. Are the bonds of this union inviolable?

A. Yes; "I gave unto them," says Christ, "eternal life, and they shall never perish, neither shall any pluck them out of my hand," John x. 28.

Q. 33. What makes the Spirit an inviolable bond of union?

A. Because he never departs from that soul where he enters, but abides there for ever, John xiv. 16.

Q. 34. How can faith be an inviolable bond of union, when it is subject to failing?

A. Although the actings of faith may sometimes fail, yet the habit thereof never shall, nor the exercise neither in time of need, and that because of the prevalency of Christ's intercession, Luke xxii. 32. "I have prayed for thee, that thy faith fail not."

Q. 35. Are the bodies of the saints united to Christ, at the same time that their souls are?

A. Yes; their bodies are made members of Christ, and temples of the Holy Ghost which is in them, 1 Cor. vi. 15, 19.

Q. 36. Whether is it sinners or saints that are united to Christ?

A. In the very moment of the union sinners are made saints, 1 Cor. vi. 11.

Q. 37. Whereunto is this union compared in Scripture?

A. Unto the union between husband and wife, Rom. vii. 4; head and members, Col. i. 18; root and branches, John xv. 5; foundation and superstructure, 1 Pet. ii. 5, 6.

Q. 38. What are believers entitled unto by their union with Christ?

A. To himself and all the blessings of his purchase, 1 Cor. iii. 22, 23.

Q. 39. When does the Spirit work faith in us, and thereby unite us to Christ?

A. He does it *in our effectual calling*, 1 Cor. i. 9.\*

Q. 40. What improvement ought both saints and sinners to make of the doctrine of union with Christ?

A. SAINTS ought to evidence that Christ is in them, by endeavouring that his image shine forth in their conversation, studying to "walk worthy of the Lord unto all pleasing," Col. i. 10; and SINNERS ought to seek after this happy relation to Christ, while he is yet standing at their door, and knocking, Rev. iii. 20; and while the gates of the city of refuge are not yet closed, Zech. ix. 12.

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 66.

31. Q. What is effectual calling ?

A. Effectual calling is the work of God's Spirit, whereby, convincing us of our sin and misery, enlightening our minds in the knowledge of Christ, and renewing our wills, he doth persuade and enable us to embrace Jesus Christ, freely offered to us in the gospel.

Q. 1. Why is effectual calling termed a *work* ?

A. Because it is effected by various operations or workings of the Spirit of God upon the soul, called therefore "the seven Spirits which are before his throne," Rev. i. 4.

Q. 2. Why is it called a work of *God's Spirit* ?

A. Because it relates to the application of redemption, which is the special work of God's spirit, John xvi. 14. He (says Christ of the Spirit) "shall receive of mine, and shall show it unto you."

Q. 3. How manifold is the divine *calling* ?

A. Twofold ; outward, by the word ; and inward, by the Spirit.

Q. 4. What is the outward call by the word ?

A. It is the free and unlimited invitation given, in the dispensation of the gospel, to all the hearers of it, to receive Christ and salvation with him, Isa. lv. 1 ; Rev. xxii. 17.

Q. 5. What is the inward call by the Spirit ?

A. It is the Spirit's accompanying the outward call with power and efficacy upon the soul, John vi. 45.

Q. 6. Which of these is *effectual* in bringing sinners to Christ ?

A. The inward call by the Spirit ; for "it is the spirit that quickeneth," John vi. 63 ; the outward call by the word is of itself ineffectual : "for many are called, but few are chosen," Matth. xxii. 14.

Q. 7. What do you mean by few are chosen ?

A. That few are determined effectually to embrace the call, and therefore termed a little flock, Luke xii. 32.

Q. 8. What is the main or leading work of the Spirit in effectual calling ?

A. It is that whereby *he doth persuade and enable us to embrace Jesus Christ freely offered to us in the gospel*, Phil. ii. 13.

Q. 9. What is it to *embrace* Christ ?

A. It is to clasp him in the arms of faith with complacency and delight, as Simeon did, Luke ii. 28.

Q. 10. Where is it that faith embraces him ?

A. In the promises of the gospel, Heb. xi. 13.

Q. 11. What is the *gospel* ?

A. It is good news, or glad tidings of life and salvation to lost sinners of mankind through a "Saviour, which is Christ the Lord," Luke ii. 10, 11.

Q. 12. What warrant has faith to embrace him in the promise of the gospel?

A. His father's gift, John iii. 16; and his own offer of himself therein, Isa. xlv. 22.

Q. 13. Can there be an embracing, or receiving, without a previous giving?

A. "A man can receive (*marg. take unto himself*) nothing, except it be given him from heaven," John iii. 27.

Q. 14. What is the faith of the gospel-offer?

A. It is a believing that Jesus Christ, with his righteousness and all his salvation, is, by himself, offered to sinners, and to each of them in particular, Prov. viii. 4; John viii. 37.

Q. 15. When is the word of the gospel-offer savingly believed?

A. When it is powerfully applied by the Holy Spirit unto the soul in particular, as the word and voice of Christ himself, and not of men, 1 Thess. i. 5, 13.

Q. 16. How can we believe it is the voice of Christ himself in the offer, when Christ is now in heaven, and we hear no voice from thence?

A. The voice of Christ, sounding in his written word, is more sure than a voice from heaven itself, 2 Pet. i. 18, 19; and it is this voice of Christ in the word that is the stated ground of faith, Rom. i. 16, 17.

Q. 17. How is Christ offered in the gospel?

A. *Freely* as well as fully, Rev. xxii. 17.

Q. 18. To whom is he offered?

A. *To us* sinners of mankind, as such, Prov. viii. 4.

Q. 19. Have we any natural inclination to embrace the gospel-offer?

A. No; the Spirit doth *persuade* us thereunto, 2 Cor. v. 11.

Q. 20. Will moral persuasion, or arguments taken from the promises and threatenings of the word, persuade any to embrace Christ?

A. No; the enticing words of man's wisdom will not do: nothing less will be sufficient than the demonstration of the Spirit, that so our faith may not "stand in the wisdom of men, but in the power of God," 1 Cor. ii. 4, 5.

Q. 21. Have we any ability of our own to believe in Christ, or to embrace him?

A. No; the Spirit of faith doth *enable us* thereunto, 2 Cor. iv. 13.

Q. 22. By what means doth the Spirit persuade and enable us to embrace Christ?

A. By *convincing us of our sin and misery, enlightening our minds in the knowledge of Christ, and renewing our wills.*

Q. 23. What is the object of the convincing work of the Spirit, or what doth he convince us of?

A. *Of our sin and misery, Acts ii. 37.*

Q. 24. What *sin* doth the Spirit convince us of?

A. Both of original and actual sin, Mark vii. 21, particularly of unbelief, John xvi. 9.

Q. 25. What is the *misery* he convinces us of?

A. Of the misery of losing communion with God, 2 Cor. v. 14, 15; and being under his wrath and curse in time, and through eternity, Isa. xxxiii. 14.

Q. 26. How doth the Spirit convince of sin and misery?

A. By the law, Rom. iii. 20. "By the law is the knowledge of sin."

Q. 27. What knowledge of sin have we by the law?

A. By the precept of the law we have the knowledge of the evil nature of sin, Rom. vii. 7; and by the threatening, the knowledge of the guilt and desert of it, Gal. iii. 10.

Q. 28. In what capacity doth the Spirit convince of sin by the law?

A. As a spirit of bondage working fear, Rom. viii. 15.

Q. 29. Have all had an equal measure of this kind of conviction, who have been persuaded to embrace Christ?

A. No; some have had more and some less, as in the instances of Paul and Lydia, Acts ix. 6, 9, compared with chap. xvi. 14.

Q. 30. What measure of conviction by the law is requisite for such as are come to full ripeness of age?

A. Such a measure as to let them see, that they are sinners by nature, both in heart and life; that they are lost and undone under the curse of the law, and wrath of God; and that they are utterly incapable to recover themselves, as being legally and spiritually dead, Rom. vii. 9.

Q. 31. Why is such a measure as this of legal conviction requisite in the adult?

A. Because otherwise they would never see the need they stand in of Christ as a Saviour, either from sin or wrath, Matth. ix. 12, 13.

Q. 32. Is this measure of conviction necessary as a condition of our welcome to Christ, or as a qualification fitting us to believe on him?

A. No; but only as a motive to excite us to make use of our privilege of free access unto him, Hos. xiv. 1. "O Israel, return unto the Lord thy God, for thou hast fallen by thine iniquity!"

Q. 33. Have not some been under deep legal convictions, and yet never effectually called?

A. Yes; Judas went to hell under a load of this kind of conviction, Matth. xxvii. 3, 4, 5.

Q. 34. Is not the *enlightening our minds in the knowledge of Christ* a mean of persuading and enabling us to embrace him?

A. Yes; for "how can they believe in him of whom they have not heard?" Rom. x. 14.

Q. 35. What is the subject of the Spirit's *enlightening*?

A. *Our minds* or understandings, which are the eyes of the soul, Eph. i. 18; "the eyes of your understanding being enlightened," &c.

Q. 36. What is the object of this enlightening, or that wherein we are enlightened?

A. It is *in the knowledge of Christ*, Phil. iii. 8.

Q. 37. Who is the author of saving illumination in the knowledge of Christ?

A. The Holy Spirit, who is therefore called "the Spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him," Eph. i. 17.

Q. 38. What case is the mind in before it be enlightened by the Spirit?

A. In gross darkness and ignorance as to "the things of the Spirit of God," 1 Cor. ii. 14; Eph. v. 8.

Q. 39. What is it in Christ that the Spirit enlightens the mind in the knowledge of?

A. In the knowledge of his person, righteousness, offices, fulness, &c.; John xv. 26, says Christ of the Spirit, "He shall testify of me."

Q. 40. What are the distinguishing properties of saving illumination?

A. It is of an humbling, Job xlii. 5, 6, sanctifying, John xviii. 17, transforming, 2 Cor. iii. 18, and growing nature, Hos. vi. 3.

Q. 41. What is the necessity of this illumination, in order to the embracing of Christ?

A. Because without it there can be no discerning of his matchless excellency, inexhaustible sufficiency, and universal suitableness, the saving knowledge of which is necessary to the comfortable embracing of him, Psal. ix. 10. "They that know thy name will put their trust in thee."

Q. 42. By what means doth the Spirit enlighten the mind in the knowledge of Christ?

A. By means of the gospel, Rom. x. 17.

Q. 43. Doth not the *renewing our wills* accompany the illumination of our minds?

A. Yes; when the Lord shall send the rod of his strength

out of Zion, there shall be a “willing people in the day of his power,” Psal. cx. 2, 3.

Q. 44. Wherein consists the renovation of the will?

A. In working a new inclination or propensity therein to good, and a fixed aversion to that which is evil, Ezek. xxxvi. 26.

Q. 45. Doth the Spirit use any violence, or compulsion, upon the will in the renovation thereof?

A. No; he makes us willing in the day of his power, Psal. cx. 3.

Q. 46. What is the natural disposition of the will before it be renewed?

A. It is wicked and rebellious, full of enmity against Christ, and the way of salvation through him, John v. 40.

Q. 47. Can any man change, or renew, his own will?

A. No more than the Ethiopian “can change his skin, or the leopard his spots,” Jer. xiii. 23.

Q. 48. What necessity is there for renewing the will, in order to the embracing of Christ?

A. Because, till this be done, the natural ill-will that is in sinners against Christ, in all his offices, will be retained, 2 Cor. v. 17.

Q. 49. Wherein appears the ill-will which sinners bear unto Christ as a prophet?

A. In the conceit of their own wisdom, Prov. i. 22; and slighting the means of instruction, chap. xxvi. 12.

Q. 50. How do they manifest their aversion to him as a Priest?

A. In going about to establish their own righteousness, and refusing to “submit themselves unto the righteousness of God,” Rom. x. 3.

Q. 51. How do they manifest their opposition to him as a King?

A. In their hatred of holiness, love to sin, and saying upon the matter concerning him, “We will not have this man to reign over us,” Luke xix. 14.

Q. 52. Who are the only persons that are effectually called?

A. All the elect, and they only, Acts xiii. 48. “As many as were ordained to eternal life, believed.”\*

Q. 53. What may we learn from the doctrine of effectual calling?

A. That “the gifts and calling of God are without repentance,” Rom. xi. 29; that “all things work together for good, —to them that are the called according to his purpose,” Rom. viii. 28; and that it is our duty to “walk worthy of God, who hath called us unto his kingdom and glory,” 1 Thess. ii. 12.

32. Q. What benefits do they that are effectually called partake of in this life?

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 68.

A. They that are effectually called do in this life partake of justification, adoption, sanctification, and the several benefits which, in this life, do either accompany or flow from them.

Q. 1. "What special *benefits* do the members of the invisible church (or such as are effectually called) enjoy by Christ?"

A. They "enjoy union and communion with him in grace and glory," Eph. ii. 5, 6.\*

Q. 2. "What is the communion in grace which the members of the invisible church have with Christ?"

A. It "is their partaking of the virtue of his mediation, in their justification, adoption, sanctification, and whatever else in this life manifests their union with him," 1 Cor. i. 30.†

Q. 3. How are all these benefits connected with effectual calling?

A. By a connexion established in the eternal purpose and counsel of God, wherein all these blessings or benefits were sweetly linked together, Rom. viii. 30. "Whom he did predestinate, them he also called; and whom he called, them he also justified; and whom he justified, them he also glorified."

Q. 4. What is the connexion betwixt effectual calling and justification?

A. In effectual calling, sinners, being united to Christ by faith, have thereby communion with him in his righteousness for justification, Phil. iii. 9.

Q. 5. How is adoption connected with effectual calling?

A. In virtue of the union which takes place in effectual calling, believers stand related to Christ, as having a new kind of interest in God as his Father, and consequently their Father in him, according to John xx. 17, "I ascend to my Father and your Father;" and Eph. i. 3, "Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ."

Q. 6. What is the blessed effect of this new kind of interest which Christ, as the head of the body, hath in God as his Father?

A. That, by the Spirit of adoption, we may call God our Father, in the right of Jesus Christ, our elder brother, Rom. viii. 15. "Ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father."

Q. 7. How is effectual calling connected with sanctification?

A. In virtue of the union which takes place in effectual calling, believers are related to Christ as the Lord their strength, their quickening and influencing head, "who of God is made unto them sanctification," 1 Cor. i. 30.

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 65.

† Ibid. quest. 69.

Q. 8. What is the connexion betwixt effectual calling and a blessed death?

A. In effectual calling, believers are united to Christ, by a union that cannot be dissolved by death, Rom. viii. 38, 39.

Q. 9. What is the connexion betwixt effectual calling and a happy resurrection?

A. In effectual calling, sinners are united to Christ, as a living and exalted head, and therefore their happy resurrection is absolutely secured in him, because he "is risen from the dead, and become the first fruits of them that slept," 1 Cor. xv. 20.

Q. 10. What improvement should we make of this sweet connexion that is betwixt all these benefits whereof the effectually called are partakers?

A. We ought, through grace, in the use of all the means and ordinances of God's appointment, to give all diligence to make our calling and election sure; that having the knowledge of our justification, and adoption by our sanctification, we may have the comfortable prospect of a happy death and glorious resurrection, 2 Pet. i. 10, 11.

33. Q. What is justification?

A. Justification is an act of God's free grace, wherein he pardoneth all our sins, and accepteth us as righteous in his sight, only for the righteousness of Christ, imputed to us, and received by faith alone.

Q. 1. From whence is the word *justification* borrowed?

A. Being a law-word, it is borrowed from courts of justice among men, when a person arraigned is pronounced righteous, and in court openly absolved.

Q. 2. How doth it appear that justification denotes an act of jurisdiction, and not an inward change upon the soul?

A. From its being opposed to condemnation, which all own to consist, not in the infusing of wickedness into a person, but in passing sentence upon him, according to the demerit of his crime, Psal. cix. 7.

Q. 3. What is it then to justify a person?

A. It is not to make him righteous, but to declare him to be so upon a law ground, and trial of a judge, Isa. xliii. 9—26.

Q. 4. Who is the author, or efficient cause, of our justification?

A. It is God himself; for "it is God that justifieth," Rom. viii. 33.

Q. 5. Whether is it God essentially or personally considered?

A. God essentially considered, in the person of the Father,

is the justifier, in respect of judiciary power and authority, Rom. iii. 26, and our Lord Jesus Christ, in respect of the dispensation or exercise of that power, Acts v. 31.

Q. 6. In what respect is the Spirit said to justify? 1 Cor. vi. 11.

A. As the applier of the blood or righteousness of Christ, whereby we are justified, Tit. iii. 5.

Q. 7. In what state is a sinner before justification?

A. In a state of sin and guilt, Rom. iii. 19, and consequently in a state of wrath and condemnation, Gal. iii. 10.

Q. 8. How can God justify the ungodly?

A. Every elect sinner, however ungodly in himself, yet, upon union with Christ, has communion with him in his righteousness, and on this account he is justified, Isa. xlv. 25. "In the Lord shall all the seed of Israel be justified."

Q. 9. Why have elect sinners communion with Christ in his righteousness upon their union with him?

A. Because their sins having been imputed unto him from eternity, he became legally one with them, transferring their debt on himself, and undertaking to pay the same, Isa. liiii. 6; wherefore, upon union with him by faith, his perfect satisfaction is imputed to them, as if they had made it themselves, 2 Cor. v. 21.

Q. 10. Why is justification called an *act*?

A. Because, like the sentence of a judge, it is completed at once, and not carried on gradually like a work of time, Deut. xxv. 1.

Q. 11. What is the moving cause of justification, or what kind of an act is it?

A. It is *an act of God's free grace*, Rom. iii. 24. "Being justified freely by this grace, through the redemption that is in Jesus Christ."

Q. 12. How can free grace be the moving cause of our justification, when it is through the redemption that is in Jesus Christ?

A. Because the redemption that is in Christ is the channel through which justifying grace runs freely unto us, Eph. i. 7.

Q. 13. What are constituent parts of justification?

A. They are two; that *wherein he pardoneth all our sins*, Rom. iv. 7, and that *wherein he accepteth us as righteous in his sight*, Eph. i. 6.

Q. 14. What is the pardon of sin?

A. It is God's absolving the sinner from the condemnation of the law, on account of Christ's satisfaction for sin, Rom. viii. 1.

Q. 15. Why is the pardon of sin set before the accepting us as righteous in the answer?

A. Because, till the sentence of the broken law be dissolved

by pardon, it is impossible that our persons can be accepted, or any blessing of the covenant conferred upon us, Heb. viii. 10—13, where, after a great many other promised blessings, it is added, ver. 12, “For I will be merciful to their unrighteousness,” &c., intimating that the pardon of sin led the way to the other covenant-blessings.

Q. 16. What is it in sin that pardon removes?

A. The guilt of it, which is a person’s actual obligation, or liableness to eternal wrath on the account thereof, Eph. ii. 3.

Q. 17. Can the guilt of sin ever recur upon a pardoned person?

A. No; the obligation to punishment being once taken off, can never recur again; because “there is no condemnation to them that are in Christ Jesus, Rom. viii. 1.

Q. 18. Will after-sinning revoke a former pardon?

A. No; after-sinning may provoke the Lord to withdraw the sense of former pardon, but can never revoke the pardon itself, because “the gifts and calling of God are without repentance,” Rom. xi. 29.

Q. 19. What sins are pardoned in justification?

A. *All our sins* whatsoever, Psal. ciii. 3. “Who forgiveth ALL thine iniquities.”

Q. 20. How are sins past and present pardoned?

A. By a formal remission of them, Psal. xxxii. 5. “Thou forgavest the iniquity of my sin.”

Q. 21. How are sins to come pardoned?

A. By securing a not-imputing of them, as to the guilt of eternal wrath, Rom. iv. 3. “Blessed is the man to whom the Lord will not impute sin.”

Q. 22. If a not-imputing of eternal wrath as to future sins be secured, why do the saints pray for the pardon of them when committed?

A. Because the guilt or liableness to fatherly anger is contracted by the commission of them; and therefore they pray for the removal of that guilt, Psal. li. 12. “Restore unto me the joy of thy salvation.”

Q. 23. Is repentance a condition of pardon?

A. No; because this would be to bring in works into the matter of our justification before God, quite contrary to Scripture, which tells us, “that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ,” Gal. ii. 16.

Q. 24. How do you prove that repentance hath not the same interest with faith in our justification?

A. From this, that in Scripture we are frequently said to be justified by faith, but never said to be justified by repentance.

Q. 25. Is it not affirmed in our Confession, that "repentance is of such necessity to all sinners, that none may expect pardon without it?"\*

A. The meaning is, that repentance is such an inseparable concomitant of pardon, that no pardoned person continues to be impenitent, 2 Sam. xii. 13; Matth. xxvi. 75.

Q. 26. If none can expect pardon without expecting repentance along with it, will it not therefore follow, that repentance is a condition of pardon?

A. Not at all; for if repentance cannot so much as have the least instrumentality in pardon, it can never be the condition thereof, nor have the smallest casual influence thereupon.†

Q. 27. How doth it appear that repentance hath not the least instrumentality in pardon?

A. It appears evidently from this, that faith is the sole instrument of receiving Christ and his righteousness; without receiving of which there can be no pardon, John viii. 24. "If ye believe not that I am he, ye shall die in your sins."

Q. 28. Doth God any more in justification than freely to pardon all our sins?

A. Yes; he likewise *accepteth us as righteous in his sight*, Eph. i. 6.

Q. 29. Why is the accepting us as righteous joined with pardon in justification?

A. Because, though among men a criminal may be pardoned, and neither declared righteous, nor received into favour, yet it is not so with God, for whom he forgives he both accounteth their persons righteous in his sight, and receives them into perpetual favour, Rom. v. 8, 9, 10.

Q. 30. How can a holy and righteous God, whose judgment is according to truth, accept sinners as righteous without a perfect righteousness?

A. He accepts them as righteous *only for the righteousness of Christ*, which is perfect, and becomes truly theirs through faith, Jer. xxiii. 6; Isa. xlv. 24.

Q. 31. By what right doth the surety-righteousness become theirs?

A. By the right of a free gift received, and the right of communion with Christ.

Q. 32. How doth it become theirs by the right of a gift received?

A. Inasmuch as Christ's righteousness being made over in the gospel as God's gift to sinners, it is by faith actually claimed and received; hence called the GIFT of righteousness, Rom. v. 17.

\* Chap. xv. § 3.

† Chap. xv. § 3. "Repentance" is "not to be rested in, as any satisfaction for sin, or any cause of the pardon thereof."

Q. 33. How doth Christ's surety-righteousness become theirs by right of communion with him?

A. Inasmuch as sinners, being united to him by faith, have thereby communion or a common interest with him in his righteousness, Phil. iii. 9.

Q. 34. When is it then that, according to truth, God accepts us as righteous in his sight?

A. When Christ's surety-righteousness is actually reckoned ours, and we made the righteousness of God in HIM, 2 Cor. v. 21; upon this account precisely, and no other, are we accepted of God as "righteous; the righteousness of GOD being UPON all them that believe," Rom. iii. 22.

Q. 35. What is the matter of our justification, or that for which we are justified?

A. The RIGHTEOUSNESS of Christ only: hence is he called "The Lord our righteousness," Jer. xxiii. 6.

Q. 36. Wherein doth *the righteousness of Christ* consist?

A. In the holiness of his human nature, his righteous life, and satisfactory death.\*

Q. 37. Can law or justice reach the person who is under the covering of the surety-righteousness?

A. By no means; for "who shall lay any thing to the charge of God's elect?—It is Christ that died, yea, rather, that is risen again," Rom. viii. 33, 34.

Q. 38. Is the righteousness of Christ meritorious of our justification?

A. Yes; because of the infinite dignity of his person; for, though he "took upon him the form of a servant, yet being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God," Phil. ii. 6, 7.

Q. 39. How is the righteousness of Christ commonly divided?

A. Into his active and passive obedience.

Q. 40. What is his active obedience?

A. The holiness of his nature, and righteousness of his life, in full and perfect conformity to the whole law, without the least failure, either of parts or degrees of obedience, unto the end, Matth. v. 17, 18.

Q. 41. What is his passive obedience?

A. His satisfaction for sin, by enduring the infinite execution of the curse upon him in his death, Gal. iii. 13; to the full compensation of all the injuries done to the honour of an infinite God by all the sins of an elect world, Eph. v. 2.

Q. 42. Why doth his satisfactory death get the name of obedience, Phil. ii. 8, as well as his righteous life?

A. Because his sufferings and death were entirely voluntary,

\* See these explained on quest. 20, intituled, Of the Covenant of Grace.

and in most profound submission to the commandment which he had received of his father, John x. 18.

Q. 43. What is the formal cause of our justification, or that whereby Christ's righteousness is made ours?

A. It is its being *imputed to us*, Rom. iv. 6.

Q. 44. What is it to impute Christ's righteousness unto us?

A. It is God's accounting or reckoning it unto us, as if we had obeyed the law, and satisfied justice in our own persons, and dealing with us accordingly, Rom. viii. 4; 2 Cor. v. 21.

Q. 45. Upon what ground or foundation is Christ's righteousness imputed to us?

A. Upon the ground of his representing us from eternity, and our union with him in time, Isa. liii. 5.

Q. 46. What necessity is there for the imputation of Christ's passive obedience?

A. Because, without the imputation thereof, we could have no legal security from eternal death, Rom. v. 9.

Q. 47. What necessity is there for the imputation of his active obedience?

A. Because without the imputation thereof, we could have no legal title to eternal life, Rom. vi. 23.

Q. 48. If Christ, as man, gave obedience to the law for himself, how can his active obedience be imputed to us?

A. Though the human nature, abstractedly considered, be a creature, yet never subsisting by itself, but in the person of the Son of God, the acts of obedience performed therein were never the acts of a mere man, but of him who is God-man, Mediator; and consequently acts of obedience, not for himself, but for us, Gal. iv. 4, 5.

Q. 49. If Christ's active obedience be imputed to us, are we not loosed from any obligation to give obedience to the law in our own persons?

A. We are only loosed from an obligation to yield obedience to the law as a covenant of works, but not loosed from obedience thereunto as a rule of life, Gal. ii. 19.

Q. 50. Whether is the righteousness of Christ itself imputed to us, or only in its effects?

A. As the guilt itself of Adam's first sin is imputed to all his posterity, whereby judgment comes upon all men to condemnation, so the righteousness of Christ itself is imputed to all his spiritual seed, whereby the free gift comes upon them all unto justification of life, Rom. v. 18.

Q. 51. What is the difference betwixt the imputation of our sins to Christ, and the imputation of his righteousness to us?

A. Our sins were imputed to Christ as our surety only for a time, that he might take them away; but his righteousness

is imputed to us to abide with us for ever, hence called an "everlasting righteousness," Dan. ix. 24.

Q. 52. Why are we said to be pardoned and accepted *only* for the righteousness of Christ?

A. Because a sinner can have no other plea before God for pardon and acceptance, but Christ's fulfilling all righteousness, as the only condition of the covenant, Isa. xlv. 24.

Q. 53. What is the instrumental cause of our justification?

A. It is twofold; namely, external and internal.

Q. 54. What is the external instrumental cause?

A. The GOSPEL; because therein is the righteousness of God revealed, and brought near to us as a free gift, Rom. i. 17, and v. 17, and x. 8.

Q. 55. What is the internal instrumental cause of our justification?

A. It is *faith*, Rom. x. 10.

Q. 56. Why is faith the instrument of our justification?

A. To show that our justification is wholly of grace, it being the nature of faith to take the gift of righteousness freely, without money and without price; therefore it is of faith that it might be by grace, Rom. iv. 16.

Q. 57. What then is the instrumentality of faith in our justification?

A. It is no more than to be the hand that receives and applies the righteousness of Christ, whereby we are justified.\*

Q. 58. Is the grace of faith, or any act thereof, imputed to a sinner for justification?

A. No; for, "to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness," Rom. iv. 5.

Q. 59. What is the difference between saving faith and justifying faith?

A. Saving faith receives and rests upon Christ in all his offices, as if God made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption; but justifying faith receives and rests upon him, more particularly in his priestly office, for pardon and acceptance on account of his meritorious righteousness, Phil. iii. 9. "And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith."

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 73. "Faith justifies a sinner in the sight of God, not because of those other graces which do always accompany it, or of good works that are the fruits of it, Gal. iii. 11; nor as if the grace of faith, or any act thereof, were imputed to him for his justification, Rom. iv. 5, but only as it is an instrument by which he receiveth and applieth Christ and his righteousness," John i. 12.

Q. 60. Why is the righteousness of Christ said to be received by faith *alone*?

A. That works may be wholly excluded from having any share in our justification, less or more, Rom. iii. 28. "Therefore we conclude that a man is justified by faith without the deeds of the law."

Q. 61. If good works have no influence upon our justification, of what use are they to be justified?

A. Though they cannot justify us before God, yet they are good "evidences" of our justification, being "the fruits of a true and lively faith," James ii. 18; "they adorn the profession of the gospel, Tit. ii. 11, 12, stop the mouths of adversaries, 1 Pet. ii. 15, and glorify God," John xv. 8.\*

Q. 62. If faith's receiving of Christ's righteousness justify us, doth not faith justify as a work?

A. It is not properly the receiving, or any other act of faith, that justifies us, but the "righteousness of Christ RECEIVED," Rom. iii. 22; even as it is not the hand that nourisheth us, but the food which we take thereby.

Q. 63. If we are justified by faith alone, why is it said, James ii. 24, "That by works a man is justified, and not by faith only?"

A. This is to be understood of justifying or evidencing the reality of our faith before men, and not of justifying our persons before God.

Q. 64. When is it that God justifies the ungodly?

A. "Though from eternity God decreed to justify all the elect," yet "they are not" actually "justified, until the Holy Spirit doth in due time apply Christ," and his righteousness, "unto them," Tit. iii. 5, 6, 7.†

Q. 65. How were believers under the Old Testament justified?

A. "Their justification was, in all respects, the same with the justification of believers under the New Testament," Gal. iii. 9; Heb. xiii. 8.‡

Q. 66. What may we learn from this important doctrine of justification?

A. That all ground of pride and boasting is taken away from the creature, Rom. iii. 27; that faith itself, by laying hold upon the surety-righteousness without us, is nothing else but a solemn declaration of our poverty and nakedness, and that therefore it is our duty to glory only in Christ Jesus, saying, "Surely—in the Lord have we righteousness and strength," Isa. xlv. 24.

\* Confession, chap. xvi. § 2.

† Ibid. chap. xi. § 4. ‡ Ibid. § 6.

34. Q. What is adoption ?

A. Adoption is an act of God's free grace, whereby we are received into the number, and have a right to all the privileges of the sons of God.

Q. 1. What doth the word *adoption* signify among men ?

A. It signifies the taking of a stranger into a family, and dealing with him as if he were a child or heir.

Q. 2. What is the difference between adoption, as it is an act of God, and as it is a deed of men ?

A. Men generally adopt but one into their family, and they do it on account of some amiable properties, or qualifications, they discern in the adopted ; but God adopts many into his family, and that, not upon the account of any thing commendable in them, but merely out of his own free and unmerited love, Eph. i. 5.

Q. 3. How many kinds of adoption doth the Scripture speak of ?

A. Two kinds ; namely, general and special.

Q. 4. What is meant by general adoption ?

A. It is the erecting of a certain indefinite number of mankind into a visible church, and entitling them to all the privileges thereof, Rom. ix. 4.

Q. 5. What is the outward seal or badge of this general adoption ?

A. It is baptism, which comes in the room of circumcision under the Old Testament, Eph. iv. 5.

Q. 6. What is to be understood by special adoption ?

A. It is a sovereign and free translation of a sinner of mankind from the family of hell, or Satan, into the family of heaven, or household of God, Eph. ii. 19 ; with an investiture into all the privileges of the sons of God, 1 John iii. 1.

Q. 7. By whose act and authority is this translation accomplished ?

A. By the act and authority of God, Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.

Q. 8. What is the act of the Father in this matter ?

A. He hath "predestinated us unto the adoption of children to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will," Eph. i. 5.

Q. 9. What is the act of the Son in this special adoption ?

A. In consequence of his purchasing the sinner by the price of his blood he actually gives the power, right, or privilege, to become a child of God, in the day of believing, John i. 12.

Q. 10. What is the act of the Holy Ghost ?

A. He comes in Christ's name, takes possession of the person, and dwells in him, as a Spirit of adoption, teaching him to cry, "Abba, Father," Rom. viii. 15.

Q. 11. Why is this translation into the family of God called *an act*?

A. Because it is done at once, Jer. iii. 19.

Q. 12. Why called an act of *God's free grace*?

A. Because the adoption of any of mankind into the household of God flows entirely from his own free love and favour, Eph. i. 5; they being all of them "wretched, miserable, poor, blind, and naked," Rev. iii. 17.

Q. 13. What is the difference between good angels being called the sons of God, Job xxxviii. 7, and believers "their being so called?" 1 John iii. 1.

A. Good angels are called the sons of God, because they were created immediately by him; but believers are so called, because they are adopted by him into his family, Rom. viii. 15.

Q. 14. Why are we said, in adoption, to be *received into the number of the sons of God*?

A. Because the family of God from among men, consist of a certain definite number of mankind, which can neither be augmented nor diminished, John xvii. 2, 9, 12, and vi. 39.

Q. 15. By what means, or instruments, doth God receive any of mankind into his family?

A. By the means and instrumentality of faith, Gal. iii. 26. "Ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus."

Q. 16. What connexion is there between faith in Christ Jesus and our being the children of God?

A. Faith unites us to Christ, and acquiesces in the redemption purchased by him, as the meritorious cause of our adoption, Gal. iv. 4, 5. "God sent forth his Son,—to redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons."

Q. 17. Since adoption is an act of translation from the family of Satan to the family of God, to whom is it intimated?

A. To the angels in heaven, and sometimes to the adopted themselves.

Q. 18. How is it intimated to the angels in heaven?

A. It is probable that it is intimated to them by immediate revelation, Luke, xv. 10. "There is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth."

Q. 19. How is it intimated to the adopted themselves?

A. By the "Spirit itself bearing witness with their spirit that they are the children of God," Rom. viii. 16.

Q. 20. Is there any intimation hereof made unto Satan?

A. No; but he cannot miss to know when he is "spoiled of his goods, and the lawful captive delivered," Mark ix. 26.

Q. 21. When sinners of mankind are adopted and enrolled into the family of heaven, is their NAME changed?

A. Yes; as the wife's name is sunk unto her husband's, so the former name of the adopted is sunk unto Christ's new name, Rev. iii. 12. "I will write upon him my new name."

Q. 22. What was the former and what is the present name of the adopted children of God?

A. Their former name was strangers and foreigners; their present name is fellow-citizens with the saints, and of the household of God, Eph. ii. 19; their former name was guilty and condemned; their present name is, the Lord our righteousness, Jer. xxxiii. 16; their former name was, that they were without Christ, having no hope, and without God in the world, Eph. ii. 12; their present name is, Jehovah-Shamma, the Lord is there, Ezek. xlvi. 35.

Q. 23. Why is Christ's name put upon them called his new name?

A. Because it is a name that shall never wax old, or vanish away, Heb. viii. 13.

Q. 24. Whence come they by this new name?

A. When Christ gives them the white stone of pardon, he, at the same time, gives them, in that stone, the new name of being the sons of God; which name no man knoweth, saving he that receiveth it, Rev. ii. 17.

Q. 25. What are the *privileges* which the sons of God are invested with?

A. Among others, they are invested with great dignity, glorious liberty, a title to the whole inheritance, boldness of access to God as a Father, and his fatherly chastisement, or correction.\*

Q. 26. What is the great dignity or honour to which they are advanced?

A. To the dignity of being kings and priests unto God, Rev. i. 6; or a royal priesthood, i. Pet. ii. 9; to feast on Christ their passover, sacrificed for them, 1 Cor. v. 7.

Q. 27. Wherein consists the glorious liberty of the children of God, mentioned Rom. viii. 21?

A. Not only in a freedom from the guilt and dominion of sin, the curse of the law, the tyranny of Satan, and sting of death, John viii. 36; but in a filial and reverential obedience, flowing from a principle of faith and love inlaid in the soul, Gal. v. 6.

Q. 28. Whereupon is their title to the inheritance founded?

A. Upon their being Christ's, and heirs according to the promise, Gal. iii. 29.

\* Confession of Faith, chap. xii.

Q. 29. What is the inheritance which the adopted children of God are heirs of according to the promise?

A. They are HEIRS "of the righteousness which is by faith," Heb. xi. 7; "heirs of the grace of life," 1 Pet. iii. 7; Heb. i. 14; and, which comprehends all, they are "heirs of God, and joint heirs with CHRIST," Rom. viii. 17.

Q. 30. What doth their boldness of access to God as their Father include in it?

A. A firm persuasion of the power, love, and faithfulness of a promising God, Rom. iv. 20, 21, and an assured expectation of success at his hand, 1 John v. 14.

Q. 31. What are the grounds of this boldness?

A. The righteousness of Christ apprehended by faith, Psal. lxxxiv. 9, and his prevalent intercession within the veil, 1 John ii. 1.

Q. 32. Whence is it that God chastises his adopted children?

A. Because he loves them, Heb. xii. 6. "Whom the Lord loveth he chasteneth."

Q. 33. Wherewith doth he chastise them?

A. Sometimes with the rod of outward affliction, of various kinds, Psal. xxxiv. 19, and sometimes with the rod of desertion, Psal. xxx. 7.

Q. 34. For what end doth he thus chastise them?

A. For their profit, that they may be "partakers of his holiness," Heb. xii. 10.

Q. 35. How ought the children to behave under the chastisement of their Father?

A. They ought neither to "despise the chastening of the Lord, nor faint when they are rebuked of him," Heb. xii. 10.

Q. 36. What are the marks or evidences of the adopted children of God?

A. They will resemble their Father, 1 John iii. 2; they know their Father's voice, John x. 4; affect their Father's company, Rom. viii. 15; are deeply concerned for his absence, Job xxxiii. 3; and out of love to him that begat, they have great love to all them that are "begotten of him," 1 John v. 1.

35. Q. What is sanctification?

A. Sanctification is the work of God's free grace, whereby we are renewed in the whole man, after the image of God, and are enabled more and more to die unto sin and live unto righteousness.

Q. 1. What is it for one to be SANCTIFIED?

A. It is to be made a saint, or a holy person, set apart for a holy use, 1 Thess. v. 23.

Q. 2. Can any sinner sanctify himself?

A. No; we can defile, but cannot purify ourselves, Job xiv. 4.

Q. 3. Whose work is it to sanctify?

A. It is the special work of the Spirit of God, 2 Thess. ii. 13.

Q. 4. Do any of mankind-sinners deserve that God should sanctify them?

A. No; there are none of them that can deserve any thing at the hand of God, but to be left to perish eternally in their sin and pollution, because "they are altogether become filthy; there is none of them that doth good, no not one," Psal. xiv. 3.

Q. 5. What moves God to sanctify a sinner?

A. His own free grace and good pleasure, Phil. ii. 13.

Q. 6. Are not justification, adoption, and sanctification linked inseparably together?

A. Yes; they that are justified are adopted; and they that are justified and adopted are sanctified and glorified, Rom. viii. 30.

Q. 7. In what respects are justification and sanctification inseparably joined and linked together?

A. In the decree of God, Rom. viii. 30; in the promise of God, Psal. cx. 3; in the end of Christ's death, Tit. ii. 14; in the offices of Christ, 1 Cor. i. 30; in the gospel-call and offer, 2 Tim. i. 9; 1 Thess. iv. 7; and in the experience of all believers, Phil. iii. 8, 12.

Q. 8. Though they be inseparably linked together, are they not carefully to be distinguished?

A. Yes; for the confounding of justification and sanctification lays the foundation of many errors, both in principle and practice: and the want of a clear uptaking of the difference between these two contributes to encumber the believer in his exercise, and to make him go with a bowed-down back; whereas the distinct knowledge hereof would free him from that bondage, John viii. 32.

Q. 9. Wherein do justification and sanctification DIFFER?

A. They DIFFER in many respects, particularly in their matter, kind, form, properties, subjects, order, extent, ingredients, evidence; in their relation to the law, their relation to Christ's offices, and their use to believers.

Q. 10. Wherein do they differ in their matter?

A. The matter of justification is the righteousness of Christ; but the matter of sanctification is the fulness of Christ communicated, or grace imparted from him, out of whose fulness we receive, "and grace for grace," John i. 16.

Q. 11. How do they differ as to their kind?

A. Justification makes a relative, sanctification a real change; the first changes a man's state, the other changes his heart and life, Ezek. xxxvi. 26.

Q. 12. How do they differ as to their form or manner of conveyance?

A. Justification is brought about by the imputation of Christ's righteousness to us; sanctification, by the implantation of his grace in us.

Q. 13. How do they differ in their properties?

A. Justification is complete and perfect at first; but sanctification is carried on gradually, from less to more, till the soul be ripe for glory; the righteousness of justification is strictly and properly meritorious, being the righteousness of God, whereby the law is not only fulfilled, but magnified; but the righteousness of sanctification is not so, being only the righteousness of a sinful creature, imperfect in degrees: justification is equal in all believers, but they are not all equally sanctified: hence in God's family there are little children, 1 John ii. 12; and in his garden, trees of different tallness or height, Psal. cxii. 12, compared with Zech. i. 8.

Q. 14. How do they differ in their subjects?

A. Christ himself, and not the believer, is the subject of our justifying righteousness; it is inherently in him, who wrought it out perfectly for us; but the believer himself is the subject of the righteousness of sanctification; it is implanted in him as a new nature; whereas his justifying righteousness is not in him as a nature, but on him a robe; and hence it is said to be UPON "all them that believe," Rom. iii. 22.

Q. 15. How do they differ in their order?

A. Although as to time they go hand in hand together; yet, as to the order of nature, justification goes BEFORE sanctification, as the cause before the effect, or as fire is before light and heat.

Q. 16. How do they differ as to their extent?

A. Justification, although it respect the whole person, yet it immediately terminates upon conscience, God's deputy, purging it from dead works, and pacifying it with the sprinkling of the blood of Christ; nothing giving true peace to conscience but that which gave full satisfaction to justice; but by sanctification we are renewed in the whole man, Eph. iv. 23, 24.

Q. 17. How do they differ as to their ingredients?

A. The main ingredient in justification is the grace and love of God towards us, manifested in pardoning and accepting us in Christ; whereas the main ingredient in sanctification is our gratitude and love to God flowing from his love to us, and appearing in our obedience and keeping his commandments, by virtue of his "Spirit put within us, and causing us to walk in his statutes," Ezek. xxxvi. 27.

Q. 18. How do they differ as to evidence ?

A. Justification is evidenced by our sanctification ; for none can warrantably conclude they are justified by the righteousness of Christ, if they be not students of true holiness, and groaning under a body of sin and death : but sanctification cannot be evidenced by our justification ; which, being the hidden root of holiness under ground, doth not appear except in the lively actings of justifying faith, and other graces, which are internal branches of sanctification, sometimes inwardly discerned by the believer, and sometimes outwardly discovered to others by works, James ii. 18.

Q. 19. How do they differ in their relation to the law ?

A. Justification has relation to the law as a covenant, and frees the soul from it, Rom. vii. 4 ; sanctification respects the law as a rule, and makes the soul breathe after conformity to it, and to delight in it after the inward man, Rom. vii. 22 ; hence justification is a judicial sentence, absolving us from law-debt ; sanctification a spiritual change, fitting us for law-duty.

Q. 20. How do they differ in their relation to the offices of Christ ?

A. Justification springs from and is grounded upon the priestly office of Christ, whereby he satisfied law and justice as our surety ; but sanctification proceeds from his kingly office, whereby he subdues us to his obedience, and writes his law in our hearts, Jer. xxxi. 33.

Q. 21. How do they differ in their use to believers ?

A. Justification gives a title to heaven and eternal life ; sanctification gives a meetness for it ; justification is God's act, pronouncing our persons righteous in Christ, and taking away the guilt of sin ; sanctification is the Spirit's work, cleansing our nature, and taking away the filth of sin : by the former, we are instated into the favour of God ; and by the latter adorned with the image of God.

Q. 22. How may the work of sanctification be distinguished ?

A. Into habitual and actual sanctification.

Q. 23. What call you habitual sanctification ?

A. It is that *whereby we are renewed in the whole man after the image of God*, and so a renovation of the nature, Eph. iv. 24.

Q. 24. Can any have a sanctified life, who have not a renewed nature ?

A. No ; for a corrupt tree cannot bring forth good fruit, Matth. vii. 18.

Q. 25. What is to be understood by *the whole man* that must be renewed ?

A. Both soul and body ; in all the powers of the one, and members of the other, 2 Cor. vii. 1 ; 1 Thess. v. 23.

Q. 26. What is the difference between the renewing of the whole man in sanctification, and the renewing mentioned in effectual calling?

A. The renovation in effectual calling is only begun; but this of sanctification is carried on by degrees, till it be perfected in glory, Phil. i. 6; there the seed of grace is sown; and here it is watered, in order to growth: there the habit is implanted, John i. 13; here it is strengthened for exercise, Eph. ii. 10.

Q. 27. After whose image is the whole man renewed?

A. *After the image of God*; consisting in knowledge, righteousness, and holiness, Col. iii. 10; Eph. iv. 24.

Q. 28. Whose image do we bear before we are renewed in the whole man?

A. The image of the first Adam, after the fall, having his nature corrupted, Gen. v. 3.

Q. 29. Can any be renewed in the whole man without being united to the second Adam?

A. No; for we are not sanctified, but by faith uniting us to Christ, Acts xv. 9, and xxvi. 18; 1 Cor. i. 2, "Sanctified IN Christ Jesus."

Q. 30. Though the believer be renewed *in the whole man*, yet is any part of the new creature WHOLLY renewed?

A. The two contrary principles of grace and corruption are in the sanctified; being together in such sort, that in every particular part where the one is, the other is there also beside it; for what we have of this gracious work of sanctification upon us while here is but in part; it is not perfect, 1 Cor. xiii. 9, 10.

Q. 31. What is the tendency of habitual sanctification?

A. The tendency of it is unto actual sanctification, Eph. ii. 10.

Q. 32. Wherein consists ACTUAL sanctification?

A. In being *enabled more and more to die unto sin and live unto righteousness*, Rom. vi. 4, 6.

Q. 33. Wherein doth habitual sanctification differ from actual?

A. The first points at the renovation of our nature, the second at the renovation of our life; the first at the habit, the second at the exercise of grace working inwardly in the heart, and outwardly in the walk, Eph. ii. 10.

Q. 34. What are the parts of actual sanctification, and how commonly called?

A. Mortification; or a dying unto sin, and vivification, or a living unto righteousness.

Q. 35. Can any die to sin and live to righteousness without being *enabled* by grace?

A. No; "we are not sufficient of ourselves to think any thing as of ourselves, but our sufficiency is of God," 2 Cor. iii. 5.

The strength of habitual grace will not be sufficient without actual assistance.

Q. 36. How doth the grace of God enable us to die unto sin and live unto righteousness?

A. It enables us *more and more* (1 Thess. iv. 1), or by little and little, from time to time: for "the path of the just is as the shining light, that shineth more and more unto the perfect day," Prov. iv. 18; and "they go from strength to strength," Psal. lxxxiv. 7.

Q. 37. Doth the work of actual sanctification go on constantly without interruption?

A. The sanctified person is subject to backsliding and decay; yet God never altogether takes his hand from the good work he has begun, but makes good use of backslidings for further progress in it, Hos. xiv. 4, 7.

Q. 38. Why is not actual sanctification perfected in this life, but still a remainder of corruption left in God's people?

A. To make them know, from experience, the strength of sin, the necessity of mortifying grace, and of the abundance of pardoning grace, 2 Cor. xii. 7, 8, 9; and to keep them exercised in prayer and humiliation, in the faith and hope of deliverance from a body of sin and death, through Christ, Rom. vii. 24, 25.

Q. 39. What is it to *die unto sin*?

A. To have the power of sin, in our nature, so far destroyed as not to obey it, but to hate in heart, and abstain from it in life, Rom. vi. 6.

Q. 40. What is it to *live unto righteousness*?

A. To have our nature so quickened by the power of grace, as to love and obey the commands of righteousness in our life, Rom. vi. 13.

Q. 41. From whence is it that this death unto sin and life unto righteousness do spring?

A. They spring from the virtue that is in the death and resurrection of Christ, to render his mystical members conformable to him in them: "That like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life; for if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also in the likeness of his resurrection," Rom. vi. 4, 5.

Q. 42. Why hath the death and resurrection of Christ such a conforming virtue?

A. Because he died and rose again as a public person, Eph. ii. 5, 6; and merited this conformation or fashioning of his mystical members to his image, Phil. iii. 10.

Q. 43. Wherein consists the excellency of sanctification?

A. It is the end and design of our election, Eph. i. 4; of our

effectual calling, 2 Tim. i. 9; of our justification and deliverance from the law as a covenant, Rom. vi. 14; and of our adoption, Eph. i. 4, 5; it is the end both of mercies and crosses, Rom. ii. 4; Isa. xxvii. 9; and, in a word, it is the end and design of all the precepts of the law, the promises of the gospel, and the operations of the Spirit of God.

Q. 44. Whence ariseth the necessity of holiness or sanctification?

A. From the holy nature and will of God; for "it is written, Be ye holy, for I am holy," 1 Pet. i. 16; and "this is the will of God, even our sanctification," 1 Thess. iv. 3; and from the death of Christ, "who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify to himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works," Tit. ii. 14.

Q. 45. For what good end and use is sanctification necessary?

A. Not for justification before God, but for evidencing our justification and faith, James ii. 18. It is necessary for glorifying God, Matth. v. 6; and showing forth his praise, 1 Pet. ii. 19; for adorning the "doctrine of God our Saviour," Tit. ii. 10; for proving our union to Christ, John xv. 5, 6; for promoting inward peace and rejoicing, Psal. cxix. 165; 2 Cor. i. 12; for maintaining fellowship and communion with God, John xiv. 21, 23; for making us meet for heaven, because "without holiness no man shall see God," Heb. xii. 14; for making us useful to men on earth, Tit. iii. 8; and for stopping the mouth of calumny when we are reproached as evil-doers, 1 Pet. iii. 16.

Q. 46. What is the meritorious cause of our sanctification?

A. The blood of Christ, Heb. xiii. 12. "Wherefore Jesus also, that he might sanctify the people with his own blood, suffered without the gate."

Q. 47. Whence flows the sanctifying or purifying virtue of the blood of Christ?

A. From the atoning virtue thereof, Heb. ix. 14.

Q. 48. What is the instrumental cause of our sanctification?

A. The faith of the operation of God, Acts xv. 9.

Q. 49. What is the regulating or directing cause?

A. The law of God, Isa. viii. 20.

Q. 50. What is the exemplary cause thereof?

A. The copy that Christ hath cast us by his obedience and sufferings, in so far as imitable by us, 1 Pet. ii. 21, 22.

Q. 51. What are the marks of sanctification?

A. A heart-respect to all God's commandments, and loving them because they are holy; a hatred of sin, and avoiding of all appearance of evil; a spirit of watchfulness and warfare against sin; a delight in doing good; a conversation becoming the gospel; and an habitual improvement of

the blood of Christ, by faith and prayer, for cleansing from the filth of sin, and of the precious promises for that end, 2 Cor. vii. 1 ; 1 Pet. i. 4.

Q. 52. What are the chief motives and inducements to sanctification ?

A. The will of God commanding, 1 Pet. i. 15 ; the love of Christ constraining, 2 Cor. v. 14 ; the dignity of resembling God thereby, Lev. xix. 2 ; and the indignity of resembling the devil by the want thereof, John viii. 44.

Q. 53. What should we do to be sanctified ?

A. We should fly to Christ by faith, touching the hem of his garment for healing and purification, for we are sanctified in Christ Jesus, 1 Cor. i. 2 ; we should pray for the Spirit of sanctification, through whom only the deeds of the body can be mortified, Rom. viii. 13 ; we should associate with saints, for "he that walketh with the wise shall be wise," Prov. xiii. 20 ; association begets assimilation ; we should make a right use of God's word and rod, Sabbaths and sacraments.

36. Q. What are the benefits which in this life do accompany or flow from justification, adoption, and sanctification ?

A. The benefits which in this life do accompany or flow from justification, adoption, and sanctification, are assurance of God's love, peace of conscience, joy in the Holy Ghost, increase of grace, and perseverance therein to the end.

#### *Of Assurance.*

Q. 1. Are not justification, adoption, and sanctification, pregnant with many blessings ?

A. Yes ; their name may well be called *GAD* (Gen. xxx. 11), for troops of blessings attend them ; some in this life, some at death, and the best of all in the life to come.

Q. 2. What are the benefits which do flow from them in this life ?

A. There are five of them mentioned in the answer, namely, "assurance of God's love," Rom. v. 5 ; "peace of conscience," Rom. v. 1 ; "joy in the Holy Ghost," Rom. xiv. 17 ; "increase of grace," Prov. iv. 18 ; and "perseverance therein to the end," 1 Pet. i. 5.

Q. 3. Which of these benefits flow from a sight and sense of justification, adoption, and sanctification ?

A. *Assurance of God's love, peace of conscience, and joy in the Holy Ghost.*

Q. 4. Which of them belong to the being of a justified, adopted, and sanctified state ?

A. *Increase of grace, and perseverance therein to the end.*

Q. 5. Do all justified, adopted, and sanctified persons enjoy assurance of God's love, peace of conscience, and joy in the Holy Ghost, at all times?

A. Though they have them radically in their justification, adoption, and sanctification, yet they have not always the sensible possession of them, but are frequently filled with doubts and fears about their gracious state, Job xxiii. 8, 9; Isa. xlix. 14.

Q. 6. Whence is it that they who have assurance, peace, and joy, in the root, have not always the sensible possession of these benefits?

A. This flows sometimes from a sovereign cause in God, to keep down a spirit of pride after special manifestations, 2 Cor. xii. 7; and sometimes from a sinful cause in believers; such as, untenderness in their walk, Isa. lix. 2; resting upon a manifestation, Luke ix. 33, 34; or quenching the kindly motions and operations of the Spirit, Eph. iv. 30.

Q. 7. Whether is it the assurance of sense, or the assurance of faith that is mentioned in this answer?

A. It is the assurance of sense, or the sensible *assurance of God's love.*

Q. 8. What is the difference betwixt the assurance of faith and the assurance of sense?

A. The object of the assurance of faith, is Christ in the promise, James ii. 23; but the object of the assurance of sense is Christ formed in the soul, 2 Tim. ii. 12; or, which is the same thing, the assurance of faith is grounded on the infallible word of God, who cannot lie: but the assurance of sense upon the person's present experience of the communications of divine love.

Q. 9. How may assurance of God's love be said to *accompany or flow from justification*?

A. In so far as therein we see his love to us in pardoning our sins and receiving us into his favour, Psal. ciii. 3, 4.

Q. 10. How may it be said to accompany or flow from *adoption*?

A. In so far as therein we see his love to us in bringing us into his family, and pitying us, "like as a father pitieth his children," Psal. ciii. 13.

Q. 11. How may it be said to accompany or flow from *sanctification*?

A. In so far as therein we see his love to us in killing our corruptions and quickening his graces, Rom. v. 11, 14.

Q. 12. How do you prove that the sensible assurance of God's love is attainable?

A. From the command to give diligence to attain it, 2 Pet. i. 10; and from its being actually attained by many of

the saints ; such as Job, chap. xix. 25, 26 ; David, Psal. lxxiii. 26 ; Paul, 2 Tim. iv. 7, 8 ; and many others.

Q. 13. How are the saints brought unto this privilege ?

A. Sometimes by a track of holy and self-denied diligence in the way of commanded duty, Isa. xxxii. 17, and sometimes by the Spirit itself bearing witness with their spirits that they are the children of God, Rom. viii. 15.

Q. 14. What may afford comfort to a believer, when at any time he loses this assurance ?

A. That the covenant stands fast with Christ, Psal. lxxxix. 28 ; that the love of God is invariably the same, Zeph. iii. 17, and that he will in his own time return with wonted loving-kindness, Isa. liv. 7, 8.

Q. 15. What is incumbent on believers for recovering the assurance of God's love, when they have lost the present sense of it ?

A. To be humbled for sin, as the procuring cause of the Lord's departure, Psal. xl. 12 ; to justify God, and condemn themselves, Dan. ix. 7, 8, and to wait, in the exercise of prayer and fasting, for the returns of his love, Isa. viii. 17.

Q. 16. Of what advantage to believers is the assurance of God's love ?

A. It animates to the practice of every commanded duty, Psal. cxix. 32 ; it supports under all trials and afflictions, Psal. xxiii. 4 ; and it fills the soul with the love of God, "because he first loved us," 1 John iv. 19.

Q. 17. How may we know if we have the well-grounded assurance of God's love ?

A. If it flow from faith acted on Christ in the promise, Eph. i. 13 ; if it fill the soul with an humble and holy wondering at the condescending goodness of God, 2 Sam. vii. 18 ; and if it beget ardent desires after nearer conformity to God here and the full enjoyment of him hereafter, 1 John iii. 2, 3.

Q. 18. What is the difference betwixt a true assurance of God's love and a false and presumptuous confidence ?

A. True assurance makes a man more humble and self-denied, Gal. ii. 19, 20, but presumptuous confidence puffs up with spiritual pride and self-conceit, 2 Kings x. 15, 16 ; the one excites to the practice of every commanded duty, Psal. cxix. 32, but the other encourages sloth and indolence, Luke xi. 21 ; the man who has true assurance wants to be searched and tried as to the reality thereof, Psal. xxvi. 1, 2 ; but they who are stuffed with presumptuous confidence hate the light, "neither come to the light, lest their deeds should be reprov'd," John iii. 20.

### *Of Peace of Conscience.*

Q. 1. What is *peace of conscience* ?

A. It is the inward quiet and tranquillity of the mind, arising from the faith of being justified before God, Rom. v. 1.

Q. 2. Why is peace of conscience said to accompany or flow from justification, adoption, and sanctification?

A. Because none can have true peace of conscience who are not justified, adopted, and sanctified, there being "no peace to the wicked," Isa. lvii. 21.

Q. 3. When may we be said to have that peace of conscience which flows from justification?

A. When the conscience, being sprinkled with the blood of Christ, is set free from the fear of vindictive wrath, Heb. x. 22.

Q. 4. When have we that peace which flows from adoption?

A. When we have soul-quiet and composure, through the faith of God's being our friend and father in Christ, Jer. iii. 4, 19.

Q. 5. When have we that peace which accompanies or flows from sanctification?

A. When we have the Spirit of God shining on us, in the exercise of grace, and assisting us in the performance of duty, Psal. cxxxviii. 3.

Q. 6. Whether is the peace of sanctification, or that of justification, most stable and permanent?

A. The peace of sanctification, having many imperfections cleaving to it, is more fluctuating and unstable than the peace of justification, which is grounded upon a righteousness that is everlasting, and always the same, Isa. xlv. 54, 55.

Q. 7. Have all believers peace in their consciences at all times?

A. They have ground of peace, being in a state of peace; but have not always the sense of it, Job vi. 4.

Q. 8. What is it that hinders or mars the sense of peace in those who are in a state of peace?

A. Their not improving the promises by faith for promoting their sanctification, Isa. xl. 27, 28; their sitting down upon present or former attainments, Psal. xxx. 6, 7, and their giving way to the temptations of Satan, who is an enemy both to their grace and comfort, Isa. liv. 11.

Q. 9. What are the marks of true peace of conscience, which distinguish it from carnal security?

A. A stated warfare against all known sin, Psal. cxix. 104, and a sincere endeavour to please God, ver. 165, with a constant fear of offending him, Gen. xxxix. 9.

*Of Joy in the Holy Ghost.*

Q. 1. What is *joy in the Holy Ghost*?

A. It is that inward elevation and enlargement of soul which

flows from the lively exercise of faith, feasting on Christ in the promise, 1 Pet. i. 8. "Believing, ye rejoice," &c.

Q. 2. Why is this joy said to be *in the Holy Ghost*?

A. Because the Holy Ghost is the author of it, as personally inhabiting or residing in the believer, John xiv. 16, 17.

Q. 3. What is the matter or ground of this joy?

A. God in Christ as the everlasting portion of the believing soul, Psal. xvi. 5, 6.

Q. 4. What are the properties of it?

A. It is a hidden joy, Prov. xiv. 10; it is permanent, John xvi. 22, and it is unspeakable, 1 Pet. i. 8.

Q. 5. What are the peculiar seasons of this joy?

A. The time of special manifestations after a dark night of desertion, Isa. liv. 7, 8: the time of tribulation for Christ's sake, Acts xvi. 25; the time of God's remarkable appearance for his church, Exod. xv. 1; and sometimes in and about the time of death, Psal. xxiii. 4.

Q. 6. When may believers be said to have that joy in the Holy Ghost which accompanies or flows from justification?

A. When they have "boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus," Heb. x. 19.

Q. 7. When may they be said to have that joy which flows from adoption?

A. When "the Spirit itself beareth witness with their spirit that they are the children of God," and enables them to "cry, Abba, Father," Rom. vii. 15, 16.

Q. 8. When may they be said to have the joy that flows from sanctification?

A. When they have the testimony of their conscience bearing witness to their sincerity, and to the uprightness of their aims and endeavours in all the duties of religion, 2 Cor. i. 12. "For our rejoicing in this, the testimony of our conscience, that in simplicity and godly sincerity, not with fleshly wisdom, but by the grace of God, we have had our conversation in the world."

Q. 9. What are the signs and evidences of joy in the Holy Ghost, which distinguish it from that joy which temporary believers, or hypocrites, may have sometimes in the word? Matth. xiii. 20.

A. Joy in the Holy Ghost hath an enlivening, Neh. viii. 10, enlarging, Psal. xlv. 1, humbling, Job xliii. 5, 6, and sanctifying influence upon the soul, 2 Cor. iii. 18; whereas the joy of hypocrites hath no such effects.

#### *Of Increase of Grace.*

Q. 1. What do you understand by *increase of grace*?

A. The gradual advances which the saints are helped to make, in the exercise of grace and experimental godliness, Psal. xcii. 12, 13.

Q. 2. Whereunto is the increase of grace compared in Scripture?

A. Unto "the shining light, that shineth more and more unto the perfect day," Prov. iv. 18.

Q. 3. What is the spring or cause of the believer's growth?

A. Union with Christ, John xv. 4, and participation of vital influences from him, Col. ii. 19.

Q. 4. Why is it so ordered, that believers shall grow in grace?

A. Because there is a particular stature, at which every member of the mystical body is appointed to arrive, even "the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ," Eph. iv. 13.

Q. 5. How doth growth in grace flow from justification?

A. Inasmuch as the justified person is delivered from a legal incapacity to grow, Psal. cxvi. 16, and is made free and unfettered for the service of God, Gal. v. 1.

Q. 6. How doth it flow from adoption?

A. Inasmuch as "the sincere milk of the word is desired by the new-born babes, that they may grow thereby," 1 Pet. ii. 2.

Q. 7. How doth it flow from sanctification?

A. Inasmuch as the image of God, drawn upon the soul, is, in sanctification, carried on to a nearer conformity, till we shall be perfectly like him, when we shall see him as he is, 1 John iii. 2.

Q. 8. Do believers grow in grace at all times?

A. They have a principle of growth, the seed of God remaining in them, 1 John iii. 9, but they do not grow at all times; they have their winters, Song ii. 11, wherein the influences of grace necessary for growth are ceased, chap. v. 2.

Q. 9. Whence is it that the believer's growth ceases at any time?

A. Faith being like the pipe that receiveth the oil from the bowl to each lamp in the candlestick, Zech. iv. 2, if that pipe be stopt, or the saint's faith lie dormant and inactive, then all the rest of the graces will also languish and decay, Psal. xxvii. 13.

Q. 10. How is growth in grace revived after the languishings and decays thereof?

A. The pipe of faith remaining still at the fountain, a bond of union betwixt Christ and the soul, the Lord Jesus clears this mean of conveyance, and then the influences for growth flow, and the believer's graces look fresh and green

again, Hos. xiv. 7. "They that dwell under his shadow shall return, they shall revive as the corn, and grow as the vine."

Q. 11. Since the tares have their growth as well as the wheat, Matth. xiii. 26, how shall we distinguish betwixt the growth of hypocrites and the growth of the true Christian?

A. The distinction lies in the nature of the growth: the growth of the true Christian is regular and proportionable in all the parts of the new man; it is a "growing up into him in all things which is the head," Eph. iv. 15, whereas hypocrites, when they get more knowledge into their heads, and no more holiness into their hearts, may be more taken up with the externals of religion than formerly, and yet as great strangers to the power of godliness as ever, 2 Tim. iii. 5.

Q. 12. What are the several ways in which believers grow at once?

A. They grow inwardly and outwardly, upward and downward, Isa. xxxvii. 31.

Q. 13. How do believers grow inwardly?

A. By uniting more closely to Christ, and cleaving more firmly unto him as the head of influences, which is the spring of all other true Christian growth, Eph. iv. 15.

Q. 14. How do they grow outwardly?

A. By being fruitful in good works in their life and conversation, Tit. iii. 8.

Q. 15. How do they grow upward?

A. In heavenly-mindedness and contempt of the world, Phil. iii. 20. "Our conversation is in heaven."

Q. 16. How do they grow downward?

A. In humility and self-abasement: the branches of the largest growth in Christ are, in their own eyes, "less than the least of all saints," Eph. iii. 8; yea, "the chief of sinners," 1 Tim. i. 15; they see that they can do nothing, 2 Cor. iii. 5; that they deserve nothing, Gen. xxxii. 10; and that they are nothing, 2 Cor. xii. 11.

Q. 17. May not Christians mistake their case, by measuring their growth in one of these ways, exclusively of the rest of them?

A. Yes; if, for instance, they measure it upwards, and not all downwards; for, though a Christian may want the sweet consolations and flashes of affection which sometimes he has had, yet, if he be growing in humility, self-denial, and a sense of needy dependence on the Lord Jesus, he is a growing Christian, Hos. xiv. 5. "I will be as the dew unto Israel: he shall—cast forth his roots as Lebanon."

Q. 18. When believers cannot perceive their growth, how may they know if they have true grace at all, however weak?

A. If they have any measure of self-loathing on account of sin, Ezek. xxxvi. 31 ; if they have a desire of grace, Neh. i. 11 ; if they prize Christ above all things, Phil. iii. 8 ; and if they love his members for his sake, 1 John v. 1.

Of Perseverance.

Q. 1. What is meant by *perseverance* in grace ?

A. A continuing still in a state of grace, and the habitual practice of godliness to the end, John x. 28.

Q. 2. Can none who are justified, adopted, and sanctified, fall totally and finally from grace ?

A. No ; they can neither fall totally from all grace, nor finally without recovery ; for those that thou gavest me, says Christ, " I have kept, and none of them is lost," John xvii. 12.

Q. 3. How is the perseverance of the saints infallibly secured ?

A. By the immutability of electing love, Jer. xxxi. 3 ; by an indissoluble union with Christ, Rom. viii. 38, 39 ; by the merit of his purchase, 1 Pet. i. 18, 19 ; by the prevalency of his intercession, Luke xxii. 32 ; by the inhabitation of the Spirit, John xiv. 16 ; and by the power of a promising God, 1 Pet. i. 5.

Q. 4. What promise, among others, have believers for their perseverance in grace to the end ?

A. They have that remarkable promise in Jer. xxxii. 40. " I will not turn away from them to do them good, but I will put my fear in their hearts, and they shall not depart from me."

Q. 5. What security have believers by this promise ?

A. They are secured on every side, both that God will never cast them off, and that they shall never desert him.

Q. 6. What is the ground in law upon which believers are secured that God will never cast them off, and that they shall never desert him ?

A. Christ's perseverance in obedience unto the law for them till the condition of the covenant was perfectly fulfilled, Phil. ii. 8, whereby their perseverance was purchased and infallibly secured, Tit. ii. 14.

Q. 7. Do all who make a zealous profession of religion persevere therein ?

A. No : many of them fall away afterwards, John vi. 66.

Q. 8. What may we conclude about those who fall totally and finally from their profession ?

A. That they never were in reality what they professed themselves to be, 1 John ii. 19. " They went out from us, but they were not of us : for if they had been of us, they would no doubt have continued with us ; but they went out, that they might be made manifest that they were not all of us."

Q. 9. What are the chief branches of the promise of perseverance?

A. A promise of the continued influence of grace, Isa. xxvii. 3, and a promise of continued pardon for the sins of the believer's daily walk, Jer. xxxiii. 8.

Q. 10. Why is a promise of the continued influences of grace necessary?

A. Because the stock of inherent grace would soon fail; of itself it would wither away, and die out, if it were not fed, John xv. 16.

Q. 11. Why is a promise of continued pardon necessary to the perseverance of saints already justified?

A. Not as if there were any need of new pardons with respect unto their state, because none of their sins can bring them any more under the guilt of eternal wrath, Rom. viii. 1; but only with respect to the sins of their daily walk, which bring them under the guilt of fatherly anger, Psal. lxxxix. 30, 31, 32.

Q. 12. How is the pardon of the sins of the daily walk granted unto believers?

A. Upon their renewed actings of faith in Jesus Christ, and of repentance towards God; yet not FOR their believing and repenting, but for Christ's sake, 1 John ii. 1, 2; even as the first pardon is given, chap. i. 7.

Q. 13. Doth repentance then go before the pardon of sin?

A. Although repentance doth not go before, but follows after the pardon of sin in justification, yet not only faith, but repentance also, goes before the pardons given to those who are already justified, 1 John i. 9. "If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins."

Q. 14. How doth the perseverance of the saints flow from their justification?

A. Inasmuch as they who are once justified and accepted in the beloved are always so; "for the gifts and calling of God are without repentance," Rom. xi. 29.

Q. 15. How doth their perseverance flow from adoption?

A. Inasmuch as he who adopted them as his children is their everlasting Father, Isa. ix. 6; and therefore they shall abide in his house for ever, John viii. 35.

Q. 16. How doth it flow from their sanctification?

A. Inasmuch as the sanctifying Spirit is given them to abide with them for ever, John xiv. 16, and to be in them "a well of water springing up into everlasting life," chap. iv. 14.

Q. 17. What improvement should be made of this connexion of the benefits and blessings that accompany and flow from justification, adoption, and sanctification?

A. It should excite us to have a desire after the saving knowledge of the truth as it is in Jesus, in whom all the lines of divine truth do meet, as in their centre, Eph. iv. 21 ; and to admire the infinite goodness and wisdom of God, who has so linked all the blessings of the covenant into one another, that they who are possessed of one are possessed of all, 1 Cor. iii. 22, 23.

37. Q. What benefits do believers receive from Christ at death ?

A. The souls of believers are at their death made perfect in holiness, and do immediately pass into glory ; and their bodies, being still united to Christ, do rest in their graves till the resurrection.

Q. 1. Why are the persons spoken of in the answer called *believers* ?

A. Because they have been enabled, by grace, to credit the truth of God in his promise, and to embrace the good that is therein, Heb. xi. 13.

Q. 2. What is the difference betwixt believers and others in their death ?

A. Believers die in virtue of the promise of the covenant of grace, wherein death is made over to them unstinged, as a part of Christ's legacy, 1 Cor. iii. 22 ; whereas all others die in virtue of the threatening of the covenant of works, Gen. ii. 17, having the sting of death sticking fast both in their souls and bodies.

Q. 3. What is the sting of death ?

A. The sting of death is sin, 1 Cor. xv. 56 ; and the curse as the inseparable companion of sin, Gal. iii. 10.

Q. 4. What security in law have believers against the sting of death ?

A. Christ's receiving it into his soul and body, as their surety, that they might be delivered from it : wherefore the promise of victory over death made to him, Isa. xxv. 8, secures the disarming of it to them, 1 Cor. xv. 57.

Q. 5. How manifold are these benefits which believers receive from Christ at their death ?

A. They are twofold, such as respect their SOULS, and such as respect their BODIES.

Q. 6. How doth it appear that *the souls of believers* exist in a state of separation from their bodies ?

A. From the Lord's calling himself the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, long after their death, as an evidence that their souls were living, " for God is not the God of the dead, but of the living," Matth. xxii.

32; and from the death of believers being called a departure, 2 Tim. iv. 6; intimating that the soul upon its separation "departs only from the earthly house of this tabernacle" unto "an house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens," 2 Cor. v. 1.

Q. 7. Are the souls of men absolutely and independently immortal?

A. No; God only is so, 1 Tim. vi. 16, "Who only hath immortality."

Q. 8. In what sense then are souls immortal?

A. In that as to their natural constitution they are incorruptible, having no inward principle of corruption, but remaining in a state of activity after the death of the body, Heb. xii. 23. "The spirits of just men made perfect."

Q. 9. How do you prove the immortality of the soul from the nature of it?

A. In its nature it is a spiritual, immaterial, or incorporeal substance; and therefore, where there is no composition of parts, there can be no dissolution of them, Luke xxiv. 39. "A spirit hath not flesh and bones."

Q. 10. How are we sure that the soul shall never be annihilated?

A. From the promise of everlasting happiness to the righteous, and the threatening of everlasting misery to the wicked, Matth. xxv. 46. "These shall go away into everlasting punishment, but the righteous into life eternal."

Q. 11. What are the benefits which are conferred upon the souls of believers upon their separation from their bodies?

A. They are *made perfect in holiness, and do immediately pass into glory*, Heb. xii. 23; Phil. i. 23.

Q. 12. How doth it appear that the souls of believers are not made perfect in holiness while united to their bodies in this life?

A. From the remains of corruption and indwelling sin, which cleave to the best of the saints of God while in an embodied state, Rom. vii. 23, 24.

Q. 13. Wherein consists that *perfect holiness* which is conferred upon the souls of believers at their separation?

A. Not only in a perfect freedom from all sin as to the very being of it, Rev. xxi. 4, but in a perfect likeness and conformity to God, 1 John iii. 2.

Q. 14. What comfort may a believer have in the prospect of the separation of his soul from his body?

A. That as sin made its first entrance into him at the union of his soul and body, so it shall be for ever cast out at their separation; in which respect, among many others, "death is great gain," Phil. i. 21.

Q. 15. Why must the souls of believers be perfectly holy at their separation ?

A. Because nothing that defileth can enter within the gates of the heavenly Jerusalem, Rev. xxi. 27.

Q. 16. What is the necessary concomitant of the soul's perfect holiness ?

A. Perfect and uninterrupted communion with God, 1 John iii. 2.

Q. 17. Where is this perfect and uninterrupted communion to be enjoyed ?

A. In glory, 1 Cor. xiii. 12.

Q. 18. When do the souls of the saints *pass into glory* ?

A. As they are made perfect in holiness immediately upon their separation, so they do likewise *immediately* pass into glory.

Q. 19. Why is it said in the answer that they pass *immediately* into glory ?

A. To show that the fiction of a middle state betwixt heaven and hell, invented by the Papists, hath no manner of warrant or foundation in Scripture.

Q. 20. How do you prove from Scripture that the souls of believers pass immediately into glory upon their separation from their bodies ?

A. The soul of that certain beggar named Lazarus was immediately, upon its separation, "carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom," Luke xvi. 22; in like manner the soul of the thief upon the cross was immediately glorified; for, says Christ to him, "To-day shalt thou be with me in paradise;" Luke xxiii. 43; and Stephen, among his last words, prays, "Lord Jesus, receive my spirit," Acts vii. 59; plainly intimating, that he firmly believed his soul would be with Christ in glory, immediately upon the back of death.

Q. 21. What is that *glory* which the souls of believers do immediately pass into ?

A. "Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man the things which God hath prepared for them that love him," 1 Cor. ii. 9. However, since naked discoveries of the heavenly glory, divested of earthly resemblances, would be too bright for our weak eyes, such is the condescension of God, that he hath been pleased to represent to us heaven's happiness under similitudes taken from earthly things, glorious in the eyes of men.

Q. 22. What are the similitudes whereby this glory, which the souls of believers immediately pass into, is held forth in Scripture ?

A. It is compared to a kingdom, Luke xii. 32; to an

“house not made with hands,” 2 Cor. v. 1; to “an inheritance incorruptible,” 1 Pet. i. 4; and to a better country, Heb. xi. 16.

Q. 23. Why is the heavenly glory compared to a kingdom?

A. Because of the fulness of all spiritual and eternal good, which the saints are there possessed of; and the glorious dignity to which they are advanced, Rev. i. 6. “And hath made us kings and priests unto God and his Father.”

Q. 24. Why is it called an house not made with hands?

A. To signify the unspeakable excellency of the heavenly mansions above the most stately palaces built by the hands of men.

Q. 25. Why is it said to be an incorruptible inheritance?

A. To intimate that the happiness of the saints will be of an unfading nature for ever, 1 Pet. v. 4. “Ye shall receive a crown of glory that fadeth not away.”

Q. 26. Why is it called a better country?

A. To show that there is no comparison betwixt “the things which are seen, and are temporal, and the things which are not seen, and are eternal,” 2 Cor. iv. 18.

Q. 27. What benefits do believers receive from Christ at death with respect to their bodies?

A. *Their bodies being still united to Christ, do rest in their graves till the resurrection*, Isa. lvii. 2; Job xix. 26.

Q. 28. How doth it appear that the *bodies* of believers in their graves do remain *still united to Christ*?

A. The union was with the person of believers, whereof their bodies are a part; and this union being indissolvable, it must still subsist with their bodies in the grave as well as with their souls in heaven, Isa. xxvi. 19.

Q. 29. How may believers be assured of this from the union betwixt the natures in the person of Christ?

A. Because, as at the death of Christ, though his soul was separated from his body, yet neither the one nor the other was separated from his divine person, but remained as firmly united thereunto as ever; so neither soul nor body of the believer shall be separated from Christ by their separation from one another at death, but both of them remain indissolvably united to him for ever, Rom. viii. 38, 39.

Q. 30. What is the difference of the grave to the righteous and to the wicked?

A. To the one the grave is a resting-place, but to the other it is a prison-house, where they are kept in close custody for the judgment of the great day, Dan. xii. 2.

Q. 31. Why are the bodies of the saints said to *rest in their graves*?

A. Because their graves are like beds of ease, where their

bodies lie in safety, till they be awakened in the morning of the resurrection, Isa. lvii. 2.

Q. 32. How is their resting in the grave expressed in Scripture?

A. By "sleeping in Jesus," 1 Thess. iv. 14; intimating that they sleep in union with Jesus, and that his Spirit keeps possession of every pile of their dust, which he will quicken and rebuild as his temple at the last day, Rom. viii. 11.

Q. 33. How long will they rest in their graves?

A. *Till the resurrection* of all the dead at the great day, John v. 29.

Q. 34. How may believers be assured of receiving these promised benefits from Christ at their death?

A. They may be assured of them upon this ground, that the promises of these benefits to them are all grafted upon the promises made to him as their glorious head "before the world began," 2 Tim. i. 9; Tit. i. 2.

Q. 35. Upon what promise made to Christ is the promise of disarming death to the dying believer grafted? Hos. xiii. 14. "O death! I will be thy plagues."

A. It is grafted upon the promise made to him of a complete victory over death, Isa. xxv. 8. "He will swallow up death in victory."

Q. 36. Upon what ground may believers be assured that their souls at death shall immediately pass into glory?

A. The promise of transporting their souls into heaven immediately upon their separation from their bodies (Luke xxiii. 43; "Jesus said unto him, Verily I say unto thee, To-day shalt thou be with me in paradise,") is granted upon the promise made to Christ, that when he should make his soul an offering for sin, he should see his seed, Isa. liii. 10.

Q. 37. Upon what promise made to Christ is the promise of destroying death to the dead believer grafted? Hos. xiii. 14. "O grave! I will be thy destruction."

A. It is grafted upon the promise made to him of the resurrection of his mystical members, Isa. xxvi. 19. "Thy dead men shall live, together with my dead body shall they arise."

38. Q. What benefit do believers receive from Christ at the resurrection?

A. At the resurrection believers, being raised up in glory, shall be openly acknowledged, and acquitted in the day of judgment, and made perfectly blessed in the full enjoying of God to all eternity.

Q. 1. Will not all others of mankind be raised as well as *believers*?

A. Yes ; “ There shall be a resurrection of the dead, both of the just and unjust,” Acts xxiv. 15.

Q. 2. How do you prove that there will be a general resurrection of the dead ?

A. From the power of God which CAN raise them, and from the Scriptures which affirm that he WILL do it: by which two arguments our Lord proves the doctrine of the resurrection against the Sadducees, Matth. xxii. 29. “ Jesus answered and said unto them, Ye do err, not knowing the Scriptures, nor the power of God.”

Q. 3. How doth it appear that God CAN raise the dead ?

A. Since his power was able to speak the world into being out of nothing, surely the same power can as easily raise up the dead bodies of men out of their former dust, and put them into order after their dissolution, Rom. iv. 17.

Q. 4. What Scripture instances hath God given of his power in raising the dead ?

A. In the Old Testament, the son of the widow of Sarepta was raised when he was but newly dead, 1 Kings xvii. 22 ; the Shunammite’s son, when he had lain dead a considerable time, 2 Kings iv. 35 ; and the man cast into the sepulchre of Elisha, when they were burying him, chap. xiii. 21 ; in the New Testament, the daughter of Jairus, Mark v. 41 ; and Dorcas, Acts ix. 40 ; were both raised to life when lately dead ; the widow’s son in Nain when they were carrying him out to bury him, Luke vii. 12, 15 ; and Lazarus when stinking in the grave, John xi. 39, 44.

Q. 5. How can the dust of men’s bodies be distinguished and separated when the ashes of many generations are mingled together ?

A. With men it is impossible, but not with God ; for whosoever believes an infinite understanding, Psal. cxlvii. 5, must needs own, that no mass of dust can be so jumbled together but God perfectly comprehends and infallibly knows how the most minute particle, and every one of them, is to be matched ; and therefore knows where the particles of each body are, and how to separate them from one another.

Q. 6. How, is it evident from the Scriptures that God WILL raise the dead ?

A. From several passages therein, which expressly affirm that he will do so, such as Dan. xii. 2. “ And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake ; some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt ;” John v. 28, 29. “ All that are in their graves shall hear his voice, and shall come forth ; they that have done good unto the resurrection of life, and they that have done evil unto

the resurrection of damnation." See also Job xix. 26, 27 ; Acts xxiv. 15.

Q. 7. How did our Lord prove the resurrection against the Sadducees, who held only the five books of Moses as most authentic ?

A. From Exod. iii. 6 ; " I am the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob." From whence he argues, Luke xx. 37, 38, " Now that the dead are raised, even Moses showed at the bush, when he calleth the Lord the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob ; for he is not the God of the dead, but of the living."

Q. 8. What is the force of this argument for proving the resurrection ?

A. It amounts to this : He is the God of their persons, and not the God of their souls only ; and therefore, though their souls in a separate state love, worship, and praise him, yet their bodies must also be raised out of the dust, and be restored to life, by the soul's resuming its possession, that they may, as living persons, or men having soul and body united, love, serve, and adore him, and have the full enjoyment of all the blessings contained in his being their God, Heb. xi. 16.

Q. 9. Will the self-same body that dies be raised again ?

A. Yes ; it will be the same body, or substance, that will be raised, though endued with other qualities. The very notion of a resurrection implies so much ; since nothing can be said to rise again but that which falls.

Q. 10. How do you prove from Scripture, that the self-same body that dies shall be raised again ?

A. Death, in Scripture language, is a sleep, and the resurrection an awakening out of that sleep, Job xiv. 12, which shows the body rising up to be the self-same that died ; and the apostle tells us, that it is " this mortal which must put on immortality," 1 Cor. xv. 53, and that Christ shall " change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body," Phil. iii. 21.

Q. 11. How do you prove this from the equity of the Divine procedure ?

A. Though the glorifying of the bodies of the saints cannot, in a strict sense, be said to be the reward of their services or sufferings on earth, yet it is not agreeable to the manner of the Divine dispensation, that one body serve him, and another be glorified ; that one fight, and another receive the crown.

Q. 12. Will the same bodies of the wicked, which are laid in the dust, be also raised again ?

A. Yes ; that the same body which sinned may suffer : it being unsuitable that one body be the instrument of sin here, and another suffer in hell for that sin.

Q. 13. By what means will the dead be raised ?

A. "The Lord Jesus himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God," 1 Thess. iv. 16. And at his alarming voice, which shall be heard all the world over, the scattered dust of all the dead shall be gathered together, dust to his dust ; and likewise every soul shall come again to its own body, never more to be separated.

Q. 14. In what order will they be raised ?

A. "The dead in Christ shall rise FIRST," 2 Thess. iv. 16.

Q. 15. What will become of those who shall be found alive at the second coming of Christ ?

A. They shall not die and soon thereafter be raised again ; but they shall be changed in some such manner as Christ's body was on the mount when transfigured ; and they shall become like these bodies of the saints which are raised out of their graves, 1 Cor. xv. 51.

Q. 16. In what time will the dead be raised, and the living changed ?

A. "In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump," 1 Cor. xv. 52.

Q. 17. What will be the difference betwixt the resurrection of the godly and that of the wicked ?

A. The godly shall be raised by virtue of the SPIRIT of Christ, the blessed bond of their union with him, Rom. viii. 11 ; and they shall come forth out of their graves with unspeakable joy, Isa. xxvi. 19. "Awake and sing, ye that dwell in the dust:" but the wicked shall be raised by the POWER of Christ, as a just Judge ; and they shall come forth with unspeakable horror and consternation, as so many malefactors, "to be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of his power," 2 Thess. i. 9.

Q. 18. In what state and condition will the bodies of believers be raised ?

A. They shall be *raised up in glory*, 1 Cor. xv. 43.

Q. 19. What is meant by the *glory* in which they shall be raised ?

A. That they shall be incorruptible, glorious, powerful, and spiritual bodies, 1 Cor. xv. 42—44. "It is sown in corruption, it is raised in incorruption ; it is sown in dishonour, it is raised in glory ; it is sown in weakness, it is raised in power ; it is sown a natural body, it is raised a spiritual body."

Q. 20. What do you understand by the bodies of believers being raised incorruptible ?

A. That they shall leave all the seeds of corruption behind them in the grave, and be for ever incapable of any pain, sickness, or death ; that they shall have an everlasting youth

and vigour, no more subject to the decays which age produced in this life, Isa. xxxii. 24.

Q. 21. Why are their bodies said to be glorious?

A. Because they shall be finished like unto Christ's glorious body, Phil. iii. 21; not only beautiful, comely, and well proportioned, but full of splendour and brightness: for they shall "shine forth as the sun in the kingdom of their Father," Matth. xiii. 43.

Q. 22. Why are they said to be powerful or strong bodies?

A. Because they shall be able to bear up, under an "exceeding and eternal weight of glory," 2 Cor. iv. 17; and shall not rest night nor day, but be, without intermission, for ever employed, in the heavenly temple, to sing and proclaim the praises of God, Rev. iv. 8; weariness being a weakness incompetent to an immortal body.

Q. 23. In what respect will they be spiritual bodies?

A. Not in respect of their being changed into spirits (for they shall still retain the essential properties of bodies), but in respect of their spirit-like qualities and endowments: they shall be nimble and active, and of a most refined constitution, for "they shall hunger no more, neither thirst any more, and they shall never sleep," but "serve him day and night in his temple," Rev. vi. 15, 16.

Q. 24. What will follow immediately upon the resurrection of the dead?

A. *The day of judgment*, Rev. xx. 13.

Q. 25. What kind of a day will the day of judgment be?

A. It will be a day of wrath and vengeance to the wicked, 2 Thess. i. 8, 9; but a day of complete redemption to the godly, Luke xxi. 28.

Q. 26. What will be the privilege of believers in the day of judgment?

A. *They shall be openly acknowledged and acquitted*, Matth. xxv. 23.

Q. 27. What is it to be *acknowledged* by Christ in that day?

A. It is to be owned by him, as the blessed of his Father, for whom the kingdom of heaven is prepared, Matth. xxv. 34. "Then shall the King say to them on his right hand, Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world."

Q. 28. What is it for believers to be *acquitted* in the day of judgment?

A. It is not only to be vindicated from all calumny and false aspersions cast upon them here, 1 Cor. iv. 5; but to have all their sins declaratively pardoned, Acts iii. 19.

Q. 29. What is the difference between the acquitting of

believers, when they are justified in this life, and the doing of it in the day of judgment ?

A. In this life, believers are acquitted secretly out of the sight of the world, and frequently without any intimation thereof unto themselves : but then the acquitment shall be pronounced in the most solemn and public manner.

Q. 30. Is not this what is meant by their being *openly* acknowledged and acquitted ?

A. Yes ; for it shall be done before God, angels, and men, Rev. iii. 5 ; Matth. xxv. 34—41.

Q. 31. Why will it be done so openly ?

A. For the greater honour and comfort of the saints and the greater shame and confusion of their enemies, Isa. lxvi. 5. “ Your brethren that hated you, that cast you out for my name’s sake, said, Let the Lord be glorified ; but he shall appear to your joy, and they shall be ashamed.”

Q. 32. On what account shall they be acquitted in that day ?

A. On the very same account they are justified here, namely, for Christ’s righteousness’ sake, imputed to them, and received by faith alone, Rom. iii. 24.

Q. 33. What benefits shall believers receive after the day of judgment in heaven ?

A. They shall be *made perfectly blessed in the full enjoyment of God to all eternity*, 1 Thess. iv. 17. “ So shall we ever be with the Lord.”

Q. 34. What is it to be *perfectly blessed* ?

A. It is to be entirely free of all misery, and fully possessed of all happiness, Rev. xxi. 4, 7.

Q. 35. Wherein doth the highest pitch of happiness consist ?

A. *In the full enjoying of God*, the chiefest good, Psal. lxxiii. 25.

Q. 36. In what way and manner will God be fully enjoyed in heaven ?

A. By such a perfect knowledge of him as shall have no measure set to it but what arises from the finite capacity of the creature, 1 Cor. xiii. 12 ; for otherwise a creature’s comprehensive knowledge of an infinite Being is impossible, Job xi. 7.

Q. 37. How many ways will God be perfectly and satisfyingly known ?

A. Two ways ; the one is by sight, which will satisfy the understanding ; and the other is by experience, which will satisfy the will.

Q. 38. What is it that will give the greatest satisfaction to the bodily eyes in heaven ?

A. A beholding that glorious and blessed body which is united to the person of the Son of God, Job xix. 27.

Q. 39. Will not the glory of the man Christ Jesus be unspeakably superior to the glory of all the saints ?

A. Yes, surely ; for though the saints shall shine forth as the sun, yet not they, but the Lamb, shall be the light of the heavenly city, Rev. xxi. 23.

Q. 40. What is it that will make the glory of the human nature of Christ shine with a peculiar lustre in the eyes of the saints ?

A. It is the indissolvable subsistence of that nature in the person of the Son, as the everlasting bond of union betwixt God and them, John xv. 23. "I in them and thou in me, that they may be made perfect in one."

Q. 41. Is not the blissful sight of God in heaven something else than the sight of that glory which we will see with our bodily eyes, in the man Christ, or in the saints, or any other splendour and refulgence from the Godhead whatsoever ?

A. Yes ; for no created thing can be our chief good and happiness, nor fully satisfy our souls ; and as these things are somewhat different from God himself, so the Scriptures assure us that we shall see God, Matth. v. 8, and see him as he is, 1 John iii. 2.

Q. 42. How will the saints see God, Father, Son, and Holy Ghost in heaven ?

A. Not with their bodily eyes, in respect of which God is invisible, 1 Tim. i. 17 ; but with the eye of the understanding, being blessed with the most perfect, full, and clear knowledge of God and Divine things which the creature is capable of, 1 Cor. xiii. 12.

Q. 43. What is the difference between believers seeing God here and their seeing of him then ?

A. Here they have only a sight, as it were, of his back-parts ; but there they shall see his face, Rev. xxii. 4 ; it is but a passing view they can have of him here, but there they shall eternally, without interruption, feed the eyes of their souls upon him, Psal. xvii. 15. "As for me I will behold thy face in righteousness : I shall be satisfied, when I awake, with thy likeness."

Q. 44. What will the eyes of their souls be eternally fed upon ?

A. They will be for ever contemplating his infinite love, his unchangeable truths, and wonderful works, with the utmost complacency and delight, Psal. xvi. 11. "In thy presence is fulness of joy, at thy right hand there are pleasures for evermore."

Q. 45. How will the saints in heaven contemplate the infinite love of God towards them ?

A. They shall be admitted to look into his heart, and there

have a clear, distinct, and assured view of the love he bore to them from eternity and will bear to them for evermore ; for he hath said, “ I have loved thee with an everlasting love,” Jer. xxxi. 3. “ Enter thou into the joy of thy Lord,” Matth. xxv. 23.

Q. 46. How will they contemplate God’s unchangeable truths ?

A. The light of glory will be a complete commentary on the Bible, and will disclose the whole treasure hid in that field, Psal. xxxvi. 9. “ In thy light shall we see light.”

Q. 47. Will there be any occasion for written or printed Bibles in heaven ?

A. By no means ; for the unchangeable truths of God, recorded in that holy book, will be indelibly stamped upon the minds of the redeemed company, as the subject of their everlasting song, Isa. lix. 21. “ My words shall not depart—out of the mouth of thy seed’s seed, saith the Lord,—from henceforth and for ever,” 1 Pet. i. 26. “ The word of the Lord endureth for ever.”

Q. 48. What uptaking will they have of the wonderful works of God, particularly of creation ?

A. Their knowledge of all the creatures will then be brought to perfection, and they will see, that in wisdom he hath made them all, Psal. cxlv. 24.

Q. 49. What views will they have of adorable providence ?

A. They will see the chequered web of providence spread out at its full length ; and that there was a need-be for all the trials and troubles they met with in time, 1 Pet. i. 6.

Q. 50. How will the saints in heaven contemplate the glorious work of redemption ?

A. It will be the matter of their eternal admiration ; they shall for ever wonder and praise, praise and wonder, at the mysteries of wisdom and love, goodness and holiness, mercy and justice, that shine through the whole of that glorious device, Rev. i. 5, 6.

Q. 51. What is the experimental knowledge whereby the saints shall enjoy God in heaven ?

A. It is the participation of the Divine goodness in full measure, accompanied with a most lively sensation thereof in the innermost part of their souls, Rev. vii. 17. “ The Lamb shall lead them to living fountains of water,” which are no other but God himself, the fountain of living waters, who will fully and freely communicate himself to them.

Q. 52. In what respect will the communication of God to the experience of the saints in heaven be full ?

A. Inasmuch as they shall not be stinted to any measure,

but the enjoyment shall go as far as their most enlarged capacities can reach, Psal. lxxxi. 10.

Q. 53. Will the capacities of the saints above be of equal size?

A. As there will be different degrees of glory (the saints in heaven being compared to stars, which are of different magnitudes, Dan. xii. 3), so some capacities will contain more, and others less, yet all shall be filled, and have what they can hold, Psal. xvi. 11.

Q. 54. Wherein will consist the freedom of God's communicating himself to the experience of the saints in heaven?

A. In the unrestrained familiarity which he will there allow them with himself; he shall walk in them, 2 Cor. vi. 16; his fulness shall ever stand open to them, there being no vail betwixt him and them to be drawn aside, for they shall see him face to face, 1 Cor. xiii. 12.

Q. 55. What will be the result of the free communication and full participation of the Divine goodness in the upper sanctuary?

A. Perfect likeness to God, and unspeakable joy: hence, says the Psalmist, "I shall be satisfied when I awake with thy likeness—In thy presence is fulness of joy," Psal. xvii. 15, and xvi. 11.

Q. 56. Why will perfect likeness to God follow upon the beatific vision of him?

A. Because the seeing of God in all his matchless excellencies, no more through a glass darkly, but face to face, cannot but be attended with a swallowing up of all the imperfections of the saints, into a glorious transformation to his blessed image, 1 John iii. 2. "We shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is."

Q. 57. Why is the communication and participation of God in heaven accompanied with unspeakable joy?

A. Because of the undoubted certainty and full assurance which the saints have of the eternal duration of the same; the enjoyment of God being always fresh and new to them through the ages of eternity; for they shall drink of living fountains of waters continually springing up in abundance, Rev. vii. 17.

Q. 58. Why will the saints in heaven have an undoubted certainty of their full enjoying of God to all eternity?

A. Because the everlasting God himself will be their "eternal life and happiness," 1 John v. 20. "This is the true God, and eternal life," Isa. lx. 19. "The Lord shall be unto thee an everlasting light, and thy God thy glory." Hence it is said of heaven, that the glory of God doth lighten it; and that "the Lamb is the light thereof," Rev. xxi. 23.

Q. 59. What improvement ought we to make of these benefits which believers receive from Christ at the resurrection?

A. We should "be diligent that we may be found of him in peace, without spot, and blameless," 2 Pet. iii. 14; and occupy the talents he hath given us until he come, Luke xix. 13; we should judge ourselves that we may not be judged, 1 Cor. xi. 31; and because "the end of all things is at hand," we should "therefore be sober, and watch unto prayer," 1 Pet. iv. 7; yea, we should "hope to the end, for the grace that is to be brought unto us, at the revelation of Jesus Christ," chap. i. 13.

END OF PART FIRST.

## P R E F A C E.

---

THIS second part of the Assembly's Shorter Catechism explained, through various impediments, was not published till about seven years after the first, which is the reason why there is an edition more of the first than of the second part.

In the preface to the first part of this work, subscribed by the Reverend Mr Ebenezer Erskine and me, the usefulness of sound standards of public authority, together with the Divine warrant for such composures, is briefly set forth; as likewise a short account of the method which the Westminster Assembly most judiciously observe in this compendious and almost incomparable system of divinity, The Shorter Catechism.

Both these eminent lights, the Reverend Messrs Ebenezer and Ralph Erskine, who assisted in composing and revising the first part of this Catechism, are some years ago removed to the upper sanctuary by death; the first soon after,\* and the second a little before the publishing of it:† so that the charge of this second part was, by a renewed recommendation of my brethren, laid upon me. They indeed promised to afford me materials, which some of them did, and I made all the use of them I could.

This performance, such as it is, was never judicially read and approved by any of our judicatories (though several of my brethren had opportunity to peruse the most part of it before the whole was cast off); therefore any imperfection or weakness that may be found herein is not to be imputed to the body of ministers, with whom I am in Providence connected, but to myself only.

As to mistakes in divinity, I dare not say there are none; but if there are, I may be confident to affirm there were none designed.

\* The Reverend Mr Ebenezer Erskine, minister of the Gospel, first at Portmoak, and then at Stirling, died June 2, 1754, in the 74th year of his age and 51st of his ministry. There were what amounted to four octavo volumes of excellent sermons published in his own lifetime, and a fifth after his death.

† The Reverend Mr Ralph Erskine, minister of the Gospel at Dunfermline, died November 6, 1752, in the 68th year of his age and 42d of his ministry in that place.

He published several polemical treatises on various subjects; but his practical works, both in prose and verse, are now collected into two large folio volumes; to which is prefixed a preface, giving a short account of the author.

In this edition there are several questions added which were not in the former; particularly on the ceremonial law, which was the typical gospel of the Jews; and others are altered and corrected in the plainest way I could devise.

The words of the Shorter Catechism, from which the explicatory questions are formed, are put in Italics, as is done in the first part, to distinguish them from quotations out of the Confession and Larger Catechism, whereof there are several in both parts of this treatise; and the Scripture-proofs are now ranged in such an order as the reader may see, at first view, the branch of the answer each of them is designed to confirm.

It has been acknowledged, in all ages, that the catechetical way of instructing is the most speedy and successful method of conveying the knowledge of Divine things; because thereby the truths of God are brought level to the weakest capacity, being separately proposed one after another, with plain and distinct answers to each. If people, then, would be at the pains carefully to peruse, particularly on Sabbath evenings, the helps that have been offered for understanding their Catechism, they should soon have the experience of attaining some tolerable insight into the leading principles of the Christian religion; and by that means hear the word preached with more spiritual benefit to their own souls; and likewise be capable to distinguish truth from error in many of the practical books that are among their hands; for the first principles of the oracles of God ought to be learned in the first place, and when the knowledge of these is once attained, a patent door will be open to farther improvements; whereas, if the foundation is not laid, it is needless to dream of carrying up the fabric. And, indeed, herein lies the fatal mistake of the most part of people, that though they can scarce repeat, far less understand their Catechism, yet they imagine that they may read any other Divine subject that comes into their hands, with advantage; while, on the contrary, the understanding of their Catechism, in the first place, would be the most effectual and successful mean for their profiting by what they might read or hear during the whole remainder of their life.

JAMES FISHER.

GLASGOW, May 3, 1765.

THE

# SHORTER CATECHISM

## EXPLAINED.

---

### PART SECOND.

39. Q. What is the duty which God requireth of man?

A. The duty which God requireth of man is obedience to his revealed will.

Q. 1. Why are the principles of faith in the Shorter Catechism treated of before duties of obedience?

A. To show that man's duty cannot be rightly performed unless it flow from a belief of these principles as the root and spring of it, Heb. xi. 6.

Q. 2. What do you understand by man's *duty*?

A. That which he oweth to God out of love and gratitude, Luke xvii. 10.

Q. 3. What is it that man thus oweth to God?

A. Constant and *universal* obedience, 1 Sam. xv. 22.

Q. 4. From whence doth our obligation of obedience to God arise?

A. From his universal supremacy and sovereign authority over us as rational creatures, Lev. xviii. 5, who depend entirely upon him for our "life and breath, and all things," Acts xvii. 25.

Q. 5. What motive or excitement have Christians above others unto the duties of obedience?

A. They have the revelation of God's free love, mercy, and grace in Christ, bringing salvation unto them, which should teach them to "live soberly, righteously, and godly in this present world," Tit. ii. 11, 12.

Q. 6. What is the only rule and measure of our obedience?

A. The *revealed will* of God, Isa. viii. 20.

Q. 7. Why is our obedience limited to God's revealed will?

A. Because it is necessary that God should signify to us in what instances he will be obeyed, and the manner how our obedience is to be performed; otherwise it would rather be a fulfilling of our own will than his, Micah vi. 8.

Q. 8. Where hath God revealed his will as the rule and measure of our obedience?

A. In the Scriptures of the Old and New Testament, 2 Tim. iii. 16.

Q. 9. What is the difference between God's secret and revealed will?

A. His secret will is reserved to himself as the rule of his own procedure; but his revealed will is made known to us as the rule of our faith and obedience, Deut. xxix. 29. "The secret things belong unto the Lord our God: but those things which are revealed belong unto us and to our children for ever, that we may do all the words of this law."

Q. 10. Is it not agreeable to the revealed will of God that we give obedience to the just commands of our lawful superiors?

A. Yes; for thus we are commanded, 1 Pet. ii. 13. "Submit yourselves to every ordinance of man for the Lord's sake."

Q. 11. What is the difference betwixt the obedience we should yield to God, and that which we should give to our lawful superiors?

A. We should obey God for himself, or out of regard to his own authority, as the very ground and reason of our obedience; but we should obey our superiors only in the Lord, or as their commands are agreeable to his will, Eph. vi. 1. "Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is right."

Q. 12. What is our duty when the commands of superiors lie across to the commands of God?

A. In that case we ought, without the least hesitation, "to obey God rather than men," Acts v. 29; Dan. iii. 18.

Q. 13. Why ought God to be obeyed rather than men when their commands are opposite?

A. Because "God alone is the Lord of the conscience, James iv. 12; and hath left it free from the doctrines and commandments of men, which are in any thing contrary to his word," Acts iv. 19.\*

Q. 14. What is the nature of that obedience which is acceptable to God?

A. It is such as flows from a vital union with Christ and faith in him as the principle of it, John xv. 4, 5; is performed in a due manner, Psal. v. 7; and aims at the glory of God as the highest and ultimate end thereof, 1 Cor. x. 31.

Q. 15. What encouragement doth God give us to essay a universal obedience to his revealed will?

A. That he requires nothing of us in point of duty, but what he promises strength and furniture for the performance of, Ezek. xxxvi. 27. "I will—cause you to walk in my statutes, and ye shall keep my judgments and do them."

40. Q. What did God at first reveal to man for the rule of his obedience?

\* Confession of Faith, chap. xx. § 2.

A. The rule which God at first revealed to man for his obedience was the moral law.

Q. 1. How are the laws of God distinguished?

A. Into natural and positive.

Q. 2. What is the law of God natural, or the law of nature?

A. It is that necessary unalterable rule of right and wrong, founded in the infinitely holy and just nature of God, and whereunto men, as reasonable creatures, cannot but be indispensably bound, Rom. ii. 14, 15.

Q. 3. What do you understand by positive laws?

A. Such institutions as depend only upon the sovereign will and pleasure of God, and which he might not have enjoined, and yet his nature remain the same; such as the command about not eating the forbidden fruit, and all the ceremonial precepts under the old dispensation.

Q. 4. Where were the dictates of the law of nature originally inscribed?

A. A fair copy of them was originally written upon the heart or mind of man at his first creation; because he was made after the image of God, Gen. i. 27.

Q. 5. Whether do these dictates become just and reasonable because they are commanded? or, are they commanded because they are just and reasonable in their own nature before?

A. They are commanded, because they are just and reasonable in their own nature, antecedently to any divine precept about them, being founded in the very holiness and wisdom of God, Psal. cxi. 7, 8.

Q. 6. Did the dictates of the law of nature undergo any change or alteration in the mind of man after the fall?

A. The law of nature being the natural instinct of the reasonable creature, implanted in the soul by God himself, it can never be totally erased or obliterated, as to its common and general principles, and immediate conclusions flowing from them; though, with reference to such native consequences as are more remote, it is mightily corrupted, and even altered and perverted, by the vicious and depraved nature of man, Rom. i. 21, 32.

Q. 7. What are the common and general principles of the law of nature, which are engraven, in some measure, upon the minds of men, even where they have no written law?

A. They are such as these; that God is to be worshipped: parents to be honoured: none are to be injured: that we should not do to others what we would not wish them to do to us; and the like.

Q. 8. How do you prove that these and the like principles

are still ingrained in man's nature even where there is no written law?

A. From Rom. ii. 14. "The Gentiles which have not the law (namely the written law) do by nature the things contained in the law."

Q. 9. How doth it appear from men's own consciences that they have innate principles of right and wrong implanted in their natures?

A. From their consciences excusing or accusing them, as they commit actions manifestly agreeable or disagreeable to these innate or inbred principles, Rom. ii. 15.

Q. 10. What are the horrid though native consequences of denying innate principles of right and wrong?

A. The denying hereof saps the foundation of all religion, natural and revealed; subverts all difference betwixt moral good and evil; and consequently opens a wide door to gross and downright Atheism.

Q. 11. Is there any difference betwixt the law of nature and the moral law?

A. Although the same duties which are contained in the law of nature are prescribed also in the moral law, yet there is this difference, that in the law of nature there is nothing but what is moral; but in the moral law there is something also that is positive, namely, the means of worship, and circumscribing the particular day for the observation of the Sabbath.

Q. 12. What is the meaning of the word *moral*, when applied to the law?

A. Though the word literally has a respect to the manners of men, yet, when applied to the law, it signifies that which is perpetually binding, in opposition to that which is binding only for a time.

Q. 13. Was there any express revelation of the moral law made to Adam in innocency?

A. He needed no express revelation thereof, because it was interwoven with his very nature, in his creation after the image of God, Eccl. vii. 9. "God made man upright."

Q. 14. Why then is it said in the answer, that the moral law was *the rule which God at first revealed to man*?

A. Because it was so distinctly written in his heart, and impressed in his nature, that it was equal to an express revelation?

Q. 15. Is the moral law to be viewed only as the *RULE* of our obedience?

A. It must be viewed also as the *REASON* thereof. We must not only do what is commanded in the law, and avoid what is forbidden therein; but we must also do good, for this very

reason, that God requires it ; and avoid evil, because he forbids it, Lev. xviii. 4, 5 ; “ I am the Lord your God, ye shall THEREFORE keep my statutes and my judgments.”

Q. 16. Are the precepts of the moral law of immutable obligation, so as that in no case they can be dispensed with ?

A. With respect to God, these precepts which do not flow absolutely and immediately from his own nature, may, in certain particular cases, be altered or changed, provided it be done by his express appointment : but with respect to man, all the precepts of the moral law are of immutable obligation, and none of them can be dispensed with by him at any rate, Matth. v. 18.

Q. 17. Did not God dispense with the law against manslaughter, when he commanded Abraham to offer his only son Isaac for a burnt-offering upon one of the mountains in the land of Moriah, which he was to tell him of ? Gen. xxii. 2.

A. Though Abraham, it would seem, looked upon this mysterious command of his sovereign Lord to be peremptory, inasmuch as he immediately took journey with his son, to put the divine orders into execution ; yet in the issue it proved only to be probatory, to discover to Abraham himself the reality of his faith, and the submissiveness of his obedience to God, as flowing therefrom, ver. 12, 16, 17.

Q. 18. Would Abraham have been guilty of murder had he been permitted to sacrifice his son on this occasion ?

A. No ; because he had the warrant of the most unquestionable authority, even the authority of the Lord, the Creator of the ends of the earth, for so doing, ver. 2.

Q. 19. Is the moral law a perfect rule of life and manners ?

A. It is so perfect that nothing can be superadded thereunto, or corrected therein, Psal. xix. 7. “ The law of the Lord is perfect.”

Q. 20. Did Christ supply any defects of the law, or correct any mistakes therein ?

A. No ; he acted the part of an interpreter, and defender of the law, but not of a new lawgiver, as is evident from his explaining the law, and vindicating it, Matth. chapters v. vi. and vii., from the corrupt glosses that were put thereupon.

Q. 21. Did not Christ say, John xiii. 34, “ A new commandment I give unto you, that ye love one another ?”

A. This commandment was not new as to the substance of it, for it is the sum of the second table of the law, Matth. xxii. 39, and therefore called an “ old commandment, which he had from the beginning,” 1 John ii. 7 ; 2 John, ver. 5 ; but it is called NEW, because it was enforced with the new motive and example of Christ’s unparalleled love to us,

imported in the words immediately following, "As I have loved you, that ye also love one another."

Q. 22. Is the moral law abrogated under the New Testament?

A. By no means; for "Christ came not to destroy the law, but to fulfil it," Matth. v. 17.

Q. 23. Can righteousness and life be attained by the moral law since the fall?

A. No; "for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified," Gal. ii. 16.

Q. 24. Of what use then is the law unto men, since righteousness and life cannot be attained by it?

A. It is, notwithstanding, of manifold use, both to unregenerate sinners, and to saints; for the "law is good, if a man use it lawfully," 1 Tim. i. 8; that is, in a suitableness to the state wherein he is as a believer or unbeliever.

Q. 25. Of what use is the law to unbelievers, or to unregenerate sinners?

A. It is of use to discover to them their utter impotence and inability to attain justification and salvation by the works thereof; and thus it is a schoolmaster to bring them to Christ, that they may be justified by faith, Gal. iii. 24.\*

Q. 26. How is the law a schoolmaster to bring sinners to Christ?

A. By requiring spotless holiness of nature; perfect, personal, and perpetual obedience in this life, and full satisfaction for sin; which none of mankind being capable of, they are thereby shut up to see the need they stand in of Christ, who hath done all these things for them. "For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness, to every one that believeth," Rom. x. 4.

Q. 27. Has the law this effect upon all the unregenerate?

A. No; the most part of them remain deaf to the dictates of the law, both as to their sin and danger, and are therefore rendered inexcusable, Rom. i. 20.

Q. 28. Of what use is the law to the regenerate, or to believers?

A. It is of use to excite them to express their gratitude and thankfulness to Christ for his fulfilling it as a covenant, Rom. viii. 3, 4, by their studying conformity thereto, both in their hearts and lives, as the **RULE** of their obedience, Rom. vii. 22, and xii. 2.†

Q. 29. How can the moral law be the rule of obedience to believers, when it is said of them, Rom. vi. 14, that they are not under the law?

A. Though they are not under the law as a covenant of

\* See Larger Catechism, quest. 96.

† Ibid. quest. 97.

works, to be either justified or condemned thereby, yet they are under it as a rule of duty, and account it their happiness and privilege to be so, 1 Cor. ix. 21.

Q. 30. What may we learn from the nature of the moral law in general?

A. That God having so clearly pointed out his own nature, and in a manner expressed his very image therein, Lev. ix. 2, we ought to loath and abhor ourselves, for our want of conformity thereunto, and our transgressing thereof times without number, Psal. xl. 12, and fly to the Lord Jesus, that by his righteousness imputed, the righteousness of the law may be fulfilled in us, Rom. viii. 3, 4.

Q. 31. What other laws did God give the Jews besides the moral law?

A. He gave them also the CEREMONIAL and JUDICIAL laws.

Q. 32. What was the CEREMONIAL law?

A. It was a system of positive precepts, about the external worship of God in the Old Testament church, chiefly designed to typify Christ as then to come, and to lead them to the knowledge of the way of salvation through him, Heb. x. 1.

Q. 33. What were the principal ceremonies about which this law was conversant?

A. They were such as respected sacred persons, places, and things.

Q. 34. Who was the chief sacred person among the Jews?

A. The high-priest, who was ordained for men in things pertaining to God, Heb. v. 1.

Q. 35. In what respect was he a type of Christ?

A. His being consecrated with a plentiful effusion of the holy anointing oil, typified the unmeasurable communication of the Spirit unto Christ, Psal. cxxxiii.; 2 John iii. 34; and his bearing the names of the children of Israel upon his shoulder, and in the breastplate, signified that Christ is the representative of all his spiritual seed, and hath their concerns continually at heart, Isa. xlix. 3, 16.

Q. 36. Were not the other ordinary priests of Aaron's family types of Christ likewise?

A. Yes; for inasmuch as they daily offered up sacrifices according to the law, Heb. x. 11, they were typical of him, who "now once in the end of the world hath appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself," chap. ix. 26.

Q. 37. What were the sacred places under the old dispensation?

A. The tabernacle and temple.

Q. 38. What was the tabernacle?

A. It was a moveable and portable tent, secured from the

injuries of the weather, by several coverings; the whole planned by God himself, and executed by Moses in the wilderness, precisely according to the pattern showed him in the mount, Heb. viii. 5.

Q. 39. How was it enclosed?

A. By a large or spacious court, open above, but hung round with curtains of fine-twined linen, five cubits, or seven feet and a half high, Exod. xxvii. 18.

Q. 40. When and where was the temple built?

A. It was built by Solomon at Jerusalem, in Mount Moriah, four hundred and eighty years after the children of Israel came out of Egypt, and consequently about the same number of years after the tabernacle was set up in the wilderness, 1 Kings vi. 1, compared with 2 Chron. iii. 1.

Q. 41. Was the plan of the temple the contrivance of human skill?

A. No; like the tabernacle, it was devised by God himself; for David gave to Solomon his son the pattern of the whole of it, as he had it by the Spirit, 1. Chron. xxviii. 11, 12. And after enumerating several particular parts of the model, "All this," said David, "the Lord made me understand in writing by his hand upon me, even all the works of this pattern," ver. 19.

Q. 42. What did the tabernacle and temple typify?

A. Amongst other things they both of them typified the human nature of Christ, which was assumed into union with his Divine person, John ii. 19, 21.

Q. 43. How many apartments were there in these sacred places?

A. Besides the large outward court, to which any of all Israel had access, who were not ceremonially unclean, there were, both in the tabernacle and temple, two sacred apartments; the first called the holy, and the second the most holy place, separated by an embroidered vail of cunning work, Exod. xxvi. 31—34.

Q. 44. What did these several apartments signify?

A. The outward court might signify the church visible, consisting in a mixture of saints and sinners; the holy place, the church invisible on earth, made up only of the true members of Christ's mystical body; and the holiest of all represented heaven itself, or the church-triumphant in glory.

Q. 45. What were the sacred things in the outward court, which was before the tabernacle?

A. They were these three; the laver, the sacrifices, and the altar on which they were offered.

Q. 46. What was the laver?

A. It was a brazen vessel for holding water, made of the

looking-glasses, or polished pieces of brass, gifted by the "women who assembled at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation," Exod. xxxviii. 8.

Q. 47. Where was it situated?

A. "Between the tabernacle of the congregation and the altar," Exod. xxx. 18.

Q. 48. Why was it placed there?

A. That Aaron and his sons might wash their hands and their feet thereat when they went into the tabernacle, or when they came near to the altar to minister, under no less penalty than death, ver. 19—21.

Q. 49. Why was this ordinance of the priest's washing at the laver enjoined under such a severe penalty?

A. To point out the absolute necessity of the application of the blood and Spirit of Christ unto the soul, as that without which there can be no escaping of eternal death, 1 John i. 7, compared with Rom. vi. 23.

Q. 50. What was the subject-matter of the sacrifices?

A. Such of the clean beasts and fowls, specified by God himself, as were free of any blemish or imperfection whatsoever, Lev. xxii. 20.

Q. 51. What was signified by the sacrifices being without blemish?

A. The spotless holiness and purity of the human nature of Christ which was sacrificed for us, 1 Pet. i. 19.

Q. 52. What were the instructive ceremonies that were used in expiatory sacrifices or burnt-offerings?

A. The sins of the offerers were to be typically laid upon the head of the sacrifices, Lev. i. 4; next it was to be slain by blood-shedding, ver. 5; and then it was to be consumed wholly, or in part, with fire upon the altar, ver. 9.

Q. 53. What was signified by charging the sins of the offerers upon the head of the sacrifice?

A. That the sins of an elect world were laid on Christ to be expiated by him, Isa. liii. 6.

Q. 54. What was typified by shedding the blood of the sacrifice unto death?

A. That the blood of Christ was to be "shed for many, for the remission of sins," Matth. xxvi. 28.

Q. 55. What was signified by consuming the sacrifice with fire upon the altar?

A. That the whole of that infinite wrath which was due to sinners, and would have been consuming them for ever, was poured out upon the glorious Surety, and endured by him, Isa. liii. 10.

Q. 56. Upon what altar were the sacrifices offered and consumed?

A. Upon the brazen altar, or altar of burnt-offering, which was placed without before the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, Exod. xl. 6, intimating that the sacrifice of Christ was to be perfected on this earth, John xix. 30.

Q. 57. What was typified by this altar ?

A. As the altar sanctifieth the gift, Matth. xxiii. 19, so this altar typified the Divine nature of Christ, as giving infinite worth and value to the sacrifice of the human nature, because of the personal union, Heb. ix. 14.

Q. 58. From whence came the fire originally which was kept burning on the altar of the burnt-offering ?

A. It came originally and immediately from God himself ; for when Moses was dedicating the tabernacle in the wilderness, "there came a fire out from before the Lord, and consumed upon the altar the burnt-offering and the fat," Lev. ix. 24. And afterwards, at the dedication of Solomon's temple, "when he had made an end of praying, the fire came down from heaven, and consumed the burnt-offering and the sacrifices," 2 Chron. vii. 1.

Q. 59. What was signified by this fire coming immediately from before the Lord or from heaven ?

A. It signified God's acceptance of and acquiescence in the obedience unto death of his own eternal Son, typified by all these expiatory sacrifices, Isa. xlii. 21.

Q. 60. Why was the fire never to go out, but to be kept ever burning upon the altar ? Lev. vi. 13.

A. To show that it was not possible that the blood of bulls and of goats should take away sin, Heb. x. 4 ; and therefore to teach the people under that dispensation to look to the atoning blood of the Messiah, as that only which could quench the flame of divine wrath against sin, and be "an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweet-smelling savour," Eph. v. 2, in which he might eternally rest.

Q. 61. What were the sacred things in the holy place called the first tabernacle ? Heb. ix. 2.

A. They were the candlestick, the table with the show-bread, and the altar of incense.

Q. 62. What was typified by the **CANDLESTICK** ?

A. That all true spiritual light is conveyed unto the church only from Christ, John i. 9, 18, and that as the branches were supplied with oil from the body of the candlestick, so all the members are supplied out of the fulness of Christ ; "for God giveth not the Spirit by measure unto him," chap. iii. 34.

Q. 63. What was meant by the **SHOW-BREAD** which was always set forth upon the table ? Exod. xxv. 30.

A. That in Christ, who is the bread of life, there is food continually for starving sinners of mankind, John vi. 35,

and that we can never come wrong at any time to him for supply, "because in him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily," Col. ii. 6.

Q. 64. What was typified by the altar of INCENSE, which was placed immediately before the veil? Exod. xxx. 6.

A. The incense which was continually burnt upon this altar every morning and evening, Exod. xxx. 7, 8 (after the sacrifices were offered without, upon the altar of burnt-offering), typified the prevalent intercession of Christ, founded upon his meritorious oblation, 1 John ii. 1, 2.

Q. 65. What were the sacred and significant things contained in the most holy place, or holiest of all, as it is called? Heb. ix. 3.

A. The apostle to the Hebrews says, that "the tabernacle, which is called the holiest of all, HAD the golden censer, and the ark of the covenant, overlaid round about with gold, wherein was the golden pot that had manna, and Aaron's rod that budded, and the tables of the covenant, and over it the cherubims of glory shadowing the mercy-seat," Heb. ix. 4, 5.

Q. 66. Did the golden censer, like other sacred utensils in the most holy place, remain perpetually therein?

A. No; it remained no longer than the high-priest continued within the veil, sprinkling the blood of the sin-offering "upon the mercy-seat and before it," Lev. xvi. 14; during which time the cloud of incense, kindled with coals of fire from the altar of burnt-offering, covered the mercy-seat, ver. 12, 13; and then, when the high-priest retired from the most holy place, he carried off the golden censer with him to the altar of incense, where it lay till there was next occasion for it.

Q. 67. Why then was the holiest of all said to HAVE the golden censer?

A. Because the principal use of it was to carry in burning incense to the most holy place, along with the blood of the sacrifice, on the great day of atonement, once every year, Lev. xvi. 12, 13.

Q. 68. What was typified by this cloud of incense carried in by the high-priest, to the most holy place, along with the blood of the sacrifice, once a-year?

A. The infallible prevalency of Christ's intercession, because of the infinite merit of his satisfaction, Heb. vii. 25.

Q. 69. What was the most eminent pledge of the Divine Presence in this most holy place?

A. The ark, with the mercy-seat that covered it, Exod. xxv. 21, 22. "Thou shalt put the mercy-seat above upon the ark,—and there will I meet with thee, and I will commune with thee."

Q. 70. What was put within the ark?

A. Nothing but the two tables of stone, on which the Ten Commandments were written with the finger of God at Mount Sinai; 1 Kings viii. 9. "There was nothing in the ark, save the TWO TABLES of stone, which Moses put there at Horeb."

Q. 71. Were not the golden pot that had manna and Aaron's rod that budded put within the ark, as it would seem from Heb. ix. 4?

A. No; it is expressly said, that both these were appointed to be laid up BEFORE the testimony, not IN IT, Exod. xvi. 34, and Numb. xvii. 10.

Q. 72. What did the golden pot that had manna signify?

A. The inexhaustible provision of all the spiritual blessings laid up in Christ for the members of his mystical body, John vi. 54, 55.

Q. 73. What was typified by Aaron's rod that budded?

A. The fixed choice that God had made of Christ unto the office of priesthood, he being called of God thereunto, as was Aaron, Heb. v. 4.

Q. 74. For what end was the ARK of the covenant properly made?

A. It was for holding the two tables of the law, which are called the testimony; Exod. xxv. 16, says God to Moses, "Thou shalt put into the ark the testimony that I shall give thee."

Q. 75. Why were the tables of the law called the two tables of testimony? Exod. xxxi. 18.

A. Because they testified the will of God to mankind, as the unerring rule of duty, Isa. viii. 20.

Q. 76. Why were these tables put into the ark?

A. To signify that the law, which was broken by the first Adam, was put up, as fulfilled in the second, Isa. xliii. 21; "that there might be no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus," Rom. viii. 1.

Q. 77. Why were these tables called the tables of the covenant, and the ark wherein they were contained the ark of the covenant? Heb. ix. 4.

A. Because ten commandments, written on these tables, were the matter of the covenant of works made with Adam, as the head of his posterity, Rom. x. 5, and the fulfilment of them, both in point of doing and suffering, was the condition of the covenant of grace made with Christ, as the representative of his spiritual seed, Matth. iii. 15.

Q. 78. What was the mercy-seat?

A. It was a plate of solid gold, exactly fitted to the breadth and length of the ark, Exod. xxv. ver. 10 and 17, compared so as to be a lid, or covering, to the tables of the covenant, which were within it, ver. 21.

Q. 79. Why was it called the mercy-seat?

A. To intimate, that God is propitious and merciful to sinners only through the meritorious satisfaction of Christ, Rom. v. 21.

Q. 80. What was signified by its being a lid, or covering, to the tables of the covenant?

A. That the broken law was so hid or covered by the glorious Surety, who answered all its demand, Rom. viii. 33, 35, that it could accuse none before God, who had "fled for refuge to lay hold upon the hope set before them," Heb. vi. 18.

Q. 81. What was it that peculiarly belonged to the mercy-seat?

A. The cherubims of glory shadowing it, Heb. ix. 5.

Q. 82. What was represented by these cherubims?

A. They represented the ministry and service of the holy angels to Christ and his Church, Heb. i. 14.

Q. 83. Why called cherubims of glory?

A. Because God manifested his glory from between them, Exod. xxv. 22, and gave gracious answers with respect to his church and people, Numb. vii. 89.

Q. 84. How did they shadow the mercy-seat?

A. By stretching forth and spreading their wings over it, intimating their readiness to fly upon Christ's errand on all occasions, Psal. civ. 4.

Q. 85. In what posture were the faces of these cherubims?

A. They looked one to another, and toward the mercy-seat, Exod. xxv. 20.

Q. 86. What did this posture of their faces signify?

A. Their looking one to another signified their perfect harmony in serving the interests of Christ's kingdom, Ezek. i. 20; and their looking toward the mercy-seat signified their desire to dive, with the most profound veneration and wonder, into the adorable mystery of redeeming love; 1 Pet. i. 12. "Which things the angels desire to look into."

Q. 87. Who was allowed to enter into this most holy place?

A. None but the high-priest alone, without any one to attend or assist him, Lev. xvi. 17. And herein he was an eminent type of Christ, who had the whole work of redemption laid upon his shoulders: "And of the people there was none with him," Isa. lxiii. 3.

Q. 88. When did the high-priest enter into the holiest of all?

A. Only once every year, namely, on the great day of atonement, which was appointed to be a solemn anniversary fast under that ceremonial dispensation, Lev. xvi. 29, 30.

Q. 89. In what manner did the high-priest enter within the veil?

A. He was expressly required to carry along with him the blood of the sacrifice, slain without the tabernacle, at the altar of burnt-offering, and the golden censer full of burning incense; without both which he might by no means enter within the most holy place, Lev. xvi. 12—16.

Q. 90. What was typified by this solemnity?

A. It typified the perpetual efficacy of the blood of Christ in heaven, for all the blessings and benefits for which it was shed on earth, Heb. xii. 24.

Q. 91. Is the ceremonial law, or any part thereof, obligatory now, under the New Testament?

A. Although the Divine truths, couched and signified under the ceremonies of God's own institution be unchangeably the same, yet the observation of the ceremonies themselves is abrogated by the death and satisfaction of Christ, where they had their full accomplishment, John i. 17.

Q. 92. How do you prove that the ceremonial law was abolished by the death and satisfaction of Christ?

A. From the utter destruction for many ages bygone of the temple at Jerusalem, where only it was lawful to offer sacrifices; which adorable Providence would never have permitted, if these ceremonial institutions had been to subsist after the death of Christ, of whom it was foretold that he should cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, Dan. ix. 27. See also Jer. iii. 16. "In those days, saith the Lord, they shall say no more, The ark of the covenant of the Lord; neither shall it come to mind, neither shall they remember it, neither shall they visit it, neither shall that be done any more."

Q. 93. What may we learn from the whole of this typical dispensation?

A. That as the ceremonial law was a shadow of good things to come, Heb. x. 1, so it is a perpetual evidence of the faithfulness and power of God in the full accomplishment of all the blessings that were prefigured thereby, John i. 17.

Q. 94. What was the JUDICIAL law?

A. It was that body of laws given by God for the government of the Jews, partly founded in the law of nature, and partly respecting them as they were a nation distinct from all others.

Q. 95. What were these laws which respected them as a people distinct from all others?

A. They were such as concerned the redemption of their mortgaged estates, Lev. xxv. 13; the resting of their land every seventh year, Exod. xxiii. 11; the appointing cities of refuge for the manslayer, Numb. xxxv. 15; the appearing of their males before the Lord at Jerusalem three times in the year, Deut. xvi. 16, and the like.

Q. 96. Whether is this law abrogated, or is it still of binding force?

A. In so far as it respects the peculiar constitution of the Jewish nation it is entirely abrogated; but in so far as it contains any statute founded on the law of nature, common to all nations, it is still of binding force.

41. Q. Where is the moral law summarily comprehended?

A. The moral law is summarily comprehended in the Ten Commandments.

Q. 1. What is it to be *summarily comprehended*?

A. It is to be briefly summed up in such few and well-chosen words as take in a great deal more than what is expressed, Rom. iii. 9.

Q. 2. Where is the moral law thus briefly summed up?

A. In the *Ten Commandments*, Deut. x. 4.

Q. 3. Where is the law more largely and fully set forth?

A. In the whole Scriptures of the Old and New Testament, Psal. cxix. 105.

Q. 4. By whom were the Ten Commandments first pronounced and promulgated?

A. By God himself; Exod. xx. 1. "God spake all these words."

Q. 5. Whether was it God essentially considered, or God considered as in the person of the Son, who spake these words?

A. It was the three-one God considered as in the person of the Son who was the speaker of them, as is evident from Acts vii. 37, 38; where the Prophet whom the Lord was to raise up unto the Jews, of their brethren, like unto Moses, is expressly called "the Angel which spake to him in Mount Sinai." See also Heb. xii. 25, 26.

Q. 6. What was the peculiar work of God about these words, after he had spoken them with an audible voice, in the hearing of all Israel?

A. He wrote, or engraved them with his own finger on two tables of stone, Deut. ix. 10.

Q. 7. Were each of these tables written on both sides?

A. It is said expressly that they were, Exod. xxxii. 15. "The tables were written on **BOTH** their sides; on the one side, and on the other were they written."

Q. 8. What did this signify?

A. The tables being full of writ on both sides, signified that nothing was to be added to the words of the law, or taken away from them, Deut. iv. 2; and likewise that the whole man, soul, spirit, and body, must be sanctified wholly, 1 Thess. v. 23.

Q. 9. How oft were the Commandments written on tables of stone?

A. The first being broke by Moses on occasion of the idolatry of Israel, Exod. xxxii. 19, the Lord condescended to write on other two tables the very same words that were in the former ones, chap. xxxiv. 1.

Q. 10. Was there any difference betwixt the first two tables and the second?

A. The first two, which were entirely the work of God (the polishing as well as the engraving), were broke beneath the mount, Exod. xxxi. 16, 19; but the second, which were hewed by Moses, the typical mediator, were put into the ark, Deut. x. 3, 5.

Q. 11. What was the spiritual mystery which was represented thereby?

A. That though the covenant of works, made with the first Adam, was broken and violated by him, yet it was fulfilled in every respect by Christ the true Mediator, who "restored that which he took not away," Psal. lxxix. 4.

Q. 12. Why were the Ten Commandments written on tables of stone?

A. To imitate the perpetuity and everlasting obligation of the moral law, Psal. cxi. 8.

Q. 13. What was signified by their being written with the finger of God?

A. That it is the work of God alone to put his laws into the mind of sinners, and to "write them in their hearts," Heb. viii. 10.

Q. 14. Where was the law of the Ten Commandments thus expressly revealed?

A. At Mount Sinai, which is also called Horeb, Deut. v. 2.

Q. 15. In what form was the law of the Ten Commandments given out at Mount Sinai?

A. In the form of a COVENANT, Deut. v. 2. "The Lord our God made a covenant with us in Horeb." Accordingly the Ten Commandments are called the words of the covenant, Exod. xxxiv. 28; and the tables of stone are termed the tables of the covenant, Deut. ix. 9.

Q. 16. Whether was the Sinai transaction in the form of the covenant of works, or in the form of the covenant of grace?

A. There was a repetition of BOTH those covenants on that solemn occasion.

Q. 17. In what order were these two covenants repeated on Mount Sinai?

A. The covenant of grace was first promulgated, and then the covenant of works was displayed, as subservient thereunto.

Q. 18. How doth it appear that the covenant of GRACE was first promulgated?

A. From these words in the preface, prefixed to the Commands, I am the Lord thy God, spoken to a select people, the natural seed of Abraham, as typical of his whole spiritual seed, Gal. iii. 16, 17.

Q. 19. How are the Ten Commandments to be viewed as they stand annexed to this promulgation of the covenant of grace on Mount Sinai?

A. They are to be viewed as the law of Christ, or as a rule of life, given by Christ the Mediator unto his spiritual seed, in virtue of his having engaged to fulfil the law as a covenant in their room, Rom. vii. 4.

Q. 20. How doth it appear that the covenant of WORKS was likewise displayed on Mount Sinai?

A. From the thunderings and lightnings, and the voice of the living God speaking (the words of the Ten Commandments) out of the midst of the fire, Exod. xx. 18; Deut. v. 22, 26.

Q. 21. What was signified by the thunderings and lightnings, and the voice of God speaking out of the midst of the fire?

A. These awful emblems represented that infinite avenging wrath, which was due to all Adam's family, for the breach of the covenant of works, whereby the whole of God's holy law was violated and infringed, Gal. iii. 10.

Q. 22. Why did God make a display of the covenant of works in such an awful and tremendous manner?

A. That sinners of mankind might be deterred from the remotest thought of attempting obedience to the law as a condition of life; and be persuaded to fly to and acquiesce in the undertaking of Christ, who engaged his heart to approach unto God, as surety in the room of an elect world, Jer. xxx. 21.

Q. 23. If both covenants of grace and works were exhibited on Mount Sinai, were not the Israelites, in that case, under both these covenants at one and the same time?

A. They could not be under both covenants in the same respects at the same time; and therefore they must be considered, either as believers or unbelievers, both as to their outward church-state and inward soul-frame.

Q. 24. In what respects were the believing Israelites, in the Sinaitic transaction, under both covenants?

A. They were internally and really under the covenant of grace, as all believers are, Rom. vi. 14; and only externally under the above awful display of the covenant of works, as it was subordinate and subservient to that of grace, in pointing out the necessity of the surety-righteousness, Gal. iii. 24.

Q. 25. In what respects were unbelievers among them under these two covenants of works and grace?

A. They were only externally, and by profession, in respect of their visible church-state, under the covenant of grace, Rom. ix. 4; but internally and really, in respect of the state of their souls before the Lord, they were under the covenant of works, chap. iv. 14, 15.

Q. 26. Which of the two covenants was the principal part of the Sinai transaction?

A. The covenant of grace was, both in itself and in God's intention, the principal part thereof; nevertheless the covenant of works was the most conspicuous part of it, and lay most obvious to the view of the people; for they SAW "the thunderings and the lightnings, and the noise of the trumpet, and the mountain smoking," Exod. xx. 18. "And so terrible was the sight, that Moses said, I exceedingly fear and quake," Heb. xii. 21.

Q. 27. What effect had this tremendous display of the covenant of works upon the Israelites?

A. Intended to beat them off, in some measure, from that self-confidence which they had expressed before the publication of the law, Exod. xix. 8; and to discover the necessity of a Mediator, and of faith in him, as the sole foundation of all acceptable obedience, Rom. xvi. 25, 26.

Q. 28. How doth it appear that it had this effect?

A. From their own words to Moses, after the terrible sight which they saw, Deut. v. 27. "Speak thou unto us all that the Lord our God shall speak unto thee, and we will HEAR, *that is, believe,* and DO." On which account the Lord commends them, ver. 28. "They have well said all that they have spoken: O that there were such an heart in them!"

Q. 29. In what respect had they said well in what they had spoken?

A. Inasmuch as they had made faith, or believing, the source and spring of acceptable doing, for whatsoever is not of faith is sin, Rom. xiv. 23.

Q. 30. How many commandments are commonly allotted to each of the two tables of the law?

A. Four to the first table, containing our duty to God; six to the second, containing our duty to man.

Q. 31. How are the precepts which are naturally moral distinguished from those which are positively so?

A. The precepts which are naturally moral have in them an innate rectitude and holiness, which is inseparable from them: but the precepts which are positively moral have their rectitude, not from their own nature, but from the positive command of God.

Q. 32. What example may be given for the illustration hereof?

A. The Fourth Commandment, as it appoints God to be worshipped, is naturally moral, founded in the very nature of God; but, as it enjoins that he be worshipped on such a particular day of the week, it is positively moral, founded only in the will of God.

Q. 33. What is the difference betwixt the commands that are expressed in affirmative and those that are expressed in negative terms?

A. "What God forbids is at no time to be done, Rom. iii. 8; what he commands is always our duty, Deut. iv. 8, 9; and yet every particular duty is not to be done at all times," Matth. xii. 7.\*

Q. 34. Why are negative precepts binding at all times?

A. Because what is forbidden is at all times sinful; and never to be done on any pretext whatsoever, Gen. xxxix. 9.

Q. 35. What are the peculiar properties of the law of the Ten Commandments?

A. That it is perfect, Psal. xix. 7; spiritual, Rom. vii. 14; and exceeding broad, or most extensive, Psal. cxix. 96.

Q. 36. What rule is to be observed for the right understanding of the perfection of the law?

A. "That it binds every one to full conformity in the whole man unto the righteousness thereof, and to entire obedience for ever; so as to require the utmost perfection in every duty, and to forbid the least degree of every sin, Matth. v. 21, to the end;" James ii. 10.†

Q. 37. What rule is to be observed for understanding the spirituality of the law?

A. That it reacheth to the thoughts and motions of the heart, as well as to the words and actions of the life, Deut. vi. 5.‡

Q. 38. What rule is to be observed for the right understanding of the breadth or extent of the law?

A. That as where a duty is commanded, the contrary sin is forbidden, Isa. lvii. 13, and where a sin is forbidden, the contrary duty is commanded, Eph. iv. 28; so when any duty is commanded, all the causes and means of it are commanded also, Heb. x. 24, 25; and when any sin is forbidden, all occasions and temptations thereunto are forbidden likewise, Gal. v. 26.§

42. Q. What is the sum of the Ten Commandments?

A. The sum of the Ten Commandments is, To love the Lord our God with all our heart, with all our soul,

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 99, rule 5. † Ibid. rule 1. ‡ Ibid. rule 2.  
§ Ibid. quest. 99, rules 4, 6.

and with all our strength, and with all our mind, and our neighbour as ourselves.

Q. 1. How is the sum of the Ten Commandments divided in this answer ?

A. Into the sum of the Four Commandments in the first table, which contain our duty to God ; and into the sum of the Six Commandments in the second table, which contain our duty to man.

Q. 2. What is the sum of the Four Commandments in the first table, which contain our duty to God ?

A. It is *to love the Lord our God with all our heart, with all our soul, with all our strength, and with all our mind,* Luke x. 27.

Q. 3. Why is this called the First and Great Commandment ? Matth. xxii. 38.

A. Because the duties of the first table have a more direct relation to God, as being the immediate object of them ; or because love to our neighbour should flow from love to God, as the proper fountain and principle of it, 1 John v. 1.

Q. 4. What is meant by the *sum* of the Commandments ?

A. The comprehensive duty of the law, which includes all other duties in the bosom of it, Rom. xiii. 9.

Q. 5. What is the comprehensive duty of the law ?

A. It is LOVE ; for " love is the fulfilling of the law," Rom. xiii. 10.

Q. 6. What is the nature of that love which is the comprehensive duty of the law ?

A. It is such as flows from faith, as the source and fountain of it ; for faith worketh by love, Gal. v. 6.

Q. 7. What ought to be the supreme object of our love ?

A. *The Lord* our JEHOVAH himself, as he is our God, Deut. xxx. 6.

Q. 8. How many ways may the Lord be said to be *our God* ?

A. Two ways ; either by external revelation and offer, or by special property and possession.

Q. 9. To whom doth he make the external revelation and offer of himself as their God ?

A. To all such of mankind without exception as have the word of this salvation sent unto them, Prov. viii. 4 ; Heb. viii. 10.

Q. 10. When is he our God by special property and possession ?

A. When by faith we are united to Christ, 1 Cor. iii. 23 ; in whom mercy and truth are met together, righteousness and peace have kissed each other, Psal. lxxxv. 10.

Q. 11. What is it to love the Lord our God *with all our heart* ?

A. It is to love him unfeignedly, without hypocrisy or dissimulation, Rom. xii. 9.

Q. 12. What is it to love him *with all our soul and mind*?

A. It is to have an intelligent, cordial, and affectionate love to God, expressed in all the duties wherein any power or faculty of the soul can be exercised, Isa. xxvi. 8, 9.

Q. 13. What is it to love the Lord our God *with all our strength*?

A. It is to love nothing so much as God, Matth. x. 37, and nothing but in subordination to him, Luke xiv. 26.

Q. 14. How may we know if we have such a supreme love to the Lord our God?

A. If we love him purely for himself and his own matchless excellency, as shining in the face of Jesus, Song i. 3; if we account all things but loss in comparison of him, Phil. iii. 8; and if we centre in him as the only resting-place of our souls for ever, Psal. lxxiii. 25, 26.

Q. 15. What is the sum of the Six Commandments in the second table which contain our duty to man?

A. It is to love *our neighbour as ourselves*, Matth. xxii. 39. "The second is like unto it, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself."

Q. 16. Why is the sum of the second table said to be like unto the sum of the first?

A. Because the duties of the second table are said to be enjoined by the same authority with those of the first, James ii. 10.

Q. 17. In which of the two tables is the lawful love of ourselves contained, seeing it is not expressly mentioned in either of them?

A. It is fairly implied and supposed in both tables, particularly in the second, where love to ourselves is made the example and pattern, according to which we should love others, Luke x. 27. "Thou shalt love—thy neighbour as thyself."

Q. 18. What is lawful self-love?

A. It is an aiming at our own happiness, in subordination to the glory of God, which ought to be our chief and ultimate end, 1 Cor. x. 31.

Q. 19. Whom are we to understand by *our neighbour*?

A. All of mankind unto whom we have any way access to be useful, either as to their temporal or spiritual good, Luke x. 36, 37.

Q. 20. What is it to love our neighbour *as ourselves*?

A. It is to love him as truly and sincerely as we do ourselves, Eph. v. 29. "No man ever hated his own flesh, but nourisheth and cherisheth it."

Q. 21. Should our love to our neighbour be as great as it is to ourselves?

A. It is not required that it be as great in degree, but only that it be as sincere and free of hypocrisy as it is to ourselves, Rom. xii. 9.

Q. 22. What is the rule according to which our love to our neighbour should be regulated?

A. That we do to others what we would have them do to us, Matth. vii. 12.

Q. 23. How is this rule to be explained for preventing the abuse of it?

A. That we do as we would be done to, from a well-informed judgment; and by such as place themselves in the same relations and in the same circumstances with us.

Q. 24. Why are we enjoined to esteem others better than ourselves? Phil. ii. 3.

A. Because the more of the grace of God we have in our hearts we will the more clearly see that we ourselves are the chief of sinners, 1 Tim. i. 14, 15, and have the seed of all sin in us, which would soon spring up into the worst of actions if not restrained, Rom. vii. 23.

Q. 25. What is the difference betwixt the love we should have to all in general, and the love we should have to the saints in particular?

A. We should love all men in general, with a love of benevolence, and likewise of beneficence, according to our ability, Gal. vi. 10; but we should love the saints with a love of complacency and delight, Psal. xvi. 3.

Q. 26. How ought our love to extend itself to our enemies?

A. By forgiving them, and praying for them, Matth. v. 44; Acts vii. 60.

Q. 27. What may we learn from the sum of the Commandments?

A. That charity or love, which is the end of the commandment, ought to flow from "a pure heart, and a good conscience, and faith unfeigned," 1 Tim. i. 5.

43. Q. What is the preface to the Ten Commandments?

A. The preface to the Ten Commandments is in these words, I am the Lord thy God, which have brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

44. Q. What doth the preface to the Ten Commandments teach us?

A. The preface to the Ten Commandments teacheth us, That because God is the Lord and our God, and Re-

deemer, therefore we are bound to keep all his commandments.

Q. 1. What is a *preface* ?

A. It is something spoken before, or a preparatory introduction to a following discourse.

Q. 2. Whether are these words, *I am the Lord thy God*, &c., to be understood as a preface to all the commandments, or to the first only ?

A. They are to be understood as a preface to them all, though they stand immediately connected with the first, as being the ground of the particular applicatory faith in a redeeming God, which is therein enjoined.

Q. 3. Why are the above words prefixed as a preface to all the Commandments ?

A. Because they are designed as so many reasons and arguments to enforce our obedience unto them.

Q. 4. Why did God give reasons to enforce obedience to his commands when his will is the supreme law ?

A. To manifest his amazing condescension in dealing with us in a suitableness to our natures as rational creatures, Hos. xi. 4.

Q. 5. How many reasons or arguments are there in this preface, where God enforces obedience to his law ?

A. Three ; the first is, because he is **THE LORD**, or **JEHOVAH** ; the second, because he is **OUR GOD** ; and the third, because he is **OUR REDEEMER**.

Q. 6. Which of these three is the formal reason of obedience ?

A. The first, namely, God's essential greatness, as he is **JEHOVAH**, " the Most High over all the earth," Psal. lxxxiii. 18 ; though, at the same time, his relative goodness as our God, and the deliverance he hath accomplished as our Redeemer, are invincible arguments and motives thereunto, Lev. xix. 36, 37.

Q. 7. What is the strength of the first argument for obedience, taken from God's being *The Lord* ?

A. The strength of it lies in this, that because God is **JEHOVAH**, " the eternal, immutable, and almighty God, having his being in and of himself, and giving being to all his words and works,"\* therefore all obedience and subjection is due to him, Lev. xx. 8.

Q. 8. Wherein lies the strength of the second argument for obedience to God's law, taken from his being *our God* ?

A. It lies in this, That because he makes himself over to sinners of mankind by a new-covenant grant in the word of Divine revelation, therefore this ought to sweeten all his commands, and powerfully excite us to the obedience of them, Lev. xx. 7.

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 101.

Q. 9. What doth God make over to us in the word, when he makes a grant of himself therein to be our God ?

A. He makes over to us whatever he is, Hos. xiii. 4, and whatever he hath, Psal. lxxxiv. 11, as God, to be ours freely and eternally.

Q. 10. What doth he make over to us when he makes a grant of what HE IS ?

A. He makes over to us both what he is essentially and what he is personally.

Q. 11. What doth he make over to us when he makes a grant of what he is essentially ?

A. All his glorious attributes and excellencies to be ours, Exod. xxxiv. 6 ; his infinity, to be the extent of our inheritance, Rev. xxi. 7 ; his eternity, to be the date of our happiness, John xiv. 19 ; his unchangeableness, to be the rock of our rest, Mal. iii. 6 ; his wisdom, to direct us, Psal. lxxiii. 24 ; his power, to protect us, 2 Chron. xvi. 9 ; his holiness, to sanctify us, Ezek. xvi. 14 ; his justice, to absolve us, Rom. iii. 26 ; his goodness, to reward us in the way of grace, not of debt, 1 John ii. 25 ; and his truth, to secure us in the accomplishment of all his promises, Heb. x. 23.

Q. 12. What doth he make over to us when he makes a grant of what he is personally ?

A. He makes over himself, in the person of the Father, to be our God and Father in Christ, 1 Pet. i. 3 ; in the person of the Son to be our Redeemer and Saviour, Isa. xlviii. 17 ; and in the person of the Holy Ghost, to be our Sanctifier and Comforter, John xiv. 16.

Q. 13. What is it that he makes over to us when he makes a grant of whatever HE HATH ?

A. As he hath all the good things we can possibly need in time, or through eternity, so he makes them all freely over to us in the promise, " All things are yours," 1 Cor. iii. 21 ; for instance, he hath life, for the quickening of us who are dead in trespasses and sins, Eph. ii. 1 ; righteousness, for the justifying us who are guilty, Isa. xlv. 25 ; and redemption, for delivering us who are lawful captives, chap. xlix. 24, 25. In a word, " Eye hath not seen nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him," 1 Cor. ii. 9.

Q. 14. Is this grant that God makes of himself to us in the Word to be our God, no more than a mere argument or motive to enforce our obedience ?

A. It also strengthens us and enables us thereunto, Ezek. xxxvi. 27, 28.

Q. 15. How doth the revelation of God's being our God strengthen and enable us to obedience?

A. Inasmuch as, by the revelation hereof, the Holy Ghost is conveyed, as the immediate efficient of holiness, Gal. iii. 2; and faith is wrought in the soul as the spring and fountain thereof, chap. v. 6.

Q. 16. Why doth God front his law with this grant of himself as the Lord our God?

A. Because it is comprehensive of all the promises of the covenant, and of the blessings that are wrapt up in them, and therefore the best encouragement to the obedience of faith; for, because he is our God, he will give us "one heart, and one way; he will not turn away from us to do us good, but will put his fear in our hearts, that we shall not depart from him," Jer. xxxii. 38—40.

Q. 17. Why doth God make this declaration of his grace in the present time, *I am*, and not in the future, *I WILL* be thy God?

A. To show that God's covenant of promise is always a solid ground and foundation for the present actings of faith in every case and circumstance wherein we can be situated, James ii. 23.

Q. 18. Why doth God, in this grant, address the sinner in the singular number, *I am thy* God?

A. Because he wants that every individual sinner, to whom the revelation of his grace doth come, should believe it, with a particular applicatory faith, Zech. xiii. 9. "I will say, It is my people; and they shall say, The Lord is *my* God."

Q. 19. How may we know, if ever we have by faith received the offer and grant that God makes of himself in the word?

A. By our love and esteem of him, Exod. xv. 2; by our reposing entire trust and confidence in him, Psal. xviii. 2; by our likeness and conformity to him, 1 John iii. 3; and by our longing after the full fruition and enjoyment of him, Psal. lxxiii. 25.

Q. 20. What is the **THIRD ARGUMENT** in the preface for enforcing our obedience?

A. It is in these words:—*Which have brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.*

Q. 21. How are these words explained in our Catechism?

A. Of our spiritual redemption by Jesus Christ; for *the preface to the Ten Commandments teacheth us, That because God is the Lord, and our God and REDEEMER, therefore we are bound to keep all his commandments.*

Q. 22. Wherein lies the strength of this argument for enforcing our obedience to the commands of God?

A. It lies in this, That as he brought Israel of old out of their bondage in Egypt, so he delivereth us out of our spiritual thralldom ; and therefore we should “ serve him without fear, in holiness and righteousness before him, all the days of our life,” Luke i. 74, 75.

Q. 23. In what respects did the deliverance of Israel out of Egypt resemble our spiritual redemption by Christ ?

A. The Israelites were made to serve the Egyptians with rigour, Exod. i. 14 ; so sinners by nature are under the most cruel bondage and servitude to sin and Satan, 2 Pet. ii. 19 ; the Israelites were not able of themselves to shake off the Egyptian yoke, Exod. ii. 23 ; no more are sinners of mankind capable to extricate themselves from a state of spiritual slavery in which they are naturally enthralled, Rom. v. 6 ; the Israelites were brought out of Egypt “ with a strong hand and a stretched-out arm,” Psal. cxxxvi. 12 ; so are we out of our spiritual thralldom, by the mighty power of God allenary, Psal. cx. 2, 3 ; the Egyptians were destroyed when Israel was delivered, Exod. xiv. 28 ; so principalities and powers were spoiled, Col. ii. 15 ; transgression finished, Dan. ix. 24 ; and death unstinged, 1 Cor. xv. 55 ; when our redemption was accomplished, ver. 57.

Q. 24. Seeing the deliverance of Israel, which was typical of our spiritual deliverance, was brought about by Divine power without the payment of a price, will it follow that our spiritual redemption was without a price also ?

A. By no means, unless the similitude betwixt the type and the antetype did hold in every respect, which it cannot possibly do : for though there be a resemblance betwixt them in some things, yet there is always a disparity in others, as might be made evident in every one of the Scripture types and metaphors whereunto Divine things are compared ; for instance, Jonah was alive in the whale’s belly, whereas Christ was actually dead in the grave.

Q. 25. Since God brought all the Israelites, without exception, out of Egypt, doth it from thence follow, that Christ redeemed all mankind from their spiritual bondage ?

A. No ; because the Israelites did not typify and represent all mankind, but the elect only, Psal. cxxxv. 4.

Q. 26. How do you prove that the elect only, and not all mankind, were redeemed by Christ ?

A. From the Father’s gift of them to him from eternity, John xvii. 6 ; from his representing them in his death, John x. 11 ; and from his intercession within the vail for them only, John xvii. 9. “ I pray for them : I pray not for the world, but for them which thou hast given me.”

Q. 27. Are the purchase and intercession of Christ precisely of the same extent ?

A. Surely they are ; for his intercession being founded on his purchase, and consisting in a presenting the merit thereof before the throne, Heb. ix. 24, it clearly follows, that the one be no more extensive than the other, xvii. 24. " Father, I will that they also whom thou hast given me be with me where I am."

Q. 28. How then are these Scriptures to be explained, which seem to speak of a universal purchase of all mankind ; such as, that Christ died for all, 2 Cor. v. 15 ; that he tasted death for every man, Heb. ii. 9 ; that he is the propitiation for the sins of the world, 1 John ii. 2, and the like ?

A. They are to be explained in a limited sense, of some only, and not of every individual of mankind ; as the like general terms are undoubtedly to be understood in other places of Scripture ; such as Col. i. 6, and Rev. xiii. 3 ; for if it is alleged that the above Scripture-expressions prove a universal purchase, it may be said, with the same parity of reason, that they prove a universal application thereof, which few will assert.

Q. 29. Doth not the universal offer of Christ prove the universal redemption of all, at least, within the visible church ?

A. No ; it only proves the unquestionable duty of all to believe upon the call and command of God, 1 John iii. 23, and the infinite intrinsic worth of the satisfaction of Christ for the salvation of all, if it had been so designed, chap. iv. 14.

Q. 30. Doth the redemption purchased by Christ bring any benefit or advantage to the reprobate world ?

A. It is owing thereunto that the gospel is sent among them, John iv. 4 ; that temporal judgments are shortened, Mark xiii. 20 ; and it is on account of the elect who are to spring of them that they are preserved for a while in this world, Rom. xi. 30 ; but then these or the like benefits are not to be considered as the fruit of Christ's purchase to the reprobate themselves, but to the elect only, who are living among them, 2 Cor. iv. 15 ; or who are to descend from them, Isa. vi. 13.

Q. 31. Wherein consists the spiritual bondage we are naturally under, and redeemed from by Christ ?

A. It consists on our being under the wrath of God, John iii. 18 ; the guilt, power, and pollution of sin, Rom. viii. 7 ; the tyranny of Satan, Eph. ii. 2 ; the snares and temptations of the world, 1 John ii. 16 ; and in our liableness to the pains of hell for ever, Matth. xxv. 46.

Q. 32. What right had Christ to be our Redeemer from this state of spiritual bondage ?

A. He had a right of property, and a right of propinquity.

Q. 33. How had he a right of property ?

A. As he is God, he is the original owner, Rom. ix. 21 ; and as he is Mediator, he has the elect gifted unto him by his Father, John xvii. 6.

Q. 34. How hath he a right of propinquity ?

A. He hath it by the legal union which subsisted betwixt him and us from eternity, in virtue of his being made a surety of a better testament, Heb. vii. 22 ; and by the assumption of our nature in time, whereby he became our kinsman, and "is not ashamed to call us brethren," Heb. ii. 11, 12.

Q. 35. What doth God's delivering Israel out of the land of Egypt teach us with respect to his church and people in general ?

A. It teacheth us, that as affliction is the lot of the Lord's people in this present evil world, so deliverance therefrom is secured in due time ; Psalm xxxiv. 19, "Many are the afflictions of the righteous, but the Lord delivereth him out of them all."

Q. 36. What is the difference betwixt the afflictions of the godly and those of the wicked ?

A. The afflictions of the godly are the chastisements of a gracious Father, flowing from love, and designed for their profit, Heb. xii. 6, 10 ; but the afflictions of the wicked are punishments of an avenging judge, flowing from wrath, and designed for their ruin and destruction, Eccles. v. 17.

Q. 37. What improvement ought we to make of our spiritual redemption ?

A. It should excite us to "stand fast in the liberty wherewith Christ hath made us free, and not be entangled again with the yoke of bondage," Gal. v. 1 ; to ascribe all the praise of our spiritual liberty to our glorious Deliverer, Rev. i. 5, 6 ; and to testify our gratitude and thankfulness to him, by a conversation becoming the gospel, Phil. i. 27.

45. Q. Which is the first Commandment ?

A. The first Commandment is, Thou shalt have no other gods before me.

46. Q. What is required in the first Commandment ?

A. The first Commandment requireth us to know and acknowledge God to be the only true God, and our God, and to worship and glorify him accordingly.

Q. 1. Why are most parts of the commands of the law delivered in negative terms ?

A. Because negative precepts are of the strictest obligation, binding always, and at all times.

Q. 2. Why is the First Commandment, in particular, so expressed?

A. Because of the perpetual propensity of our natures, since the fall, to depart from the living God through "an evil heart of unbelief," Heb. iii. 12.

Q. 3. Why is this Commandment set in the front of all the rest?

A. To teach us, that the having *JEHOVAH* to be our God is the leading and fundamental duty of the law, *Exod.* xv. 2; which sweetly and powerfully influences obedience to all the other commands of it, *Psal.* cxviii. 28.

Q. 4. What influences has obedience to the first, upon obedience to the other precepts of the law?

A. As obedience to the First Commandment is to believe that God is our God, upon the gift of himself to us, in these words, *I am the Lord thy God*; so, without believing this, it is impossible we can do any thing else that will please him, *Heb.* xi. 6; for "whatsoever is not of faith is sin," *Rom.* xiv. 23.

Q. 5. Why do this, and other commands, run in the second person singular, *ΤΗΟΥ*, and not in the plural, *ΥΟΥ* or *ΥΕ*?

A. To signify that God would have us to take his commandments as spoken to each of us in particular as if we were mentioned by name.

Q. 6. What is the connexion betwixt the preface and the First Commandment?

A. The preface reveals and exhibits the object of faith, and the First Commandment enjoins the duty of believing on that object; the one makes a grant of grace, and the other warrants us to lay hold on it.

Q. 7. Are the preface and First Commandment of equal extent?

A. Yes; every one to whom the promise in the preface is revealed is obliged by the command to believe it with application, *John* iii. 18.

Q. 8. Can the obligation of the law be in the least weakened by the grace of the gospel, published in the preface?

A. So far from it, that it is impossible for any man to share of the grace of the gospel, published in the preface, but in a way of believing enjoined in the First Commandment of the law, *Rom.* iii. 31. "Do we make void the law through faith? God forbid."

Q. 9. What are the chief duties required in the First Commandment as thus connected with the preface?

A. *To know and acknowledge God to be the only true God, and our God, and to worship and glorify him accordingly.*

Q. 10. What KNOWLEDGE of God doth the First Commandment require?

A. It requires us to know that God is, and that he is such a God as he hath manifested himself to be in his word, Heb. xi. 6.

Q. 11. What hath God manifested himself to be in his word?

A. He hath manifested himself to be "the Lord, the Lord God merciful and gracious, long-suffering, and abundant in goodness and truth, keeping mercy for thousands, forgiving iniquity, transgression, and sin, and that he will by no means clear the guilty," namely, without a satisfaction, Exod. xxxiv. 6, 7; or, he hath manifested himself to be "in Christ, reconciling the world to himself," 2 Cor. v. 19.

Q. 12. What is it to *know* God as he is in Christ?

A. It is to know that he is well pleased for Christ's righteousness' sake, because he has magnified the law, and made it honourable, Isa. xliii. 21.

Q. 13. How is the knowledge of God usually distinguished?

A. Into speculative or common, and practical or saving knowledge.

Q. 14. What is the speculative or common knowledge of God?

A. It is only a floating knowledge of him in the head, without any saving influence or efficacy upon the heart and practice, as is to be found in ungodly persons or hypocrites, who may "profess that they know God, but in works they deny him," Tit. i. 16.

Q. 15. What is it to have a saving and practical knowledge of him?

A. It is to have such a lively apprehension of his relation to us as our God in Christ as is accompanied with an habitual conformity to his will, in heart and life, 1 John ii. 3, 4.

Q. 16. What are the evidences of true saving knowledge?

A. If it is an experimental, Col. i. 6, interesting, Psal. xli. 11, sanctifying, 2 Pet. i. 8, an humbling knowledge, Job xl. 4, 5.

Q. 17. What is it to *acknowledge* God?

A. It is to own, avouch, and confess him both in secret and before the world, Rom. x. 10. "With the mouth confession is made unto salvation."

Q. 18. Why are the knowing and acknowledging of God joined together?

A. Because wherever the saving knowledge of God is implanted in the heart, there will be always some evidences thereof, either to ourselves or others, discovered in the life, Dan. xi. 32. "The people that do know their God shall be strong and do exploits."

Q. 19. What should we know and acknowledge God to be?

A. We should know and acknowledge him to be *the only true God and our God*.

Q. 20. What is it to know and acknowledge God to be *the only true God*?

A. It is to believe and profess, that he alone, and none else, is possessed of all infinite perfection; and that the perfections of the Divine nature are most eminently displayed and manifested in the person of Christ, our only Saviour and Redeemer, Hos. xiii. 4. "Thou shalt know no God but me; for there is no Saviour besides me."

Q. 21. What is it to know and acknowledge God to be *our God*?

A. It is to profess our relation to him as his people, upon the faith of the grant that he makes of himself to us as ours, in the word, Deut. xxvi. 17, 18; Psal. xlvi. 14.

Q. 22. Can we know and acknowledge God to be our God (as required in this commandment) unless we believe in Christ?

A. No; for "no man cometh unto the Father but by me," says Christ. "He that hath seen me hath seen the Father," John xiv. 6, 9.

Q. 23. Is not faith or believing in Christ a gospel-precept only, and not required in the law?

A. By no means; for in the gospel strictly and properly taken, as it is contradistinct from the law, there can be no precept; because the gospel, in this strict sense, is nothing else than a PROMISE, or glad tidings of a Saviour, with grace, mercy, and salvation in him, for lost sinners of Adam's family, according to the following scriptures: Gen. iii. 15; Isa. lxi. 1—3; Luke ii. 10, 11.

Q. 24. Since faith and repentance are duties consequential to the entrance of sin and the revelation of the gospel, must they not therefore be new precepts, not given to Adam in innocence?

A. Though there was no occasion for the exercise of these duties in an innocent state, yet Adam being bound by the law of creation (particularly the Ten Commandments, given him in the form of a covenant of works), to believe whatever God should reveal, and obey whatever he should command; no sooner was the gospel-revelation made, than the same very law, which bound him while in innocence to believe in God-creator, obliged him, when fallen, to believe in God-redeemer, now revealed and made known to him; and likewise to turn from sin to God, Rom. iii. 31.

Q. 25. Whence is it that the obligation of the law is so extensive as to bind to the belief of whatever God shall reveal?

A. This arises from the absolute perfection of the law, which, being a complete rule of all obedience, cannot but

fasten the duty the same moment that the object is revealed, Psal. cxix. 96. "Thy commandment is exceeding broad."

Q. 26. What is the absurdity of making faith and repentance new gospel-precepts?

A. The absurdity is, that hereby another righteousness is introduced in our own persons, than the righteousness of Christ, as the immediate ground of our pardon and acceptance before God.

Q. 27. How doth this absurdity necessarily follow from the foresaid doctrine?

A. If Christ, as our Surety, has fulfilled the precept, and endured the penalty of the moral law, according to Gal. iv. 4, 5, then it cannot but follow that this law of faith and repentance, not being fulfilled by him, must be fulfilled by ourselves in our own persons, as our righteousness before God; and thus another ground of justification is established, besides the surety-righteousness, contrary to Gal. ii. 16, and iii. 21.

Q. 28. What is the doctrine of our Larger Catechism on this head?

A. That "believing and trusting" in God (which is the same with faith), "being careful in all things to please him, and sorrowful when in any thing he is offended" (which is the same with repentance), are among "the duties required in the First Commandment," and that "unbelief,—distrust,—incorrigibleness," and "hardness of heart," or impenitency (according to Rom. ii. 5, there quoted), are among the "sins forbidden" therein.\*

Q. 29. What doth God require of us in this Commandment as the evidence of our knowing and acknowledging him to be the only true God and our God?

A. That we *worship and glorify him accordingly*, Matth. iv. 10. "Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve."

Q. 30. What is it to *worship* God?

A. It is to make him the supreme object of our esteem, Psal. lxxi. 19, desire, Psal. lxxiii. 25, and delight, Psal. cxlii. 5; and that, not only in our secret devotions, but likewise when joining with others in any religious exercise, Psal. cxi. 1.

Q. 31. What is it to *glorify* him?

A. It is to ascribe all possible glory and perfection to him, Exod. xv. 11, and in all our actions to aim at the advancement of his honour and glory in the world, 1 Cor. x. 31.

Q. 32. What is imported in our being required to worship and glorify him *accordingly*?

A. It imports, that since God commands us to know and acknowledge him, not only to be the true God, but our own God, in virtue of the covenant-grant he makes of himself in

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 104, 105.

the word, it becomes us, in all our actions, religious and civil, to behave towards him as standing in such a near and intimate relation unto us, Psal. xlv. 11 ; 1 Cor. vi. 20.

Q. 33. Can we glorify God aright unless we acknowledge him to be our God in Christ?

A. No ; for unless we acknowledge a God in Christ, as our God, we make him a liar, in saying, I am the Lord thy God, and rebel against his authority in the First Commandment, which is, "Thou shalt have no other gods before me."

Q. 34. Is believing the promise then the foundation of all acceptable worship and obedience?

A. Yes ; for all true obedience is "the obedience of faith," Rom. vi. 26 ; and "without faith it is impossible to please God," Heb. xi. 6.

Q. 35. In what manner are we required to worship and glorify God?

A. Both inwardly in our hearts, John iv. 24, and outwardly in our lives, Matth. v. 16.

Q. 36. How are we to worship God inwardly in our hearts?

A. By a trusting, Isa. xxvi. 4, hoping, Psal. cxxx. 5, and delighting in him, Psal. xxxvii. 4 ; by thinking and meditating upon him, Mal. iii. 16 ; Psal. lxiii. ; devoting ourselves to him, Isa. xlv. 5 ; and by being filled with grief when he is offended by ourselves or others, Psal. xxxviii. 18, and cxix. 136.

Q. 37. How are we to worship and glorify him outwardly in our lives?

A. By praying to him, and praising him with our lips, Psal. cxlii. 1, and cxlv. 21 ; by being zealous for his glory, Psal. lxix. 9 ; careful to please, Col. i. 10 ; and by walking humbly before him, Mic. vi. 8.

Q. 38. What improvement ought we to make of the covenant-grant in the preface, *I am the Lord thy God* ; and the precept enjoining the belief thereof, *Thou shalt have no other gods before me*?

A. That it is the duty of every one of us, without waiting till we find gracious qualifications wrought in us, instantly to lay a claim to God in Christ as our God, Psal. xcv. 7 ; this being what he requires in the first place as the foundation of all other acts of obedience, 2 Chron. xx. 20.

Q. 39. If it is an external federal relation to the visible church which God asserts in the preface, when he says, *I am the Lord thy God*, how can the First Commandment warrant the faith of a special relation?

A. As the Command always warrants a particular application of every general promise, so the external federal relation which God bears to the visible church becomes a spe-

cial one the moment that the promise is believed with a particular applicatory faith, Jer. iii. 22.

47. Q. What is forbidden in the First Commandment?

A. The First Commandment forbiddeth the denying or not worshipping and glorifying the true God as God and our God, and the giving of that worship and glory to any other which is due to him alone.

Q. 1. To what general heads may the sins forbidden in this Commandment be reduced?

A. To these two, Atheism and idolatry.

Q. 2. What is ATHEISM?

A. It is the *denying* or not having a God.

Q. 3. How is Atheism commonly distinguished?

A. Into speculative and practical.

Q. 4. How is speculative Atheism again subdivided?

A. Into that which is directly and into that which is interpretatively such.

Q. 5. What is direct speculative Atheism?

A. It is a fixed persuasion in the heart and an open profession with the mouth that there is no God.

Q. 6. What is speculative Atheism interpretatively or by necessary consequence?

A. It is the rejecting of any of those truths which are necessarily connected with the being of a God, such as the denying of providence, or any of the essential perfections of God; because from thence it would necessarily follow that there is no God.

Q. 7. Why would it necessarily follow, from the denying of providence, or any of the divine perfections, that there is no God?

A. Because as it is impossible to conceive that there is a God without conceiving at the same time that he preserves and governs the world, Isa. lxi. 23; so it is impossible to conceive his being or existence without conceiving him to be possessed of all infinite perfection, 1 John i. 5.

Q. 8. Can there be such a person among men as a direct speculative Atheist?

A. No; there can be none of mankind who have at all times such a fixed and constant persuasion that there is no God, as at no time whatsoever to have the least fear or doubt of the contrary, Dan. v. 6, 9.

Q. 9. How doth it appear that there can be no such person as a downright speculative Atheist?

A. From universal experience, which attests, that the knowledge and impression of the being of a God is so natural to man

that he can no more divest himself thereof at all times, than he can strip himself of his reason, or shake off his own existence, Rom. i. 19. "That which may be known of God is manifest in them; for God hath showed it unto them;" *i. e.* ingrained it in their natures.

Q. 10. Would it not seem that there may be a downright speculative Atheist from Psal. xiv. 1. "The fool hath said in his heart, There is no God?"

A. The words do not import a fixed and permanent persuasion, but rather a secret wish: accordingly the expression is not, the fool hath believed, or is persuaded in his heart, but hath SAID, that is, would fain have harboured such a secret desire.

Q. 11. Why would wicked men wish there was no God?

A. To be free of any check or restraint upon their lusts, but that they may "work all uncleanness with greediness," Eph. iv. 19.

Q. 12. Who are they that are interpretatively Atheists?

A. Not only they who deny the providence of God, or any essential attribute of his nature, but likewise all Deists who reject supernatural revelation; and all openly wicked and profane persons, who live as if there were no God, Psal. x. 4, 11, 13.

Q. 13. Whether is it speculative or practical Atheism that is chiefly levelled against in this Commandment?

A. Both, but especially practical Atheism, as being universally prevalent, Rom. iii. 11.

Q. 14. What is practical Atheism?

A. It is a denying of God in our practice, Tit. i. 16. "They profess that they know God, but in works they deny him."

Q. 15. How doth practical Atheism evidence itself?

A. In omitting the duties required in this Commandment; namely, not knowing and acknowledging God to be what he really is; and neglecting to worship and glorify him accordingly.

Q. 16. Who are guilty of not knowing God?

A. Not only the heathens, who walk contrary to nature's light, Rom. i. 21, but likewise Christians, who, being privileged with the means of knowing God, as in Christ, do yet slight and neglect the same, John xv. 22. "If I had not come and spoken unto them, they had not had sin; but now they have no cloak for their sin."

Q. 17. Who are they that are guilty of not acknowledging God?

A. They who rush upon the actions of life without asking his counsel about them, Josh. ix. 14. "The men took of their victuals, and asked not counsel at the mouth of the Lord."

Q. 18. Who are guilty of *not worshipping* God?

A. They who live in the habitual neglect of the public, private, and secret exercises of his worship, Isa. xliii. 22. "Thou hast not called upon me, O Jacob! Thou hast been weary of me, O Israel!"

Q. 19. Who are guilty of *not glorifying* him?

A. They who set up themselves as their own rule, Psal. xii. 4, and make themselves their own end and happiness in opposition to God, Phil. ii. 21.

Q. 20. When are men chargeable with this piece of practical Atheism, namely, of setting up themselves as their own rule?

A. When they perform any action, religious or civil, more because it is agreeable to self, than as it is pleasing to God, Zech. vii. 5, 6; when they envy the gifts and prosperity of others, Psal. lxxiii. 3; and when they would model or frame God himself according to their own fancy, imagining him to be "altogether such a one as themselves," Psal. l. 21.

Q. 21. When do men make themselves their own end and happiness in opposition to God?

A. When they ascribe the glory of what they have or do to themselves, and not unto God, Dan. iv. 30; when they are more troubled for what disgraces themselves than what dishonours God, 1 Sam. xv. 30; and when they prefer the pleasures and profits of this world to the glorifying and enjoying of God, Matth. xix. 22.

Q. 22. When may we be said to worship the true God, and yet not *as God*?

A. When we draw nigh unto him with the mouth, and honour him with the lips, but our hearts are far from him, Matth. xv. 8.

Q. 23. When are we guilty of *not worshipping and glorifying* him as *our God*?

A. When, in the course or tenor of our behaviour and deportment towards him, we want the habitual exercise of the faith of our federal relation unto him, Psal. lxxxi. 10, 11.

Q. 24. May not the saints themselves be chargeable with some degree of practical Atheism?

A. No doubt they may, when they entertain unbecoming thoughts of God in their mind, or speak unadvisedly to him with their lips. Thus Job is censured by Elihu for charging God with injustice, chap. xxxiii. 10, 11, and Jonah speaks most rashly to God, when he says, "I do well to be angry, even unto death," chap. iv. 9.

Q. 25. How may a person know when blasphemous thoughts and atheistical expressions are not inconsistent with a state of grace?

A. When a blasphemous thought is so far from being indulged, that it is treated with abhorrence, and when an atheistical expression (uttered through surprise, and the hurry and violence of temptation) is deeply regretted and lamented, Psal. lxxiii. 21, 22.

Q. 26. What is the other general and comprehensive sin forbidden in this Commandment?

A. IDOLATRY.

Q. 27. What is idolatry?

A. It is *the giving that worship and glory to any other which is due to God alone.*

Q. 28. How is idolatry commonly distinguished?

A. Into that which is gross and external, and that which is more refined and internal.

Q. 29. What is the idolatry which is gross and external?

A. It is an ascribing the ordinary signs of worship, or religious homage, to any person or things besides the true God, Lev. xxvi. 1.

Q. 30. Who are they that are guilty of this grosser kind of idolatry?

A. HEATHENS and PAPISTS.

Q. 31. What was the nature of the idolatry of the Heathens?

A. They made gods of the sun, moon, and stars, and almost of every other creature; yea, of devils themselves, as the apostle witnesseth, 1 Cor. x. 20; but that which was most frequent among them was their making images or idols in the shape of some sort of living creatures, or of a mixture of them, and then worshipping them as if they were gods, Psal. cxxxv. 15—19.

Q. 32. How did Heathenish idolatry take its rise in the world?

A. By men becoming vain in their imaginations, whereby they “changed the glory of the incorruptible God into an image made like to corruptible man, and to birds and four-footed beasts and creeping things,” Rom. i. 21, 23.

Q. 33. How doth it appear that the Papists are guilty of this grosser kind of idolatry?

A. By their bowing to images and altars; giving divine honour to the consecrated bread in the sacrament; adoring the crucifix; praying to angels; and invoking the saints, especially the Virgin Mary, whom they supplicate much more frequently than they do Christ himself. By all which it appears that Popish idolatry succeeds in the room of the Heathenish; and is more inexcusable than it, because the Papists have the benefit of Divine revelation, which the Heathens have not.

Q. 34. How do you prove that the paying religious homage to such things by the Church of Rome is gross idolatry?

A. From the nature of idolatry itself; the very essence whereof consists in giving Divine worship and honour to any creature whatsoever, whether in heaven or earth; for "it is written, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve," Matth. iv. 10.

Q. 35. What is the idolatry which is more refined and internal?

A. It is a setting up of idols in the heart, Ezek. xv. 4, or a giving that room in our esteem and affection to any thing else which God alone ought to possess, Luke xiv. 26.

Q. 36. To whom is this kind of idolatry incident?

A. To all mankind naturally; and even believers themselves are cautioned and warned against it, 1 John v. 21. "Little children, keep yourselves from idols."

Q. 37. What are these idols which have a seat in every man and woman's heart by nature?

A. Among many others there are these two, which are worshipped and served by the generality, even of the visible church, namely, **SELF** and the **WORLD**.

Q. 38. How doth it appear that **SELF** is an idol which naturally reigns in the heart of every one?

A. From the very first lesson in the school of Christianity, which is to be denied to self, Matth. xvi. 24. "Then said Jesus unto his disciples, If any man will come after me, let him deny himself."

Q. 39. What is it for a man to deny himself?

A. It is to give up with his self-wisdom, his self-will, and his self-righteousness.

Q. 40. When do we give up with the idol of self-wisdom?

A. When we are made to see our own depraved reason to be but folly when compared with the wisdom of God revealed in his word; "for the wisdom of this world is foolishness with God," 1 Cor. iii. 19.

Q. 41. When is the idol of self-will dethroned?

A. When God's will or precept becomes the sole rule of our heart and life, Psal. cxix. 105; and his will of providence is cheerfully acquiesced in, as the best for us, Rom. viii. 28.

Q. 42. When do we part with the idol of self-righteousness?

A. When we submit to the righteousness of God; or found our plea for eternal life wholly and entirely upon the meritorious obedience and satisfaction of Christ, as our Surety, in our room and stead, Phil. iii. 8, 9.

Q. 43. How doth it appear that the **WORLD** is an idol seated in every man's heart by nature?

A. From the habitual turn of our thoughts and affections to things temporal, Matth. vi. 31; the eager pursuit of them,

and ardent desire after them, in preference to those that are spiritual and eternal, chap. xvi. 26.

Q. 44. What are the things of this world which we naturally incline to idolize?

A. Some make an idol of their worldly riches, making gold their hope, and saying to fine gold, "Thou art my confidence," Job. xxvi. 24; some of their worldly pleasures, "being lovers of pleasure more than lovers of God," 2 Tim. iii. 4; some make an idol of their worldly credit and reputation, receiving honour one of another, and not seeking "the honour that cometh from God only," John v. 44; some of their worldly relations, bestowing more of their love upon them than upon God, Matth. x. 37; and some make an idol of their worldly helps and confidences, trusting more to these than to God, Isa. xxxi. 1; Jer. xvii. 5.

Q. 45. What is the verdict of the Spirit of God concerning those who make the world their idol?

A. It is this, "that if any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him," 1 John ii. 15.

Q. 46. How may Satan be said to be even idolized by those who profess to bear him an implacable hatred?

A. When his suggestions are regarded more than the dictates of the Spirit of God in his word, Isa. xl. 27, and xlix. 14.

Q. 47. How may the suggestions of Satan be distinguished from the dictates of the Spirit of God?

A. The tendency of all Satan's suggestions is to set up in the soul some one thing or other in Christ's room, 2 Cor. iv. 4; but the dictates of the Spirit of God are wholly calculated for giving Christ in all things the pre-eminence, John xvi. 14.

Q. 48. Why is Satan called the god of this world, 2 Cor. iv. 4?

A. Because he is "the spirit that worketh in the children of disobedience," Eph. ii. 2; till "the prey be taken from the mighty, and the lawful captive delivered," Isa. xlix. 24, 25.

Q. 49. Who are they that explicitly acknowledge the devil as their god?

A. They are such as use sorcery, divination, witchcraft, charming, and other diabolical arts and practices, condemned in Deut. xviii. 10—12.

Q. 50. Was Joseph's cup an instrument of divination, or did he himself use this unlawful art when he says, Gen. xliv. 15, "Wot ye not that such a man as I can certainly divine?"

A. By no means; for the word translated DIVINE is, on the margin, rendered make trial, or inquiry, and so the meaning is, Know ye not that such a man as I, who am so diligent and industrious in other matters, would soon miss the cup

wherein I usually drink, and make inquiry after the person who had stolen it?

Q. 51. What improvement ought we to make of the First Commandment as it stands connected with the preface?

A. That as God warrants and commands us to believe in him as our God and Redeemer, Psal. xlv. 11; so it is our duty to carry along with us the faith of this relation in all our approaches unto his presence, Heb. xi. 6.

48. Q. What are we specially taught by these words *before me* in the First Commandment?

A. These words *before me* in the First Commandment teach us, That God, who seeth all things, taketh notice of, and is much displeased with the sin of having any other god.

Q. 1. What is the strength of the argument couched in these words *before me*?

A. That the sin of having any other god is committed in the presence of him "who seeth all things," Heb. iv. 13.

Q. 2. What is it for God to see all things?

A. It is to have a most intimate, perfect, and comprehensive knowledge of them, Psal. cxlvii. 5. "His understanding is infinite."

Q. 3. Wherein consists the infinity of God's knowledge?

A. Not so much in the perfect and comprehensive knowledge of the creatures, which are finite, as in the perfect and comprehensive knowledge of himself and his own excellencies and perfections, which are infinite, 1 Cor. ii. 11.

Q. 4. How is it that God seeth or knoweth all things?

A. He sees all things at once in his own essence, distinctly, infallibly, and immutably, 1 John i. 5.

Q. 5. How do you prove that God hath such a comprehensive sight and knowledge of all things?

A. Because otherwise he could not be the Creator, Governor, and Judge of the world, 1 Cor. iv. 5.

Q. 6. In what light doth God see or know evil actions?

A. As they are opposite to his nature, Jer. xlv. 4, and contrary to his law, 1 John iii. 4, which is the sole and unerring standard of all rectitude, Rom. vii. 12.

Q. 7. What is that sin which strikes more immediately and directly against the authority of God in this Commandment?

A. It is *the sin of having any other god*.

Q. 8. What is it to have another god?

A. It is to have our minds, wills, and affections carried out

after other objects as much or more than after God himself, Isa. xlvi. 9, compared with Ezek. xiv. 4.

Q. 9. What *notice* doth God take of this sin?

A. He threatens to resent it with the highest marks of displeasure, and that even in this life, as well as in the world to come, Deut. xxix. 24—29.

Q. 10. Why is God so *much displeased* with the sin of having any other God?

A. Because it sets up a rival or competitor in his room, and that in his very sight and presence, Jer. xxxii. 30.

Q. 11. What influence ought the presence of an all-seeing God to have upon us in all our actions?

A. The consideration thereof ought to quicken and animate us to every duty, Gen. v. 22, 24; and scare and deter us from every sin, as being an affronting of him to his face, who is our witness, and ere long will be our judge, Gen. xxxix. 9.

49. Q. Which is the Second Commandment?

A. The Second Commandment is, Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth. Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me, and showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.

50. Q. What is required in the Second Commandment?

A. The Second Commandment requireth the receiving, observing, and keeping pure and entire all such religious worship and ordinances as God hath appointed in his word.

Q. 1. What is the opinion of the Papists about this Commandment?

A. They allege that it is not a distinct precept from the first, but only an appendix or supplement thereto, by way of illustration.

Q. 2. What is their practice in consequence of this opinion?

A. They constantly leave it out in their mass-books and other liturgies of their church, lest the people should observe the manifest contrariety of their image-worship to what is here so expressly forbidden.

Q. 3. Wherein then doth the Second Commandment differ from the First?

A. The First Commandment respects the OBJECT, and requires that we worship the true God for our God, and no other; the Second respects the MEANS of worship, and requires that the true God be worshipped in such a way only, and by such ordinances as he hath appointed in his word, in opposition to all human inventions.

Q. 4. What is meant by *religious worship*?

A. That homage and respect we owe to a gracious God, as a God of infinite perfection, whereby we profess subjection to and confidence in him, as our God in Christ, for the supply of all our wants, and ascribe the praise and glory that is due to him as our chief good and only happiness, Psal. xcv. 6, 7.

Q. 5. What are those religious *ordinances* which God hath appointed in his word?

A. They are "prayer and thanksgiving in the name of Christ; the reading, preaching, and hearing of the word; the administration and receiving of the sacraments; church-government and discipline; the ministry and maintenance thereof; religious fasting; swearing by the name of God, and vowing to him."\*

Q. 6. Is prayer a moral duty founded on the law of nature?

A. Surely it is; the necessary dependence of the rational creature upon its Creator plainly proves it to be so. Hence we find the very Heathens practising it when reduced to straits, Jonah i. 14.

Q. 7. How doth it appear to be an instituted means of worship?

A. From a variety of Scripture-texts enjoining the practice of it in all cases and circumstances, Psal. l. 15; Phil. iv. 6; 1 Thess. v. 17.

Q. 8. What is acceptable in prayer?

A. It is an asking in Christ's name what God has promised to give, John xiv. 13, with a full persuasion that he doth hear and will answer, Mark xi. 24; James i. 6.

Q. 9. How manifold is religious thanksgiving?

A. TWOFOLD, stated and occasional.

Q. 10. What is stated thanksgiving?

A. It is not only the thankful acknowledgment of mercies daily received, which is a branch of prayer, but likewise the singing the praises of God with the voice, which is a stated act of worship, distinct from prayer, though ejaculatory prayer ought always to be joined with it, Psal. lvii. 7.

Q. 11. How do you prove that singing with the voice is a stated act of worship appointed under the New Testament?

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 108.

A. From the example of Christ and his apostles, who, after the first supper, sang a hymn (or psalm, as on the margin), Matth. xxvi. 30; and from the injunction laid upon all Christians to be employed in this exercise as a stated duty, Eph. v. 18, 19; James v. 13.

Q. 12. What should be the subject-matter of our praises to God?

A. The psalms, hymns, and spiritual songs, which are dictated by the Spirit of God in Scripture, and not any human composure whatsoever, Eph. v. 19.

Q. 13. In what manner should these be sung?

A. "With grace in our hearts to the Lord," Col. iii. 16.

Q. 14. What is it to sing with grace in our hearts to the Lord?

A. It is to have our hearts going along with our voice in suitable acts of faith and elevated affections, Psal. lvii. 7.

Q. 15. Are not the Psalms of David, as we sing them in our language, of human composure?

A. The translation in metre is human, but the sense and meaning is the same with the original.

Q. 16. What is occasional thanksgiving?

A. It is the setting some time apart for giving thanks to God for some remarkable mercy and deliverance respecting either churches and nations in general, Neh. xii. 27, or ourselves and families in particular, Eph. v. 20.

Q. 17. How ought this duty to be gone about?

A. With an humble sense of our utter unworthiness of the least of all God's favours, 2 Sam. vii. 18.

Q. 18. Are reading, hearing, and preaching of the word acts of worship?

A. Although they are not acts of such immediate worship as prayer and praise, wherein God is immediately addressed, yet, being the instituted and ordinary means of salvation, they ought to be practised and attended with that reverence and regard which is due to the great God our Saviour, who is present in them, Matth. xxviii. 20; Acts x. 33.

Q. 19. How are the administration and receiving of the sacraments acts of worship?

A. As therein, by the sensible signs of Divine appointment, Christ and his benefits are represented, sealed, and applied to believers, Gal. iii. 26; 1 Cor. xi. 26.

Q. 20. In what sense are church-government and discipline to be ranked among the ordinances of Divine worship?

A. In as far as they are exercised in the name of the Lord Jesus, the alone head of his church, according to the rule of his word by church-judicatories lawfully constituted, Matth. xviii. 20.

Q. 21. Why is the ministry and maintenance thereof placed among religious ordinances?

A. Because a standing ministry in the church till the end of time is of express Divine institution, Eph. iv. 11—13, so the suitable and comfortable maintenance thereof is as expressly appointed, not only in the Old Testament, Numb. xviii. 21, 24, but likewise in the New, 1 Cor. ix. 13, 14. "Do ye not know that they which minister about holy things live of the things of the temple, and they which wait at the altar are partakers with the altar? Even so hath the Lord ordained, that they which preach the gospel should live of the gospel."

Q. 22. What is religious fasting?

A. "A religious fast requires total abstinence, not only from all food (unless bodily weakness do manifestly disable from holding out till the fast be ended), but also from all worldly labour, discourses, and thoughts, and from all bodily delights,"\* Josh. vii. 6; Judg. xx. 26.

Q. 23. Whether is bodily fasting or bare abstinence from food any part of religious worship?

A. Not properly in itself; but as it is a mean of Divine appointment for fitting and disposing us for more spiritual and solemn exercises.

Q. 24. How doth fasting appear to be a mean of Divine appointment?

A. From the practice of the saints under the Old Testament, Esth. iv. 16; Dan. x. 2, 3; from the testimony of Christ, Matth. vi. 17, 18, and xvii. 21; and the example of his apostles under the New, Acts xiii. 3, and xiv. 23.

Q. 25. What are those spiritual and solemn exercises which fasting is designed to dispose us for?

A. Deep humiliation of soul before the Lord on account of sin, Ezra ix. 6; free confession thereof, Dan. ix. 20; and turning therefrom, Joel ii. 12; as the genuine fruits of our taking hold of God's covenant, Jer. l. 4, 5; together with an importunate requesting of our gracious God for that which is the particular occasion of the fast, Psal. xxxv. 13.

Q. 26. Whether is religious fasting an occasional or a stated duty?

A. It is merely occasional and extraordinary, to be gone about only as the call of providence may require and direct.

Q. 27. What are the occurrences in providence which are a call to this extraordinary duty?

A. "When some great and notable judgments are either

\* Directory for the Public Worship of God, in the article concerning Public Solemn Fasting.

inflicted upon a people," Dan. ix. 3, 12—14, "or apparently imminent," 2 Chron. xx. 2, 3, 4; "or by some extraordinary provocations notoriously deserved," 1 Sam. vii. 3, 6; "as also when some special blessing is to be sought and obtained,"\* ver. 5, 8, 10.

Q. 28. Is swearing by the name of God an act of immediate and instituted worship?

A. Undoubtedly it is; and that either when we devote ourselves to God in a covenant of duties, Deut. vi. 13, or declare the truth upon oath when called thereto; because in both cases the name of God is solemnly interposed and invoked, Jer. iv. 2.

Q. 29. To whom are vows to be made?

A. To God alone, as the only party and witness in the making and performing of them, Psal. lxxvi. 11. "Vow and pay unto the LORD your God."

Q. 30. What should be the subject-matter of our vows unto God?

A. Nothing but what may tend either to promote the practice of commanded duty, Psal. cxix. 57, or prevent the commission of any sin to which we are more than ordinarily inclined and addicted, ver. 106.

Q. 31. What doth this Commandment require with respect to all these ordinances and parts of worship which God has appointed in his word?

A. The receiving and observing them, and keeping them pure and entire.

Q. 32. What is it to *receive* God's ordinances?

A. It is to approve of and embrace them, as bearing the stamp of his authority upon them, Psal. lxxxiv. 1, 2.

Q. 33. What is it to *observe* them?

A. It is to set about the practice of them or to be actually employed in them, Psal. lv. 17, and cxix. 164; Luke ii. 37.

Q. 34. What is it to keep the ordinances of God *pure*?

A. It is to contribute our utmost endeavour to preserve them from all mixture of human invention, Deut. xii. 32.

Q. 35. What is it to keep them *entire*?

A. It is, in the exercise of faith, to attend upon each of them in their proper season, so as that one duty may not justle out another, Luke i. 6.

Q. 36. What doth God require of us in this command with reference to all false worship?

A. He requires "the disapproving, detesting, opposing all false worship, Psal. xvi. 4; and according to each one's place

\* Directory for the Public Worship of God, in the article concerning Public Solemn Fasting.

calling, removing it, and all monuments of idolatry," Deut. vii. 5.\*

51. Q. What is forbidden in the Second Commandment?

A. The Second Commandment forbiddeth the worshipping of God by images, or any other way not appointed in his word.

Q. 1. What are the leading sins forbidden in this Commandment?

A. Idolatry and will-worship.

Q. 2. What is the idolatry here condemned?

A. *The worshipping of God by images*, Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, &c.

Q. 3. What is an image?

A. It is a statue, picture, or likeness of any creature whatsoever.

Q. 4. Is it lawful to have images or pictures of mere creatures?

A. Yes; providing they be only for ornament; or the design be merely historical, to transmit the memory of persons and their actions to posterity.

Q. 5. Can any image or representation be made of God?

A. No; it is absolutely impossible, he being an infinite, incomprehensible Spirit, Isa. xl. 18, "To whom will ye liken God? or what likeness will ye compare unto him? If we cannot delineate our own souls, much less the infinite God," Acts xvii. 29. "We ought not to think that the Godhead is like unto gold, or silver, or stone, graven by art and man's device."

Q. 6. What judgment should we form of those who have devised images of God, or of the persons of the adorable Trinity?

A. We should adjudge their practice to be both unlawful and abominable.

Q. 7. Why unlawful?

A. Because directly contrary to the express letter of the law in this Commandment, and many other scriptures, such as Jer. x. 14, 15; Hos. xiii. 2; and particularly Deut. iv. 15—19, and 23. "Take ye, therefore, good heed unto yourselves (for ye saw NO MANNER of similitude on the day that the Lord spake unto you in Horeb out of the midst of the fire), lest ye corrupt yourselves, and make you a graven image, the similitude of any figure, the likeness of male or female," &c.

Q. 8. How is it abominable?

A. As it is a debasing the Creator of heaven and earth to

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 108.

the rank of his own creatures, and a practical denying of all his infinite perfections, Psal. l. 21.

Q. 9. May we not have a picture of Christ who has a true body?

A. By no means; because, though he has a true body and a reasonable soul, John i. 14, yet his human nature subsists in his Divine person, which no picture can represent, Psal. xlv. 2.

Q. 10. Why then ought all pictures of Christ to be abominated by Christians?

A. Because they are downright lies, representing no more than the picture of a mere man; whereas the "true Christ is God-man; Immanuel, God with us," 1 Tim. iii. 46; Matth. i. 23.

Q. 11. Is it lawful to form any inward representation of God, or of Christ, upon our fancy, bearing a resemblance to any creature whatsoever?

A. By no means, because this is the very inlet unto gross outward idolatry; for, when once the Heathen "became vain in their imaginations, they presently changed the glory of the uncorruptible God into an image made like corruptible man, and to birds, and four-footed beasts, and creeping things," Rom. i. 21, 23.

Q. 12. What is it to worship God by images, according to the idolatrous practice of the Papists?

A. It is either to make use of images as pretended helps to devotion, or to worship God before the images of saints as intercessors with him.

Q. 13. Can any feigned image of God or of Christ be helpful in devotion?

A. No; it is the Spirit only who helpeth our infirmities in all acts of spiritual devotion, Rom. viii. 26. And that faith which is necessary for acceptance in duty fixes upon the word of the living God as its sole foundation, and not upon dead images, Luke xvi. 31.

Q. 14. Will it excuse the Papists from the charge of idolatry, that they pretend to worship the true God before images, or by them, as means of worship, and not the very images themselves?

A. Not at all; because this is a mean of worship expressly forbidden in this Commandment, which prohibits all bowing down before images upon whatever pretext it be. "Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them."

Q. 15. Do they worship images who bow down before them, even though it be the true God they intend to worship by them?

A. In Scripture reckoning they do, Isa. ii. 8, 9. "Their land is full of idols: they worship the work of their own

hands. The mean man boweth down, and the great man humbleth himself."

Q. 16. Was it the ultimate intention of the Israelites in the wilderness to pay Divine worship to the golden calf itself, or to JEHOVAH, by it and before it?

A. It was undoubtedly their ultimate intention to worship JEHOVAH, the true God, before that image; as appears from Exod. xxxiii. 5. "When Aaron saw it, he built an altar BEFORE IT, and said, To-morrow is a feast to the Lord" (or JEHOVAH, as it is in the original). And yet because they did this so directly contrary to the very letter of this Commandment, they are charged with worshipping the image itself, ver. 8. "They have made them a golden calf, and have worshipped IT," &c.

Q. 17. Do not they who honour the picture of a prince honour the prince himself?

A. If the prince forbid the making of this picture, it is a contempt of this authority to have it. God has strictly prohibited all images on religious accounts, and therefore it is impious to have or use them for these ends, Lev. xxvi. 1, 30.

Q. 18. May images be worshipped at all upon their own account?

A. No; because they are the work of man's hands, far inferior in dignity to man himself, Isa. xlv. 9—18.

Q. 19. May they be worshipped on account of their ORIGINALS, or those whom they are designed to represent?

A. No; whether they be designed to represent God or the saints.

Q. 20. Why may they not be worshipped, as they are designed to represent God?

A. Because he never put his name in them, but declares his greatest hatred and detestation of them, Jer. xlv. 2—9.

Q. 21. Why may they not be worshipped, as they are designed to represent eminent saints?

A. Because saints, however eminent, are but mere creatures, and therefore cannot be the objects of worship, either in themselves, or by their images, Acts xiv. 14, 15.

Q. 22. Can saints in heaven be intercessors for sinners on earth?

A. No; because intercession being founded on satisfaction, none but CHRIST can be the intercessor, in regard none but he is the propitiation for our sins, 1 John ii. 1, 2.

Q. 23. Is it lawful to have images or pictures in churches, though not for worship, yet for instruction and raising the affections, as the Lutherans plead?

A. No; because God has expressly prohibited not only the

worshipping, but the MAKING of any image whatsoever on a religious account: and the setting them up in churches, cannot but have a native tendency to beget a sacred veneration for them, and therefore ought to be abstained from, as having at least an "appearance of evil," 1 Thess. v. 22.

Q. 24. May they not be placed in churches for beauty and ornament?

A. No; the proper ornament of churches is the sound preaching of the gospel, and the pure dispensation of the sacraments, and other ordinances of Divine institution.

Q. 25. Were not the images of the cherubims placed in the tabernacle and temple by the command of God himself?

A. Yes; but out of all hazard of any abuse, being placed in the holy of holies, where none of the people ever came, they were instituted by God himself, which images are not; and they belonged to the typical and ceremonial worship, which is now quite abolished.

Q. 26. Are our forefathers to be blamed for pulling down altars, images, and other monuments of idolatry, from places of public worship at the Reformation?

A. No; they had Scripture-precept and warrant for what they did, Numb. xxxiii. 52, and Deut. vii. 5. "Ye shall destroy their altars, and break down their images, and cut down their groves, and burn their graven images with fire."

Q. 27. What do you understand by will-worship, the other leading sin forbidden in this Commandment?

A. It is the worshipping God *any other way not appointed in his word.*

Q. 28. Should there be an express appointment in the word for every part of Divine worship we set about?

A. Undoubtedly there should, otherwise we are guilty of innovating upon the worship of God, and prescribing rules to the Almighty, which is both displeasing to him and unprofitable to ourselves, Matth. xv. 9.

Q. 29. Who are they that are guilty of innovating upon the worship of God?

A. All they who presumptuously annex their own superstitious inventions to the Divine institutions, under pretence of their being teaching significant ceremonies, as they of the Popish and Episcopal persuasion do.

Q. 30. What are these significant ceremonies which they add to the instituted ordinances of God's worship?

A. The sign of the cross in baptism, kneeling at receiving the sacrament of the Supper, erecting altars in churches, and bowing at the name of Jesus, are a few of many.

Q. 31. Why may not such ceremonies be used, when they

are designed for exciting devotion and beautifying the worship of God?

A. Because God has expressly forbidden the least adding unto or abating from the order and directions he himself has given in his word concerning his own worship, Deut. xii. 30—32, “What things soever I command you, observe to do it; thou shalt not ADD thereunto, nor DIMINISH from it.”

Q. 32. Were there not significant ceremonies in the Jewish worship under the Old Testament?

A. Yes; but they were of express Divine appointment, and by the same appointment abolished in the death and resurrection of Christ, Heb. ix. 1—15.

Q. 33. May not significant ceremonies be founded on, 1 Cor. xiv. 40. “Let all things be done decently and in order?”

A. No; because that text speaks only of the decent and orderly observation of the ordinances of God already instituted, and not in the least of any thing new to be added as a part of worship.

Q. 34. Is reading of sermons or discourses from the pulpit an ordinance of God appointed in his word?

A. So far from it, that we find the contrary practised by our Lord while he was here upon earth, Luke iv. 16, 23; where, after reading his text out of the prophet Esaias, it is said, he CLOSED the book, and “began to say unto them, This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears,” &c.

Q. 35. How may we be further guilty of a breach of this Commandment than by idolatry and will-worship?

A. When we either neglect, Heb. x. 25; contemn, Matth. xxii. 5; hinder, chap. xxiii. 13; or oppose the worship and ordinances which God hath appointed in his word, 1 Thess. ii. 16; or tolerate those who publish and maintain erroneous opinions or practices, Rev. ii. 14, 15, 20.

Q. 36. What is the doctrine of our Confession concerning the tolerating of those who publish and maintain erroneous opinions or practices?

A. That “for their publishing of such opinions, or maintaining of such practices, as are contrary to the light of nature, or to the known principles of Christianity, whether concerning faith, worship, or conversation, or to the power of godliness, they may lawfully be called to account, and proceeded against by the censures of the church, and by the power of the civil magistrates.”\*

52. Q. What are the reasons annexed to the Second Commandment?

\* See Confession, chap. xx. § 4, and the scriptures there quoted.

A. The reasons annexed to the Second Commandment are, God's sovereignty over us, his propriety in us, and the zeal he hath to his own worship.

Q. 1. Why doth our Catechism make mention of REASONS ANNEXED to this and the three following Commandments?

A. Because God himself has been pleased to subjoin to each of these precepts the reasons, arguments, or motives that should influence our obedience unto them.

Q. 2. How many reasons are there annexed to this Second Commandment?

A. THREE, contained in these words, "I, the Lord thy God, am a jealous God."

Q. 3. Which is the FIRST of these reasons?

A. It is *God's sovereignty over us* in these words, I THE LORD, or I JEHOVAH.

Q. 4. What do you understand by God's sovereignty over us?

A. It is his absolute supreme power, or right of dominion over us, as his creatures, Rom. ix. 20, 21, whereby he can dispose of, ver. 22, 23, and prescribe to us as seemeth him good, Deut. vi. 17.

Q. 5. Wherein lies the strength of this first reason for worshipping God by means of his own appointment?

A. It lies in this, That being our sovereign Lord, it must be his sole prerogative to prescribe to us the means of his own worship; and of consequence, that it must be our duty to make his pleasure herein both the rule and reason of our punctual observance of what he enjoins, Psal. xcvi. 2, 3.

Q. 6. What is the SECOND reason annexed to this Commandment?

A. It is *his propriety in us*, in these words, THY God.

Q. 7. What other propriety has God in us than by right of creation?

A. He has a propriety likewise by right of redemption, intimated in the preface to the Commands, "I am the Lord THY God, which have brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage," Exod. xx. 2.

Q. 8. Whether is it his propriety by right of creation, or by right of redemption, that constitutes the federal relation betwixt him and us?

A. It is his propriety by right of redemption, Isa. xliii. 1. "I have REDEEMED thee, I have called thee by thy name, thou art MINE."

Q. 9. What influence should his propriety in us, as his people, have upon our receiving and observing the ordinances of his worship?

A. If we are his people we are ransomed by the blood of his only begotten Son, and so under the strongest ties of duty and gratitude to cleave to the precise manner of worship prescribed in his word, rejecting all other modes and forms thereof whatsoever, Josh. xxiv. 24.

Q. 10. What is the THIRD reason annexed to this Commandment?

A. It is *the zeal he hath to his own worship* in these words, —I AM A JEALOUS GOD.

Q. 11. In what sense is God said to be a jealous God?

A. Jealousy is ascribed unto him (after the manner of men), to denote that he puts no confidence in his creatures, Deut. v. 29; that he has his eye upon them, and is highly offended when they slight him, and bestow that love upon any other which is due to him alone, chap. xxxii. 15—26.

Q. 12. What is it for God to have *zeal for his own worship*?

A. It is to have such a regard for the ordinances of his own institution, as highly to resent or revenge any addition unto or alteration of them, whereof there is an awful instance in Nadab and Abihu, who offered strange fire before the Lord, Lev. x. 1—4.

Q. 13. Wherein doth God manifest his zeal for his worship?

A. Both by way of threatening and by way of promise.

Q. 14. What doth God threaten as a testimony of his zeal for his worship?

A. To visit “the iniquity of the fathers upon the children to the third and fourth generation of them that hate” him.

Q. 15. What is it to visit the iniquity of the fathers upon the children?

A. It is to inflict punishment upon the children for the faults and offences of their fathers.

Q. 16. Are there any scripture examples of God’s doing so?

A. As to temporal punishment there are,—Seven of Saul’s sons were hanged before the Lord, for his offence in slaying the Gibeonites, 1 Sam. xxi. 8, 9; and for the sins of Jeroboam, his whole house was utterly extinguished, 1 Kings xv. 29, 30.

Q. 17. Is this thought just and equal among men?

A. Yes; as appears by the common practice of disinheriting the children of traitors and rebels for the treasonable practices of their fathers, in order to create a greater detestation of these crimes in others.

Q. 18. Whether are temporal judgments only, or spiritual and eternal plagues also, intended in this threatening?

A. Spiritual and eternal plagues are also intended, Matth. xxv. 41.

Q. 19. How doth it appear that spiritual and eternal judgments are at all intended in this threatening?

A. It appears from this, that the punishment threatened should bear some proportion to the mercy promised; so as that, if the mercy promised be of a spiritual and eternal nature, the judgments threatened must be of the same kind.

Q. 20. How doth the Scripture illustrate this?

A. By the issue of the final sentence at the great day, which is, that the wicked "go away into everlasting punishment, but the righteous into life eternal," Matth. xxv. 46.

Q. 21. How doth it consist with the justice of God to inflict spiritual and eternal judgments upon children for the sins of their parents?

A. It is abundantly consistent therewith, because the children punished with spiritual and eternal judgments are only such as have served themselves heirs to their fathers' sins, either by copying them, Jer. xxxi. 29, 30, or not disapproving of and mourning for them; by which means their fathers' sins become their own, Psal. xlix. 13.

Q. 22. How can the visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children be reconciled with Ezek. xviii. 20, "The son shall not bear the iniquity of the father?"

A. This passage in Ezekiel is to be understood of the son who doth not tread in the steps of his wicked father, as is evident from ver. 14, 17, "If he beget a son that seeth all his father's sins,—and doth not such like,—he shall not die for the iniquity of his father, he shall surely live;" whereas the threatening in this Commandment respects wicked children, who copy after the example of their graceless parents; as Nadab the son of Jeroboam did, who walked in the way of his father, and in his sin wherewith he made Israel to sin, 1 Kings xv. 26.

Q. 23. How doth it appear from the threatening itself that this is the meaning?

A. Because the children on whom God visits the iniquity of their fathers are expressly said to be the third and fourth generation of them that HATE him.

Q. 24. Why doth God threaten to visit the iniquity of the fathers upon the children to the third and fourth generation only of them that hate him, and not to all succeeding generations of such children?

A. Not but that the haters of God to all generations shall meet with deserved punishment, but the threatening is limited to the third and fourth generation, for a greater judgment upon wicked parents, some of whom may live to see their posterity of these generations, and to read their own sin in the punishment of their offspring whom they have

seduced ; as Zedekiah, for his wickedness, saw his sons and the princes of Judah slain before his eyes, Jer. lii. 3, 10.

Q. 25. What if such wicked parents shall die before they see their third and fourth generations ?

A. In that case, if their consciences are not quite seared, they will die under the dread and fear of the judgments here threatened befalling their children, Hos. ii. 4 ; as well as of the fiery indignation which shall devour themselves, Heb. x. 27.

Q. 26. May not God sometimes visit the iniquity of the breakers of this Commandment upon their godly children ?

A. He will never visit the iniquities of the fathers upon their godly children with spiritual and eternal judgments, though sometimes he may do it with temporal strokes ; as no doubt many that were godly were carried captive to Babylon for the sins of their fathers, Lam. v. 7 ; which, nevertheless, was for their real good, Jer. xxiv. 5.

Q. 27. What may we learn from this threatening of visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children ?

A. That as nothing can be more cruel than for parents to cast a bad example before their children, Jer. ix. 14, 15, so the example of forefathers will not vindicate their posterity in the way of sin, particularly in the practice of any corrupt or false worship, Ezek. xx. 18, 21.

Q. 28. What is it, on the other hand, that God promises as an evidence of his zeal for his worship ?

A. To show mercy to thousands of them that love him and keep his commandments.

Q. 29. Who are they that truly love God ?

A. They who, from a faith of his own operation, have complacency and delight in him as their own God and portion, Psal. v. 11.

Q. 30. What is it to keep his commandments ?

A. It is to essay a uniform and self-denied obedience to the law as a rule, because Christ has fulfilled it as a covenant, Rom. vii. 4.

Q. 31. What mercy doth God show to them that love him and keep his commandments ?

A. He shows strengthening, Psal. xciv. 18, comforting, Psal. xxxi. 7, directing, Exod. xv. 13, and persevering mercy unto them, 2 Sam. vii. 15.

Q. 32. Doth God show mercy to children because they are the offspring of godly parents ?

A. No ; but merely because so it pleaseth him, Rom. ix. 15. " I will have mercy on whom I will have mercy."

Q. 33. What benefit then have the children of godly parents beyond others ?

A. They have the privilege of a religious education, Gen. xviii. 19; are the children of many prayers, Job i. 5; and may plead the promise, "I WILL be a God to thee, and to thy seed after thee," Gen. xvii. 7.

Q. 34. Why doth the threatening run only to the third and fourth generation of them that hate him, and yet the promise to thousands of them that love him?

A. To show that God has far greater pleasure in the egress of mercy, than in the venting of wrath, Ezek. xxxiii. 11; and likewise for an encouragement both to parents and children to aim at "walking in all the commandments and ordinances of the Lord blameless," Luke i. 6.

53. Q. Which is the Third Commandment?

A. The Third Commandment is, Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.

54. Q. What is required in the Third Commandment?

A. The Third Commandment requireth the holy and reverent use of God's names, titles, attributes, ordinances, word, and works.

Q. 1. What doth this Commandment require in general?

A. That the instituted means of God's worship be used in a right MANNER, becoming the majesty of him with whom we have to do, Psal. v. 7.

Q. 2. What is the duty directly opposite to the sin of taking God's name in vain?

A. It is the sanctifying of his name, Isa. viii. 13. "Sanctify the Lord of hosts himself, and let him be your fear and your dread."

Q. 3. What do you understand by the NAME of God?

A. Every thing whereby he is pleased to make himself known.

Q. 4. Whereby doth God make himself known?

A. By his *names, titles, attributes, ordinances, word, and works.*

Q. 5. Does God need any name to distinguish and difference him from others?

A. No; because he is a most singular being, quite well distinguished from all others by the infinity and absolute perfection of his nature, Isa. xliv. 6.

Q. 6. Why then are *names* ascribed unto him in Scripture?

A. That some knowledge of his nature and perfections may be conveyed unto us, Acts ix. 15.

Q. 7. What are the names whereby he conveys the knowledge of himself unto us ?

A. He conveys the knowledge of his absolute, eternal, and immutable essence by the names of **JEHOVAH**, Exod. vi. 3 ; **JAH**, Psal. lxviii. 4 ; and **I AM**, Exod. iii. 14 ; the knowledge of his excellency and sovereignty by the names **GOD** and **LORD**, Deut. vi. 4 ; and the knowledge of the essential relation of the three divine persons among themselves by the names of **FATHER**, **SON**, and **HOLY GHOST**, Matth. xxviii. 19.

Q. 8. Is there any difference betwixt God's names and his titles ?

A. His names set forth what he is in himself, his titles what he is unto others.

Q. 9. How are God's *titles* commonly distinguished ?

A. Into these that belong to him as the God of nature, and these that are ascribed unto him as the God of grace.

Q. 10. What are the titles that belong to him as the God of nature ?

A. They are such as these, The Creator of the ends of the earth, Isa. xl. 28 ; the Preserver of men, Job. vii. 20 ; King of nations, Jer. x. 7 ; and Lord of hosts, Isa. i. 9.

Q. 11. What are the titles that are ascribed unto him as the God of grace ?

A. They are these following among others :—The God of Abraham, Isaac, and of Jacob, Exod. iii. 6 ; the Holy One of Israel, xlviii. 17 ; King of saints, Rev. xv. 3 ; the Father of mercies, 2 Cor. i. 3 ; the Hearer of prayer, Psal. lxxv. 2 ; and the God of salvation, Psal. lxxviii. 20.

Q. 12. Which is the most common and ordinary title ascribed to God under the New Testament ?

A. It is the infinitely amiable and encouraging title of being the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, Eph. i. 3 ; 1 Pet. i. 3.

Q. 13. What comfortable views may we take of God, as he is the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ ?

A. In this light we may view him as a reconciled God, 2 Cor. v. 19 ; a pardoning and accepting God through Christ, Eph. i. 6, 7 ; and as our God and Father in him, John xx. 17. "I ascend unto my Father and your Father, and to my God and your God."

Q. 14. What is to be understood by God's *attributes* ? \*

A. The perfections and excellencies which are ascribed unto him as the essential properties of his nature.

Q. 15. What are God's *ordinances* ?

A. The reading, preaching, and hearing of the word ; the

\* See the Divine attributes explained on the 4th question, What is God ?

administration of the sacraments ; prayer and praise ; religious fasting and thanksgiving.\*

Q. 16. What are the ordinances wherein the name of God is more immediately interposed ?

A. The name of God is more immediately interposed in oaths, vows, and lots.

Q. 17. What is an OATH ?

A. It is an act of religious worship, wherein God is solemnly invocated, or called upon as a witness for the confirmation of some matter in doubt.

Q. 18. Why is it said to be an act of religious worship ?

A. Because there is or ought to be in every formal oath, a solemn invocation of the name of God, Deut. vi. 13. "Thou shalt fear the Lord thy God,—and shalt swear by his name."

Q. 19. What is imported in calling upon God as a witness in an oath ?

A. It imports that we acknowledge him to be the infallible searcher of our hearts, the powerful avenger of all perjury and falsehood, and at the same time to be infinitely superior to us ; "for men verily swear by the greater," Heb. vi. 16.

Q. 20. In what cases should an oath be required ?

A. Only in cases that are doubtful, when the truth of things cannot be known with certainty any other way.

Q. 21. What is the end of an oath in a lawful judicature ?

A. It is for confirmation of the truth formerly doubtful, and for terminating strife and contradiction among men : "An oath for confirmation is to them an end of all strife." Heb. vi. 16.

Q. 22. What are the necessary qualifications of a lawful oath ?

A. That we swear in truth, in judgment, and in righteousness, Jer. vi. 2.

Q. 23. What is it to swear in truth ?

A. It is to take special care that what is sworn be strictly agreeable to truth, and that there be an exact agreement between the sentiments of our minds and the words of our mouth, without the least equivocation or mental reservation.

Q. 24. What is it to equivocate or dissemble in an oath ?

A. It is to have an inward reserved meaning and sense of words contrary to the common and ordinary acceptation of them, and that with a design to deceive.

Q. 25. Wherein consists the evil and sinfulness of this practice ?

A. It destroys the nature and end of an oath, which is to bring forth nothing but the truth ; it opens a wide door to

\* See all these explained on question 50, What is required in the Second Commandment ?

all falsehood and lying, contrary to Eph. iv. 25. "Wherefore putting away lying, speak every man the truth with his neighbour;" and it unhinges the firmest bonds of society, that none can put confidence in another.

Q. 26. What is it to swear in judgment?

A. It is to swear with knowledge and deliberation; seriously pondering in our mind what it is we are about to swear, and the solemn appeal we make unto God in the oath, together with the dangerous risk we run if we swear either falsely or ignorantly.

Q. 27. What is it to swear in righteousness?

A. It is to give our oath only in things lawful, or such as are consistent with piety towards God and equity towards man; and likewise to give it upon a lawful occasion.

Q. 28. When is a civil oath taken upon a lawful occasion?

A. When it is required by a lawful magistrate for the ending of strife and debate, and the impartial administration of justice.

Q. 29. How do you prove that it is warrantable for Christians under the New Testament to declare the truth upon oath, when called thereunto?

A. From this, that an oath being no part of the ceremonial law, there can no reason be given why it was lawful to swear under the Old Testament, which will not hold in the like circumstances now, especially as there are approved examples of the use of an oath under the New Testament, 2 Cor. i. 23; Rev. x. 6; Heb. vi. 16.

Q. 30. Doth not our Lord say, Matth. v. 34, "Swear not at all;" and the apostle James, chap. v. 12, "Above all things, swear not?"

A. These texts do manifestly discharge profane swearing in ordinary conversation, and not lawful swearing in judgment when called thereto, as appears from the injunction subjoined in both places, "Let your communication be Yea, yea; Nay, nay."

Q. 31. What is the ordinary outward form or sign in Scripture of appealing to God in an oath?

A. It is the lifting up of the hand, as appears from Gen. xiv. 22; Dan. xii. 7; Rev. x. 5, 6.

Q. 32. What are we to think of that mode of swearing by touching and kissing the gospel?

A. It is evidently superstitious, if not idolatrous, borrowed by the Papists from the Heathens, who worshipped their idols in this manner, Job xxxi. 27; Hos. xiii. 2.

Q. 33. How are oaths commonly distinguished as to their KINDS?

A. Into assertory and promissory oaths.

Q. 34. What is an assertory oath?

A. It is an invoking God as a witness to the truth of what we declare about things past or present.

Q. 35. Why called assertory?

A. Because the party swearing, without any promise for the future, only asserts the things to have been or to be at present, as he then sweareth.

Q. 36. What is the chief use of assertory oaths?

A. It is to determine suits and processes in human courts about matters of fact.

Q. 37. What is a promissory oath?

A. It is the invoking God as a witness to the performing of a thing for the time to come, either absolutely or conditionally.

Q. 38. Why called promissory?

A. Because the party swearing promiseth or engageth to do something hereafter.

Q. 39. What should be the subject-matter of assertory oaths?

A. Such things as are both true and weighty, and which we know to be so.

Q. 40. What should be the subject-matter of promissory oaths?

A. Such things as, to our knowledge, are lawful, possible, and in our power to perform.

Q. 41. How may promissory oaths be subdivided?

A. Into civil and religious.

Q. 42. What has a civil promissory oath a respect unto?

A. Unto contracts and engagements among men, whether of a more private or public nature.

Q. 43. May not the supreme magistrate require an allegiance of his subjects, or an oath of fidelity to obey his just and lawful commands?

A. It appears evidently from Scripture that he may, Eccles. viii. 2; "I counsel thee to keep the king's commandment, and that in regard of the oath of God," 1 Chron. xxix. 24.

Q. 44. What has a religious promissory oath a respect unto?

A. It respects the duties and services we owe more immediately to God and the interests of religion.\*

Q. 45. Wherein lies the obligation of an oath?

A. In the strong tie or bond that the party swearing comes under to the performance of some duty engaged unto.

Q. 46. How manifold is the obligation of a promissory oath?

A. **TWOFOLD**; one unto the person to whom the oath is

\* Of religious promissory oaths, see afterwards on this same question under the head of Vows.

made as a party; the other to God, by whom the oath is made as a witness and revenger.

Q. 47. What is the difference betwixt the obligation of a promise and the obligation of an oath?

A. A man is bound to perform his promise as well as his oath; but an oath being an immediate invocation of the name of God as a witness and judge, it is on this account of a stronger obligation, and the breach of it a more heinous sin than the breach of a simple promise.

Q. 48. Doth not all obligation to duty respect a future time wherein it is to be performed?

A. It necessarily doth so in the nature of the thing, although, in some cases, the time of performance may be very short after the obligation is contracted.

Q. 49. What obligation doth a person come under in an assertory oath which respects the time past or present?

A. He comes under an obligation to declare the truth, and nothing but the truth, in what he is about to say; or that his words shall exactly agree with his mind.

Q. 50. What obligations doth a person come under in a promissory oath, which respects the time to come?

A. He comes under an obligation to endeavour, as far as in him lieth, to fulfil that which he hath sworn, or to perform all he hath promised by oath, Numb. xxx. 2. "If a man vow a vow unto the Lord, or swear an oath to bind his soul with a bond, he shall not break his word, he shall do according to all that proceedeth out of his mouth."

Q. 51. Is an oath about a thing lawful and possible obligatory, even though it be extorted by force or fear?

A. Undoubtedly it is, because of the reverence due to God, by whom the oath is made as a witness and judge; Lev. xix. 12. "Ye shall not swear by my name falsely, neither shalt thou profane the name of thy God, I am the Lord," Matth. v. 33. "Thou shalt not forswear thyself, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths."

Q. 52. Is a person bound to pay such a sum to a robber as he has promised by his oath for the ransom of his life?

A. He is certainly bound to pay it, because of two PENAL evils he voluntarily made choice of the least, to part with his money rather than his life; accordingly the righteous man "swaereth to his own HURT, and changeth not," Psal. xv. 4.

Q. 53. Is an oath which is lawful as to the matter of it, though sinful as to the manner, and even obtained by deceit or rashly made, binding and obligatory upon the person who has sworn it?

A. Yes; as is evident from the instance of the Gibeonites,

who deceived Israel into league with them by oath, and yet their oath was binding, Josh. ix. 14—20.

Q. 54. Are oaths and contracts to be kept with heathens and heretics?

A. No doubt they should, as well as with others; Zedekiah, king of Judah, was severely punished for his breach of oath to the king of Babylon, 2 Chron. xxxvi. 13; Ezek. xvii. 16. Besides, if infidelity and heresy do not nullify the marriage-oaths, neither ought they to make void any other lawful contract.

Q. 55. What is a vow?

A. It is a voluntary and deliberate engagement to God only as a party, and that about matters of a sacred or religious concern, Psal. cxxxii. 2—6.

Q. 56. What is the difference betwixt an oath and a vow?

A. In an oath man is generally the party, and God is brought in as the witness; but in a vow God himself is always the sole party, besides his being a witness, Psal. l. 14; Isa. xix. 21.

Q. 57. What is the subject-matter of vows?

A. Only things religious, or such as relate immediately to the glory of God, and the salvation of our souls.

Q. 58. How ought vows to be entered into?

A. In the exercise of faith, or in the strength of the grace that is in Christ Jesus, John xv. 5; without which there can be no performance, Phil. iv. 13.

Q. 59. How many kinds of vows are there?

A. Two, personal and social.

Q. 60. What is a personal vow?

A. It is the act of an individual, or single person, taking hold of God's covenant of grace, or acquiescing therein as made with Christ, who is the all of it; and thereupon engaging to be the Lord's, and to essay the practice of all duty in his strength, Isa. xlv. 5; "One shall say, I am the Lord's," Psal. cxix. 106. "I have sworn and will perform it, that I will keep thy righteous judgments."\*

Q. 61. What is a social vow?

A. It is the joint concurrence of several individuals in the same exercise as in a personal one, openly avouching the Lord to be their God, Deut. xxvi. 17; where Moses, speaking of all Israel, says, "Thou hast avouched the Lord this day to be thy God, to walk in his ways," &c.

\* This is what is commonly called PERSONAL COVENANTING.—Whoever wants to be instructed in the true nature and right manner of setting about this necessary duty, let them carefully peruse Mr BOSTON'S Memorial concerning personal and family fasting, subjoined to his View of the Covenant of Grace, chap. 11, § iii. direct. 8.

Q. 62. When doth such a social vow commonly get the name of a NATIONAL COVENANT?

A. When the representatives of a nation, or the better part of them, concur in a covenant of duties, as ingrafted upon the covenant of grace, Jer. l. 4, 5. "The children of Israel shall come, they and the children of Judah together,—saying, Come, and let us join ourselves to the Lord in a perpetual covenant that shall not be forgotten." See also Neh. ix. 38, and x. 1, 30.

Q. 63. How do you prove that national covenanting is a warrantable duty under the New Testament?

A. From its being promised in the Old Testament that this shall be a duty performed under the New, Isa. xix. 21. "The Egyptians shall know the Lord in that day, and—they shall vow a vow unto the Lord, and shall perform it." Besides, if it was a moral duty upon special occasions, under the Old Testament (as appears from 2 Chron. xv. 12, and xxxiv. 31, 32; Neh. ix. 38), it must remain to be the same, upon the like occasions, still; because Christ came not to destroy the law or the prophets, but to fulfil them, Matth. v. 17.

Q. 64. Is our obligation to moral duties increased by our vowing or engaging to perform them?

A. Although it is impossible that our obligation to moral duty can be increased by any deed of ours beyond what it is already by the law of God, which is of the highest authority, yet, by reason of our own voluntary and superadded engagement, this obligation from the law may make a deeper impression than before, Psal. xlv. 17, 18; and our sin receive a higher aggravation, if we either omit the duty engaged unto, or commit the evil opposite to it, Deut. xxiii. 21, 22.

Q. 65. What is a LOT or lotting?

A. It is a laying aside the use of all means, or second causes, and appealing directly to God, that he may, by his immediate providence, give a present decision about any matter in question. "For the lot is cast into the lap; but the whole disposing thereof is of the Lord," Prov. xvi. 33.

Q. 66. Why are lots said to be an appeal to God?

A. Because, by casting of lots between two or more persons, or things, we put him to it, or require him immediately to declare his mind by the event, which way the decision shall go, Acts i. 24, 26. "Show whether of these two thou hast chosen. And the lot fell on Matthias."

Q. 67. In what cases may a decision be put upon the casual event of a lot?

A. Only in cases of great weight and absolute necessity, Josh. vii. 13, 14.

Q. 68. Why should a lot be used only in a case of great weight and moment?

A. Because a lot being a material or implicit invoking of God to give a decision, it would be a wicked profanation of his name to call him to determine in trifles, or things of little or no value.

Q. 69. Why should it be used only in cases of absolute necessity?

A. Because where human prudence can determine, it would be a tempting of God to require his decision.

Q. 70. What then is the end of lots?

A. It is the same as of oaths, to determine finally in momentous controversies, that which can be decided no other way, Prov. xviii. 18. "The lot causeth contention to cease, and parteth between the mighty."

Q. 71. In what manner ought lots to be used?

A. In a most reverent manner, as in the presence of God, who pronounceth the sentence, and in whose decision all parties ought cheerfully to acquiesce, Acts i. 24, 26. "And they PRAYED—and gave forth their lots."

Q. 72. What is the *word* wherein the name of God is declared?

A. The Scriptures of the Old and New Testament.

Q. 73. What is meant by God's *works* in this answer?

A. His works of creation and providence; which last includes redemption.

Q. 74. What doth this commandment REQUIRE with reference to God's names, titles, attributes, ordinances, word, and works?

A. *The holy and reverent use of them.*

Q. 75. What is it to make a holy and reverent use of these?

A. It is in all our meditations, speeches, and writings, to have the most profound respect and regard for every thing whereby God manifests his name and glory, Deut. xxviii. 58.

Q. 76. When do we essay to make a reverent use of God's names, titles, and attributes?

A. When we view them as in Christ, and in this light draw virtue from them for the increase of our faith and holiness, Exod. xxiii. 20, 21. "Obey his voice,—for my name is in him."

Q. 77. When do we endeavour a holy and reverent use of the ordinances?

A. When we view God as present in them, Matth. xxviii. 20, and attend or perform them with a single eye to his glory, Psal. lxxxvi. 9.

Q. 78. When do we use the word in a holy and reverent manner?

A. When we search and believe the Scriptures, as testifying

of Christ, John v. 39; and are directed by them as a lamp unto our feet, and a light unto our path, Psal. cxix. 105.

Q. 79. When do we essay to make a holy and reverent use of the works of God?

A. When we are enabled to make suitable improvement of the bright displays he has made of his glorious excellencies, in creation, providence, and redemption, so as to walk humbly and thankfully before him, Rev. xv. 3, 4. "Great and marvellous are thy works, Lord God Almighty; just and true are thy ways, thou King of saints. Who shall not fear thee, O Lord, and glorify thy name, for thou only art holy?"

55. Q. What is forbidden in the Third Commandment?

A. The Third Commandment forbiddeth all profaning or abusing of any thing whereby God maketh himself known.

Q. 1. What do you understand by *profaning or abusing of any thing whereby God maketh himself known*?

A. It is the using of his names, titles, attributes, ordinances, word, and works, in a rash, irreverent, and unbecoming manner.

Q. 2. How are God's names, titles, and attributes profaned or abused by men?

A. Many ways, particularly "by blasphemy, perjury, sinful cursings, oaths, vows, and lots."\*

Q. 3. What is blasphemy?

A. It is speaking in a reproachful, reviling, and undervaluing manner of God, Isa. xxxvi. 20; of his word, Acts xiii. 45; or of any of his providential dispensations, Ezek. xviii. 25.

Q. 4. What is the aggravation of this sin?

A. It is an atheistical contempt of the most high God,—the greatest affront that can be done him by his creatures, Exod. v. 2.

Q. 5. May not persons be guilty of blasphemy in their hearts, though never uttered in words?

A. Undoubtedly they may, either when atheistical thoughts of him are harboured, Psal. xiv. 1; or disparaging and unbecoming conceptions of him entertained, Psal. x. 11, and l. 21.

Q. 6. What was the punishment of blasphemy at the hand of man by the law of God?

A. It was death, Lev. xxiv. 16. "He that blasphemeth the name of the Lord, he shall surely be put to death."

Q. 7. What is perjury?

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 113.

A. It is a breach or violation of any solemn oath or vow we have entered into or come under, Matth. v. 33. "Thou shalt not forswear thyself."

Q. 8. When are persons guilty of perjury in assertory oaths?

A. When they assert such a thing upon oath to be true which yet they know to be false; like the witnesses against Naboth, 1 Kings xxi. 13; or even when they are doubtful and uncertain about the truth of what they are swearing, like the witnesses against Christ, whose witnessing did "not agree together," Mark xiv. 58, 59.

Q. 9. When are persons guilty of perjury in promissory oaths?

A. When they promise upon oath what they have no mind to perform; or, when without any insuperable impediment laid in their way, or any just and relevant excuse, they fail in the performance, as in the perjury of Zedekiah, king of Judah, who broke his oath to the king of Babylon, Ezek. xvii. 16.

Q. 10. Is a person guilty of perjury if he swears to do a thing impossible or unlawful?

A. Surely he is; for if he swear to a thing impossible, he swears to a manifest lie; if he swears to do a thing unlawful, he is doubly perjured, both in making such an oath and in fulfilling it, as was the case with Herod, Matth. xiv. 9, 10.

Q. 11. What is the aggravation of the sin of perjury?

A. It not only breaks all bonds of society among men, but impeaches the omniscience of God himself, calling him to attest what conscience knows to be an untruth; and therefore God threatens that his "curse shall enter into the house of him that sweareth falsely,—and shall consume it, with the timber thereof and the stones thereof," Zech. v. 3, 4.

Q. 12. How is God's name profaned by sinful cursings?

A. When God's wrath and vengeance is imprecated upon ourselves or others; or when the devil is any manner of way invocated for harm.

Q. 13. What do wicked persons wish for when they imprecate the wrath and vengeance of God upon themselves?

A. They do in effect pray that God would hasten their everlasting destruction, and that their damnation may not "slumber," but be speedily inflicted, 2 Pet. ii. 3.

Q. 14. Do the devils themselves venture to wish for this?

A. No; they believe that there is further wrath abiding them at the judgment of the great day; and they "tremble" at the forethoughts of it, James ii. 19; Jude, ver. 6.

Q. 15. What is the evil of imprecating Divine vengeance upon others?

A. It is a piece of the most profane, presumptuous, and

impudent freedom with the Majesty of heaven, as if he were bound to empty the vials of his wrath upon our fellow-creatures at our pleasure, and that in order to gratify our passionate revenge upon them, 2 Sam. xvi. 5, 8.

Q. 16. Is it not a most horrid and abominable wickedness to call or invoke the devil to TAKE ourselves or others?

A. Be sure it is; for it is a putting the devil in God's stead, or an employing of him to do God's work for him, even when he is delaying to do it himself, which is no less than devil-worship, and we ought not to "have fellowship with devils," 1 Cor. x. 20.

Q. 17. How is the name of God abused by sinful oaths?

A. When men take unlawful oaths that may be imposed upon them; and when, in their ordinary conversation, they swear by God, or by any thing whereby he maketh himself known, contrary to Matth. v. 37. "Let your communication be Yea, yea; Nay, nay; for whatsoever is more than these cometh of evil:" or of the evil one.

Q. 18. Wherein lies the heinousness of swearing in common discourse?

A. It is a most Heaven-daring wickedness, even an insulting of the great God our Maker to his face; a crime which we dare not, without danger, be guilty of against our fellow-creatures: and, after all, there is neither pleasure nor profit attending it.

Q. 19. Is it a taking of God's name in vain, to swear by the creatures; such as, by heaven, by our life, soul, conscience, or the like?

A. Yes; because swearing by any of the creatures is interpretatively a swearing by God, the Creator and Preserver of all things, Matth. xxiii. 22. "He that shall swear by HEAVEN, sweareth by the throne of God, and by him that sitteth thereon."

Q. 20. Did not Joseph, who was a good man, swear once and again, "by the life of Pharaoh?" Gen. xlii. 15, 16.

A. The goodness of the man did not excuse the sinfulness of the action: we are not to "do evil that good may come," Rom. iii. 8; for though it may be alleged that to say, "By the life of Pharaoh," is no more than to say, "As sure as Pharaoh lives;" yet the words themselves, being in the form of an unlawful oath, which, it would seem, was commonly used by the Egyptians, they ought not for this reason to have been uttered.

Q. 21. Is swearing by faith, or troth, a formal profaning of God's name?

A. No doubt it is; for when a person swears in this manner, he tacitly invokes God to bear witness that he is speaking faithfully and truly, and to punish him if he is doing other-

wise ; which in ordinary conversation is undoubtedly sinful, and a falling “into condemnation,” James v. 12.

Q. 22. Will a habit or custom of swearing in common discourse be an excuse for it?

A. By no means, any more than a habit or custom of killing men can be an excuse for wilful murder.

Q. 23. How is the name of God profaned by sinful vows?

A. Either when we solemnly enter into a resolution to do what is absolutely unlawful, as Jezebel did, 1 Kings xix. 2, or when we come under engagements to duty, and against sin in our own strength, without a due dependence on the grace of God, as the greater part of the Israelites did, Deut. v. 27, 29, or when we vow and are not resolved to perform, as Johanan and his confederates did, Jer. xlii. 5, compared with ver. 20.

Q. 24. When is the name of God profaned or abused by lots?

A. When God is appealed unto by way of diversion, as in playing at cards and dice, where the great God is most presumptuously invoked to determine who shall be the gainer. Lots are also unlawful when there is an appeal by them to God in matters of small moment, which might be otherwise easily decided ; this being too like the practice of the soldiers, who, after they had crucified Christ, did “cast lots for his vesture,” John xix. 23, 24.

Q. 25. How do men profane the name of God in their outward walk?

A. By making profession of religion in hypocrisy, and backsliding from it, Heb. vi. 6, or by committing such enormities and immoralities as reflect dishonour thereupon, and make the name of God to be evil spoken of, Rom. ii. 24.

Q. 26. How are the ordinances of God profaned and abused?

A. Either when they are quite neglected, Acts vii. 42, 43, or when they are attended and gone about in a formal, superficial, and customary manner, without seeking to meet with God in them, or to have spiritual food and nourishment to our souls by them, Isa. xxix. 13, 14.

Q. 27. How is the word profaned and abused?

A. “By misinterpreting, misapplying, or perverting any part of it to profane jest, curious and unprofitable questions, vain janglings, or the maintaining of false doctrines ; abusing it,—or any thing contained under the name of God, to charms,—or any way opposing God’s truth, grace, and ways.”\*

Q. 28. How are the works of God abused?

A. When “the creatures” are prostitute to “sinful lusts and practices ;” and when there is a murmuring and quarrelling at God’s providences.†

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 113.

† Ibid.

56. Q. What is the reason annexed to the Third Commandment?

A. The reason annexed to the Third Commandment is, That however the breakers of this Commandment may escape punishment from men, yet the Lord our God will not suffer them to escape his righteous judgment.

Q. 1. Are there any arguments against taking God's name in vain, couched in the preceptive part itself of this Commandment?

A. Yes; he whose name we are discharged to take in vain, is the LORD OUR GOD. "Thou shalt not take the name of the LORD thy GOD in vain."

Q. 2. What is the force of the argument taken from his being *the Lord*, or JEHOVAH?

A. That his infinite essential glory and excellency should fill us with the greatest reverence and humility, when we think or speak of any thing by which he makes himself known, Psal. lxxxiii. 18.

Q. 3. What is the force of the argument taken from his being *our God*?

A. That his making himself over to us in the covenant of promise, as our reconciled God and Father in Christ, should lay us under the strongest obligation to a holy and reverent use of his name, Exod. xv. 2.

Q. 4. What is the particular reason expressly subjoined or annexed to this Commandment?

A. It is in these words by way of threatening, "For the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain."

Q. 5. What is the import of the threatening, "The Lord will not hold him guiltless?"

A. It imports that he will surely hold him guilty in a peculiar manner, who presumes to profane or abuse his name, so as that Divine vengeance shall be infallibly certain against him, Zech. v. 3.

Q. 6. In what light doth the Scripture represent them who take God's name in vain?

A. It represents them as his open and avowed enemies, Psal. cxxxix. 29. "Thine ENEMIES take thy name in vain."

Q. 7. How doth it appear that Divine vengeance is infallibly certain against the profaners of God's name?

A. It appears from the very terms of the threatening, "The Lord WILL NOT hold him guiltless;" that is as sure as there will be a judgment-seat before which sinners must appear, so sure it is that this sin shall then be taken particular notice of as a main article of the indictment, Mal. iii. 5.

Q. 8. *Why do the breakers of this Commandment escape punishment from men?*

A. Because many of these to whom the administration of justice is committed, being themselves guilty, do therefore show no concern for vindicating the honour of God's name in punishing the profaners of it.

Q. 9. *Why will not the Lord our God suffer them to escape his righteous judgment?*

A. Because if Heathens are highly punishable for this crime, as contrary to one of the first dictates of nature's light, Rom. i. 32, much more among Christians, the manifestation of God's name in Christ being the greatest blessing, John xv. 22, their profaning or abusing of it must be the greatest sin, Amos iii. 2.

57. Q. Which is the Fourth Commandment?

A. The Fourth Commandment is, Remember the Sabbath-day to keep it holy. Six days shalt thou labour, and do all thy work: But the seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord thy God: in it thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy manservant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates: For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day: wherefore the Lord blessed the Sabbath-day, and hallowed it.

58. Q. What is required in the Fourth Commandment?

A. The Fourth Commandment requireth the keeping holy to God such set times as he hath appointed in his word; expressly one whole day in seven, to be a holy Sabbath to himself.

Q. 1. What about the worship of God hath this Command a reference unto?

A. It refers to the special TIME of God's worship.

Q. 2. Is the TIME of God's worship left arbitrary to the will of man?

A. No; we are to keep *holy to God such set times as he hath appointed in his word.*

Q. 3. Why should *such set times* be kept holy and no other?

A. Because God is the sovereign Lord of our time, and has the sole power and authority to direct how it should be improved.

Q. 4. What is meant by the set times mentioned in the answer?

A. The stated feasts and holy convocations for religious worship instituted under the ceremonial law, which the church of the Jews was obliged to observe during that dispensation, Lev. xxiii.

Q. 5. Is there any warrant for anniversary or stated holy days now under the New Testament?

A. No; these under the Old being abrogated by the death and resurrection of Christ, there is neither precept nor example in Scripture for any of the yearly holidays observed by Papists and others; on the contrary, all such days are condemned in bulk, Gal. iv. 10; Col. ii. 16, 17.

Q. 6. What crimes doth the observation of them import?

A. The observation of them imports no less than an impeachment of the institutions of God concerning his worship, as if they were imperfect, and an encroachment upon the liberty wherewith Christ hath made his church and people free, Col. ii. 20.

Q. 7. What is the special and stated time which God has expressly appointed in his word to be kept holy?

A. *One whole day in seven to be a holy Sabbath to himself.*

Q. 8. What is meant by a *whole day*?

A. A whole natural day, consisting of twenty-four hours.

Q. 9. What do you understand by one whole day *in seven*?

A. A seventh part of our weekly time; or one complete day, either after or before six days' labour.

Q. 10. When should we begin and end this day?

A. We should measure it just as we do other days, from midnight to midnight, without alienating any part of it to our own works.

Q. 11. Are not sleeping and eating on the Sabbath-day our own works?

A. If these refreshments of nature are in moderation, and to the glory of God on the Sabbath, they are not properly our own works, because they are necessary to strengthen our bodies for religious exercises.

Q. 12. What is the signification of the word *Sabbath*?

A. It is a Hebrew word, signifying REST, as it is interpreted, Heb. iv. 9. "There remaineth therefore a REST [margin, keeping of a Sabbath] to the people of God."

Q. 13. Is Sunday a proper or fit name for this day?

A. Although it cannot in charity be supposed that many who use this term have any knowledge of it, or pay the smallest regard unto the idolatrous rise of this name, or the names assigned to the other days of the week, yet it were to be wished that all Christians would call this holy day by one or other of its Scripture designations.

Q. 14. May it not continue to be called Sabbath now as well as under the Old Testament?

A. Yes; in regard our Lord himself calls it by this name, Matth. xxiv. 20. "Pray ye that your flight be not in winter, neither on the Sabbath-day."

Q. 15. But is not our Lord speaking there of the Jewish and not of the Christian Sabbath?

A. He is speaking of the Christian Sabbath only; for he is speaking of the flight which should happen at the destruction of Jersuaelem, which did not take place till about forty years after the Jewish Sabbath was abolished, and the Christian Sabbath come in its room.

Q. 16. Why is it called a *holy* Sabbath?

A. Because it was consecrated and set apart by God himself for his own worship and service.

Q. 17. Is there any other day holy but the Sabbath alone?

A. Other days may be occasionally employed in the worship of God, according to providential calls thereunto, yet there is no other day morally and perpetually holy but the Sabbath only.

Q. 18. Is the Sabbath instrumentally, or is the time itself of the Sabbath an instrument and means (as the word and sacraments are) of conveying spiritual grace?

A. Not at all; for the time of the Sabbath is only a holy SEASON, wherein God is pleased to bless his people more ordinarily than at other times, John xx. 19—24, still reserving to himself the prerogative of communicating his grace at other times likewise, as he shall see meet, chap. xxi. 15—18.

Q. 19. Whether is the Fourth Commandment founded on the light of nature or upon positive institution?

A. It is founded partly on both.

Q. 20. What part of this Commandment is it that is founded entirely on nature's light, or is what they call moral-natural?

A. The substance of it, namely, that as God is to be worshipped, so some stated time should be set apart for that end.

Q. 21. What part of it is founded on positive institution, or is what they call moral-positive?

A. That one proportion of time should be observed for God's worship and service rather than another, namely, that it should be a seventh rather than a third, fourth, fifth, or sixth part of our weekly time.

Q. 22. Why do you call this a POSITIVE institution?

A. Because the observing of one day in seven for a Sabbath flows from the sovereign will of God appointing it, and could never have been observed more than any other part of time merely by the force of nature's light.

Q. 23. Why do you call it MORAL-positive?

A. Because though the law appointing the precise time of the Sabbath be positive, yet the reason of the law (plainly implied in the law itself, namely, that Divine Wisdom saw it most equal and meet that man having six, God should have a seventh day to himself) is MORAL.

Q. 24. Wherein then consists the morality of the Fourth Commandment?

A. In keeping holy to God any seventh day he shall be pleased to appoint.

Q. 25. What is to be meant by *the SEVENTH day* mentioned in the Commandment?

A. Not only the seventh in order from the creation, but any other seventh part of our weekly time as God shall determine.

Q. 26. How doth this appear from the words of the Commandment itself?

A. In the beginning of the Commandment it is not said, Remember the seventh day (namely, in order from the creation), but, "Remember the Sabbath-day to keep it holy." Just so in the end of the Command the words are not, The Lord blesseth the seventh day, but, "The Lord blessed the Sabbath-day and hallowed it."

Q. 27. How do you prove the observation of *one whole day in seven* for a holy Sabbath to the Lord to be of a moral and perpetual obligation?

A. From the time of the first institution of the Sabbath, from its being placed in the DECALOGUE or summary of moral precepts, and from there being nothing originally ceremonial, or typical, in the scope or substance thereof.

Q. 28. When was the Sabbath first instituted?

A. The will of God that some stated time should be set apart for his worship was written with the rest of the Commandments upon man's heart at his first creation, and God's resting from all his works on the first seventh day, his blessing and sanctifying thereof (Gen. ii. 1—3), were sufficient evidences of the will of God to mankind that they should observe every seventh day thereafter till God should be pleased to alter it.

Q. 29. How is the morality of the Sabbath evinced from the FIRST INSTITUTION of it?

A. Being instituted while Adam was in innocency, and consequently before all types and ceremonies respecting an atonement for sin, and being appointed him upon a moral ground, without any particular reference to an innocent state more than any other, it must therefore be of perpetual obligation.

Q. 30. What was the moral ground upon which the Sabbath was appointed unto Adam?

A. It was this, that infinite wisdom saw it meet for God's glory, and needful for man's good, that man have one day in the week for more immediate and special converse with God.

Q. 31. What need was there for Adam in innocence, being perfectly holy, to have one day by another for more immediate converse with God?

A. That herein he might be like unto God, who set him an example of holy working six days, and of a holy resting on the seventh.

Q. 32. Could Adam's mind be equally intense upon the immediate worship of God, when about his ordinary employment in dressing the garden, as on a day set apart for that purpose?

A. No; for though there could be no interruption of his happiness and fellowship with God when dressing the garden, as he was a perfect creature, yet, being at the same time a finite creature, his mind, while he was about that employment, could not be so intense upon the immediate worshiping of God as it would be on a day set apart for that purpose; therefore it was fit he should have such a day, that therein he might have uninterrupted freedom in the immediate contemplation and enjoyment of his Maker, without any avocation from worldly things.

Q. 33. What may be inferred from this for the morality of the Sabbath?

A. That if Adam in innocence needed a Sabbath for the more immediate service and solemn worship of God, much more do we, who are sinful creatures, and so immersed in worldly cares, need such a day.

Q. 34. Did the religious observation of the Sabbath take place immediately upon the back of the creation, or not till the publishing of the law at Mount Sinai?

A. It took place at and from the first seventh day after the creation: for God's blessing and sanctifying of the Sabbath is related as a thing actually done at that time, and not as a thing to be done upwards of two thousand years thereafter, Gen. ii. 3.

Q. 35. How can the observation of the Sabbath be said to take place immediately after the creation, when the Scripture is wholly silent about the observation of it till the time of Moses?

A. It might as well be argued, that the Sabbath was not observed after Moses' time, during the government of the Judges (which, according to Acts xiii. 20, was "about the space of four hundred and fifty years"), there being no mention of the church's observing a Sabbath during the whole of that

long period, and yet it cannot be supposed that so many godly men as the Judges were would suffer the observation of the Sabbath to go into entire desuetude.

Q. 36. Is there any evidence from Scripture that the Israelites knew the observation of the Sabbath to be a moral duty, before the publishing of the law from Mount Sinai?

A. Yes; for when the manna was first given them, before they came to Mount Sinai, Moses speaks of the Sabbath as a day well known to them, *Exod. xvi. 23.* "To-morrow is the rest of the holy Sabbath unto the Lord."

Q. 37. How may the morality of the Sabbath be demonstrated from its *SITUATION* in the Decalogue, or Ten Commandments?

A. It is placed in the midst of moral precepts, and must therefore be of the same nature and kind with them. It has the same dignity and honour put upon it that the other nine Commandments have; for it was with them proclaimed from the mouth of God in the hearing of all Israel; twice written upon tables of stone by the finger of God, and with them lodged within the ark; none of which privileges were conferred upon the ceremonial law; and consequently the Fourth Commandment must be of the same perpetual obligation with the other moral precepts, *James ii. 10.*

Q. 38. Was there any thing *TYPICAL* of Christ in the original institution of the Sabbath?

A. It is impossible there could; for Adam in innocence being under a covenant of works had no need of Christ, or the revelation of him by types; no, not to confirm him in the covenant, *Gal. iii. 12.*

Q. 39. What would have been the consequence if the Sabbath had been originally and essentially typical?

A. If so, then it should have been abolished upon the death of Christ, and no more remembrance of it than of the new moons and jubilees, which is indeed what they who argue against the morality of the Sabbath seem mightily to want.

Q. 40. Were not the Israelites commanded to keep the Sabbath-day in memory of their deliverance out of Egypt, which was typical of our redemption by Christ?

A. Yes; their deliverance out of Egypt was annexed at Mount Sinai, as a superadded ground for the observation of that particular seventh day, which God appointed to be kept immediately after the creation, *Deut. v. 15.* For which reason this particular seventh day was abolished at the resurrection of Christ; but still the seventh part of weekly time, fixed by God at the beginning as the substance of this Commandment, remained unchangeably moral.

Q. 41. Will it follow that the substance of this Commandment is ceremonial because it is said of Christ, Matth. xii. 8, "That he is Lord even of the Sabbath-day?"

A. By no means; the very contrary will follow, namely, that such a seventh part of weekly time as is now observed is moral, because he who is Lord of the Sabbath hath appointed it to be so; and consequently has power to order the work of it for his own service.

Q. 42. Is it any argument against the morality of the Sabbath that it was made for man and not man for the Sabbath?

A. No; but rather an argument for it; for the meaning is, that resting on the Sabbath was appointed for man's good, that it might be a means to a farther and better end, even the true sanctification thereof, in the exercise of the duties of piety and mercy required thereon.

59. Q. Which day of the seven hath God appointed to be the weekly Sabbath?

A. From the beginning of the world to the resurrection of Christ God appointed the seventh day of the week to be the weekly Sabbath; and the first day of the week ever since to continue to the end of the world, which is the Christian Sabbath.

Q. 1. When did God appoint the seventh day of the week to be the weekly Sabbath?

A. *From the beginning of the world*, Gen. ii. 2, 3.

Q. 2. Why is it said to be from the beginning of the world when it was not done till after man was created on the sixth day?

A. Because the world, as to its perfection of parts, did not properly begin till the creation was completely finished, which was not till man was made, who was to "have dominion—over all the earth," Gen. i. 26.

Q. 3. How long was this seventh or last day of the week appointed to be the weekly Sabbath?

A. *Till the resurrection of Christ*, Matth. xxviii. 1.

Q. 4. Which day of the week did God appoint for the Sabbath *ever since* that time?

A. *The first day of the week*, Acts xx. 7.

Q. 5. For how long time is the first day of the week appointed to be the weekly Sabbath?

A. *To the end of the world*.

Q. 6. How are we sure that it is appointed to *continue to the end of the world*?

A. Because the canon of Scripture is concluded, and there-

fore no new revelations and institutions to be expected, Rev. xxii. 18, 19.

Q. 7. Why is the first day of the week called the *Christian Sabbath*?

A. Because it was instituted by CHRIST, and uniformly observed by Christians ever since his resurrection.

Q. 8. Are not all Divine institutions observed in virtue of some moral precept?

A. Yes; otherwise the law of the Lord would not be perfect as it is declared to be, Psal. xix. 7.

Q. 9. In virtue of what moral precept has the first day of the week been observed by Christians?

A. In virtue of the Fourth Commandment, even as the means of worship instituted under the New Testament have been observed in virtue of the Second.

Q. 10. How can the first day of the week be observed in virtue of the Fourth Commandment when it is not therein particularly mentioned?

A. The morality of the Sabbath doth not lie in observing the seventh day in order from the creation, but in observing such a seventh day as is determined and appointed by God, which may be either the first or last of the seven days, as he shall see meet.

Q. 11. Under what name or designation is the Christian Sabbath foretold under the Old Testament?

A. Under the name of the EIGHTH DAY, Ezek. xliii. 27. "And when these days are expired, it shall be that upon the EIGHTH DAY, and so forward, the priests shall make your burnt-offerings upon the altar, and your peace-offerings; and I will accept you, saith the Lord."

Q. 12. Why called the eighth day?

A. Because the first day of the week now is the eighth in order from the creation.

Q. 13. What is the efficient cause of the change of the Sabbath?

A. The sovereign will and pleasure of him who is "Lord of the Sabbath," Mark ii. 28.

Q. 14. What is the moving cause hereof?

A. The resurrection of Christ from the dead, which was "early on the first day of the week," Mark xvi. 9.

Q. 15. Why is the day of Christ's resurrection appointed to be the Sabbath?

A. Because his resurrection was a demonstrative evidence that he had completely finished the glorious work of redemption, Rom. i. 4, and therefore it was his RESTING DAY, Heb. iv. 10. "He that has entered into his rest, he also hath ceased from his own works, as God did from his."

Q. 16. Why might not the day of Christ's incarnation, or the day of his passion, have been consecrated to be our Sabbath-days?

A. Because they were both of them days of Christ's labour and sorrow, which he had to go through before he came to his rest, Luke xxiv. 26. In his incarnation and birth he entered upon his work, Gal. iv. 4, 5. In his passion he was under the sorest part of his labour, even the exquisite and unspeakable agonies of his soul, Matth. xxvi. 38.

Q. 17. Why might not the day of his ascension have been made the Sabbath as well as the day of his resurrection?

A. Because on the day of his ascension he entered only into his PLACE of rest, the third heavens; whereas he had entered before into his STATE of rest on the day of his resurrection; and the place is but a circumstance when compared with the state.

Q. 18. Why did God change his day of rest?

A. Because his rest in the work of Creation was marred and spoiled by man's sin, Gen. vi. 6; whereas his rest in the work of redemption entered into at the resurrection of Christ is that wherein he will have eternal and unchangeable pleasure, John xvii. 23. Besides, redemption is a far greater and more excellent work than even that of creation.

Q. 19. How may the change of the Sabbath from the last to the first day of the week be evinced from Scripture?

A. If our Lord Jesus, after his resurrection, met ordinarily with his disciples on the first day of the week; if, after his ascension, he poured out his spirit in an extraordinary manner on that day; if, by the example and practice of the apostles and primitive Christians, recorded in the New Testament, the first day of the week was honoured above any other for the public exercises of God's worship; if, by apostolic precept, the observation of this day rather than any other was enjoined for Sabbath-services; and if this day is peculiarly dignified with the title of the LORD'S DAY, then it must undoubtedly be the Christian Sabbath by Divine institution.

Q. 20. How doth it appear that our Lord, after his resurrection, met ordinarily with his disciples on the first day of the week?

A. From two instances of it expressly recorded, John xx. 19, 26, where it is affirmed, that he met with them on the evening of the same day wherein he arose from the dead, "being the first day of the week;" and that Thomas was not with them when Jesus came, ver. 24. Likewise, on that same day eight days he appeared to them again, when they "were within, and Thomas with them," ver. 26. From

whence it would seem, that he met with them ordinarily on that day during his forty days' abode on the earth after his resurrection.

Q. 21. How is it evident that Christ after his ascension poured out his Spirit in an extraordinary manner on this day?

A. From Acts ii. 1—5. "And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place; and suddenly there came a sound from heaven, and they were all filled with the Holy Ghost," &c.

Q. 22. What was the day of Pentecost?

A. It was the fiftieth day after the passover, when the "new meat-offering" was brought unto the Lord, Numb. xxviii. 26.

Q. 23. How do you prove that this was the first day of the week?

A. From Lev. xxiii. 16, where it is said, that "the morrow after the seventh Sabbath is the fiftieth day" (or Pentecost). And it is certain that the morrow after the Jewish Sabbath must be the first day of the week.

Q. 24. How doth it appear from the example and practice of the apostles and primitive Christians, that the first day of the week was honoured above any other for the public exercises of God's worship?

A. From Acts xx. 7. "And on the first day of the week, when the disciples came together to break bread, Paul preached unto them;" where it is obvious that the disciples met ordinarily upon the first day of the week for hearing the word and celebrating the Sacrament of the Supper: for it is not said the apostle called them, but that they "came together to break bread;" and Paul on that occasion preached unto them.

Q. 25. How may it be proved from the context that the disciples met ordinarily for the public exercises of God's worship on the first day of the week?

A. That they did so may be proved from this, that "Paul abode with them seven days," as is evident from ver. 6; and yet upon none of the seven did they meet for communicating or breaking of bread, but on the first day of the week only: which plainly says, that they held it for the Christian Sabbath, and not the seventh or last day, which is not so much as mentioned.

Q. 26. But do we not read, Acts xiii. 14, that Paul preached in a synagogue on the Sabbath-day; which certainly behoved to be the Jewish Sabbath, or last day of the week?

A. He only preached occasionally on the Jewish Sabbath, as the fittest time, when the Jews were assembled together, to dispense gospel-truth among them, but did not honour this day as a stated time for public worship.

Q. 27. What apostolic precept is there for the observation

of the first day of the week rather than any other for Sabbath services?

A. It is in 1 Cor. xvi. 1, 2. "Now, concerning the collection for the saints, as I have given order to the churches of Galatia, even so do ye. Upon the first day of the week let every one of you lay by him in store, as God hath prospered him."

Q. 28. What is the argument from this text to prove an apostolic precept for observing the first day of the week as the Christian Sabbath?

A. It may run thus: That if collections for the poor are expressly commanded to be made on the first day of the week, it plainly follows that Christians must meet together on that day for this and other Sabbath services.

Q. 29. But may not this be a temporary precept, binding for a time upon the church of Corinth only?

A. As the words of the text expressly affirm that it was binding also upon the churches of Galatia, so the apostle directs his epistle, not to the church of Corinth only, but to "all that in every place call upon the name of Jesus Christ," chap. i. 2, and consequently it must be binding upon all the churches to the end of the world.

Q. 30. In what place of the New Testament is there mention made of a day dignified with the title of the LORD'S DAY?

A. In Rev. i. 10. "I was in the Spirit," says John, "on the LORD'S DAY."

Q. 31. How may it be proved that what is here called the Lord's day is the first day of the week?

A. By these two arguments, That no other day of the week but the first can justly be called the Lord's day; and that the first day of the week is so called in virtue of Christ's sanctifying it for his own honour and service above any other day.

Q. 32. Why can no other day of the week but the first be justly called the Lord's day?

A. Because there is no action or work of Christ (save healing on the Sabbath) mentioned or recorded as done upon any one day of the week by another, except that of his resurrection, which is unanimously affirmed by the evangelists to be on the first day of the week.

Q. 33. How doth it appear that the first day of the week is called the Lord's day in virtue of his sanctifying it for his own honour and service?

A. As the seventh-day Sabbath was called the Sabbath of the Lord, because instituted by him as God-creator, so the first day of the week is called the Lord's day, because instituted by him as God-redeemer; or as the sacrament of

bread and wine is called the Lord's Table, and the Lord's Supper (1 Cor. x. 21, and xi. 20), because it is an ordinance of his institution, so the first day of the week is called the Lord's day for the very same reason.

Q. 34. Would the apostles have observed and recommended the first day of the week for the Christian Sabbath, if they had not been particularly instructed herein by Christ himself?

A. No, surely; for after his passion he spoke of the things pertaining to the kingdom of God, Acts i. 3; whereof the change of the Sabbath from the last to the first day of the week was none of the least; and it is certain that the apostles delivered nothing to the churches as the rule of faith or practice but what they received of the Lord, 1 Cor. xi. 23.

60. Q. How is the Sabbath to be sanctified?

A. The Sabbath is to be sanctified by a holy resting on that day, even from such worldly employments and recreations as are lawful on other days; and spending the whole time in the public and private exercises of God's worship, except so much as is to be taken up in the works of necessity and mercy.

Q. 1. In what sense is the Sabbath said to be *sanctified*?

A. As it is dedicated by God for man's sake and use, that he may keep it holy to God.

Q. 2. In what manner should he keep it holy to God?

A. By *a holy resting* and by holy exercises.

Q. 3. What should we rest from on the Sabbath?

A. *Even from such worldly employments and recreations as are lawful on other days*, or, which is the same thing, from all servile work, Neh. xiii. 15—23.

Q. 4. What is it that makes a work servile?

A. If it is done for our worldly gain, profit, and livelihood, or, if by prudent management, it might have been done the week before, or if it be of such a kind as may be delayed till after the Sabbath, Exod. xxxiv. 21. "Six days thou shalt work, but on the seventh thou shalt rest; in\* earing-time and in harvest thou shalt rest."

Q. 5. Why doth God enjoin rest on the Sabbath so peremptorily, and particularly in the time of ploughing and harvest?

A. Because in these seasons men are most keenly set upon their labour, and may be in the greatest hazard of grudging the time of the Sabbath for rest.

Q. 6. If the weather is unseasonable through the week, do

\* Ploughing-time or seed-time.

not reaping and in-gathering in that case become works of necessity on the Sabbath?

A. By no means; because any unseasonableness of the weather that may happen, being common and general, proceeds only from the course of God's ordinary providence, which we ought not to distrust, in regard of his promise, that "while the earth remaineth, seed-time and harvest—shall not cease," Gen. viii. 22.

Q. 7. If a field of corn is in hazard of being carried away by the unexpected inundation of a river, is it lawful to endeavour the preservation of it upon the Sabbath?

A. Yes; because the dispensation is extraordinary, the case not common nor general, and the damage likewise, in an ordinary way, irrecoverable.

Q. 8. Are Christians under the New Testament obliged to as strict an abstinence from worldly labour as the Jews were under the Old?

A. Yes, surely; for moral duties being of unchangeable obligation, Christians must be bound to as strict a performance of them now as the Jews were then, Psal. xix. 9.

Q. 9. Were not the Jews prohibited to dress meat on the Sabbath? Exod. xvi. 23.

A. They were prohibited such servile work as was requisite in preparing manna for food, such as the grinding of it in mills, beating it in mortars, and baking it in pans, Numb. xi. 8; but not all dressing of meat for the comfortable nourishment of their bodies no more than we.

Q. 10. How doth it appear that they were allowed to dress meat on the Sabbath for the comfortable nourishment of their bodies?

A. From our Lord's being present at a meal on the Sabbath-day, to which there were several guests bidden, and consequently meat behoved to be prepared and dressed for their entertainment, Luke xiv. 1, 7.

Q. 11. Were not the Jews forbidden to kindle fire in their habitations upon the Sabbath-day? Exod. xxxv. 3.

A. Yes; for any servile work, though it were even making materials for the tabernacle (which is the work spoken of through the following part of that chapter); but they were not forbidden to kindle fires for works of necessity or mercy any more than Christians are.

Q. 12. Were they not ordered to abide every man in his place, and not to go out of his place, on the seventh day? Exod. xvi. 29.

A. The prohibition only respects their going abroad about the unnecessary and servile work of gathering manna upon the Sabbath; otherwise they were allowed to go out about

works of necessity and mercy ; and it appears from Acts i. 12, that they were allowed to travel a Sabbath-day's journey.

Q. 13. What was a Sabbath-day's journey?

A. Whatever was the tradition of the Pharisees about it, it appears to have been the distance of their respective dwellings from the place where they ordinarily attended public ordinances, 2 Kings iv. 23.

Q. 14. Are we not to rest on the Lord's day from lawful recreations as well as from lawful worldly employments?

A. Yes ; because we are expressly required, on this holy day, to abstain from doing our own ways, finding our own pleasure, and speaking our own words, Isa. lviii. 13.

Q. 15. What are these recreations that "are lawful other days?"

A. Innocent pastimes, visiting friends, walking in the fields, talking of the news or common affairs, and the like.

Q. 16. Why are these recreations unlawful on the Lord's day?

A. Because they tend to divert the mind from the duties of the Sabbath as much, if not more, than worldly employments.

Q. 17. Is not the Sabbath a festival or feast-day, and consequently may not our conversation thereon be cheerful and diverting?

A. It is indeed properly a feast-day, but of a spiritual, not of a carnal nature ; we may refresh our bodies moderately, but not sumptuously ; and our conversation ought to turn wholly upon spiritual and heavenly subjects, or such as have a tendency thereunto, after the example of our Lord, Luke xiv. 1—25.

Q. 18. What should be the principal end of our six days' labour?

A. That it be so managed as no way to discompose or unfit us for a holy resting on the Sabbath, or meeting with God on his own day.

Q. 19. What is a holy resting?

A. Not only an abstaining from our own work or labour, but an entering by faith (in the use of appointed means) into the presence and enjoyment of a God in Christ, as the only rest of our souls, Heb. iv. 3 ; and having no work of our own to mind or do, we may be wholly taken up with the works of God.

Q. 20. Why called a holy resting?

A. Because we should rest from worldly labour in order to be employed in the holy exercises which the Lord requires on this day ; otherwise, as to bare cessation, our cattle rest from outward labour as well as we.

Q. 21. What are the holy EXERCISES in which we ought to be employed on the Lord's day?

A. *In the public and private exercises of God's worship.*

Q. 22. What are the public exercises of God's worship wherein we should be employed?

A. Hearing the word preached, Rom. x. 17; joining in public prayers and praises, Luke xxiv. 53; and partaking of the sacraments, Acts xx. 7.

Q. 23. What is included under the *private* exercises of God's worship?

A. Family and secret duties.

Q. 24. What are the duties incumbent on us in a family capacity on the Lord's day?

A. Family-worship and family catechising, together with Christian conference, as there is occasion, Lev. xxiii. 3. It is the Sabbath of the Lord in all your DWELLINGS or private families, and therefore God is to be worshipped in them on that day.

Q. 25. What is family worship?

A. It is the daily joining of all that are united in a domestic relation, or who are dwelling together in the same house and family, in singing God's praises, Acts ii. 47; reading his word, Deut. vi. 7; and praying unto him, Jer. x. 25.

Q. 26. How do you prove family-worship to be a duty daily incumbent upon those who have families?

A. From Scripture-precept and from Scripture-example.

Q. 27. How is family-worship evinced from Scripture-precept?

A. Besides that this Commandment enjoins every master of a family to sanctify the Sabbath within his gates, that is, to worship God in his family; there are also other Scriptures inculcating the same thing by necessary consequence, such as, Eph. vi. 18, "Praying always with ALL prayer and supplication;" 1 Tim. ii. 18, "I will therefore that men pray EVERY WHERE." If with ALL prayer, then sure with family-prayer; if EVERY WHERE, then certainly in our families.

Q. 28. What are the examples of family-worship recorded in Scripture for our imitation?

A. Amongst others there are the examples of Abraham, Gen. xviii. 19; of Joshua, chap. xxiv. 15; "As for me and my house we will serve the Lord;" of David, 2 Sam. vi. 20; of Cornelius, Acts x. 2; and to crown all, the example of our blessed Lord, whom we find singing psalms, Matth. xxvi. 30; and praying with his disciples, who were his family, Luke ix. 18.

Q. 29. What should be the subject-matter of family-catechising?

A. What they have been hearing through the day, together with the principles of our religion, as laid out in the Shorter Catechism, with the helps that are published upon the same, which masters of families ought to use for their assistance in this work.

Q. 30. What are the proper seasons of Christian conference on the Sabbath?

A. At meals, and in the interval of duties; our speech should be always, but especially on the "Lord's day, seasoned with salt," Col. iv. 6.

Q. 31. What are the secret duties in which we ought to be exercised on the Lord's day?

A. Secret prayer, reading the Scriptures, and other soul-edifying books, meditation upon Divine subjects, and self-examination.

Q. 32. With what frame and disposition of soul ought the public and private exercises of God's worship to be gone about?

A. With a spiritual frame and disposition, Rev. i. 10. "I was IN THE SPIRIT on the Lord's day."

Q. 33. What is it to be "in the Spirit on the Lord's day?"

A. It is not only to have the actual inhabitation of the Spirit, which is the privilege of believers "every day," Ezek. xxxvi. 27; but to have the influences and operations of the Spirit "more liberally let out," Luke iv. 31, 32; and the graces thereof in a "more lively exercise" than at other times, Acts ii. 41.

Q. 34. What moral argument have we from the ceremonial law for offering a greater plenty of spiritual sacrifices to God on the Sabbath than upon other days?

A. The daily sacrifice, or continual burnt-offering, was to be doubled on the Sabbath, Numb. xxviii. 9; intimating, that they were bound to double their devotions on that day, which was consecrated to God, to be spent in his service.

Q. 35. How much of the Sabbath is to be spent in public and private exercises of God's worship?

A. The WHOLE of it, from the ordinary time of rising on other days to the ordinary time of going to rest, "except so much as is to be taken up in the works of necessity and mercy."

Q. 36. What is to be understood by works of necessity?

A. Such as could not be foreseen, nor provided against the day before, nor delayed till the day after the Sabbath.

Q. 37. What instances may be given of such works of necessity on the Lord's day?

A. Flying from and defending ourselves against an enemy, quenching of fire, accidentally or wilfully kindled; standing

by the helm, or working a ship at sea (providing they do not weigh anchor, or hoist sail from harbours or firths, on the Lord's day), and the like.

Q. 38. What are the works of mercy which may be done on the Sabbath?

A. The moderate refreshment of our bodies, Luke vi. 1; visiting the sick, preparing and administering remedies unto them, Luke xiii. 16; feeding our cattle, ver. 15, and preserving their lives, if in danger, chap. xiv. 5; and making collections for the poor, 1 Cor. xvi. 2.

Q. 39. What cautions are requisite about works of necessity and mercy?

A. That these works be real, and not pretended; that we spend as little time about them as possible; and that we endeavour to attain a holy frame of spirit while about them.

Q. 40. How doth it appear that works of necessity and mercy are lawful on the Lord's day?

A. Because though God rested from his work of creation on the seventh day, yet he did not rest thereon from preserving what he had made.

Q. 41. "Why is the charge of keeping the Sabbath more specially directed to governors of families and other superiors?"

A. "—Because they are bound not only to keep it themselves, but to see that it be observed by all those that are under their charge, and because they are prone oftentimes to hinder them by employments of their own."\*

Q. 42. Ought not magistrates to punish those who are guilty of the open and presumptuous breach of the Sabbath?

A. Undoubtedly they should; and they have the example of Nehemiah for a precedent, worthy of their imitation in this matter.

Q. 43. What is the most effectual way for the civil magistrate to suppress Sabbath-profanation?

A. To be impartial in the execution of the laws against Sabbath-breaking, especially upon those who are of a more eminent rank and station, because they ought to be exemplary to others, Neh. xiii. 17. "Then I contended with the NOBLES of Judah, and said unto them, What evil thing is this that ye do, and profane the Sabbath-day?"

Q. 44. "Why is the word REMEMBER set in the beginning of the Fourth Commandment?"

A. "—Partly because we are very ready to forget it; and partly because in keeping it we are helped better to keep all the rest of the Commandments." †

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 118.

† Ibid. quest. 121.

61. Q. What is forbidden in the Fourth Commandment?

A. The Fourth Commandment forbiddeth the omission, or careless performance of the duties required, and the profaning the day by idleness, or doing that which is in itself sinful, or by unnecessary thoughts, words, or works, about our worldly employments or recreations.

Q. 1. How are the sins ranked that are forbidden in this Commandment?

A. They are ranked into sins of omission and sins of commission.\*

Q. 2. What are the sins of *omission* here forbidden?

A. Both the total neglect of the duties required, and the neglect of the *careful performance* of them, when essayed.

Q. 3. What is the total neglect of the duties required on the Sabbath an evidence of?

A. It is a plain evidence of the neglect of all religious duties through the week, and consequently an evidence of Atheism, profaneness, and apostasy.

Q. 4. When are persons guilty of the *careless performance* of the duties required on the Sabbath?

A. When they go about them in a partial, formal, and lifeless way, Matth. xv. 8.

Q. 5. What is it to go about duties in a partial way?

A. It is to perform some of them and omit others equally necessary; such as attending the public and neglecting the private exercises of God's worship, or the contrary.

Q. 6. What is formality in duty?

A. It is the bare outward performance thereof, without regarding the manner in which it ought to be done, or the vital principle from whence it should flow, 2 Tim. iii. 5.

Q. 7. What are the ordinary causes of the dead and lifeless performance of religious duties?

A. Wandering thoughts, weariness, and drowsiness, are among none of the least.

Q. 8. What is the best antidote against wandering thoughts?

A. Faith in exercise; for this will fix the attention to what we are presently engaged in, whether hearing, praying, or praising, Psal. lvii. 7.

Q. 9. Whence arises weariness in duty?

A. From the natural bias of the heart and affections to worldly things rather than religious exercises, Amos viii. 5.

\* See both these explained, Part I. on the head "Of Sin in General."

“When will the new moon be gone, that we may sell corn? and the Sabbath, that we may set forth wheat?”

Q. 10. What is the evil of drowsiness, particularly in hearing the word, or joining in prayer and praise?

A. If it be voluntary and customary, it is a manifest contempt of the word and presence of the great God, and paying less regard to him than we even do to our fellow-creatures.

Q. 11. What are the sins of COMMISSION forbidden in this Commandment?

A. *The profaning the day by idleness, or doing that which is in itself sinful, or by unnecessary thoughts, words, or works, or about our worldly employments and recreations.*

Q. 12. What is the *idleness* here prohibited?

A. It is a loitering away the Sabbath in a slothful, indolent, and inactive manner, without any real benefit or advantage either to soul or body, Matth. xx. 3.

Q. 13. Why is there a prohibition of *doing that which is in itself sinful* on the Lord's day, when it is unlawful on every other day?

A. Because whatever the sinful action be, there is a greater aggravation of guilt in committing it on the Sabbath, which ought to be kept holy to God, than upon any other day, Jer. xvii. 27.

Q. 14. What are these *thoughts, words, or works*, that are here called *unnecessary*?

A. They are such as are *about our worldly employments or recreations*; or they are such thoughts, words, or works, as are not inevitably used about the works of necessity and mercy, which are lawful on this day.

Q. 15. Why is the day said to be profaned by the sins here forbidden?

A. Because these sins are each of them the reverse of that holiness which should shine in all our duties, public and private, on the Lord's day, Isa. lvii. 13, 14.

62. Q. What are the reasons annexed to the Fourth Commandment?

A. The reasons annexed to the Fourth Commandment are, God's allowing us six days of the week for our own employments, his challenging a special propriety in the seventh, his own example, and his blessing the Sabbath-day.

Q. 1. How many reasons are there annexed to this Commandment?

A. FOUR, which are more than any of the rest.

Q. 2. Why are more reasons annexed to this Command than to any of the rest?

A. Because of the proneness of men to break it; and likewise that the violation thereof may be rendered the more inexcusable.

Q. 3. Which is the first reason?

A. It is *God's allowing us six days of the week for our own employments*; in these words, *Six days shalt thou labour and do all thy work.*

Q. 4. Wherein lies the strength of this reason?

A. It lies in this, that it would be most highly unreasonable and ungrateful to grudge a seventh part of our time in the more immediate service and worship of God, when he has been so liberal as to allow us six parts thereof for our own secular and worldly affairs.

Q. 5. What similar instance of ingratitude may be given for the illustration hereof?

A. The sin of our first parents in refusing to abstain from one tree, when they were allowed the free use of all the rest of the garden, Gen. iii. 2, 3, 6.

Q. 6. Is working six days in our own employment a precept properly belonging to this Commandment?

A. No; it is properly a branch of the Eighth Commandment, but is brought in here occasionally to enforce the sacred observation of a seventh day, when God has been so bountiful as to allow us six for our own occasions.

Q. 7. Which is the second reason annexed to this Commandment?

A. It is *his challenging a special propriety in the seventh*; in these words, "But the seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord thy God."

Q. 8. What is the force of this reason?

A. The force of it is this:—as that gracious God, who makes a grant of himself unto us in the covenant of promise, claims this day as his own, so it is our greatest privilege or happiness to have access unto and communion with him thereon, Isa. lviii. 14.

Q. 9. Wherein lies the privilege or happiness of communion with God on his own day?

A. In having a foretaste in grace here of what shall be more fully enjoyed in glory hereafter, 1 Cor. xiii. 12.

Q. 10. Which is the third reason?

A. It is *his own example*, in these words, "For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day."

Q. 11. Could not God have made heaven and earth, the

sea, and all that in them is, in less time than the space of six days?

A. No doubt; he could have made all things in the same beauty and perfection wherein ever they appeared in an instant of time, if he had pleased.

Q. 12. Why then did he take six days?

A. To fix the morality of six days for worldly labour, and of a seventh for holy rest; and both these by his own example.

Q. 13. But doth not the example of God's resting the seventh day oblige us still to observe the seventh day in order from the creation as a Sabbath?

A. No; because though moral examples bind always to the kind of the action, yet not always to every particular circumstance thereof.

Q. 14. What is the kind of the action which God's example binds us unto?

A. It is to observe one day in seven for holy resting, either the last or first, as he shall appoint.

Q. 15. How can God's example of resting on the seventh day be an argument for our resting on the first?

A. Though the observation of a particular day in seven be MUTABLE, yet the duty of observing a seventh part of weekly time is MORAL, both by God's precept and example.

Q. 16. Which is the fourth reason annexed to this Commandment?

A. It is *his blessing the Sabbath-day*, in these words, "Wherefore the Lord blessed the Sabbath-day, and hallowed it."

Q. 17. In what sense may the Sabbath be said to be blessed?

A. Not only by God's consecrating the day itself to a holy use, but by his blessing it to the true observers of it, and by his blessing them in it.

Q. 18. How doth God bless the Sabbath to the true observers of it?

A. By ordering it so in his providence, that the religious observation of the Sabbath shall be no detriment unto, but rather a furtherance of their lawful employments through the week, even as the profaning of it draws a train of all miseries and woes after it, Neh. xiii. 18.

Q. 19. How doth he bless them in it or upon it?

A. By making it the happy season of a more plenteous communication of all spiritual blessings unto them, Isa. lviii. 14.

Q. 20. What doth the illative particle WHEREFORE teach us?

A. That God's resting on the Sabbath was the great rea-

son of his setting it apart to be a day of holy rest unto us, that we might contemplate the works of God, both of creation and redemption, thereupon.

63. Q. Which is the Fifth Commandment?

A. The Fifth Commandment is, Honour thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

64. Q. What is required in the Fifth Commandment?

A. The Fifth Commandment requireth the preserving the honour and performing the duties belonging to every one in their several places and relations, as superiors, inferiors, or equals.

Q. 1. "Who are meant by father and mother in the Fifth Commandment?"

A. "Not only earthly parents, but all superiors in age and gifts; and especially such as, by God's ordinance, are over us in place and authority, whether in family, church, or commonwealth."\*

Q. 2. "Why are superiors styled father and mother?"

A. "To teach them, in all duties towards their inferiors, like natural parents, to express love and tenderness to them, according to their several relations; and to work inferiors to a greater willingness and cheerfulness in performing their duties to their superiors as to their parents."†

Q. 3. "What is the general scope of the Fifth Commandment?"

A. It is "the performance of those duties we mutually owe in our several relations."‡

Q. 4. What are the RELATIONS wherein we stand to each other?

A. All mankind stand related to each other either *as superiors, inferiors, or equals*.

Q. 5. Who are our *superiors*?

A. All that are above us in office, place, or dignity.

Q. 6. Who are meant by *inferiors*?

A. Such as are subject to others, or below them in station and gifts.

Q. 7. Whom do you understand by *equals*?

A. Such as are of like age and condition in the world.

Q. 8. What is the general duty required in this Commandment?

A. It is HONOUR: "Honour thy father and thy mother."

Q. 9. What is meant by the *honour* here required?

A. All inward regard and esteem, manifested by outward

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 124. † Ibid. quest. 125. ‡ Ibid. quest. 126.

tokens of respect, Rom. xii. 10; reverence, chap. xiii. 7; and obedience, Heb. xiii. 17.

Q. 10. What is the rule and measure of that obedience and submission which is due from inferiors to their superiors?

A. The law of God; for, when any thing is enjoined contrary thereunto, the fixed rule is, "To obey God rather than men," Acts iv. 19, and v. 29.

Q. 11. What is it that procures honour from one person to another?

A. It is something of eminence, excellency, or worth, that is discernible in them, Acts x. 24.

Q. 12. Are there not different degrees of external honour due to some beyond others?

A. Yes; according to the different offices and stations wherein God places them in the world, 1 Tim. v. 1, 2.

Q. 13. What is that degree of honour which the meanest and lowest part of mankind are entitled unto from the greatest and highest?

A. It is to be esteemed and regarded by them in proportion as they are necessary and useful, Eph. vi. 9.

Q. 14. Why are we commanded to honour all men? 1 Pet. ii. 17.

A. Because there are few or none in whom we may not observe some gift or other in which they are superior to us, if we were to judge ourselves humbly and impartially, Phil. ii. 3.

Q. 15. Are men to be honoured according to their riches?

A. No; but according as they employ their riches in some measure for the good of others, either in the church or commonwealth, 1 Tim. vi. 17, 18.

Q. 16. What are the several relations wherein duties are mutually to be performed, according to this Commandment?

A. They are such as subsist between parents and children, magistrates and subjects, ministers and people, husbands and wives, masters and servants, and likewise between those who have a greater or lesser degree of gifts and graces.

Q. 17. Who are they that have the first and natural right to honour and respect?

A. NATURAL PARENTS, fathers and mothers.

Q. 18. Is equal honour and regard due from children to their mother as to their father?

A. Yes, surely; and therefore, to prevent any difference in respect of esteem, reverence, and obedience, she is named before the father, in Lev. xix. 3. "Ye shall fear every man his mother and father."

Q. 19. What are the duties of parents to their children?

A. To train them up for God, Prov. xxii. 6; in the know-

ledge and profession of the true religion, Deut. vi. 7; to teach them by example as well as by precept, Psal. ci. 2, 3; to be careful in applying suitable and seasonable correction to their faults, Prov. xiii. 24, and xix. 18, and xxiii. 13, 14; to provide for them according to ability, 2 Cor. xii. 14; and to be earnest in prayer to God for a blessing upon them, Gen. xlvi. 15, 16.

Q. 20. What are the duties of children to their parents?

A. To love them dearly, Gen. xli. 29; to esteem and think highly of them in their minds, Lev. xix. 3; Mal. i. 6; to hearken to their counsels, Prov. ix. 1; and obey their lawful commands, Eph. vi. 1; to submit patiently to their corrections, Heb. xii. 9; and to succour and relieve them in case of poverty and want, Gen. xlvii. 12, especially in old age, Ruth iv. 15.

Q. 21. May children dispose of themselves in marriage without the knowledge or consent of their parents?

A. No; as appears from the charge given by Abraham concerning his son Isaac, Gen. xxiv. 3, 4, and that of Isaac to Jacob, chap. xxviii. 1, 2; but if children shall dispose of themselves without the knowledge and consent of their parents, they act contrary to the honour, deference, and gratitude they owe to them, as Esau did, Gen. xxvi. 34, 35.

Q. 22. What are the duties of magistrates towards their subjects?

A. To establish good laws, 2 Kings xviii. 4; and see them impartially executed, Rom. xiii. 3, 4; to protect their subjects in their religion, lives, and liberties, 1 Pet. ii. 14; and to be nursing-fathers to the church, Isa. xlix. 23.

Q. 23. What is the duty of the magistrate with reference to the church of Christ?

A. Although he "may not assume to himself the administration of word and sacraments, or the power of the keys of the kingdom of heaven, yet he hath authority, and it is his duty to take order, that unity and peace be preserved in the church,—that the truth of God be kept pure and entire,—that all blasphemies and heresies be suppressed,—all corruptions and abuses in worship and discipline prevented and reformed,—and all the ordinances of God duly settled, administered, and observed."\*

Q. 24. What are the duties of subjects towards their magistrates?

A. To honour and reverence them, 2 Sam. ix. 6; to obey their just laws, Rom. xiii. 7; to pray for them, 1 Tim. ii. 1, 2; and to support and defend their persons and authority, 1 Sam. xxvi. 15, 16; Esther vi. 2.

\* Confession, chap. xxiii. § 3, with the Scriptures there quoted.

Q. 25. Are subjects bound to be obsequious to the lawful commands of magistrates who are of a different religion from them?

A. "Infidelity, or difference in religion, doth not make void the magistrate's just and legal authority, nor free the people from their due obedience to him."\*

Q. 26. What are the duties of ministers to their people?

A. Diligently to study, 1 Tim. iv. 15, and faithfully to preach the gospel, 2 Tim. iv. 2, not shunning to declare unto them all the counsel of God, Acts xx. 27; to evidence their own belief of their doctrine by a holy and exemplary walk, 1 Tim. iv. 12; to watch for their souls, as they that must give an account, Heb. xiii. 17; and to pray much for them, Rom. i. 9. All which duties require their ordinary residence among them, 1 Pet. v. 2.

Q. 27. What are the duties of people to their ministers?

A. To esteem them very highly in love for their work's sake, 1 Thess. v. 13; to strive together in their prayers to God for them, Rev. xv. 30, that they may be enabled to give them their portion of meat in due season, Luke xii. 42; to attend diligently upon the ordinances dispensed by them, Heb. x. 25; to defend their character and doctrine against unjust calumnies and reproaches, 1 Tim. v. 19; and to make a competent and comfortable provision for them, Gal. vi. 6.

Q. 28. What are the duties mutually incumbent upon husband and wife?

A. The most tender and affectionate love on both sides, Eph. v. 28—33; the strictest fidelity to the marriage-bed and covenant, Matth. v. 28; and the promoting the temporal and spiritual welfare of each other, 1 Tim. v. 8; 1 Pet. iii. 7.

Q. 29. What are the duties of masters to their servants?

A. To be meek and gentle towards them, forbearing threatening, Eph. vi. 9; to instruct them in the principles of religion, Gen. xviii. 19; to see to their external observation of the Sabbath, Exod. xx. 10; and to pay them punctually their wages, Deut. xxiv. 15.

Q. 30. What are the duties of servants to their masters?

A. To be diligent and faithful in their masters' work, "not with eye-service as men-pleasers, but with good-will, doing service as to the Lord, and not to men," Eph. vi. 6, 7; to "obey in all things their masters according to the flesh," Col. iii. 22; and "to please them well in all things, not answering again," Tit. ii. 9.

Q. 31. Are masters and servants on earth subject to one common Lord and Master in heaven?

\* Confession, chap. xxiii. § 4, with the Scriptures quoted to prove this article.

A. Yes ; and therefore they ought to behave towards one another as in his sight ; for there is no “ respect of persons with him,” Eph. vi. 9.

Q. 32. What are the duties of those, who have a larger measure of gifts and graces conferred upon them, towards such as have a lesser share of the same ?

A. To be exemplary in humility and self-denial, Gen. xxxii. 10 ; as having nothing but what they have received, 1 Cor. iv. 7 ; to be communicative of what the Lord has freely given them, Matth. x. 8 ; and improve their talents for the benefit of themselves and others, chap. xxv. 16.

Q. 33. What are the duties of such as are weaker in gifts and graces towards those that are stronger ?

A. To be followers of them in so far as they are of Christ, 1 Cor. xi. 1 ; to be willing to learn from their experience, Heb. vi. 12 ; and to “ covet earnestly the best gifts,” 1 Cor. xii. 31.

Q. 34. What is the duty of the younger towards the aged ?

A. To honour and respect them, especially if “ the hoary head be found in the way of righteousness,” Prov. xvi. 31 ; “ Thou shalt rise up before the hoary head, and honour the face of the old man, Lev. xix. 32.

Q. 35. What are the duties of equals to one another ?

A. To provoke each other “ unto love and good works,” Heb. x. 24 ; to “ be kindly affectionate one to another, in honour preferring one another,” Rom. xii. 10.

Q. 36. What is the fruit and consequence of the conscientious performance of these relative duties ?

A. Hereby outward peace and concord will be better maintained between man and man, 1 Pet. iii. 10, 11 ; and likewise the members of Christ’s body will be knit more closely to one another in love, 1 John iv. 7.

65. Q. What is forbidden in the Fifth Commandment ?

A. The Fifth Commandment forbiddeth the neglecting of or doing any thing against the honour and duty which belongeth to every one in their several places and relations.

Q. 1. What is it to neglect the honour and duty which belongeth to every one in their several places and relations ?

A. It is not only to omit the performance of such relative duties altogether, but, even when they are performed, to do them without any regard to the command and authority of God enjoining them, Isa. xxix. 13.

Q. 2. What is it to do *any thing against the honour and duty which belongeth to every one ?*

A. It is to commit those sins which are the very opposite of the relative duties incumbent on us, Rom. ii. 22.

Q. 3. What are the sins of *inferiors* against their *superiors*?

A. "Envyng at, contempt of, and rebellion against their persons and places, in their lawful counsels, commands, and corrections."\*

Q. 4. What are the sins of *superiors*?

A. "—Commanding things unlawful, or not in the power of inferiors to perform; counselling, encouraging, or favouring them in that which is evil," and "dissuading, discouraging, or discountenancing them in that which is good."†

Q. 5. What are the sins of *equals*?

A. "Envyng the gifts, grieving at the advancement or prosperity one of another, and usurping pre-eminence one over another."‡

Q. 6. What punishment did the law of Moses inflict upon children for smiting or cursing their parents?

A. DEATH, Exod. xxi. 15. "He that smiteth his father or his mother shall surely be put to DEATH." And ver. 17, "He that curseth his father or his mother shall surely be put to DEATH."

Q. 7. Why was such a severe punishment inflicted for these crimes?

A. Because either beating or cursing of parents are sins directly opposite to the light and law of nature, and pregnant evidences not only of the worst kind of ingratitude, but of incurable disobedience, and therefore the equity of this punishment seems to be approved by our Lord under the New Testament, Matth. xv. 4.

66. Q. What is the reason annexed to the Fifth Commandment?

A. The reason annexed to the Fifth Commandment is a promise of long life and prosperity (as far as it shall serve for God's glory and their own good) to all such as keep this Commandment.

Q. 1. Whether doth the *promise* annexed to this Commandment respect temporal or spiritual good?

A. It respects temporal good, to show that "godliness is profitable unto all things, having the promise of the life that now is," as well as "of that which is to come," 1 Tim. iv. 8.

Q. 2. What is the temporal good here promised?

\* See Larger Catechism, quest. 128, with the Scriptures quoted.

† Larger Catechism, quest. 130.

‡ Ibid. quest. 132.

A. It is *long life*; in these words, “That thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.”

Q. 3. Is it long life merely that is promised without any thing else?

A. No; it is long life *and prosperity*, or the blessings and comforts of life, without which long life would be a grievous burden, Rev. ix. 6.

Q. 4. Hath not this promise a particular reference to obedient children among the Jews, their living long in the land of Judea, which God gave unto them?

A. Any reference it had unto them is not exclusive of a reference or relation to children that shall honour their parents in any other part of the earth to the end of the world, for so all the apostles explain it; Eph. vi. 2, 3, “Honour thy father and thy mother,—that it may be well with thee, and that thou mayest live long on the earth.”

Q. 5. What is the difference between the promise of long life in this Commandment and the promise of mercy in the Second?

A. The promise of showing mercy in the Second Commandment extends to all such as love God and keep his Commandments in general; but the promise of long life here extends only to the keepers of this Commandment in particular.

Q. 6. Hath this promise always a literal accomplishment, or do godly and obedient children always live long on earth?

A. If any of them are removed by death in their younger years, it is either to take them “away from the evil to come,” Isa. lviii. 1, or to transplant them so much sooner “to a better country, that is, an heavenly,” Heb. xi. 16.

Q. 7. What are the things which tend to make a long life a happy and comfortable one?

A. They are these three, among others,—growth in grace and holiness in proportion to our advancing in years, Psal. xcii. 13, 14; retaining the entire exercise of reason, and some vigour of body in old age, Deut. xxxiv. 7; and continuing useful to others in our generation to the end, Josh. xxiv. 25, compared with ver. 29.

Q. 8. Why is the Fifth Commandment called the First Commandment with promise? Eph. vi. 2.

A. Because it is the First Commandment of the Second Table, and the only Commandment in it that hath an express promise annexed unto it.

Q. 9. Why is there a special and express promise annexed to this Commandment when it is so strongly enforced by the light of nature?

A. To show the great regard that God has to the lawful authority of parents, Deut. xxi. 18—22, and to engage chil-

dren to behave dutifully and obsequiously towards them, Prov. iv. 10.

Q. 10. Whether is the promise of long life in this Commandment absolute or limited?

A. It is limited, and that in the most comfortable manner.

Q. 11. What is the comfortable limitation?

A. Long life with prosperity is promised *as far as it shall serve for God's glory and their own good.*

Q. 12. Could any wish for long life and prosperity upon other terms?

A. No child of God will desire any temporal blessings but as it is for God's glory and their good, Prov. xxx. 8.

Q. 13. What advantage have the godly with respect to temporal blessings above the wicked?

A. They are warranted by promise, which the wicked are not, to expect as many temporal good things as are needful and necessary for them, Psal. xxxiv. 10; Isa. xxxiii. 16; and God's blessing upon what they enjoy, however small their portion of temporal comforts may be, Psal. xxxvii. 16. "A little that a righteous man hath is better than the riches of many wicked."

67. Q. Which is the Sixth Commandment?

A. The Sixth Commandment is, Thou shalt not kill.

68. Q. What is required in the Sixth Commandment?

A. The Sixth Commandment requireth all lawful endeavours to preserve our own life and the life of others.

Q. 1. What doth this Commandment chiefly respect?

A. The LIFE of man, which is the nearest and most valuable of all his temporal concerns, Job ii. 4. "Skin for skin; yea, all that a man hath will he give for his life."

Q. 2. What makes the life of man valuable?

A. His being "made in the image of God," Gen. ix. 6.

Q. 3. What doth this Commandment require with reference to man's life?

A. *All lawful endeavours to preserve it in ourselves and others.*

Q. 4. What lawful endeavours should we use for the preservation of *our own* life?

A. The "just defence thereof against violence; a sober use of meat, drink, physic, sleep, labour, and recreation."\*

Q. 5. By what means should we endeavour to preserve *the life of others*?

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 135.

A. "By resisting all thoughts and purposes, subduing all passions, and avoiding all occasions, temptations, and practices, which tend to the unjust taking away the life of any."\*

Q. 6. Why are we restricted by the answer to *lawful endeavours*?

A. To caution and guard us against the unlawful means which some have used for the preservation of their lives.

Q. 7. What are the unlawful means which some have used for this end?

A. Denying the truth, 1 Tim. i. 19, 20, and lying, Gen. xii. 12, 13.

Q. 8. What will be the consequence of denying the truth for preserving of natural life?

A. The losing of a better life than that which we intend thereby to preserve, Matth. xvi. 25, 26.

Q. 9. May not a lie be told at a time for preserving life, especially if the preservation thereof be for the public good?

A. At no time and on no occasion whatsoever are we to "do evil that good may come," Rom. iii. 8.

Q. 10. Are we restricted by this Commandment to the preservation of bodily life only?

A. No; we are also required to consult the welfare of our own souls and the souls of others.

Q. 11. What is required of us for the welfare of our own soul?

A. A careful avoiding of all sin, Prov. ix. 19, and a diligent use of all the means of grace, 1 Pet. ii. 2.

Q. 12. What is required of us for promoting the welfare of the souls of others?

A. That we be communicative of our knowledge and experiences unto them as occasion offers, Psal. lxvi. 16; that we pray for them, James v. 16; and that we set an example of holy walking before them, Matth. v. 16.

Q. 13. What are those Christian virtues or graces which this Commandment requires in order to the preservation of life?

A. It requires for this end, "love, compassion, meekness, gentleness, kindness,—and comforting and succouring the distressed."†

Q. 14. Why should we bear a love to mankind in general?

A. Because they are partakers of the same nature, and possessed of the same rational faculties with us, Acts xvii. 26, 28.

Q. 15. How doth love contribute to the preservation of life?

A. It covers all those infirmities, and buries all those quarrels which tend to raise strife and variance among men, Prov. x. 12.

Q. 16. What influence hath compassion upon the duty here required?

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 135.

† Ibid.

A. It affects us so deeply with the calamities and miseries of our fellow-creatures, that it inclines us to relieve them according to ability, Luke x. 33, 34.

Q. 17. How doth meekness tend to preserve life?

A. As it governs our passions, Prov. xiv. 29, and prevents our being easily disturbed at the unkind and unmannerly treatment of others, Col. iii. 13.

Q. 18. How doth gentleness contribute to the duty here mentioned?

A. As it excites to an affable and courteous behaviour towards all we are conversant with, 1 Pet. iii. 8, and disposes us to put the most favourable construction upon any of their actions that may appear doubtful, 1 Cor. xiii. 5.

Q. 19. What influence has kindness upon preserving life?

A. As it stirs up to the performance of all good offices in our power, both to the souls and bodies of men, Rom. xiii. 10, 12.

Q. 20. What should engage us to comfort and succour the distressed?

A. A desire to honour the Lord with our substance, Prov. iii. 9, and to lend unto him, who will surely pay us again, chap. xix. 17.

69. Q. What is forbidden in the Sixth Commandment?

A. The Sixth Commandment forbiddeth the taking away of our own life or the life of our neighbour unjustly, and whatsoever tendeth thereunto.

Q. 1. Doth this precept, *Thou shalt not kill*, prohibit the killing of beasts?

A. No; God made a grant of them to man for food, and other uses, Gen. xi. 3, and iii. 21. Nevertheless, the exercising cruelty upon beasts, as Balaam did, Numb. xxii. 29, is very unbecoming all sober men, for "a righteous man regardeth the life of his beast," Prov. xii. 10.

Q. 2. Were not the Jews prohibited to seethe a kid in his mother's milk, Deut. xiv. 21, and to kill the dam when they took the young, chap. xxii. 6, 7?

A. As the doing either of those was an evidence of the savage disposition and temper of some men, so the reason of the prohibition was to curb and restrain all cruelty to the brute creatures, in order to prevent any inlet to the horrid sin of murder, or the barbarous usage of one another.

Q. 3. What are the general sins here forbidden?

A. *The taking away of our own life, or the life of our neighbour unjustly*, or whatsoever hath a tendency to either of the two.

Q. 4. Is it lawful, in any case, to take away *our own life*?

A. No; it is absolutely unlawful, in any case whatever, to desert our station, or leave the world, without the permission and allowance of the sovereign Lord of our life, Job xiv. 14.

Q. 5. Is there any instance in Scripture of a good man being suffered to lay violent hands upon himself?

A. No; any instances the Scripture gives of self-murder are in men of the most infamous character, such as Saul, Ahitophel, Judas, and others of the like stamp.

Q. 6. Was not Samson (who was a good man, Heb. xi. 32,) guilty of this heinous crime? Judg. xvi. 30.

A. When Samson pulled down the house upon himself, and upon all the lords of the Philistines, with about three thousand men and women that were therein, he did not intend his own death, any farther than as an inevitable consequence of destroying so many of the church's enemies, to which he was called and strengthened in an extraordinary manner by God as the Lord of life and death, whom he also supplicated for this extraordinary strength, Judg. xvi. 28. And herein he was an eminent type of Christ, who, "through death, did destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil," Heb. ii. 14.

Q. 7. What are the aggravations of the crime of self-murder?

A. It is directly opposite to the natural principle of self-preservation implanted in us, Job ii. 4; it argues the highest impatience, and rooted discontent with our lot in a present world, ver. 19; it is an impious invasion of the prerogative of God, as the sole author and disposer of life, 1 Sam. ii. 6, and a most daring and presumptuous rushing upon death, and an awful eternity, chap. xxxi. 4, 5.

Q. 8. What is meant in the answer, by taking away *the life of our neighbour unjustly*?

A. The taking it away at any rate, "except in case of public justice, lawful war, or necessary defence."\*

Q. 9. What is it to take away life in case of public justice?

A. It is to inflict capital punishment upon notorious criminals by a lawful magistrate, who is the ordinance of God for that purpose, Rom. xiii. 2, 4.

Q. 10. What warrant has the civil magistrate to take away the life of a wilful murderer?

A. The express command of God, Gen. ix. 6. "Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed."

Q. 11. Is it lawful for a magistrate to spare, pardon, or relieve a convicted murderer?

A. It is expressly forbidden as a land-defiling sin, Numb. xxxv. 31, 33. "Ye shall take no satisfaction for the life of a

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 136.

murderer, which is guilty of death ; but he shall surely be put to death. For blood defileth the land, and the land cannot be cleansed of the blood that is shed therein, but by the blood of him that shed it."

Q. 12. What other crimes are punishable with death by the laws of God and man ?

A. Among several others there are these following : Deliberate blasphemy, Lev. xxiv. 16 ; notour adultery, Lev. xx. 10 ; incest, ver. 11, 12 ; sodomy, ver. 13 ; bestiality, ver. 15 ; and witchcraft.

Q. 13. Is it warrantable in a Christian magistrate to repeal or disable penal laws against witchcraft ?

A. By no means ; for God has expressly said, " Thou shalt not suffer a witch to live," Exod. xxii. 18.

Q. 14. Is it lawful to wage war under the New Testament ?

A. Yes ; as appears from John the Baptist's prescribing rules for a military life, Luke iii. 14 ; and Christ's commending the faith of the Centurion, and finding no fault with his office, Matth. viii. 10.

Q. 15. What makes war lawful, and the shedding of blood therein warrantable ?

A. When it is undertaken in defence of civil or religious liberties after all habile means have been rejected for obtaining redress of the unjust invasions made upon them, Judg. xi. 12—34.

Q. 16. When is the killing of another to be sustained as done in necessary defence ?

A. When there is no way of flying from the aggressor (which is rather to be chosen, if it can be done with safety), but we must either lose our own life or take away his, Exod. xxii. 2.

Q. 17. What if one kill another at unawares, or unwillingly ?

A. If it is not through any culpable neglect, or careless oversight, it is not reputed murder, either by the law of God or man ; and therefore cities of refuge were of old appointed for such, Josh. xx. 9.

Q. 18. How are men lavish and prodigal of their lives on points of honour ?

A. By duelling.

Q. 19. What is a DUEL ?

A. It is a combat or fight between two private persons, upon a challenge given and accepted, wherein each party aims at the life or maiming of the other.

Q. 20. Wherein lies the sinfulness of such a practice ?

A. It flows from passion, pride, and insatiable revenge, as the springs thereof ; and is a bold invasion of God's right

of vengeance, together with a desperate contempt of death, judgment, and eternity, Rom. xii. 19.

Q. 21. Did not David fight a duel with Goliath ?

A. No ; he fought by a peculiar Divine impulse, under the shadow of lawful authority for the public good, and not from any private or personal revenge, 1 Sam. xvii. 37—53.

Q. 22. Who was the first murderer of souls ?

A. The devil, who is therefore called a murderer from the beginning, John viii. 44.

Q. 23. Who was the first murderer of the body ?

A. Cain, who slew his brother, Gen. iv. 8.

Q. 24. Wherefore did he slay him ?

A. Because his own works were evil and his brother's righteous, 1 John iii. 12.

Q. 25. Why was he not put to death ?

A. Because God set a peculiar mark of his displeasure upon him, Gen. iv. 15 (worse, in some sort, than natural death), by protracting his miserable life to be a fugitive and vagabond in the earth, and a visible monument of an intolerable load of guilt and hopeless despair, ver. 11, 12.

Q. 26. What is the dismal effect of this sin upon murderers themselves, even though they escape capital punishment from men ?

A. God frequently gives them up to the terror of a guilty conscience, which is their continual tormentor, Gen. iv. 13, 14.

Q. 27. How has God testified his displeasure against this sin ?

A. Ordinarily by shortening the lives of murderers, Psal. lv. 23. "Bloody and deceitful men shall not live out half their day." And sometimes by transmitting temporal judgments to their posterity, as Saul's murder of the Gibeonites was punished in the death of seven of his sons, 2 Sam. xxi. 6, 8, 9.

Q. 28. How may murder be aggravated ?

A. If it is committed under the pretence of religion, as Jezebel murdered Naboth, 1 Kings xxi. 9, 10, and as the Papists perpetrate their massacres ; or, if it is done under the disguise and mask of friendship, as Joab killed Amasa, 2 Sam. xx. 9, 10 ; or, which is unspeakably worse, as Judas betrayed our Lord, Matth. xxvi. 48, 49.

Q. 29. Doth this Command forbid only the taking away of our own life and the life of our neighbour unjustly ?

A. It forbids also *whatever tendeth thereunto*.

Q. 30. What are those things which tend to the taking away of our own life ?

A. "Neglecting or withdrawing the lawful and necessary

means of preserving it; all excessive passions, distracting cares, and immoderate use of meat, drink, labour, and recreations."\*

Q. 31. How may we be guilty before God of taking away the life of our neighbour though we do not actually imbrue our hands in his blood?

A. We may be guilty this way in our hearts, with our tongues, and by our actions.

Q. 32. How may we be guilty of murder in our hearts?

A. By harbouring "sinful anger, hatred, envy, and a desire of revenge."†

Q. 33. May there be anger which is not sinful?

A. Yes; when there is a detestation of the sin, and yet no dislike of the person; in which sense the apostle says, "Be ye angry, and sin not," Eph. iv. 26.

Q. 34. What is the hazard of sinful anger?

A. "Whosoever is angry with his brother without a cause shall be in danger of the judgment," Matth. v. 22.

Q. 35. What is it to be in danger of the judgment?

A. It is to be in danger of eternal punishment in the other world for the breach of this Commandment, if rich and sovereign grace prevent it not, Prov. xix. 19.

Q. 36. How doth hatred tend to take away the life of our neighbour?

A. It hath such a tendency thereunto, that whosoever hateth his brother is accounted a murderer, 1 John iii. 15.

Q. 37. What tendency hath envy to the taking away of life?

A. As it is grieved at the good of another, or takes a secret pleasure in his death, Prov. xxvii. 4.

Q. 38. How doth desire of revenge tend to take away life?

A. As it is accompanied with an inward habitual imprecation of some visible or remarkable judgment upon the person who is the object of it, quite contrary to the command of God, Rom. xii. 19. "Avenge not yourselves: for it is written, Vengeance is mine: I will repay, saith the Lord."

Q. 39. How may we be guilty of what tendeth to take away the life of our neighbour with our tongues?

A. By bitter and provoking words, Prov. xii. 18, or threatening, reviling, and deriding speeches, Matth. v. 22.

Q. 40. How may we be guilty this way by our actions?

A. By oppression, Ezek. xviii. 18, quarrelling, Gal. v. 15, striking or wounding, Numb. xxxv. 21, and the like.

Q. 41. What may we learn from this Commandment?

A. That however innocent we may be of the actual bloodshedding of others, yet we are still chargeable with the worst kind of murder, even that of our own souls, while we will not

\* See Larger Catechism, quest. 136, with the Scriptures quoted. † Ibid.

come to Christ that we might have life, John v. 40, he being the only living and true way, chap. xiv. 6, “and no other name under heaven given among men whereby we must be saved,” Acts iv. 12.

70. Q. Which is the Seventh Commandment?

A. The Seventh Commandment is, Thou shalt not commit adultery.

71. Q. What is required in the Seventh Commandment?

A. The Seventh Commandment requireth the preservation of our own and our neighbour’s chastity in heart, speech, and behaviour.

Q. 1. What is *chastity*?

A. It is an abhorrence of all uncleanness, whether in the body or in the mind and affections, Job. xxxi. 1.

Q. 2. What doth this Commandment require with reference to such chastity?

A. *The preservation* of it both in ourselves and in our neighbours.

Q. 3. What is the best means for preserving our own and our neighbour’s chastity?

A. The nourishing in our minds and consciences a continual regard, reverence, and awe of the Divine Majesty, and a fear of displeasing him, Prov. v. 20, 21.

Q. 4. What influence will this have upon the preservation of chastity?

A. It will make us boldly resist all assaults or attacks that may be made upon it, as in the instance of Joseph; when solicited by his master’s wife to lie with her, he refused, and said, “How can I do this great wickedness, and sin against God?” Gen. xxxix. 7—9.

Q. 5. Wherein are we to preserve *our own and our neighbour’s chastity*?

A. *In heart, speech, and behaviour.*

Q. 6. How ought we *in heart* to preserve our own chastity?

A. By resisting the very first emotions of lust in the soul, Prov. iv. 23; by repelling all wanton imaginations, Matth. v. 28; and by essaying both these in the way of praying to God, that he would turn away our hearts and eyes from beholding vanity, Psal. cxix. 37.

Q. 7. How ought we to preserve our *neighbour’s chastity* in our heart?

A. Not only by an ardent wishing the preservation thereof,

but by loving one another with a pure heart fervently, 1 Pet. i. 22.

Q. 8. How ought we to preserve our own and our neighbour's chastity in our *speech* ?

A. "By letting no corrupt communication proceed out of our mouth, but that which is good, to the use of edifying, that it may minister grace unto the hearers," Eph. iv. 29.

Q. 9. How should we do this in our *behaviour* ?

A. By such a uniform modesty in our conduct and deportment as may evidence that every one of us doth possess his vessel, that is, his body, in sanctification and honour, 1 Thess. iv. 4.

Q. 10. Why should we be so careful to preserve our chastity ?

A. Because we should study to have our bodies to be the temples of the Holy Ghost, and therefore should keep them free from those pollutions which are so provoking to a holy God, 1 Cor. vi. 19.

Q. 11. What is the ordinary mean of Divine appointment for the preservation of chastity ?

A. Lawful wedlock or marriage, 1 Cor. vii. 2. "Nevertheless, to avoid fornication, let every man have his own wife, and let every woman have her own husband."

Q. 12. When was marriage first instituted ?

A. Before the fall, in paradise, Gen. ii. 24.

Q. 13. For what end was it instituted ?

A. "For the mutual help of husband and wife, Gen. ii. 18; for the increase of mankind with a legitimate issue, and of the church with a holy seed, Mal. ii. 15; and for preventing uncleanness," 1 Cor. vii. 2.\*

Q. 14. What is necessary to constitute marriage ?

A. The voluntary and mutual consent of both parties, Gen. xxiv. 58, 67.

Q. 15. Who may lawfully marry ?

A. "All sorts of people who are able with judgment to give their consent," Heb. xiii. 4. "Marriage is honourable in all." †

Q. 16. What is the duty of Christians with reference to marriage ?

A. "It is to marry only in the Lord," 1 Cor. vii. 39.

Q. 17. What is the native import of marrying only in the Lord ?

A. It plainly imports, that "such as profess the true reformed religion should not marry with infidels, Papists, or other idolaters; neither should such as are godly be un-

\* Confession of Faith, chap. xxiv. § 2.

† Ibid. § 3.

equally yoked, by marrying with such as are notoriously wicked in their life, or maintain damnable heresies."\*

Q. 18. What is an incestuous marriage?

A. It is that which is within the degrees of consanguinity or affinity forbidden in the word, Lev. xviii. 6—18.

Q. 19. What is the meaning of the words consanguinity and affinity?

A. **CONSANGUINITY** is a relation by blood, being betwixt persons descended from the same family; **AFFINITY** is an alliance by marriage between persons who were not by blood before.

Q. 20. What is the general rule for preventing incestuous marriages?

A. "The man may not marry any of his wife's kindred nearer in blood than he may of his own; nor the woman of her husband's kindred nearer in blood than of her own."†

Q. 21. Is it proper to call marriage a **HOLY** state?

A. No; because they who are without the visible church, such as Heathens, Turks, and Jews, may marry as well as the professed members thereof, Heb. xiii. 4.

Q. 22. Was marriage instituted to "signify the mystical union that is between Christ and his church," as the book of Common Prayer affirms?

A. No; because this borders too near upon making marriage a sacrament, as the Papists do; inasmuch as an outward visible sign of Divine institution, and a spiritual benefit signified thereby, would make it partake of the nature of a sacrament.

Q. 23. Doth not the apostle make it a significant sign when he says, "Husbands love your wives, even as Christ loved the church?" Eph. v. 25.

A. He exhorts husbands to have such a love to their wives as may bear a faint resemblance in some respects to the love of Christ; but does not make the one a sign significant of the other.

Q. 24. Is not marriage called a great mystery? ver. 32.

A. It is not marriage that is called a great mystery, but the union that is between Christ and the members of his mystical body, as will appear by reading the whole verse, "This is a great mystery; but I speak concerning **CHRIST** and the **CHURCH**."

72. Q. What is forbidden in the Seventh Commandment?

\* Confession of Faith, chap. xxiv. § 3, with the Scripture proofs.

† Ibid. § 4.

A. The Seventh Commandment forbiddeth all unchaste thoughts, words, and actions.

Q. 1. What is forbidden in this Commandment under the name of ADULTERY?

A. All sorts of unchastity or uncleanness of what kind or in what manner soever committed, Eph. v. 3.

Q. 2. In what respects may persons be guilty of unchastity or uncleanness?

A. They may be guilty this way in their *thoughts, words, and actions.*

Q. 3. When are persons chargeable before God with unchaste *thoughts*?

A. When lustful desires are entertained and gratified in the mind, and as it were acted in the imagination, Prov. vi. 18; Matth. v. 28.

Q. 4. What are the usual incentives to unchaste thoughts?

A. "Lascivious songs, books, pictures, dancings, stage-plays," and the like.\*

Q. 5. What influence have stage-plays upon fomenting unchaste thoughts?

A. They are generally stuffed with such amorous adventures, many of them of a most criminal nature, that they have a native tendency to debauch and defile the mind. If "no corrupt communication" is to "proceed out of our mouth," according to Eph. iv. 29, neither ought we to listen to it with our ears, as is done by those who attend the profane diversions of the stage.

Q. 6. What is meant by *unchaste words*?

A. All filthy, obscene, or smutty discourse, than which nothing can be more grating and disagreeable to modest ears, Eph. v. 4.

Q. 7. What are the unchaste *actions* that are forbidden in this Commandment?

A. Besides several others that ought not to be named among Heathens, far less Christians, there are these following:—Polygamy, unjust divorce, fornication, and adultery, properly so called.

Q. 8. What is POLYGAMY?

A. It is the having more wives or husbands than one at the same time, Mal. ii. 14.

Q. 9. Is this a sin contrary to the law of nature?

A. Yes; for it is contrary to the first institution of marriage, God having created but one woman as an help meet for man, Gen. ii. 22—25, compared with Matth. xix. 5, 6.

Q. 10. Is it a sin prohibited in Scripture?

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 139.

A. Yes ; Lev. xviii. 18. "Thou shalt not take a wife to her sister to vex her—in her lifetime."

Q. 11. What is the meaning of taking a wife to her sister ?

A. The meaning is (according to the marginal reading), "Thou shalt not take one wife to another ;" that is, thou shalt not have more wives than one at a time.

Q. 12. But may not this be a prohibition of incest, namely, of marrying the wife's sister ?

A. No ; because it is said, Thou shalt not do it "in her lifetime ;" whereas it would be incestuous in a man to marry his sister-in-law after his wife's death, as well as to do it in her lifetime ; so that the meaning is, Thou shalt not take another wife to her whom thou hast married, by which means they would become sisters.

Q. 13. Who was the first polygamist we read of in Scripture ?

A. Lamech, of the posterity of Cain, who had two wives, Gen. iv. 19.

Q. 14. Were not severals of the godly likewise guilty in this matter, as Abraham, Jacob, David, Solomon, and others ?

A. Yes ; but though these and other bad actions of good men be recorded in Scripture, they are not approved of, nor proposed for our imitation, but rather set up as beacons to prevent our making shipwreck on the same rocks.

Q. 15. Has not God even testified his displeasure at the sin of polygamy in the godly, though we do not read of his reproving them for it in express words ?

A. Yes ; he has testified his displeasure in the course of his providence, by the emulations, quarrels, and disturbances that were hereby occasioned in their families, as in the instances of Sarah and Hagar in Abraham's family, Gen. xxi. 10, 11, of Leah and Rachel in Jacob's, Gen. xxx. 1, 15, and of Hannah and Peninnah in Elkanah's family, 1 Sam. i. 6.

Q. 16. Does not God seem to approve of polygamy when he says to David, "I gave thee thy master's wives into thy bosom ?" 2 Sam. xii. 8.

A. It being the custom of these times for succeeding kings to take possession of all that belonged to their predecessors, the meaning is, "I have made thee king in room of Saul, and have given thee the property of all that appertained to him ;" but we do not read of David's taking any of Saul's wives into his bed.

Q. 17. What is an unjust DIVORCE ?

A. It is the prosecuting and obtaining a dissolution of marriage upon other grounds than such as are warranted in the word of God and by right reason.

Q. 18. What are the grounds upon which a divorce may be

sued for and obtained according to the word of God and right reason?

A. "Although the corruption of man be such as is apt to study arguments unduly to put asunder those whom God had joined together in marriage, yet nothing but adultery, or such wilful desertion as can no way be remedied by the church or civil magistrate, is cause sufficient of dissolving the bond of marriage,"\* Matth. xix. 8, 9; 1 Cor. vii. 15.

Q. 19. Did not Moses suffer the Israelites to put away their wives upon slighter grounds than that of adultery, as may be alleged from Deut. xxiv. 1?

A. Moses in the text cited gives no positive command about divorces in such cases, but only, in order to restrain the licentious freedom of the Israelites, in turning off their wives at their own hand upon every trivial occasion, he enjoins that none put away his wife but upon a legal process, or a bill of divorce obtained in the ordinary course of law, which is the true meaning of the phrase.

Q. 20. Why then doth our Lord tell the Pharisees, Matth. xix. 8, "Moses, because of the hardness of your hearts, suffered you to put away your wives?"

A. The meaning is, Moses, because of the wicked and malicious disposition of the Jews, and in order to prevent a greater evil, namely, the ill usage or even killing of their hated wives (if they could not be separated from them), permitted processes of divorce to be legally commenced.

Q. 21. Why is it added, "But from the beginning it was not so?"

A. Because, according to the original institution of marriage, nothing could dissolve it but the death of one of the parties, Matth. xix. 6. "Wherefore they are no more twain, but one flesh. What, therefore, God hath joined together let no man put asunder."

Q. 22. Is it lawful to marry after a divorce is obtained?

A. "It is lawful for the innocent party to sue out a divorce, and after the divorce to marry another, as if the offending party were dead."†

Q. 23. Is the innocent party obliged from Matth. v. 32, to sue for a divorce?

A. No; divorces are not enjoined as a precept, but allowed as a privilege, which the innocent party may claim or not as they please.

Q. 24. What if the adultery be on both sides?

A. In that case the right of divorce seems to be taken away from each of them.

Q. 25. What is FORNICATION?

\* Confession of Faith, chap. xxiv. § 6.

† Ibid. § 5.

A. It is uncleanness committed between a man and woman, both of them being unmarried, as it would seem Shechem and Dinah were then guilty this way, Gen. xxxiv. 2.

Q. 26. Was this esteemed a sin among the Heathens?

A. No; they made light of it (as too many professed Christians have always done); hence the synod at Jerusalem enjoined the converted Gentiles to "abstain from fornication," Acts xv. 29.

Q. 27. Wherein lies the evil of this sin?

A. It defiles the body, 1 Cor. vi. 18; stupifies the conscience, Hos. iv. 11; and exposes to eternal wrath and damnation, 1 Cor. vi. 9.

Q. 28. What is ADULTERY, properly so called?

A. It is uncleanness committed betwixt a man and a woman, either both, or one of them at least, in a married relation.

Q. 29. What is it commonly called when both the guilty persons are married?

A. It is called double adultery, as was the case between David and Bathsheba, 2 Sam. xi. 3, 4.

Q. 30. Whether are the consequences to families worse when the man is married and the woman free, or when the woman is married and the man free?

A. The consequences to families seem to be worse when the woman is married, because hereby a man's offspring is corrupted, and his inheritance alienated to a spurious issue.

Q. 31. What are the aggravations of this heinous sin?

A. It is a breach of the marriage-oath, Mal. ii. 14, an involving of two at once in the same guilt, 1 Cor. iv. 16, and it is a crime committed after obtaining the remedy which God has provided against it, chap. vii. 2.

Q. 32. What are the fatal effects of adultery in this life?

A. It consumes the body, Prov. v. 11; wastes a man's estate, bringing him "to a piece of bread," chap. vi. 26; and it leaves an indelible blot upon his name, "His reproach shall not be wiped way," ver. 33.

Q. 33. What will be the effect thereof in the life to come?

A. Eternal wrath and damnation, if rich mercy and grace prevent it not, Eph. v. 5.

Q. 34. How doth God testify his abhorrence of this sin?

A. By declaring that he will reserve the punishment thereof in his own hand, to be inflicted in a very peculiar manner upon such as are guilty of it, Heb. xiii. 4. "Whoremongers and adulterers God will judge."

Q. 35. What are the usual incentives to this and other acts of uncleanness?

A. Drunkenness, Gen. xix. 33, "fulness of bread, and abundance of idleness," Ezek. xvi. 49.

Q. 36. What is the evil of idleness?

A. It is a deliberate wasting of precious time, to the manifest detriment both of soul and body, Eccles. x. 18, and is a fit season for temptations to lust, Prov. vii. 7, 8.

Q. 37. Wherein consists the evil of gluttony?

A. It indisposeth for all duty, both religious and civil, Prov. xxiii. 21, and is a making a god of our belly, Phil. iii. 19.

Q. 38. What is the evil of drunkenness?

A. It deforms the image of God in the soul, by divesting a man of the right use of his reason, and leaves him defenceless against all temptations, Prov. xxiii. 29, 30.

Q. 39. What are proper remedies against lust and all the incentives to it?

A. A serious reflecting upon the all-seeing eye of an infinitely holy God, Gen. xxxix. 19; a walking "in the Spirit," whereby we shall be preserved from fulfilling "the lusts of the flesh," Gal. v. 16; keeping a strict watch over our hearts, Prov. iv. 23; studying to shun all occasions of this sin by the external senses, Job xxxi. 1; and fervent prayer to God to be kept from it, and all temptations to it, Psal. xix. 37.

73. Q. Which is the Eighth Commandment?

A. The Eighth Commandment is, Thou shalt not steal.

74. Q. What is required in the Eighth Commandment?

A. The Eighth Commandment requires the lawful procuring and furthering the wealth and outward estate of ourselves and others.

Q. 1. What is the subject-matter of this Commandment?

A. *The wealth and outward estate of ourselves and others.*

Q. 2. What doth it require with reference to these?

A. *The procuring and furthering of them.*

Q. 3. In what manner doth it enjoin us to procure and further them?

A. Only in a *lawful* manner, for it requires the **LAWFUL** procuring and furthering of them.

Q. 4. Whose wealth is it we should procure and further?

A. Our own wealth and that of others.

Q. 5. By what lawful means should we procure and further **OUR OWN** wealth?

A. By labour and industry in some honest calling, Eph. v. 28.

Q. 6. What is included in the labour and industry we should exercise in our respective stations and callings?

A. Frugality in managing the affairs of our calling, and a moderate endeavour to recover our own when wrongfully detained from us.

Q. 7. What is to be understood by frugality in managing the affairs of our calling?

A. Prudence and moderation in our expenses, so as to be sure always to spend within our incomes, Prov. xxxi. 16.

Q. 8. Is it warrantable to go to law for recovering our own when wrongfully detained?

A. Yes, surely, provided other means have been previously tried without success.

Q. 9. How do you prove that it is warrantable for Christians to go to the law with one another when necessitated thereunto?

A. From the lawfulness of magistracy, which is the ordinance of God, Rom. xiii. 2; "For the punishment of evil-doers, and for the praise of them that do well," 1 Pet. ii. 14.

Q. 10. Doth not our Lord find fault with this method, when he says, "If any man will sue thee at the law, and take away thy coat, let him have thy cloak also?" Matth. v. 40.

A. The meaning is, that we should rather part with a little of our right than run ourselves into unnecessary charges at law, perhaps vastly beyond the value of what we are seeking to regain, and thereby discover a contentious and quarrelsome spirit, unbecoming Christianity.

Q. 11. Doth not the apostle also blame Christians for this practice when he says, "Ye go to law one with another; why do ye not rather take wrong?" 1 Cor. vi. 7.

A. The apostle is there speaking of bringing pleas unnecessarily before Heathen magistrates; and his meaning is, that Christians should make up differences among themselves by submitting to arbitration, or even by suffering some wrong, rather than by vexatious lawsuits (especially about lesser matters), bringing a scandal upon the religion which they profess.

Q. 12. How is the necessity of labouring in an honest calling enforced in Scripture?

A. From the necessity of eating; the apostle argues from the natural necessity of the one to the moral necessity of the other, 2 Thess. iii. 10. "This we commanded you, that if any would not work neither should he eat."

Q. 13. Can we procure and further our wealth and outward estate merely by our own labour and industry?

A. Our own industry is necessary, but without the Lord's blessing thereupon it will not be successful; "for it is the blessing of the Lord that maketh rich," Prov. x. 22.

Q. 14. What ends should we propose to ourselves in endeavouring to further or increase our own outward estate ?

A. That we may honour the Lord with our substance, Prov. iii. 9 ; live comfortably ourselves, Eccl. v. 19 ; and be useful to others, Eph. iv. 28.

Q. 15. By what means should we procure and further the wealth and outward estate of OTHERS ?

A. By exercising justice and righteousness towards all, Psal. xv. 2 ; and by relieving the wants and necessities of those who stand in need of our charity, 1 John iii. 17.

Q. 16. What is the rule and standard of that justice and righteousness we should exercise towards all men ?

A. That we so deal with others as we would have them to deal with us if we were in their place or condition ; or that we would never do that to another, which, if we were in that other's place or circumstances, we would reckon to be unjust, Matth. vii. 12.

Q. 17. In what cases is this rule to be particularly applied, according to the scope of this Commandment ?

A. In all contracts, or matters of traffic and commerce between man and man ; and likewise in making satisfaction for injuries.

Q. 18. How is it to be applied in contracts, or matters of traffic between man and man ?

A. It is to be applied thus: that in buying and selling there be always a just proportion between the price and the thing sold ; or that the sale be according to the worth or value of the goods, without taking the advantage of ignorance or poverty on either side, Gen. xxiii. 15, 16.

Q. 19. How may the worth and value of goods be known ?

A. By this general maxim, That every thing is worth as much as it may be currently sold for.

Q. 20. May not the price of the same commodity vary and change at different times ?

A. Yes ; according to the plenty or scarcity of the commodity at the time of sale.

Q. 21. What satisfaction should be made to others for taking or detaining what belongs to them, or any manner of way defrauding them ?

A. No other satisfaction is agreeable to God's will or precept, or will gain the approbation of men, but RESTITUTION, if the injuring party is ever capable to make it, Lev. vi. 2—6 ; 1 Sam. xii. 3.

Q. 22. What if the person to whom the restitution should be made, or his nearest of kin, cannot be found ?

A. In that case, what has been unjustly detained ought to be given to the poor, or to some pious use, Numb. v. 8.

Q. 23. Is relieving the necessities of the poor a duty required in this Commandment?

A. Yes; because it is a furthering the outward estate of our neighbour who is in want.

Q. 24. Why should we relieve the necessities of the poor?

A. Because "he that hath pity upon the poor lendeth to the Lord, and that which he hath given will he pay him again," Prov. xix. 17.

Q. 25. Who are the proper objects of charity?

A. All who are in real poverty and want, and who are not able to work, especially those "who are of the household of faith," Gal. vi. 10.

Q. 26. How should our acts of charity be managed?

A. They should be conducted with prudence, namely, as our own circumstances will permit and the necessity of the object requires, 1 John iii. 17.

Q. 27. When should we perform acts of charity?

A. Presently, if the necessities of those whom we are bound to relieve call for present assistance, Prov. iii. 28.

Q. 28. What should we shun or avoid in our acts of charity?

A. All ostentation, or a desire to be seen "of men," and commended by them, Matth. vi. 2—5.

75. Q. What is forbidden in the Eighth Commandment?

A. The Eighth Commandment forbiddeth whatsoever doth or may unjustly hinder our own or our neighbour's wealth or outward estate.

Q. 1. What doth the forbidding of THEFT necessarily suppose?

A. That there are distinct rights and properties among men which cannot be justly invaded or encroached upon, Lev. vi. 4.

Q. 2. What would be the necessary consequences of a community of goods among men?

A. It would destroy traffic and commerce, abolish all acts of charity, encourage sloth and idleness, and if there were no right and property there could be no encroachment upon it by theft or stealing.

Q. 3. From whom are we forbid to steal?

A. Both from ourselves and others.

Q. 4. How may we be said to steal from OURSELVES?

A. By idleness, niggardliness, and prodigality.

Q. 5. How do we steal from ourselves or impair our own estates by idleness?

A. When we either live without a lawful calling, Prov. xix. 15, or neglect it if we have any, chap. xviii. 9.

Q. 6. How may a person be said to steal from himself by niggardliness?

A. When he defrauds himself of the due use and comfort of that estate which God hath given him, Eccl. vi. 2.

Q. 7. How do persons, on the other hand, steal from themselves by prodigality?

A. By being lavish and profuse in spending above their income, Prov. xxiii. 20, 21.

Q. 8. What is the sin which is more directly pointed at in this Commandment?

A. It is stealing from OTHERS, or laying hands upon and taking away unjustly that which is the right and property of another.

Q. 9. How many ways may persons be said to steal from others, or *unjustly hinder their neighbour's wealth or outward estate*?

A. Several ways; particularly by theft, robbery, resetting, defrauding, monopolizing, and taking unlawful usury.

Q. 10. What is theft?

A. It is the taking away clandestinely or privily from another that which is his, Lev. xix. 11.

Q. 11. How is theft commonly distinguished?

A. Into private and public.

Q. 12. What is private theft?

A. It is the taking away less or more of any private person's property without their knowledge or consent, Obad. ver. 5.

Q. 13. Against whom is public theft committed?

A. Both against the church and commonwealth.

Q. 14. How is public theft called as committed against the church?

A. Either simony or sacrilege.

Q. 15. What is simony?

A. It is the buying and selling of ecclesiastical places and offices for money or other good deeds; so called from the wicked practice of Simon Magus, who offered the apostles money, saying, "Give me also this power that on whomsoever I lay hands he may receive the Holy Ghost," Acts viii. 18, 19.

Q. 16. What is sacrilege?

A. It is the taking away or alienating of any thing which hath been dedicated to a sacred use, Prov. xx. 25; Mal. iii. 8.

Q. 17. Why are these called public thefts when for the most part they are privately committed?

A. Because they very much affect the public interest and welfare of the church, in regard nothing has a greater ten-

dency to her ruin than simoniacal compacts and sacrilegious usurpations.

Q. 18. Wherein consist public thefts as committed against the commonwealth ?

A. In embezzling the current coin, or doing detriment to the public for private advantage, Rom. xiii. 7 ; Phil. ii. 4.

Q. 19. What is robbery or rapine ?

A. It is taking away the goods of another by violence and open force, Job xx. 19.

Q. 20. Wherein lies the aggravation of this crime ?

A. In its being an avowed pillaging or plundering of our neighbour, and for ordinary accompanied with a threatening to take away his life if he adventures to make the least resistance, Judg. ix. 25.

Q. 21. What is the evil of resetting of what is taken away, whether by stealth or violence ?

A. It is a manifest encouraging of and partaking with thieves and robbers in their sin, Psal. l. 10, and consequently a coming under the same guilt and condemnation with them, Prov. xxix. 24.

Q. 22. How do men commonly defraud one another ?

A. In buying, selling, and borrowing.

Q. 23. How do they defraud in buying ?

A. By depreciating and vilifying what they intend to buy, that they may have it cheaper than the value, Prov. xx. 14.

Q. 24. How do they defraud one another in selling ?

A. By taking an unreasonable price, 1 Thess. iv. 16 ; or cheating by false weights and measures, Deut. xxv. 13—15.

Q. 25. How do they defraud in borrowing ?

A. When they borrow or take on what they know they can never be able, in the ordinary course of providence, to pay, Psal. xxxvii. 21.

Q. 26. If a man's creditors compound with him for less than he is owing, is he therefore discharged of the whole debt ?

A. Though his creditors, for fear of losing all, may compound and discharge for a part, so as that there can be no action in law for the remainder, yet, in the court of conscience and before God, he is bound, if ever he is able, to pay every farthing ; and, if he is an honest man, he will never reckon his substance his own till he do it, Rom. xiii. 8.

Q. 27. How may servants defraud their masters ?

A. By wasting their masters' goods which they may have among their hands, and not working faithfully for their wages, Tit. ii. 9, 10.

Q. 28. How may masters defraud their servants ?

A. By detaining from or tricking them out of their wages,

Lev. xix. 13 ; or by exacting of them too rigorous labour, Exod. v. 9.

Q. 29. What is it to monopolize?

A. It is to engross commodities, in order to enhance the price of them.

Q. 30. What is the worst kind of monopolizing or forestalling?

A. It is the buying up of corns and provisions in large quantities, in order to exact a higher price for them afterwards.

Q. 31. Wherein consists the evil of this sin?

A. They who are guilty of it enrich themselves upon the spoils of others, Ezek. xxii. 29, they "grind the faces of the poor," Isa. iii. 15, and bring upon themselves the curse of the people, Prov. xi. 26. "He that withholdeth corn, the people shall CURSE him, but blessing shall be upon the head of him that selleth it.

Q. 32. What is it to take USURY according to the proper signification of the word?

A. It is to gain profit or interest for the loan of money.

Q. 33. What kind of usury is lawful?

A. That which is moderate, easy, and no way oppressive, Deut. xxiii. 20, compared with Exod. xxii. 21.

Q. 34. How do you prove that moderate usury is lawful?

A. From the very light of nature, which teaches, that since the borrower proposes to gain by the loan, the lender should have a reasonable share of his profit as a recompense for the use of his money, which he might otherwise have disposed of to his own advantage, 2 Cor. viii. 13.

Q. 35. What is the usury condemned in Scripture and by right reason?

A. It is the exacting of more interest or gain for the loan of money than is settled by universal consent and the laws of the land, Prov. xxviii. 8. "He that by usury and unjust gain increaseth his substance shall gather it for him that will pity the poor."

Q. 36. How do you prove from Scripture that moderate usury or common interest is not oppression in itself?

A. From the express command laid upon the Israelites not to "oppress a stranger," Exod. xxiii. 9, and yet their being allowed to take usury from him, Deut. xxiii. 20, which they would not have been permitted to do if there had been an intrinsic evil in the thing itself.

Q. 37. Is it warrantable to take interest from the poor?

A. By no means; for if such as are honest and in needy circumstances shall borrow a small sum towards a livelihood, and repay it in due time, it is all that can be expected of

them ; and therefore the demanding of any profit or interest, or even taking any of their necessaries of life in pledge for the sum, seems to be plainly contrary to the law of charity, Exod. xxii. 25—28 ; Psal. xv. 5.

Q. 38. Were not the Israelites discharged to take usury from their brethren, whether poor or rich, Deut. xxiii. 19. “Thou shalt not lend upon usury to thy brother?”

A. This text is to be restricted to their proper brethren, as it is explained, Exod. xxii. 25, and Lev. xxv. 25, 36 ; or, if it respects the Israelites indifferently, then it is one of the judicial laws peculiar to that people, and of no binding force now.

Q. 39. What is the spring of all these different ways where-by men defraud and injure one another in their outward estate?

A. Covetousness, Luke xii. 15 ; or an inordinate prizing and affecting of worldly goods, Psal. lxii. 10.

Q. 40. What should scare and deter every one from such wicked practices?

A. The consideration of the curse that shall enter into the house of the thief, Zech. v. 3, 4 ; and of the vengeance that shall light upon such as go beyond and defraud their neighbour, “for the Lord is the avenger of all such,” 1 Thess. iv. 6.

76. Q. Which is the Ninth Commandment ?

A. The Ninth Commandment is, Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour.

77. Q. What is required in the Ninth Commandment ?

A. The Ninth Commandment requireth the maintaining and promoting of truth between man and man, and of our own and our neighbour’s good name, especially in witness-bearing.

Q. 1. Wherein doth the Ninth Commandment differ from the three preceding ones ?

A. The Three Commands immediately preceding have a respect unto the injuries that may be done to ourselves or others by deeds or actions ; but the Ninth has a reference to wrongs done by words.

Q. 2. What is the general duty required in this Commandment ?

A. It is *the maintaining and promoting of truth between man and man.*

Q. 3. What is the TRUTH between man and man we are required to maintain and promote ?

A. It is the strict veracity of our words or speeches in whatever we assert or deny, whether in our ordinary conversation,

or in our oaths, promises, bargains, and contracts, Zech. viii. 16. "Speak ye every man the truth to his neighbour."

Q. 4. Wherein consists the strict veracity that ought to be in our words or speeches?

A. In uttering things as they really are in themselves according to our uptaking of them; that is, that there be an exact agreement and harmony between our thoughts, words, and the things themselves, Psal. xv. 1, 2. "Who shall dwell in thy holy hill? He that—speaketh truth in his heart."

Q. 5. Why will God have nothing but strict truth to be uttered?

A. Because he is "a God of truth, and without iniquity, just and right is he," Deut. xxxii. 4.

Q. 6. Is it lawful at any time to conceal part of the truth?

A. Yes; when neither the glory of God nor our own or our neighbour's good requires that the whole of it be told; only no untruth must be said in concealing of it, 1 Sam. xvi. 2, 5.

Q. 7. What is the chief end for which the tongue or gift of speech is conferred upon us?

A. That thereby we may glorify God by praying to, Psal. l. 15, and praising him, ver. 23; and by contending earnestly for, Jude, ver. 3, and confessing his truth, Rom. x. 10; hence is the tongue called our glory, Psal. xxx. 12. "To the end that my GLORY [that is, my tongue, as on the margin] may sing praise unto thee, and not be silent."

Q. 8. What is the subordinate end thereof?

A. The edification and profit of our fellow-creatures, Eph. iv. 29, "Let no corrupt communication proceed out of your mouth, but that which is good, to the use of edifying;" margin, "to edify profitably," in opposition to the insipid and vain talk which is in the mouths of most men.

Q. 9. What is the particular duty required in the Ninth Commandment?

A. That we maintain and promote *our own and our neighbour's good name, especially in witness-bearing.*

Q. 10. What is a *good name*?

A. It is the having of reputation and esteem, especially among the sober and religious, Psal. xvi. 3, and ci. 6.

Q. 11. How may a good name be obtained?

A. By being useful in the world in the several stations and relations wherein adorable Providence has placed us, Psal. cxii. 9.

Q. 12. Is self-condemnation a fit mean to obtain a good name?

A. No; for ordinarily it is the highway to procure scorn and contempt, 2 Cor. x. 12.

Q. 13. Doth not the apostle commend himself, when he

says, "In nothing am I behind the very chiefest apostles?" 2 Cor. xii. 11.

A. He only magnifies and exalts his office, and at the same time lessens and disparages himself; for albeit he says, "In nothing am I behind the very chiefest apostles," yet he immediately subjoins, "though I be nothing;" and 1 Cor. xv. 9, "I am the least of the apostles, who am not meet to be called an apostle, because I persecuted the church of God."

Q. 14. May we not commend the grace of God in us?

A. To be sure we may; for whatever is spoken to the commendation of free grace is for the debasement of self, 1 Cor. xv. 10, "By the grace of God I am what I am."

Q. 15. How ought we to maintain and promote *our own* good name?

A. Not only by a blameless walk and conversation before the world, Phil. ii. 15, but likewise by vindicating ourselves from the calumnies and aspersions that may be injuriously cast upon us, Acts xxiv. 12, 13.

Q. 16. With what frame of spirit ought the lawful vindication of ourselves to be managed?

A. With moderation, meekness, and readiness to forgive those who have reproached and injured us, Col. iii. 12, 13.

Q. 17. Who ought in a special manner to maintain and promote their own good name?

A. This is especially incumbent on professors of religion, Matth. v. 16; and such as are in public trust, Tit. ii. 7, 8.

Q. 18. Why should professors be careful to maintain their good name?

A. Because the loss thereof tends to reflect dishonour on religion, whereby the enemies thereof take occasion to blaspheme, 2 Sam. xii. 14.

Q. 19. What is the advantage of a good name?

A. A good name procures mutual love unto and confidence in one another, and consequently tends to promote the interest both of sacred and civil society; on which account "a good name" is said to be "better than precious ointment," Eccl. vii. 1; and "rather to be chosen than great riches," Prov. xxii. 1.

Q. 20. What doth this Command require in reference to *our neighbour's good name*?

A. The maintaining and promoting it, "as we would do our own," Phil. ii. 4; and that both in his presence and in his absence.

Q. 21. How should we behave in the presence of our neighbour, for maintaining and promoting of his good name?

A. When we observe any thing faulty in him, which deserves present notice, we should reprove it with meekness and

love, Lev. xix. 17; and what is really commendable we should prudently encourage and applaud, Rom. i. 8.

Q. 22. How should we maintain and promote the good name of others in their absence?

A. By commending what is praiseworthy in them, 3 John ver. 12; vindicating their character when unjustly attacked, Prov. xxv. 23; and by covering their infirmities and blemishes as far as can be done in a consistency with truth and the credit of religion, 1 Pet. iv. 8.

Q. 23. Why is the word *ESPECIALLY* subjoined to witness-bearing?

A. Because, as we should give testimony to truth on all occasions, so in a special manner when called by lawful authority to declare the matter of fact upon oath, Jer. iv. 2.

Q. 24. What special obligation lies upon us to declare the true matter of fact between man and man, when called thereto upon oath?

A. In an oath God is appealed unto, that we shall declare nothing but the truth, as we shall answer to him at the great day; and therefore our doing otherwise, either out of hatred or favour, is a laying ourselves open to his immediate wrath and displeasure, according to Mal. iii. 5. "I will be a swift witness—against false swearers,—saith the Lord of hosts."

78. Q. What is forbidden in the Ninth Commandment?

A. The Ninth Commandment forbiddeth whatsoever is prejudicial to truth, or injurious to our own or our neighbour's good name.

Q. 1. What doth this Command forbid in general?

A. *Whatsoever is prejudicial to truth.*

Q. 2. What are we to understand by that which is *prejudicial to truth*?

A. All falsehood and lying of whatever kind, James ii. 14. "Lie not against the truth."

Q. 3. What is the formal nature and notion of a *LIE*?

A. It is voluntarily to speak and utter that which we know to be false, as the old prophet at Bethel did to the man of God, 1 Kings xiii. 18.

Q. 4. How is a lie aggravated?

A. When it is uttered with a design to deceive, and to harm others thereby, like the devil, when he said, "Ye shall not surely die,—Ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil," Gen. iii. 4, 5.

Q. 5. May not persons utter an untruth, or what is false, and yet not be guilty of a lie?

A. Yes; and that either through ignorance or misinformation.

Q. 6. When may they be said to utter what is false through ignorance, and yet not be guilty of lying?

A. When they speak rashly, according to their present conceptions of things, without due examination, as the barbarians did, when they "saw the venomous beast hang on Paul's hand; they said among themselves, No doubt this man is a murderer," &c. Acts xxviii. 4.

Q. 7. When may we utter what is false through misinformation, and not be guilty of a lie?

A. When we speak according to the report we have had from others, without any suspicion of being imposed upon, as Jacob did, when, by the imposition of his sons (who had sold Joseph into Egypt, and dipped his coat in the blood of a kid), he said, "It is my son's coat; an evil beast hath devoured him: Joseph is without doubt rent in pieces," Gen. xxxvii. 33.

Q. 8. How many sorts of lies are there?

A. They are commonly ranked into three sorts, namely, ludicrous, pernicious, and officious lies.

Q. 9. What is a ludicrous or jocose lie?

A. It is when persons relate things they know to be false, with a design to make jest or diversion to others.

Q. 10. What is it to be guilty of a pernicious lie?

A. It is to contrive or spread some malicious report we know or suspect to be false, on purpose to bring about some hurt or damage to another, as Ziba did against Mephibosheth, 2 Sam. xvi. 3.

Q. 11. What is the aggravation of a pernicious lie?

A. It is the very worst sort of lying, being both a contempt of the omniscient God, who is witness to the falsehood, and a deliberate intention to do injury to our neighbour, though in our conscience we believe him innocent of what we lay to his charge.

Q. 12. What is it for a person to make an officious lie?

A. It is to tell a downright untruth for their own or their neighbour's safety and security in time of danger, as Rahab did, who hid the spies in the roof of her house, and yet alleged they were gone out of the city, and that she knew not where they went, Josh. ii. 4, 5, 6.

Q. 13. Doth not the apostle ascribe this action of hers to her faith, when he says, Heb. xi. 31, "By faith Rahab the harlot perished not with them that believed not, when she had received the spies with peace?"

A. No; what he ascribes to her faith is, her having received the spies with peace; that is, her having consulted

their safety and preservation with the greatest care and diligence, but not the lie she invented in order to conceal them. Her protecting the spies is commended, but not the manner in which she did it.

Q. 14. Who are they that plead in favour of officious lies?

A. The Papists, Socinians, and most part of our modern moralists.

Q. 15. What arguments do they allege in defence of this sort of lying?

A. That it has been practised by saints in Scripture, and that it is so far from being hurtful to any, that it has been beneficial to some in certain cases.

Q. 16. What answer is to be given to the practice of the saints in this matter?

A. That their sinful failures in this and other instances are not recorded in Scripture for imitation, but for caution and warning that we fall not into the same snares.

Q. 17. How do you answer the other argument for officious lying, "That it is so far from being hurtful to any, that it has been beneficial and advantageous to some, in certain cases, particularly in saving the life of a dear friend, or useful member of society, which might otherwise have been manifestly endangered?"

A. It is answered thus, that in no case we are to do evil that good may come, Rom. iii. 8. If we are not to speak wickedly for God, nor talk deceitfully for him, according to Job. xiii. 7, neither are we to do so, though it were for the benefit of all mankind, or the best among them.

Q. 18. How do you prove lying to be sinful, or unlawful in itself?

A. From this, that lying of all sorts, without exception, is condemned in Scripture, as hateful and abominable to God, Prov. vi. 17, 19, and xii. 22; Col. iii. 9.

Q. 19. Who is the author and father of lies?

A. The devil, John viii. 44. "When he speaketh a lie he speaketh of his own, for he is a liar, and the father of it."

Q. 20. How doth God testify his displeasure against lying of all kinds?

A. By declaring that "he who speaketh lies shall perish," Prov. xix. 9; accordingly it is said, that "ALL liars shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone," Rev. xxi. 8.

Q. 21. What is more particularly forbidden in this Commandment according to the answer?

A. Whatsoever is *injurious to our own and our neighbour's good name.*

Q. 22. How may we injure our own good name?

A. By a vainglorious commendation of ourselves, Prov. ii. 15; by a despising of others who ought justly to be esteemed, chap. xxiii. 9; or by doing any thing scandalous and offensive in the eye of the world, 1 Sam. ii. 17, 30.

Q. 23. Wherein may we be injurious to our neighbour's good name?

A. By flattering him to his face, Prov. xxviii. 4; by defaming him behind his back, Psal. l. 20; or by bearing false witness against him in public judicature, Ezek. xxii. 9.

Q. 24. What is the evil of flattering our neighbour to his face?

A. It tends to foster and foment his pride, and thereby to bring on his ruin, Prov. xxvi. 28. "A flattering mouth worketh ruin."

Q. 25. What is the evil of defaming him behind his back?

A. Nothing can be more devilish and malicious than to fix calumny and reproach upon one when he is not present to vindicate and defend himself: hence the same original word, which is rendered slander, 1 Tim. iii. 11, is used also to signify the devil, 1 Pet. v. 8.

Q. 26. Who are they that may be guilty of bearing false witness against their neighbour in public judicature?

A. The pursuer, defender, witness, advocate, and judge, may each of them be guilty this way.

Q. 27. How may the pursuer be guilty?

A. In making an unjust demand upon the defender, Acts xxiv. 5; or laying to his charge what he believes him to be innocent of, chap. xxv. 7.

Q. 28. How is the defender, upon the other hand, chargeable with guilt in this matter?

A. By artful and dilatory evasions, whereby the pursuer is put to needless trouble and charge in the obtaining of justice.

Q. 29. How may witnesses, in public judicature, be injurious to their neighbour's good name?

A. Not only by the heinous sin of bearing testimony to a downright falsehood, but likewise by denying, mincing, or keeping back of the truth, or any part thereof.

Q. 30. When are advocates or attorneys guilty this way?

A. When they take in hand to plead and maintain a bad cause, looking on it as a part of their profession to be as warm and zealous in defending what is wrong as what is just and right.

Q. 31. How may the judge be guilty of bearing false witness?

A. By a rash, partial, and iniquitous sentence, and thereby perverting justice and injuring the innocent, like Pilate, Matth. xxviii. 24, 26.

Q. 32. What is the evil of injuring our neighbour in his good name?

A. It robs him of a most valuable treasure; for, if once his good name or character is sunk, his further usefulness in the world is in all appearance irrevocably gone.

Q. 33. What should scare and deter us from the sins of the tongue forbidden in this Commandment?

A. That we are to answer, in the last and great day, for our words as well as our actions, Matth. xii. 36, 37. "Every idle word that men shall speak, they shall give account thereof in the day of judgment; for by thy words thou shalt be justified, and by thy words thou shalt be condemned."

79. Q. Which is the Tenth Commandment?

A. The Tenth Commandment is, Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's wife, nor his man-servant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor any thing that is thy neighbour's.

80. Q. What is required in the Tenth Commandment?

A. The Tenth Commandment requireth full contentment with our own condition, with a right and charitable frame of spirit toward our neighbour and all that is his.

Q. 1. What is the practice of the Papists with reference to the Tenth Commandment?

A. In regard they strike out the Second Commandment, because contrary to their image-worship; therefore, in order to keep up the number TEN, they split THIS into two, making these words, "Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's house," to be the ninth; and, "Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's wife," &c. to be the tenth.

Q. 2. How are they confuted?

A. By the words of this Commandment (as they are here inserted from Exod. xx. 17) being transposed into a different order in Deut. v. 21, where desiring our neighbour's wife is put before coveting of his house; which is a plain evidence that what the Papists make two is but one undivided precept; otherwise what, according to them, is the ninth in the one place will be the tenth in the other.

Q. 3. What is the general duty required in this Commandment?

A. It is an inward disposition and inclination of the whole soul to perform all the duties contained in the law, particu-

larly in the second table, which this Commandment more immediately respects; and that out of love to God and a desire to please him, Psal. cxix. 5, 47.

Q. 4. How do you prove this to be the general duty required?

A. From the general sin forbidden, namely, **COVETING**, which includes the motion or stirring of corruption against all the commands of the law, because of their holiness and contrariety to depraved nature, Rom. vii. 7, 8.

Q. 5. What inward disposition of soul doth this Commandment require with reference to ourselves in particular?

A. It requires, with reference to ourselves, *full contentment with our own condition*, 1 Tim. vi. 6.

Q. 6. What do you understand by full contentment with our own condition?

A. A cheerful acquiescence in the lot which God in his holy and wise providence is pleased to carve out for us in this world, Heb. xiii. 5. "Be content with such things as ye have."

Q. 7. Is full contentment with our own condition attainable in this life?

A. Though the perfection of no grace is attainable in this life, yet a great measure and eminent degrees of grace, particularly this of contentment, may be and has been attained by the saints in this world, Phil. iv. 11. "I have learned in whatsoever state I am therewith to be content."

Q. 8. Is contentment in a prosperous condition an easy attainment?

A. No; without grace it cannot be attained, because naturally our ambitious and covetous desires increase in proportion to our riches, as is evident in the instance of Ahab, whom a kingdom could not satisfy without Naboth's vineyard, 1 Kings xxi. 4.

Q. 9. How is true contentment attained under prosperous circumstances?

A. By looking above all time-enjoyments, as transitory and vain, unto God himself, as our chief good and eternal inheritance, Psal. lxii. 10, and xvi. 5, 6.

Q. 10. Is contentment required likewise under cross dispensations of Providence, such as poverty, reproach, bodily afflictions, and loss of near relations?

A. Though it be a grievous sin to be stupidly insensible and unconcerned under these or the like circumstances, Hos. vii. 9; yet a contentment of submission, or such as is without repining and murmuring, is undoubtedly required under the sorest troubles that can befall us in this life, Lam. iii. 39. "Wherefore doth a living man complain?"

Q. 11. What ground of contentment have we under outward poverty and want?

A. That though we be poor of this world, yet we may be "rich in faith, and heirs of the kingdom," James ii. 5.

Q. 12. Why should we bear reproach without murmuring?

A. Because whatever reproach is cast on us for Christ's sake, he will wipe it clean off at his second appearance, Luke xxii. 28, 29; Matth. xxv. 34.

Q. 13. What reason of contentment have we under bodily afflictions.

A. That they are but of a short duration, 2 Cor. iv. 17; mixed with mercy, Lam. iii. 32; consistent with love, John xi. 3; and designed for "our profit, that we might be partakers of his holiness," Heb. xii. 10.

Q. 14. What should content and comfort us under the loss of near and dear relations?

A. That the Lord Jesus, who stands in every amiable relation to us, is always to the fore, being "the same yesterday, to-day, and for ever," Heb. xiii. 8.

Q. 15. Are we required to be content under Divine desertion, or the want of the sense of the love of God?

A. Though we have no reason to quarrel with God for withdrawing the light of his countenance, which we never deserved, yet it is impossible for any gracious soul to be easy and content under the hidings of his face, but must needs earnestly long for and ardently breathe after the returns of his love, as is evident from the example and practice of the saints in the following texts, Job xxiii. 3, and xxix. 2, 3; Psal. xiii. 1, and xlii. 1, 2, and lxxxiv. 2.

Q. 16. What inward frame or disposition of soul doth the Tenth Commandment require with reference to our neighbour?

A. It requires *a right and charitable frame of spirit toward him and all that is his*, Rom. xii. 15.

Q. 17. When may we be said to have this *right and charitable frame of spirit* here required?

A. When our inward motions and affections are influenced by grace to sway and determine us to promote and rejoice in the welfare of our neighbour, both as to his spiritual and temporal concerns, 1 Cor. xiii. 4—8.

Q. 18. When may it be evident to ourselves, that we have a right and charitable frame of spirit towards those that excel us in gifts and graces?

A. When under an humbling sense of our own defects we are thankful for the honour that is brought to God by the shining of his gifts or graces in others, Gal. i. 23, 24.

Q. 19. What should induce us to a right and charitable

frame of spirit toward those that are in more prosperous circumstances than ourselves, or whose condition in the world is better than our own?

A. The considering that a flourishing condition in the world is not always the best, Psal. xxxviii. 16; that, if we enjoy communion with God, it is infinitely preferable to all outward prosperity without it, Psal. xvi. 5, 6.

Q. 20. How may such a right and charitable frame of spirit be attained?

A. Only by the implantation of faith, as the root of this and all other motions of the soul that are acceptable to God, Heb. xi. 6; Rom. xiv. 23.

81. Q. What is forbidden in the Tenth Commandment?

A. The Tenth Commandment forbiddeth 'all discontentment with our own estate, envying or grieving at the good of our neighbour, and all inordinate motions and affections to any thing that is his.

Q. 1. What is the leading sin forbidden in this Commandment?

A. It is COVETOUSNESS: *Thou shalt not covet.*

Q. 2. What is covetousness?

A. It is an excessive and irregular desire of those worldly goods which we have not, Prov. i. 19, and which God in his providence does not see meet that we should have, Psal. lxxv. 6, 7.

Q. 3. How doth the excess of an avaricious mind discover itself?

A. By such an insatiable thirst after worldly gain as can never be satisfied, Prov. xxx. 15.

Q. 4. Wherein consists the irregularity of covetousness?

A. In the desire of worldly goods which are in the possession of our neighbour, and even sometimes as they are his, 1 Kings xxi. 2.

Q. 5. How doth the covetousness of the heart discover itself?

A. By *discontentment with our own estate, and envying or grieving at the good of our neighbour.*

Q. 6. What is *discontentment with our own estate*?

A. It is to murmur and fret at our present condition in the world, as being worse than we think should fall to our share, or than we are expecting and looking for, 2 Kings vi. 33.

Q. 7. What is the aggravation of this sin?

A. It argues an unwillingness to be at God's disposal, Psal. xii. 4; an esteeming ourselves more competent judges than

he of what is best for us, 1 Kings i. 5; and it is in effect a usurping the throne of God, and taking his government into our own hands, Exod. v. 2.

Q. 8. What are the proper remedies against it?

A. The only sovereign remedy is to give Christ the pre-eminence in our hearts, Psal. lxxiii. 25; for then we will undervalue all time-things in comparison of him, Psal. lxxvi. 4.

Q. 9. What is *envying or grieving at the good of our neighbour*?

A. It is to repine and grudge at his prosperous circumstances, Neh. ii. 10; or any superior endowment or privilege he is possessed of above ourselves, Psal. cxii. 9, 10.

Q. 10. What is the evil of this sin?

A. It wastes and consumes the body, Prov. xiv. 30. "Envy is the rottenness of the bones," and it is fertile "of confusion and every evil work," James iii. 16.

Q. 11. What is the source or spring of covetousness?

A. The *inordinate motions and affections* that are in our souls.

Q. 12. What do you understand by the *inordinate motions and affections* here forbidden?

A. Not only the unlawful purposes, intentions, and desires, that are actually formed in the heart, but even the first risings and stirrings of corruption in the soul, which are antecedent to the consent of the will, Gen. vi. 5.

Q. 13. Are not the vicious lusts and desires that are formed and consented to in the heart forbidden in other Commandments of the second table as well as in this?

A. Yes; as appears from our Saviour's exposition of the Seventh Commandment, Matth. v. 28. "But I say unto you, Whosoever looketh on a woman to lust after her, hath committed adultery with her already in his heart."

Q. 14. How then is this Commandment distinguished from others, which forbid heart-sins equally with it?

A. This Commandment leveleth particularly at the root of all sin, namely, habitual lust, or corruption of nature, together with the very first motions or stirring thereof, and especially as these are contrary to the love of our neighbour; whereas other Commandments chiefly respect such secret and heart-sins as are actually committed, though not known to the world.

Q. 15. How doth it appear that this Commandment leveleth particularly at habitual lust, or the root of all sin?

A. Because, since other Commandments chiefly forbid heart-sins actually formed, this Commandment must forbid the very rise of them, or the least bias and inclination to evil, otherwise it would not be distinct from the rest, nor would the law be absolutely perfect.

Q. 16. Doth not the apostle James distinguish between lust and sin, chap. i. 15; "When lust hath conceived, it bringeth forth sin;" and will it not from thence follow, that lust, or corruption of nature, is not properly sin; and consequently not forbidden in this Commandment?

A. The apostle distinguishes between lust and sin, no otherwise than betwixt a corrupt principle and the act which it produces; both which are hateful to God and contrary to his law.

Q. 17. If lust or corruption of nature cannot be remedied or extirpated by any prescription in the Divine law, why is it at all prohibited?

A. It is nevertheless prohibited, both because contrary to the nature of God, and as a mean to reprove and humble us for it, Rom. vii. 9.

Q. 18. What is the difference betwixt human and Divine laws on this head?

A. Human laws respect only overt or open acts of sin, but Divine laws respect likewise the internal inclination and disposition which persons have to commit it, Psal. lxvi. 18.

Q. 19. What is the opinion of the Papists concerning the prohibition of habitual lusts?

A. They pretend that the law of God only respects the corruption of our actions, but not the habit or principle from whence they proceed.

Q. 20. How are they refuted?

A. From the spirituality of the law, which extends to the motions of the heart, as well as the actions of the life, Rom. vii. 14, 23.

Q. 21. If the first motions of corruption are not entertained, but presently curbed and restrained, why are they prohibited as sinful?

A. Because however soon they are curbed or restrained, yet having once a being in the soul, they cannot but leave a stain and pollution behind them, contrary to the holiness and purity required in the law, James i. 14.

Q. 22. Who are they that are sensible of these inordinate motions and affections of the heart, and are humbled for the same?

A. None properly but the regenerate, as is evident from the instance of the apostle, who says of himself after his conversion, "I had not known lust except the law had said, Thou shalt not covet," Rom. vii. 7.

Q. 23. What is the apostle's meaning in these words?

A. It is as if he had said, I had not known this strong propensity that is in my heart to all manner of sin, even before it be consented unto or deliberately committed, unless the Spirit

of God had discovered it unto me in this precept of the law forbidding the same.

Q. 24. How doth this propensity to sin evidence itself?

A. In that no sooner is the object presented than presently there is an inordinate motion and affection of the heart after it. The combustible matter within catches fire at the very first spark of temptation, Josh. vii. 21.

Q. 25. What may we learn from the general scope of this and all the other Commandments?

A. That though we could forbear the evil and do the good contained in every Commandment, it would not be sufficient except we did it for the Lord's sake, out of love to him and regard to his authority, Ezek. xx. 19.

82. Q. Is any man able perfectly to keep the Commandments of God?

A. No mere man since the fall is able, in this life, perfectly to keep the Commandments of God, but doth daily break them in thought, word, and deed.

Q. 1. What is it *perfectly to keep the Commandments of God*?

A. It is, from a nature perfectly holy, to yield constant and uninterrupted obedience unto them both in heart and life, Matth. xxii. 37, 39.

Q. 2. Was ever any man in this world able to keep the Commandments of God in this manner?

A. Yes; Adam, before the fall, was able to give perfect obedience to them all, Eccl. vii. 29. "God made man upright."

Q. 3. Whether was Adam's ability to keep the Commandments of God concreated with him, or was it a superadded gift?

A. It was concreated with him, as being made after the image of God, Gen. i. 27.

Q. 4. Was none since the fall able to keep them perfectly?

A. No *mere man* was ever able to do it since that time, Rom. iii. 9, 10.

Q. 5. What do you understand by a *mere man*?

A. One who is no more than a man; and all Adam's family descending from him by ordinary generation are but mere men, Acts xvii. 26.

Q. 6. Why is the limitation of no mere man inserted in the answer?

A. That Christ might be excepted, who is infinitely more than a man, being IMMANUEL, "God with us," Matth. i. 23.

Q. 7. Why should HE be excepted?

A. Because he not only yielded perfect obedience to the

law in our nature, but an obedience meritorious of life for all his spiritual seed, Matth. iii. 15; Rom. v. 17, 19.

Q. 8. Do not the saints in this life keep the Commandments of God perfectly?

A. No; "for there is not a just man upon earth that doeth good and sinneth not," Eccl. vii. 20.

Q. 9. Will they ever be capable of doing it?

A. Yes; when they come to heaven, where they are made perfect, Heb. xii. 23; and where "the former things are passed away," Rev. xxi. 4.

Q. 10. Why are they not able perfectly to keep them *in this life*?

A. Because of the remains of corruption cleaving to every one of them while in this world, Rom. vii. 23; and from which they long to be delivered, ver. 24.

Q. 11. But may not grace received in this life enable them to keep the Commandments of God perfectly?

A. There is no promise of any such grace, nor would it be consistent with the gradual nature of spiritual growth, in regard the saints do not arrive at their full stature till they come to glory, 1 Thess. iii. 13.

Q. 12. How doth it appear from Scripture that the saints cannot attain perfection in this life?

A. The Scripture expressly affirms, that "in many things they offend all," James iii. 2. And it records the failings and infirmities of the most eminent of them that ever lived, such as Abraham, Gen. xx. 2; Moses, Psal. cvi. 33; David, 2 Sam. xi. 4, 15; Peter, Matth. xxvi. 72, 74; and many others.

Q. 13. Do not the saints themselves ingenuously acknowledge that they cannot attain perfection while here?

A. Yes; Job ix. 20, "If I say I am perfect, it shall also prove me perverse;" Paul likewise, Phil. iii. 12. "Not as though I had already attained or were already perfect."

Q. 14. But is it not said that Noah, Gen. vi. 9, Hezekiah, Isa. xxxviii. 3, and Job i. 8, were each of them perfect?

A. The perfection ascribed to them is only comparative; that is, they were more holy and circumspect than many others; but it cannot be understood of absolute perfection, in regard their sins and blemishes stand also upon record; Noah, for drunkenness, Gen. ix. 21; Hezekiah, for ingratitude, 2 Chron. xxxii. 25; and Job, for some degrees of impatience under the rod, chap. iii.

Q. 15. If the saints cannot attain perfection in this life, why is it said "that they do not commit sin?" 1 John iii. 9, "Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin."

A. The meaning is, that they do not take pleasure and de-

light in sin, nor make a trade of it, as unregenerate persons do, who are therefore called "the workers of iniquity," Psal. cxxv. 5.

Q. 16. Is not the perfection of sincerity attainable by the saints ?

A. They may attain to a very high and eminent degree of sincerity in this world, Psal. xviii. 23 ; 2 Cor. i. 12 ; but the absolute perfection of this or any other grace is not to be expected by them till they come to heaven, 1 Cor. xiii. 12.

Q. 17. Will they not be accepted upon such sincerity as they can attain to, though short of the perfection required in the law ?

A. Their acceptance before God is not founded on their sincerity, or any other branch of their sanctification, but solely on their justification, whereby "the righteousness of the law" is fulfilled in them, in virtue of the surety-righteousness imputed unto them, Rom. viii. 4 ; and thus they are "accepted in the Beloved," Eph. i. 6.

Q. 18. Since none of mankind is able in this life perfectly to keep the Commandments of God, how often doth the answer say that they break them ?

A. It says that they break them *daily* or continually, Gen. vi. 5.

Q. 19. Wherein do they daily break them ?

A. They do it *in thought, word, and deed.*

Q. 20. Is there any other possible way of breaking the Commandments of God ?

A. No ; there is no other possible way of breaking them (as to actual transgression) than either in our thoughts, words, or deeds ; and our doing so in all these respects shows the justice of that charge which the Lord has against every one of us, Jer. iii. 5. "Behold thou hast done evil things as thou couldst."

Q. 21. How do we break the Commandments of God in our THOUGHTS ?

A. When our thoughts are sinfully employed either with reference to God, ourselves, or our neighbours.

Q. 22. When are our thoughts sinfully employed about God ?

A. When they are entertaining unworthy and unbecoming notions and conceptions of him, Psal. l. 21, and xciv. 7 ; such as reflect dishonour upon his perfections and providence, Zeph. i. 12 ; or such as are inconsistent with the discovery he has made of himself, as being "in Christ reconciling the world to himself," 2 Cor. v. 19.

Q. 23. When are our thoughts sinfully exercised about ourselves ?

A. When they are gratifying our pride, Obad. ver. 3, ambition, Isa. xiv. 13, 14, and self-applause, Rom. xii. 3.

Q. 24. When are they sinfully employed about our neighbours ?

A. When they are meditating and indulging envy, Gen. iv. 15, reproach, Jer. xx. 10, or revenge against them, Gen. xxvii. 41.

Q. 25. What is the aggravating evil and malignity of sinful thoughts?

A. The evil and malignity of them consists in this, that they are the immediate source and spring from whence all our sinful words and deeds do flow, "for out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaketh," Matth. xii. 34.

Q. 26. What is the proper remedy and antidote against sinful thoughts?

A. The Spirit's taking the things of Christ, and showing them unto us, John xvi. 14; whereby they will become the subject-matter of our meditation and highest esteem, "for where the treasure is, there will the heart be also," Matth. vi. 21.

Q. 27. How do men break the Commandments of God by their WORDS?

A. When, besides idle and unprofitable words, Matth. xii. 36, they utter such as are more directly dishonouring to God, Psal. lxxiii. 9, 11, and hurtful and prejudicial to themselves and others, Psal. cxl. 3.

Q. 28. How do they break them by their DEEDS?

A. When these sins are committed, which have been conceived in the thought and uttered by the tongue, being inconceivably more than can be condescended upon, "for innumerable evils have compassed us about," Psal. xl. 12.

Q. 29. What may we learn from man's inability to keep the Commandments perfectly in this life?

A. That we must be wholly beholden to the free grace of God for salvation and eternal life, Tit. iii. 5; and not to any thing in ourselves, who are at best but "unprofitable servants," Luke xvii. 10.

83. Q. Are all transgressions of the law equally heinous?

A. Some sins in themselves, and by reason of several aggravations, are more heinous in the sight of God than others.

Q. 1. What do you understand by some sins being *more heinous* than others?

A. That they are more abominable, hateful, and offensive to God than others are, Ezek. viii. 6, 13, 15.

Q. 2. Are not all sins hateful and offensive to God?

A. Yes; but not equally so, Matth. vii. 3; "Why beholdest thou the *MOTE* that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the *BEAM* that is in thine own?"

Q. 3. How doth it appear that all sins are not equally offensive to God ?

A. From the different degrees of punishment that shall be inflicted in the other world, Matth. xi. 22. " But I say unto you, It shall be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon in the day of judgment than for you." See also Luke xii. 47, 48.

Q. 4. In whose sight are some sins more heinous than others ?

A. *In the sight of God*, who is the best judge of the heinousness of sins, Job xxxvi. 9.

Q. 5. In what respects are some sins more heinous in the sight of God than others ?

A. Some are more heinous *in themselves*, and some are so *by reason of several aggravations*.

Q. 6. What is it for sins to be heinous *in themselves* ?

A. It is to be heinous in their own nature, though no other aggravating circumstances should attend them.

Q. 7. How are these sins, that are in their own nature more heinous than others, commonly ranked ?

A. Sins committed more immediately against God, or the first table of his law, are more heinous in their own nature than sins committed more immediately against man, or any precept of the second table. Likewise, some sins against the second table are more heinous in themselves than other sins against the said table.

Q. 8. What examples are usually given of both these ?

A. Blasphemy against God is more heinous in its own nature than defaming or speaking evil of our neighbour, 1 Sam. ii. 25 ; and adultery is more heinous than theft, Prov. vi. 30, to the end of the chapter.

Q. 9. " What are those *aggravations* that make some sins more heinous than others ? "

A. " Sins receive their aggravation, 1. From the persons offending ; 2. From the parties offended ; 3. From the nature and quality of the offence ; 4. From the circumstances of time and place." \*

Q. 10. How may the persons OFFENDING be viewed ?

A. They may be viewed either as to their age, gifts, or office.

Q. 11. What aggravation arises from the ages of the persons offending ?

A. If persons are advanced in years, whereby they may be supposed to have more experience, their sins are more highly aggravated than if committed by children, or such as are raw and inexperienced, Job xxxii. 7.

Q. 12. How are sins aggravated from the gifts of the persons offending ?

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 151.

A. If the offenders have been eminent for their profession, 2 Sam. xii. 14, or have had a larger measure of gifts, 1 Kings xi. 9, or grace, James iv. 17, conferred upon them, their sins will be proportionably aggravated beyond others who have not been so privileged.

Q. 13. How are sins aggravated from the office or station in which persons offending may be placed?

A. If the persons who give the offence be in an eminent station in the world, or vested with any office in the church, Jer. xxiii. 11, 14; or in the state, 1 Kings xiv. 16; their sins cannot but be of a deeper tincture and dye, because their example is more likely to be followed by others, Jer. xxiii. 14.

Q. 14. How do sins receive their aggravation from the parties OFFENDED?

A. If committed "immediately against God, his attributes and worship; against Christ, and his grace; against the Holy Spirit, his witness and working; against superiors, and such as we stand especially related and engaged unto; against any of the saints, particularly weak brethren;—and the common good of all or many."\*

Q. 15. On what account is sin aggravated, as being committed immediately against God, his attributes and worship?

A. Inasmuch as it is a doing evil in his sight, Psal. li. 4; is a despising of "the riches of his goodness," Rom. ii. 4; and an undervaluing his ordinances, Mal. i. 8; and the glory he has stamped upon them, ver. 14.

Q. 16. Wherein consists the heinousness of sin, as being against Christ and his grace?

A. In its being a slighting and contemning the only remedy which infinite wisdom has provided for our malady, Acts iv. 12; and surely there can be no escaping if we "neglect so great salvation," Heb. ii. 3.

Q. 17. How is sin aggravated by its being committed against the Holy Spirit, his witness and working?

A. Inasmuch as it is a rejecting his testimony without us in the word, John xv. 26; and a quenching his motions and operations within us, 1 Thess. v. 19.

Q. 18. What aggravation doth sin receive, as being committed against superiors, and such as we stand especially related and engaged unto?

A. In so far as sin is committed against any of these, it is a violation of the most sacred bonds, both of nature, Prov. xxx. 17, and gratitude, Psal. lv. 12, 13.

Q. 19. How is it aggravated as being committed against the saints, particularly weak brethren?

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 151, § 2.

A. As being committed against the saints, it is a contempt of the image of God in them, Luke x. 16, and as against weak brethren, it is laying a stumbling-block before them, whereby they may be ensnared and fall, 1 Cor. viii. 12.

Q. 20. Who are they that sin against the common good of all men, or many of them?

A. They are such as do what in them lies to hinder the propagation of the gospel where it is not, and to mar the success of it where it is, 1 Thess. ii. 15, 16, there being nothing that tends more to the common good of all men than the word of his salvation being sent among them, Acts xiii. 26.

Q. 21. What is the aggravation of this sin?

A. It makes those who are guilty of it bear the nearest resemblance they can unto the devil, who aims at nothing more than the ruin and destruction of mankind, 1 Pet. v. 8.

Q. 22. How are sins aggravated from the NATURE and QUALITY of the offence?

A. They are much aggravated "if the offence be against the express letter of the law; break many Commandments;—if it break forth in words and actions;—admit of no reparation;—if against conviction of conscience;—if done deliberately,—obstinately, and with delight."\*

Q. 23. Why is the offence said to be aggravated from being committed against the express letter of the law?

A. Because in this case there can remain no manner of doubt about the sinfulness of the action; and therefore it must be a sinning with the greatest boldness and presumption, Rom. i. 32.

Q. 24. What aggravation is there in breaking many Commandments at once?

A. The sin hereby becomes a complicated offence, containing many crimes in the bosom of it; like David's sin in the matter of Uriah, 2 Sam. xii. 9.

Q. 25. How is sin aggravated by breaking forth in words and actions?

A. Sinful words and actions reflect a more public dishonour on God, Matth. v. 22, and do greater injury to men, Mic. ii. 1, than if they were latent only in the thought.

Q. 26. What aggravation is there in those sins which admit of no reparation?

A. Their admitting of no reparation cannot miss to aggravate them in the very nature of things; thus murder or adultery cannot but be more heinous than theft, because there may be restitution of one kind or other for theft, Lev. vi. 4, 5, but nothing can compensate the taking away the life of another,

\* See more particulars on this head, Larger Catechism, quest. 151, § 3.

Numb. xxxv. 31 ; or the violation of the marriage-bed and covenant, Prov. vi. 35.

Q. 27. What is the aggravation of sinning against conviction of conscience?

A. This kind of sinning is an offering of violence to ourselves, contrary to the checks of that judge and reprover which every one has in his own breast, Rom. i. 32.

Q. 28. What is the evil of sinning deliberately, obstinately, and with delight?

A. It argues a giving a kind of defiance to the Almighty, Exod. v. 2, a rooted hatred of him, Rom. viii. 7, and a strong evidence of judicial blindness and hardness of heart, Zech. vii. 11, 12.

Q. 29. What aggravation do sins receive from the circumstance of TIME?

A. They are more heinous if committed on the Lord's day, Jer. xvii. 27, or on days occasionally set apart for fasting or thanksgiving, Isa. xxii. 12, 13, than at other times.

Q. 30. How are sins aggravated from the circumstance of the PLACE in which they are committed?

A. An offence is more heinous if it is done in a land of gospel-light, Isa. xxvi. 10 ; or if it is committed "in public, or in the presence of others who are thereby likely to be provoked or defiled," 2 Sam. xvi. 22.\*

Q. 31. What improvement should we make of this doctrine of sin in its aggravation?

A. To be more humbled and abased before the Lord, under a sense of our sins thus aggravated, Ezra ix. 6 ; and likewise so much the more to admire the riches of pardoning mercy as extended to the very chief of sinners, 1 Tim. i. 13, 15.

84. Q. What doth every sin deserve?

A. Every sin deserveth God's wrath and curse, both in this life and that which is to come.

Q. 1. What do you understand by the desert or demerit of sin?

A. It is that in the nature of sin which of itself deserves all that wrath and curse which God in his infinite justice has entailed upon it, Gal. iii. 10.

Q. 2. What is it in the nature of sin which of itself deserves this wrath and curse?

A. It is the opposition and contrariety thereof to the holiness of God expressed in his law, Hab. i. 13, which is the very thing that constitutes the enormity or heinousness of it, Jer. xlv. 4.

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 151, § 4.

Q. 3. Can wrath be ascribed unto God, as it is a passion?

A. No; for all passions, properly speaking, are inconsistent with God's absolute unchangeableness, Mal. iii. 6, and independency, Acts xiv. 15.

Q. 4. What then is to be understood by *God's wrath*?

A. That most pure and undisturbed act of his will which produces most dreadful effects against the sinner, Isa. xxxiii. 14.

Q. 5. What are those dreadful effects which the wrath of God produces against the sinner?

A. All the miseries of this life, death itself, and the pains of hell for ever.\*

Q. 6. Is the desert of sin separable from the nature of it?

A. No; because sin, being the very opposite of God's holy nature and righteous law, cannot but deserve his wrath and curse, Rom. vi. 23.

Q. 7. If every sin deserves God's wrath and curse, must not the sins of believers deserve the same likewise?

A. Whatever be the desert of their sin their persons can never be exposed or liable to God's vindictive wrath, either in this life or that which is to come, Zeph. iii. 17; Hos. xiii. 14.

Q. 8. Why cannot the persons of believers be liable to the wrath and curse of God?

A. Because of their union with Christ, Rom. viii. 1, who has fulfilled all righteousness for them, ver. 33, 34; or answered all the demands of law and justice in their room and stead, chap. iv. 25.

Q. 9. What do the Papists mean by venial sins?

A. Such sins as are in their own nature so small and trivial that they do not deserve eternal punishment.

Q. 10. Are there any sins in this sense venial?

A. By no means; for the least sin, being committed against a God of infinite perfection, must on that account be objectively infinite, and consequently deserve an infinite punishment, 2 Thess. i. 9.

Q. 11. May not smaller offences be atoned for by human satisfactions or penances?

A. "Even the least sin—cannot be expiated, but by the blood of Christ," Heb. ix. 22; 1 Pet. i. 18, 19.†

Q. 12. What may we learn from the desert of sin?

A. The amazing love of God in transferring the guilt and punishment of sin upon the glorious Surety, making "him to

\* All which see explained, Part I. on the Misery of Man's Natural State.

† Larger Catechism, quest. 152. See the necessity of a satisfaction proved, Part I. on Christ's Priestly Office.

be sin for us, who knew no sin, that we might be made the righteousness of God in him," 2 Cor. v. 21.

85. Q. What doth God require of us, that we may escape his wrath and curse due to us for sin?

A. To escape the wrath and curse of God due to us for sin, God requireth of us faith in Jesus Christ, repentance unto life, with the diligent use of all the outward means whereby Christ communicateth to us the benefits of redemption.

Q. 1. What weighty argument (or motive, amongst many others) doth the Scripture afford for essaying the practice of what *God requireth of us*?

A. That though we are enjoined to "work out our own salvation with fear and trembling," yet we are at the same time assured that "it is God which worketh in us both to will and to do of his good pleasure," Phil. ii. 12, 13.

Q. 2. Does God require any thing of us in point of duty without promising suitable furniture for the performance thereof?

A. No; for he has said, "I will cause you to walk in my statutes, and ye shall keep my judgments, and do them," Ezek. xxxvi. 27.

Q. 3. Can we *escape the wrath and curse of God due to us for sin* by any thing we can do of ourselves?

A. No, surely; for "all our righteousnesses are as filthy rags," Isa. lxiv. 6, "and by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified," Gal. ii. 16.

Q. 4. Why then doth the answer say, "that to escape the wrath and curse of God due to us for sin," *God requireth of us faith in Jesus Christ, repentance unto life, and a diligent use of all the outward means*?

A. Because though these duties, as performed by us, can neither give a title to nor possession of eternal life, yet God appoints and requires them, both as they are MEANS of conveying and improving the salvation purchased, 1 Cor. i. 21; and likewise as they are EVIDENCES of our interest therein when conveyed, John vi. 47.

Q. 5. Why doth God require *faith in Jesus Christ* as the sovereign means for escaping his wrath and curse?

A. Because there is salvation in no other; "there being none other name under heaven, given among men, whereby we must be saved," Acts iv. 12.

Q. 6. What encouragement have we to essay believing in Jesus Christ?

A. There cannot be a greater encouragement than this, that "faith is the gift of God," Eph. ii. 8; and accordingly the promise runs, "I will say, It is my people, and they shall say, The Lord is my God," Zech. xiii. 9.

Q. 7. Why is *repentance unto life* required?

A. Because it is the inseparable fruit and effect of faith, or believing, Zech. xii. 10. "They shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him."

Q. 8. What encouragement have sinners of mankind, privileged with gospel-light, to look for, or expect this blessing of repentance unto life which God requires of them?

A. They are warranted to expect it on this ground, that as Christ has "received gifts for men," Psal. lxxviii. 18; so "him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to GIVE repentance to Israel," Acts v. 31.

Q. 9. Why doth God require of us *the diligent use of all the outward means whereby Christ communicateth to us the benefits of redemption*?

A. Because a neglect or contempt of the means of Divine appointment, for communicating the benefits of redemption, is in the sight of God the same thing as a neglect or contempt of these inestimable benefits themselves, Luke x. 16. "He that despiseth you, despiseth me; and he that despiseth me, despiseth him that sent me."

Q. 10. Can our believing, repenting, and diligent using of means, as they are acts of ours, be the procuring cause of our escaping wrath, or founding our title to life and salvation?

A. No; for "by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight," Rom. iii. 20. Our security from wrath and title to heaven are founded on the imputation of the surety-righteousness alone, Isa. xlv. 25.

Q. 11. What would be the consequence of making our faith, repentance, and good works, the procuring cause of our escaping the wrath and curse of God due to us for sin?

A. This would be a setting aside the satisfaction of Christ, and making a saviour of our duties, than which nothing could nail us more effectually down under the curse, Gal. iii. 10. "As many as are of the works of the law are under the curse."

Q. 12. Have unbelieving and impenitent sinners any warrant to conclude that they have escaped the wrath and curse of God due to them for sin?

A. No, surely; "for he that believeth not is condemned already," John iii. 18; and our Lord says, "Except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish," Luke xiii. 3.

Q. 13. Is our escaping the wrath and curse of God suspended

upon the condition of our faith, repentance, and diligent use of the outward means?

A. No; for if any promised blessing were suspended upon the condition of our personal obedience, it would be the very form of the covenant of works, Rom. x. 5. "Moses describeth the righteousness which is of the law, That the man which doth these things shall live by them."

Q. 14. When do carnal and unregenerate men turn the dispensation of the covenant of grace into the form of the covenant of works?

A. When they separate the duties of faith, repentance, and the diligent use of the means, from the promises of the covenant, and hope to make themselves accepted with God by their personal performance of these duties, Rom. x. 3.

Q. 15. What CONNEXION have faith, repentance, and the use of outward means, with salvation?

A. They have the connexion of APPOINTED MEANS prescribed by God himself, which by his blessing are subservient for such a valuable end; being themselves a part of salvation, and evidences thereof, 2 Thess. ii. 13.

Q. 16. How are the means of salvation usually distinguished?

A. Into internal and external.

Q. 17. What are the internal means?

A. Faith and repentance, with the other graces that accompany or flow from them.

Q. 18. Why called internal or inward?

A. Because they are wrought in the hearts of the elect by the spirit of God, as the fruits and effects of Christ's purchase and mediation, Zech. xii. 10.

Q. 19. What are the external or outward means?

A. They are the ordinances of Divine institution and appointment, such as the word, sacraments, and prayer.

Q. 20. How is faith in Jesus Christ connected with salvation?

A. As it is the hand that receives Christ and his righteousness, as the all of our salvation, Psal. lxxviii. 31; John i. 12.

Q. 21. How is repentance unto life connected with salvation?

A. As it consists in that godly sorrow for sin, flowing from faith, which is both the exercise and ornament (in some measure) of all the travellers Zionward, while in this world, Jer. l. 4; 2 Cor. vii. 11.

Q. 22. How is the diligent use of outward means connected with salvation?

A. As it is by them that *Christ communicates unto us the benefits of redemption*, Prov. ii. 1—16.

Q. 23. Could he not communicate the benefits of redemption without the outward means?

A. Whatever he could do, yet his ordinary method is to honour his own ordinances, as the means of communicating these benefits to us, which we are not to expect, but in the use of them, Prov. viii. 34; Rom. x. 17.

Q. 24. What USE doth God require us to make of the outward means?

A. He requires us to make *a diligent use* of them.

Q. 25. What is a diligent use of the outward means?

A. It is an embracing every opportunity offered, in providence, for attending upon God in them, looking earnestly for his blessing upon them, by which only they will be efficacious for our spiritual benefit, 1 Cor. iii. 6, 7.

86. Q. What is faith in Jesus Christ?

A. Faith in Jesus Christ is a saving grace, whereby we receive and rest upon him alone for salvation, as he is offered to us in the gospel.

Q. 1. What are the several kinds of faith mentioned in Scripture?

A. They are these four: historical, temporary, the faith of miracles, and saving faith.

Q. 2. What is historical faith?

A. It is a bare assent to the truth of what is revealed in the word, without any real affection or regard to the things revealed therein. Such a faith as this may be found in devils, James ii. 19, and in wicked men, Acts viii. 13.

Q. 3. Why called historical?

A. Not merely because it believes only the histories of the Bible, but because it assents to the truths revealed therein, as being little or no way concerned in them, or without any particular application of them to the soul, Acts xxviii. 26.

Q. 4. What is temporary faith?

A. It is such as, together with an assent to the truth of Divine revelation, is also accompanied with some slight and transient motion upon the affections, which may endure for a while, and then evanishes, Matth. xiii. 20, 21.

Q. 5. Has this kind of faith any influence upon the practice?

A. It may be for a time accompanied with an external reformation from some grosser sins, 2 Pet. ii. 20.

Q. 6. What is the faith of miracles?

A. It is that peculiar gift whereby a person believes that, by the power of God, something shall be effected by him which is quite above the power of all natural causes, 1 Cor. xiii. 2.

Q. 7. On what occasion has God bestowed this faith upon any?

A. For the confirmation of some extraordinary mission, or of some important article of revealed religion, as the miracles of Moses under the Old Testament, and of the apostles under the new.

Q. 8. Was not the faith of miracles, in the days of our Saviour and his apostles, conferred upon some who were not in a state of salvation?

A. Yes; both the extraordinary gift of the faith of miracles, and the ordinary and common gifts of the Spirit, were conferred upon some, who, we are assured, will be utterly rejected of God, Matth. vii. 22, 23. "Many will say unto me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not PROPHECIED in thy name? and in thy name have CAST OUT DEVILS? and in thy name done many WONDERFUL WORKS? and then will I profess unto them, I never KNEW you; depart from me, ye that work iniquity."

Q. 9. What is saving and justifying faith?

A. It is that faith in Jesus Christ which is described in the answer, "whereby we receive and rest upon him alone for salvation," &c.

Q. 10. Why is this faith described in the answer called a *Grace*?

A. Because it is the gift of God freely bestowed upon the sinner, Eph. ii. 8, who has no antecedent worth, value, or good qualification whereof he can boast, 1 Cor. iv. 7.

Q. 11. Why a *saving grace*?

A. Because wherever true faith is, there salvation is already begun, which shall certainly be consummated in due time, John iii. 36.

Q. 12. Where is the connexion established betwixt faith and salvation?

A. Faith being the gifted hand that is stretched out to receive Christ in the promise, Psal. lxxviii. 31, cannot but be inseparably connected with salvation, because Christ, whom faith receives, is the ALL of our salvation, Col. iii. 11; hence is that promise, Mark xvi. 16, "He that believeth—shall be saved."

Q. 13. Why is it called faith *in Jesus Christ*?

A. Because Christ is the main or principal object of saving faith, Acts xvi. 31.

Q. 14. Why do you call him the main or principal object of faith?

A. Because nothing can fill the eye or hand of faith but Christ only, or God in him, Psal. lxxiii. 25.

Q. 15. How is faith in Jesus Christ denominated in the answer?

A. It is called a *receiving*, John i. 12, and *resting* on him, Psal. xxxvii. 7.

Q. 16. Are there not other denominations of faith in Christ, of the same Divine authority with those mentioned?

A. Yes; such as eating, drinking, flying, entering, and many others.

Q. 17. From whence are these various denominations of faith derived?

A. From the different views wherein Christ is represented in the word.

Q. 18. How may the above denominations of faith be applied to the different views wherein Christ is represented in the word?

A. When the flesh and blood of Christ (or his incarnation and satisfaction) are exhibited as meat indeed and drink indeed, faith, in a suitableness hereunto, is called an eating and a drinking of the same, John vi. 55, 56; when Christ is held forth as a refuge, faith is a flying to him for safety, Heb. vi. 18; and when he is represented as a door, faith is an entering in by him, John x. 9.

Q. 19. Why is faith in the answer expressed by *receiving*?

A. Because Christ, the glorious object of it, is revealed in Scripture under the notion of a gift, 2 Cor. ix. 15; presented to such as are quite poor and have nothing of their own, Rev. iii. 17, 18.

Q. 20. Can there be a receiving of Christ without a previous giving of him?

A. No; there may indeed be a giving where there is no receiving, because the gift may be refused; but there can be no such thing as a receiving of Christ without a giving of him before; for a man can receive nothing, except it be given him from heaven, John iii. 27.

Q. 21. Why is faith called a *resting* on Christ?

A. Because he is revealed in the word as a firm foundation, Isa. xxviii. 16, on which we may lay the weight of our everlasting concerns with the greatest confidence and satisfaction, Psal. cxvi. 7.

Q. 22. What other Scripture-expression is resting on Christ equivalent unto?

A. It is the same with TRUSTING in him, Isa. xxvi. 4, or relying on his righteousness and fulness, as laid out in the word, for our unanswerable plea and inexhaustible treasure, chap. xlv. 24.

Q. 23. For what end do we receive Christ and rest upon him?

A. For salvation, Acts xv. 11.

Q. 24. What is the *salvation* we receive and rest upon Christ for?

A. It is salvation from sin, Matth. i. 21, as well as from wrath, 1 Thess. i. 10, consisting in a life of holiness here, as

well as of happiness hereafter. It is salvation begun in this life and consummated in glory, Rev. iii. 21.

Q. 25. Why are we said to receive and rest upon Christ *alone* for this salvation?

A. To exclude every thing else but Christ himself and his righteousness, as the ground of our confidence before God and title to eternal life, Acts iv. 12.

Q. 26. What else do men ordinarily rest upon for salvation?

A. Upon the general mercy of God, the works of the law, or a mixture of their own works with the righteousness of Christ.

Q. 27. Who are they that rest on the general mercy of God?

A. They who never saw the necessity of a satisfaction to law and justice in order to the honourable egress of mercy, according to Exod. xxxiv. 7.

Q. 28. Who are they who rest on the works of the law as the ground of their confidence?

A. Such as have never been convinced that the demands of the law are utterly above their reach, Gal. iii. 12.

Q. 29. Who are they that are for blending or mixing their own works with the righteousness of Christ as the ground of their hope?

A. Such as foolishly imagine they can supply what is defective in their own obedience by what Christ has done for them, Rom. ix. 31, 32.

Q. 30. Whereunto doth our Lord resemble this practice?

A. To the putting "a piece of new cloth unto an old garment," whereby "the rent is made worse," Matth. ix. 16.

Q. 31. Are not the very expressions of receiving and resting on Christ designed to exclude the works of the law from being any part of the ground of our hope of salvation?

A. Yes: for when a poor man receives his alms, or a weary man sits down and rests himself, none of them can, in any propriety of speech, be said to work.

Q. 32. Upon what warrant do we receive and rest upon him for salvation?

A. Upon the warrant of his being *offered*.

Q. 33. To whom is he offered?

A. He is offered *to us*, men and women of Adam's family, in contradistinction to the angels that fell, Heb. ii. 16.

Q. 34. Where is this offer made?

A. *In the gospel*.

Q. 35. What is the *gospel* as containing this offer?

A. It is good tidings, Luke ii. 10, or the promise of eternal life, 1 John ii. 25, to sinners of mankind as such, through Jesus Christ our Lord, Prov. viii. 4.

Q. 36. Though the offer of Christ to us be last mentioned in the answer, yet is it not the first thing to be believed?

A. Surely it is; for unless one believe that Christ is offered to him as a Saviour, he will never receive and rest upon him for salvation, Rom. x. 14.

Q. 37. Who offers Christ to us in the gospel?

A. God, essentially considered in the person of the Father, makes the original or authentic gospel-offer of him, John vi. 32. "My Father GIVETH you the true bread from heaven."

Q. 38. In what form or tenor doth this authentic offer run?

A. In the form of a deed of gift or grant, wherein he makes over his Son Jesus Christ unto mankind lost, that whosoever of them all shall receive this gift shall not perish, but have eternal life.

Q. 39. In what text of Scripture (among others) is this grant or authentic gospel-offer contained?

A. It is expressed in so many words, John iii. 16. "God so loved the world that he GAVE his only-begotten Son, that WHOSOEVER believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life."

Q. 40. Who are they that offer Christ to sinners in subordination to God?

A. Ministers of the gospel, who have a commission from him so to do, 2 Cor. v. 19, 20.

Q. 41. What is the ministerial offer?

A. It is the publishing or proclaiming of Heaven's gift or grant to sinners of mankind without exception, as the foundation of their faith or warrant to believe, 1 John v. 11.

Q. 42. What would be the consequence if there were any exception in the authentic gospel-offer?

A. The consequence would be, that no ministerial offer of Christ could be made to the party excepted more than to the fallen angels.

Q. 43. Doth the universality of Heaven's grant and of the ministerial offer founded thereon infer a universal redemption as to purchase?

A. By no means; it only infers a universal warrant to believe.

Q. 44. How do you prove that it infers a universal warrant to believe?

A. From this, that if there were not such a gift and grant of Christ as warranted all to receive him, the unbelieving world could not be condemned for rejecting him, as we find they are, John iii. 18. "He that believeth not is condemned already."

Q. 45. Is there any analogy or proportion betwixt our receiving and resting on Christ and the offer that is made of him in the gospel?

A. Yes; we receive and rest upon him *as* he is offered therein, 1 Cor. xv. 11. "So we preach and so ye believed."

Q. 46. How is he offered in the gospel?

A. He is offered freely, wholly, and particularly.

Q. 47. How do you prove that he is offered and should be received freely?

A. From Isa. lv. 1. "Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, and he that hath no money: come ye, buy and eat; yea, come, buy wine and milk without money, and without price." Rev. xxii. 17, "Whosoever will, let him take the water of life **FREELY.**"

Q. 48. Why is Christ to be received freely?

A. Because God, out of his sovereign and matchless love, makes a free gift of him to mankind-sinners, John iii. 16, as being infinitely above all price, Job xxviii. 13—24.

Q. 49. What are these things which the proud and legal hearts of sinners bring as a price for Christ, who is absolutely inestimable?

A. Their duties, their good qualifications, their honest aims, their sincere endeavours, and the like.

Q. 50. Why do they presume to bring such things as these?

A. Because they know not that they are "wretched, and miserable, and poor, and blind, and naked," Rev. iii. 17.

Q. 51. What is it to receive Christ wholly?

A. It is to receive him in his person, as vested with all his relative offices of prophet, priest, and king.

Q. 52. Why must he be received wholly?

A. Because there is nothing of Christ we can possibly want: standing in absolute need of him as a prophet for instruction; as a priest for righteousness; and as a king for sanctification, 1 Cor. i. 30.

Q. 53. What is it for a person to receive Christ particularly?

A. It is to be verily persuaded that Christ is his, upon the grant and offer of him in the word, to him in particular, John vii. 37, and ix. 36.

Q. 54. Is it not sufficient that a man believe that the grant and offer of Christ is to sinners of mankind in general?

A. No; there can be no benefit by a belief of the general offer, without a particular application, or appropriation thereof to the person himself, 1 Tim. i. 15.

Q. 55. How is this illustrated by an example?

A. It is commonly illustrated thus: If a king makes a proclamation of pardon and indemnity to all the rebels within his kingdom, it is plain that every individual rebel must either believe the pardon of his own crime of rebellion in particu-

lar, or else reject the king's proclamation of grace, and continue in his rebellious practices: there is no midst.

Q. 56. Is not believing that an indemnity is offered to rebels in general a midst betwixt the two?

A. No; because loyal subjects, who need no pardon, may believe that a general indemnity is offered to rebels; and this even rebels themselves may believe, who yet may reject the benefit of that indemnity, and continue in their rebellion, John v. 40.

Q. 57. Is a belief and persuasion of the mercy of God in Christ, and of Christ's ability and willingness to save all that come to him, all that is necessary to justifying faith?

A. No; because there being no appropriation, or particular application in this persuasion, it can be no more than such a faith as devils and reprobates may have, or such as Papists and Arminians may subscribe unto, in a consistency with their other errors and heresies.

Q. 58. What is that appropriating persuasion in the nature of faith which is necessary to answer the call and offer of the gospel?

A. It is not a persuasion that Christ is mine in possession, or that I am already in a state of grace, but a persuasion that Christ is mine in the gift of God and offer of the gospel, Zech. xiii. 9, "I will say, It is my people, and they shall say, The Lord is my God:" and therefore I appropriate to myself the common salvation, Acts xv. 11; or what did lie before me in common, in the gospel-offer, I take home to my own soul in particular, Gal. ii. 20, "Who loved me, and gave himself for me;" believing that I shall have life and salvation by Christ: and that whatever he did for the redemption of sinners he did it for me.

Q. 59. Why is an appropriating persuasion (or a man's being persuaded that Christ is his in particular), necessary to the nature of saving and justifying faith?

A. Because nothing can relieve the sinner from the curse of the law, accusing and condemning him in particular, but faith's application of an offered Saviour, as "made a curse" for him in particular, to deliver him from that "law-curse," Gal. iii. 10, 13.

Q. 60. How do you prove that a particular application of Christ is the effectual relief from the curse of the law, denounced against the sinner in particular?

A. From this, that the free gift is as full unto justification as the offence, through the law, was unto condemnation; for, "as by the offence of one, judgment came upon all men to condemnation, even so, by the righteousness of one, the free gift came upon all men to justification of life," Rom. v. 18.

Q. 61. Since an appropriating persuasion is necessary to the nature of faith, whether has every one that has true faith always an assurance of his being in a gracious state?

A. No; for though a believer be persuaded that Christ is his in the promise and offer of the gospel, yet, through the prevalency of remaining corruption, he may frequently doubt of his being in a state of grace, or of his present title to eternal life, Isa. xlix. 14.

Q. 62. Is doubting then in the nature of faith, because it is incident to the believer?

A. Doubting can no more be said to be in the nature of faith, because through the prevalence of unbelief and corruption it sometimes takes place in the believer, than darkness can be said to be in the nature of the sun, because it is sometimes eclipsed; for faith and doubting are in their own nature opposite, Matth. xxi. 21. "If ye have faith and doubt not."

Q. 63. Have all true believers the same measure of saving faith?

A. No; some are but "of little faith," Matth. xiv. 31; whereas others are "strong in faith, giving glory to God," Rom. iv. 20. Howbeit the lowest measure of true and saving faith is infallibly connected with glory, Matth. xii. 20.

Q. 64. What are the evidences of a strong faith?

A. Trusting to the bare word of a faithful and powerful God, even when the outward course of Providence seems to run against the performance of the promise, Rom. iv. 19; a fixed resolution to wait on the Lord for the promised good which we want, even after seeming repulses and refusals, Matth. xv. 22—29; and a sedate reposing ourselves on an unchangeable God, under all the vicissitudes of time, Psal. cxii. 7.

Q. 65. How may the weakness of faith be discerned?

A. The more easily a person can suspect the love and favour of God, Isa. xl. 27, the more impatient under delays of answering requests, chap. xxxviii. 14; and the more addicted to a life of sense, John xx. 25, the weaker is the faith.

Q. 66. How may the truth and reality of saving faith be known, though it be in the weakest and lowest degree?

A. If we bear an inward enmity at all sin because offensive to God, Psal. li. 4; if we can say that it is the desire of our souls to love Christ above all things, John xxi. 17, and to be eternal debtors to free grace, reigning through his righteousness, Rom. v. 20, 21, then we may warrantably conclude, that our faith, however weak, yet is of a saving nature.

Q. 67. What is true faith opposed to in Scripture?

A. It is opposed to a staggering at the promise, Rom. iv. 20; to wavering, James i. 6; to doubting, Matth. xxi. 21; and, in a word, to "unbelief," Mark ix. 24.

Q. 68. Who are they who will not be charged with the sin of unbelief?

A. The Heathen world, who are not privileged with the light of gospel-revelation, Rom. x. 14. "How shall they believe in him of whom they have not heard?"

Q. 69. What is the evil of this sin in those who are favoured with gospel-light?

A. It makes God a liar, 1 John v. 10; treads "under foot the Son of God," and doth "despite unto the Spirit of grace," Heb. x. 29.

Q. 70. What is the proper seat of faith?

A. The HEART; "for with the HEART man believeth unto righteousness," Rom. x. 10; though faith be radically in the understanding, yet it operates upon the will, which embraces the object with particular application, Heb. xi. 13.

Q. 71. Is knowledge necessary to saving faith?

A. It is so necessary that there can be no saving faith without it, 1 John iv. 16. "We have KNOWN and believed he love that God hath to us."

Q. 72. What is the difference between the knowledge of faith and speculative knowledge?

A. The knowledge of faith is humbling, 1 Cor. viii. 2; transforming, Acts xxvi. 18; affectionate, 1 John iv. 8; and progressive, Hos. vi. 3; whereas common or speculative knowledge has none of these properties nor effects.

Q. 73. Wherein consists the harmony or agreeableness betwixt faith, love, and hope?

A. By faith we get a sight of an unseen good, and believe it, Heb. xi. 27; by love we desire and seek after it, Isa. xxvi. 8; and by hope we confidently expect and patiently wait for it, Rom. viii. 25.

Q. 74. How does faith view and consider its objects?

A. It views them as certain, suitable, and invisible.

Q. 75. Why doth it consider them as certain?

A. Because of the unquestionable veracity of God who reveals them, John vi. 69. "We believe and are SURE that thou art that Christ, the Son of the living God."

Q. 76. Why does it consider them as suitable?

A. Because they are exactly adapted to the state and circumstance of the soul, whatever it is, 1 Cor. i. 30; 1 Tim. i. 15.

Q. 77. Why does faith view its objects as invisible?

A. Because it acts and goes forth toward them upon the bare testimony of God, not only without the concurrence of sense and carnal reason, John xx. 29, but oftentimes over the belly of them, Rom. iv. 18, 19.

Q. 78. Is faith any part of our justifying righteousness?

A. No; we acknowledge no other righteousness for pardon and acceptance but the righteousness of Christ alone, Phil. iii. 9.

Q. 79. Why then are we said to be "justified by faith?" Rom. v. 1.

A. Because it is faith which lays hold upon and receives that righteousness whereby we are justified, Rom. iii. 22.

Q. 80. Is not faith necessary to interest us in Christ and the benefits of his purchase?

A. Yes; for though the indorsement of the promise to us gives us a right of access, Acts ii. 39, yet it is faith that gives the right of possession, John vi. 47. "He that believeth on me  $\text{HATH}$  everlasting life."

87. Q. What is repentance unto life?

A. Repentance unto life is a saving grace, whereby a sinner, out of a true sense of his sin, and apprehension of the mercy of God in Christ, doth, with grief and hatred of his sin, turn from it unto God, with full purpose of and endeavour after new obedience.

Q. 1. Why is the repentance described in the answer called *repentance unto life*? Acts xi. 18.

A. Because, being a saving grace, it is inseparably connected with salvation, whereof it is a part; and likewise to distinguish it from the "sorrow of the world," which "worketh death," 2 Cor. vii. 10.

Q. 2. What is meant by the sorrow of the world working death?

A. The meaning is, that the legal sorrow or horror of conscience which the men of the world may have from a dread of God as a vindictive judge, ready to pour out the vials of his wrath and vengeance upon them, without any uptaking of his mercy through Christ, is nothing else but the beginning of eternal death and inconceivable misery, as was the case with Cain, Judas, and others.

Q. 3. Whether is repentance a transient action or an abiding principle?

A. It is an abiding principle, continually disposing the person to mourn for sin, and to turn from it all the days of his life, Isa. xxxviii. 14, 15.

Q. 4. Is repentance then to be considered as a thing that is over with the first days of one's religion?

A. No; but it is to be viewed as a permanent grace, an habitual frame of soul, inclining those who are privileged with it to mourn daily for sin, till "God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes" in heaven, Rev. xxi. 4.

Q. 5. Who is the proper subject of repentance?

A. None but a *sinner* can be the subject capable of it ; for just or righteous persons “ need no repentance,” Luke xv. 7.

Q. 6. By whom is it wrought in the heart of a sinner?

A. “ By the Spirit of God,”\* Zech. xii. 10.

Q. 7. What is the instrument or means whereby the Spirit works this grace?

A. “ The word of God,”† Acts xi. 18, 20, 21.

Q. 8. What is the instrumentality of the word, in the hand of the Spirit, for working repentance?

A. In the word there is a display of the holiness of the Divine nature and law, to which we ought to be conformable, Lev. xix. 2 ; the word also discovers the necessity of union with Christ, and the imputation of his righteousness, as the foundation of true holiness, 1 Cor. i. 30 ; together with the inevitable ruin of all who go on in their trespasses, Psal. lxxviii. 21 ; and all these powerfully set home by the Spirit upon the conscience of the sinner, whereupon he is “ instructed, and smites upon his thigh,” Jer. xxxi. 19.

Q. 9. What is meant by the sinner’s smiting upon his thigh?

A. It imports a *true sense of sin*, because a real inward concern upon the mind is usually manifested by that outward motion of the body, namely, a smiting upon the thigh.

Q. 10. Wherein consists a true sense of sin?

A. In a “ sight and sense, not only of the danger, but also of the filthiness and odiousness of sin,”‡ Ezek. xxxvi. 31, as contrary to the holiness of God, and consequently as highly offensive unto him, Psal. li. 4.

Q. 11. How is a true sense of sin begotten in the soul?

A. By faith ; or an *apprehension of the mercy of God in Christ*.

Q. 12. May there not be a sense of sin without this apprehension of the mercy of God in Christ?

A. Yes ; but not a *true sense*: there may be a sense of sin as hurtful to the person, Gen. iv. 13, but not as hateful to God, Hab. i. 13.

Q. 13. Why is the mercy of God said to be apprehended *in Christ*?

A. Because, though God be essentially merciful, yet his mercy can have no egress towards any sinner of mankind, in a consistency with the honour of his justice and holiness, but through the obedience and satisfaction of Christ, Exod. xxxiv. 6, 7.

Q. 14. What is it to APPREHEND the mercy of God in Christ?

\* See Larger Catechism, quest. 76.

† Ibid.

‡ Ibid.

A. It is the same with faith, or believing; it being by faith only that we can lay hold upon his mercy, Psal. xiii. 5.

Q. 15. Is it from faith then that repentance flows, as the proper source of it?

A. Yes; for though faith and repentance are graces given together, and at once, in respect of time, yet in the order of nature the acting of faith goes before the exercise of repentance, Zech. xii. 10.

Q. 16. How doth it appear from Scripture that faith goes before repentance in the order of nature?

A. The Scriptures set forth the blessed object of faith and the promises of rich grace as powerful motives and inducements to repentance, Jer. iii. 14; Joel ii. 13; whereby it is evident that it must be by a believing application of this glorious object, brought nigh in the promise, that a sinner is enabled to the lively exercise of true repentance, Acts xi. 21. "And a great number believed and turned unto the Lord."

Q. 17. How may the precedency of faith be evinced from the nature of repentance itself?

A. Repentance is a turning from sin unto God; but there can be no turning to God but through Christ, John xiv. 6; and no coming to Christ but by faith, chap. vi. 35.

Q. 18. Is not repentance placed before faith in Scripture, Mark i. 15. "Repent ye, and believe the gospel?"

A. The reason is,—Repentance being the end, and faith the means to that end,—though the end be first in one's intention, yet the means are first in practice. Thus in the text quoted, Christ commands sinners to repent; but then, in order to their repenting, he commands them to believe the gospel as the only way thereunto.

Q. 19. How are we sure that where repentance is named before faith in Scripture, it is to be understood of repentance as the end, and of faith as the only way and means thereunto?

A. From Acts xx. 21; "Testifying—repentance toward God, and faith toward our Lord Jesus Christ;"—where it is obvious, that if "faith toward our Lord Jesus Christ" is not the "means of repentance toward God," that fundamental truth would be destroyed, that "Christ is the only way to the Father," as he himself affirms, John xiv. 6. "No man cometh unto the Father but by me."

Q. 20. Is repentance to be separated from faith?

A. No; though these graces are to be distinguished, yet they are never to be separated from one another, being conjoined in the same promise, Zech. xii. 10. "They shall LOOK upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall MOURN for him."

Q. 21. What is the evil of maintaining that none but true penitents have a warrant to embrace Christ by faith?

A. It sets sinners upon spinning repentance out of their own bowels, that they may fetch it with them as a price in their hand to Christ, instead of coming to him by faith, to obtain it from him as his gift, Acts v. 31.

Q. 22. What are the constituent parts or ingredients of true repentance, as flowing from faith?

A. *Grief and hatred of sin, turning from it unto God, with full purpose of and endeavour after new obedience.*

Q. 23. What is that *grief* which is an ingredient of true repentance?

A. It is a real, inward, and abiding sorrow for sin, as offensive and dishonouring to a holy and gracious God, Job xl. 4, 5.

Q. 24. What is that *hatred* of sin which accompanies true repentance?

A. It is not only a loathing and abhorring of our sin, but of ourselves on account of it, Isa. vi. 5.

Q. 25. What are the qualities of this hatred?

A. It is universal against all sin, Psal. cxix. 104; and irreconcilable to any known sin, Psal. ci. 3.

Q. 26. What is the formal nature of evangelical repentance, or that which properly completes it?

A. It is when a sinner doth, with grief and hatred of his sin, *turn from it unto God.*

Q. 27. What is the term from which the sinner turns in repentance?

A. He turns from sin, in regard a continuance in the practice of sin is inconsistent with repentance, Ezek. xiv. 6. "Repent and turn—from your idols, and turn away your faces from all your abominations."

Q. 28. How can penitents be said to turn from sin, when it remains in them, and they are daily offending while in this life?

A. Though they cannot shake themselves loose of the being and remains of sin, yet they turn from it, not only in their life and conversation, but likewise in their heart and affection.

Q. 29. How do they evidence that they turn from it in their life and conversation?

A. By resisting the outbreakings of sin and all temptations thereunto, Psal. xviii. 23; by watching against all occasions of it, Prov. iv. 14, 15; and endeavouring to "have always a conscience void of offence toward God and toward men," Acts xxiv. 16.

Q. 30. How do they manifest their turning from sin in heart and affection?

A. Inasmuch as, though sin cleaves to them, they do

not cleave to it as formerly, but hate and loathe it, Psal. cxix. 104, 113.

Q. 31. What is the term to which the sinner turns in repentance?

A. He turns *unto* God, Hos. vi. 1. "Come and let us return unto the Lord."

Q. 32. Do not many turn from one sin to another, and never to God?

A. Yes; "They return, but not to the Most High," Hos. vii. 16.

Q. 33. What is the true cause of the sinner's turning to God?

A. It is his being turned unto God first, Jer. xxxi. 19. "Surely, after that I was turned, I repented."

Q. 34. How is the sinner turned unto God first?

A. By the Spirit's working faith in him, whereby he receives and rests on Christ for salvation, whereof remission of sin and repentance are a part, Acts v. 31.

Q. 35. Wherein doth the sinner's turning to God consist?

A. It consists in his turning to the loving of God as his Lord and Master, Isa. xxvi. 13; and to his duty to him as such, Acts ix. 6.

Q. 36. How doth the returning sinner express his love to God as his Lord and Master?

A. By a voluntary choice of him as his only Lord, Hos. ii. 7; and by looking upon his service as the greatest freedom and happiness, Psal. lxxxiv. 4.

Q. 37. How doth he testify his returning to his duty to God as his Lord and Master?

A. By a *full purpose of and endeavour after new obedience.*

Q. 38. What is the nature of this *purpose* of duty to God which the true penitent enters into?

A. It is a purpose or resolution to return to the practice of every known duty, Psal. cxix. 106, and to spirituality therein, Phil. iii. 3.

Q. 39. Why called a FULL purpose?

A. Because it is not only a resolution of what a person will do hereafter, but a resolution which is immediately put in execution without delay, Psal. cxix. 60. "I made haste, and delayed not to keep thy commandments:" like the prodigal, who says, "I will arise, and go to my Father;" and immediately "he arose and went," Luke xv. 18, 20.

Q. 40. What is the inseparable concomitant of this full purpose in all true penitents?

A. An *endeavour after new obedience.*

Q. 41. Why is a full purpose of new obedience connected with an endeavour after it?

A. Because purposes without endeavours are but like blossoms without fruit, which can never prove one to be a true penitent, Matth. xxi. 30.

Q. 42. Why called an *endeavour* after new obedience ?

A. Because though the penitent is sensible he cannot perform this kind of obedience in his own strength, yet he aims at it, and at no less than perfection therein, Phil. iii. 14. "I press toward the mark, for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus."

Q. 43. Why is the obedience which the true penitent purposes and endeavours after called *new obedience* ?

A. Because it is such an obedience as flows from a new principle, is influenced by new motives, performed in a new manner, and is aimed at a new end.

Q. 44. What is the new principle from which this obedience flows ?

A. A principle of faith, Rom. xiv. 23, and a principle of love, John xiv. 15.

Q. 45. What are the new motives whereby this new obedience is influenced ?

A. The "grace of God," Tit. ii. 11, 12, and the "love of Christ," 2 Cor. v. 14, 15.

Q. 46. What are the motives whereby men in a natural state are influenced to duties ?

A. The dictates of a natural conscience, Rom. ii. 15, their own interest and reputation, Matth. vi. 5, a mercenary hope of heaven, Mic. vi. 6, 7, or a slavish fear of hell, Isa. xxxiii. 14.

Q. 47. What is the new manner in which new obedience is performed ?

A. It is performed in the strength of Christ, Phil. iv. 13, or in a dependence on the furniture secured in the promise, 2 Cor. xii. 9 ; it is done with delight, Isa. lxiv. 5, and with the whole heart, Psal. cxix. 69.

Q. 48. What is the new end at which it aims ?

A. The glory of God is the ultimate end thereof, 1 Cor. x. 31.

Q. 49. What is the difference betwixt legal and gospel repentance ?

A. Legal repentance flows from a dread of God's wrath, Matth. xxvii. 3—6, but gospel-repentance from the faith of his mercy, Psal. cxxx. 4 ; in legal repentance, the sinner is taken up mostly with the fatal consequences of sin, Isa. xlix. 9—12 ; in gospel-repentance, he is chiefly affected with the evil nature of it, as contrary to the holy nature and law of God, Luke xv. 21.

Q. 50. What are the motives that should engage us to repentance ?

A. The command of God, Acts xvii. 30, the sufferings of

Christ, Zech. xii. 10, and the certain danger of impenitency, Luke xiii. 5.

Q. 51. What are the evidences of true repentance ?

A. The very same that are mentioned by the apostle, 2 Cor. vii. 11. "For behold this self-same thing that ye sorrowed after a godly sort, what carefulness it wrought in you ; yea, what clearing of yourselves ; yea, what indignation ; yea, what fear ; yea, what vehement desire ; yea, what zeal ; yea, what revenge."

Q. 52. What is that carefulness which is a mark of the true penitent ?

A. It is carefulness about the one thing needful, that good part which shall not be taken away, Luke x. 42.

Q. 53. Upon what ground will the true penitent clear himself ?

A. Only upon the ground of the surety-righteousness imputed unto him, Isa. xlv. 24.

Q. 54. What is the principal object of his indignation ?

A. It is sin, as striking immediately against God, Psal. li. 4, compared with Psal. cxix. 104.

Q. 55. What is that fear which is an evidence of true repentance ?

A. It is a filial and reverential fear of God, or a standing in awe to offend him, Gen. xxxix. 9.

Q. 56. What is that vehement desire which a true penitent is privileged with ?

A. It is an earnest and ardent desire after conformity to God, and fellowship with him, Psal. xxvii. 4.

Q. 57. What kind of zeal is it that is evidential of gospel-repentance ?

A. It is zeal for the glory of God and the interest of Christ in the world, Psal. cxxxvii. 5, 6.

Q. 58. What is that revenge which is competent to a true penitent ?

A. It is such a revenge against sin as aims at the utter ruin and extirpation thereof, Rom. vii. 24.

Q. 59. In what respects is repentance necessary ?

A. It is necessary in respect of the command of God, Acts xvii. 30 ; and as evidential of the reality of faith, whereof it is the native fruit and effect, Zech. xii. 10.

Q. 60. May not this duty be delayed or put off for a while ?

A. No ; because of the uncertainty of time, Luke xii. 19, 20, and of the continuance of the Spirit's striving, Gen. vi. 3.

Q. 61. When should the Lord's people apply to him for the exercise of this grace of repentance in a more special and particular manner ?

A. After great falls, 2 Sam. xii. 13 ; when under sore trials

or deep affliction, 2 Sam. xv. 26, 30; and when they are to ask of God some singular favour or mercy, Dan. ix. 8, compared with ver. 18, 19.

Q. 62. By what means may the lively exercise of repentance be attained?

A. By looking on it as in the gift of Christ, Acts v. 31; and by viewing our sins as laid on him who was pierced for them, Zech. xii. 10; together with searching and trying our ways, Lam. iii. 40.

88. Q. What are the outward means whereby Christ communicateth to us the benefits of redemption?

A. The outward and ordinary means whereby Christ communicateth to us the benefits of redemption are his ordinances, especially the word, sacraments, and prayer; all which are made effectual to the elect for salvation.

Q. 1. What do you understand by *the benefits of redemption*?

A. All the blessings of Christ's purchase, which may be summed up in grace here and glory hereafter, Psal. lxxxiv. 11.

Q. 2. Who *communicateth* these benefits or blessings to us?

A. *Christ* himself, who has them wholly at his disposal, Luke xxii. 29. "I appoint (or dispone) unto you a kingdom."

Q. 3. How comes Christ to have the disposal of them wholly in his hands?

A. By his Father's gift, John iii. 35. "The Father loveth the Son, and hath GIVEN all things into his hand;" and by his own purchase of them, hence called a "purchased possession," Eph. i. 14.

Q. 4. What is it for Christ to communicate the benefits of redemption?

A. It is not to give away the property of them from himself, but to make us "sharers with him" in them all; that is, to make us "heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ," Rom. viii. 17.

Q. 5. Whether doth Christ communicate them in a mediate or immediate way?

A. In a mediate way, through the intervention of ordinances, Eph. vi. 11—14.

Q. 6. What are the *ordinances* whereby Christ communicateth to us the benefits of redemption?

A. They are "prayer and thanksgiving in the name of Christ; the reading, preaching, and hearing of the word; the administration and receiving the sacraments; church-government and discipline; the ministry and maintenance

thereof ; religious fasting, swearing by the name of God, and vowing unto him." \*

Q. 7. Why are these called *his* ordinances ?

A. Because they are all of them instituted and prescribed by him in the word, as the alone King and Head of his church, to be observed therein unto the end of the world, Matth. xxviii. 20.

Q. 8. Have we any reason to expect that the benefits of redemption will be communicated by ordinances of man's invention and appointment ?

A. No ; for all such ordinances as have no higher sanction than the commandments of men are declared to be IN VAIN, Matth. xv. 9 ; they are condemned as will-worship, Col. ii. 23 ; and the observers of them severely threatened, Mic. vi. 16.

Q. 9. Why is it said, especially the word, sacraments, and prayer ?

A. Because, though the other ordinances above mentioned are not to be excluded, as being all of them useful in their own place, yet the word, sacraments, and prayer, are the chief or principal outward means for communicating the benefits of redemption, Acts ii. 42.

Q. 10. What is the special usefulness of the *word* for communicating the benefits of redemption ?

A. In the word these benefits are exhibited and offered to sinners of mankind as the ground of their faith, that believing, they may be possessed of them all, John xx. 31.

Q. 11. What is the special usefulness of the *sacraments* for communicating these benefits ?

A. The sacraments represent to our senses, 1 Cor. x. 16, what the word doth to our faith, and are designed for the confirmation thereof, Rom. iv. 11.

Q. 12. What is the special usefulness of *prayer* for the above purpose ?

A. The prayer of faith fetches home to the soul all the good that is wrapped up both in the word and in the sacraments, Mark xi. 24. "What things soever ye desire when ye pray, believe that ye receive them, and ye shall have them."

Q. 13. Why are the word, sacraments, and prayer, called *means* whereby Christ communicateth to us the benefits of redemption ?

A. Because he is pleased to begin and carry on the work of grace in the soul by and under these ordinances, Acts ii. 41, 42.

Q. 14. Why called the *outward* means ?

A. To distinguish them from faith, repentance, and other inward means, and particularly to distinguish them from the

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 108. See them all explained, on the Duties required in the Second Commandment.

inward and powerful influences of the Holy Spirit, which are necessary to accompany the outward means in order to salvation, Zech. iv. 6.

Q. 15. Why called *ordinary* means?

A. Because they are the stated and ordinary way and method whereby Christ communicates the benefits of redemption to sinners of mankind, Rom. x. 14—18; Ezek. xxxvii. 28.

Q. 16. Are there any extraordinary means, without the word, whereby Christ communicateth the benefits of redemption to adult persons?

A. No; for whatever providences God may make use of when he is beginning or carrying on his work of grace in the soul, Acts ix. 3—7, yet these dispensations are always to be considered in a subserviency to the word, chap. xvi. 25—33, or as occasions of the Spirit's working in concurrence therewith, 2 Pet. i. 18, 19.

Q. 17. Are the ordinances of themselves effectual for communicating the benefits of redemption?

A. No; they are made effectual, Rom. i. 16.

Q. 18. To whom are they made effectual?

A. To the *elect* only, Acts xiii. 48.

Q. 19. For what end are they made effectual to the elect?

A. For *salvation*, Heb. x. 39.

Q. 20. What is meant by salvation?

A. Not only a begun deliverance from all sin and misery, and a begun possession of all happiness and blessedness in this life, John iii. 15; but likewise a total freedom from the one, and a full and uninterrupted enjoyment of the other in the life to come, Rev. xxi. 4.

Q. 21. If the ordinances are made effectual to the elect only for salvation, why have others in the visible church the benefit of them?

A. To show the infinite intrinsic sufficiency of the satisfaction of Christ, 1 John iv. 14; and, at the same time, to render those who slight such valuable privileges the more inexcusable, John xv. 22.

Q. 22. What may we *learn* from Christ's instituting his ordinances to be the outward and ordinary means of salvation?

A. We may from thence learn the difference betwixt the church-militant, which sees but through a glass darkly, and the church-triumphant, which sees "face to face," 1 Cor. xiii. 12.

89. Q. How is the word made effectual to salvation?

A. The Spirit of God maketh the reading, but especially the preaching of the word, an effectual means of

convincing and converting sinners, and of building them up in holiness and comfort, through faith, unto salvation.

Q. 1. What is meant by *the word* in this answer?

A. The whole of Divine revelation, contained in the Scriptures of the Old and New Testament.

Q. 2. What hath God appointed with reference to his word that it may be effectual to salvation?

A. He hath appointed the reading, John v. 39, "but especially the preaching thereof," 2 Tim. iv. 2.

Q. 3. "Is the word of God to be read by all?"

A. "Although all are not permitted to read the word publicly to the congregation, Deut. xxxi. 9, 11; yet all sorts of people are bound to read it apart by themselves, chap. xvii. 19, and with their families, chap. vi. 7."\*

Q. 4. What is the meaning of these words in our Larger Catechism, "All are not permitted to read the word publicly to the congregation?"

A. The meaning is not, as if there were an order of men appointed by Christ to be READERS in the church, distinct from ministers, but only that none ought to read publicly to the congregation, except those whose office it is, not only to read the word of God, but to explain it to the edification of others, Neh. viii. 8. "So they read in the book, in the law of God distinctly, and gave the SENSE, and caused them (namely, the people) to understand the reading."

Q. 5. Why is the reading of the Scriptures apart by ourselves necessary for every one?

A. Because the Scriptures are a sword for defence, Eph. vi. 17; a lamp for direction, Psal. cxix. 105; and food for nourishment, Jer. xv. 16; in all which respects they are necessary for every Christian travelling Zionward, 2 Tim. iii. 16, 17.

Q. 6. May not the reading of the Scriptures in our families supersede the reading of them apart by ourselves?

A. No; the doing of the one ought by no means to jumble out the other.

Q. 7. What is essentially requisite in order to capacitate the unlearned to read the Scriptures?

A. That they be "translated out of the original into vulgar languages,"† 1 Cor. xiv. 11.

Q. 8. How is the word of God to be read?

A. "The holy Scriptures are to be read with a high and reverent esteem of them, Neh. viii. 5, with a firm persuasion that they are the very word of God, 2 Pet. i. 21, and that he only can enable us to understand them, Luke xxiv. 45."‡

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 156. † Ibid. ‡ Ibid. quest. 157.

Q. 9. Why should we read the Scriptures with a high and reverent esteem of them?

A. Because they are dictated by the Holy Ghost, and "are able to make us wise unto salvation," 2 Tim. iii. 15.

Q. 10. Why should we read them with a firm persuasion that they are the very word of God?

A. Because, without this, we can never build our hope upon them, as containing the words of eternal life, 1 Thess. ii. 13.

Q. 11. Why should we read them with a persuasion that God only can enable us to understand them?

A. Because without this we cannot exercise a dependence upon him for that spiritual and eternal illumination, which is necessary to a saving and experimental knowledge of them, 1 Cor. ii. 10.

Q. 12. "By whom is the word of God to be preached?"

A. "Only by such as are sufficiently gifted, Mal. ii. 7; and also duly approved and called to that office, Rom. x. 15, 1 Tim. iv. 14."\*

Q. 13. Who are they that are sufficiently gifted?

A. They are such as are not only of a blameless moral walk, and "have a good report of them that are without," 1 Tim. iii. 7, but likewise such as have a competent stock of human literature, Tit. i. 9, and are, in the judgment of charity, reputed to be pious and religious men, 2 Tim. i. 5.

Q. 14. What is it to be duly approved and called to that office?

A. It is not only to be approved by the presbytery, who have the sole power of trying the ministerial qualifications, and of ordination to that office, 1 Tim. iv. 14, but likewise to have the call and consent of the people, who are to be under the pastoral inspection and charge, Acts i. 23, and xiv. 23.

Q. 15. "How is the word of God to be preached by those that are called thereunto?"

A. they are to preach sound doctrine diligently,—“plainly,—faithfully,—wisely,—zealously,—and sincerely.”†

Q. 16. What are we to understand by sound doctrine?

A. The whole system of Divine truth contained in the holy Scriptures, or evidently deducible therefrom, particularly whatever has the greatest tendency to depreciate self, and to exalt Christ, who ought to be the main and leading subject of all gospel-preaching, 2 Cor. iv. 5.

Q. 17. What is it to preach sound doctrine diligently?

A. It is to be instant "in season and out of season,"‡ 2 Tim. iv. 2, embracing every opportunity of doing good to souls, and watching for them, "as they that must give an account," Heb. xiii. 17.

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 158. † Ibid. quest. 159. ‡ Ibid.

Q. 18. What is it to preach plainly?

A. It is to essay it, “not in enticing words of men’s wisdom, but in demonstration of the Spirit, and of power,”\* 1 Cor. ii. 4.

Q. 19. What is it to preach the word faithfully?

A. It is a “making known the whole counsel of God (or at least a not shunning to do so),”† Acts xx. 27.

Q. 20. When may ministers be said to preach wisely?

A. When in studying or preaching they are wholly taken up in “applying themselves to the necessities and capacities of the hearers,”‡ Luke xii. 42; 1 Cor. iii. 2.

Q. 21. When do they preach the word zealously?

A. When they do it “with fervent love to God and the souls of his people,”§ 2 Cor. v. 14, and xii. 15.

Q. 22. How is the word preached sincerely?

A. When there is an “aiming at God’s glory,” and his people’s “conversion, edification, and salvation,”|| 1 Thess. ii. 4; 1 Cor. ix. 22; 1 Tim. iv. 16.

Q. 23. Who is it that makes the reading and preaching of the word effectual to salvation?

A. (THE SPIRIT OF GOD), 1 Cor. ii. 11. “The things of God knoweth no man but the SPIRIT of God.”

Q. 24. How doth he make them effectual?

A. By accompanying them with his Divine power upon the soul, Rom. i. 16.

Q. 25. What is it that the Spirit of God makes the reading and preaching of the word an effectual means of?

A. He makes them an effectual means *of convincing and converting sinners, and of building them up in holiness and comfort, through faith, unto salvation.*

Q. 26. Whether doth the Spirit make more frequent and ordinary use of the reading or of the preaching of the word for these valuable ends?

A. He makes more frequent and ordinary use of the *preaching* of the word; and therefore there is an **ESPECIALLY** prefixed to it in the answer.

Q. 27. How do you prove that the preaching of the word is honoured as the most ordinary mean?

A. From express Scripture-testimony to this purpose, Acts iv. 4. “Many of them which heard the word believed;” chap. xi. 20, 21. “And some of them—spake unto the Grecians, preaching the Lord Jesus. And the hand of the Lord was with them: and a great number believed and turned unto the Lord.”¶

Q. 28. May not people be more edified in reading good

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 159. † Ibid. ‡ Ibid. § Ibid. || Ibid. ¶ See Acts ii. 37, and vi. 7.

sermons at home than in hearing from the pulpit such as are not, perhaps, so well digested?

A. If they are in health, and not necessarily detained from the public ordinances, they have no ground to expect any real and saving benefit to their souls in the neglect of hearing the word preached, because it pleases God, by "the foolishness of preaching, to save them that believe," 1 Cor. i. 21; and "faith cometh by HEARING," Rom. x. 17.

Q. 29. What use doth the Spirit make of the reading, but especially of the preaching of the word, with reference to sinners in a natural state?

A. He makes use thereof as an effectual means of *convincing and converting* them, 1 Cor. xiv. 24; Acts xxvi. 18.

Q. 30. What doth the Spirit convince sinners of by the word?

A. Of their sin and misery.\*

Q. 31. Whether is it by the word of the law or the word of the gospel that the Spirit convinces of sin?

A. It is ordinarily by the word of the law, Rom. iii. 20. "By the LAW is the knowledge of sin."

Q. 32. What of sin doth the Spirit convince sinners by the law?

A. Both of the nature and desert of sin.

Q. 33. Wherein consists the nature of sin?

A. In the want of conformity unto and transgression of the LAW of God.†

Q. 34. What is the desert of sin?

A. The wrath and curse of God, both in this life and that which is to come.‡

Q. 35. How doth the Spirit convince men effectually by the word that they are sinners?

A. By convincing them therefrom that they are unbelievers, John xvi. 8, 9. "He (the Spirit) will reprove (or convince) the world of sin, because they believe not in me," saith our Lord.

Q. 36. What influence has a conviction of unbelief upon convincing a person that he is indeed a sinner?

A. Were once a person convinced that unbelief is a rejecting of the only method of salvation, devised in infinite wisdom, or a treating of God's unspeakable gift, offered in the word, with the utmost contempt, he could not but conclude himself, on account thereof, to be the greatest of sinners, and that he deserves the sorest of punishments, Heb. x. 29.

Q. 37. How doth the Spirit make the word an effectual means of *converting* sinners?

A. By making use of it "to open their eyes, and to turn

\* See Part I. on Effectual Calling. † See Part I. on Sin in General.

‡ See above, on the Desert of Sin.

them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan to God," Acts xxvi. 18.

Q. 38. Do all convictions of sin issue in conversion ?

A. Far from it; many may be very deeply convinced of sin by the law, and yet never have a thorough change wrought upon their heart, as in the instances of Cain, Judas, and others.

Q. 39. What is conversion ?

A. It is the spiritual motion of the whole man toward a God in Christ as the immediate effect of the real and supernatural change that is wrought in regeneration, Jer. iii. 22.

Q. 40. Is there any difference between conversion and regeneration ?

A. They are as inseparably conjoined as the effect is to its cause. Regeneration, or the formation of the new creature (wherein we are wholly passive), is the cause; and conversion, or the motion of the soul to God, is the effect which infallibly follows thereupon, Hos. vi. 2.

Q. 41. Cannot man be the author of his own conversion ?

A. No; he can neither prepare himself for it, nor co-operate with God therein.

Q. 42. Why can he not prepare himself for it ?

A. Because "the carnal mind is enmity against God" aye and until regeneration takes place in the soul, Rom. viii. 7, 8.

Q. 43. Why cannot man co-operate with God in this work ?

A. Because there can be no acting without a principle of action. Regeneration being the infusing of spiritual life into the soul, it is impossible the creature can co-operate or concur with God therein, any more than Lazarus in the grave could concur in his own resurrection, till the powerful voice of Christ infused life and strength in him.

Q. 44. What would be the consequence if man could co-operate with God in regeneration ?

A. The consequence would be, that God would not be so much the author of grace as he is of nature, nor have such a revenue of glory from the one as from the other.

Q. 45. How are regeneration and conversion denominated in Scripture to prove that God only can be the author of them ?

A. They are called a "creation," Eph. ii. 10, and a "resurrection," chap. v. 14.

Q. 46. Why called a creation ?

A. Because there is nothing in the heart of man out of which the new creature can be formed. "Every imagination of the thoughts of his heart being only evil continually," Gen. vi. 5.

Q. 47. Why called a resurrection ?

A. Because it is God only "who quickeneth the dead, and calleth the things which be not as though they were," Rom. iv. 17.

Q. 48. What influence has the word upon the conversion of sinners?

A. It has no physical or natural influence of itself, but only as it is an instituted mean in the hand of the Spirit of God for that end, John vi. 63.

Q. 49. What is the efficacy of the word in the work of conversion compared unto in Scripture?

A. It is compared to a fire, to a hammer, Jer. xxiii. 29, to rain, Deut. xxxii. 2, and to light, Psal. cxix. 105.

Q. 50. Why compared to fire?

A. Because, as fire purifies the metal, separating the dross, so the word in the hand of the Spirit purifies the heart, purging away the dross of sin and corruption that is there, Isa. iv. 4.

Q. 51. Why compared to a hammer?

A. In regard that as a hammer "breaketh the rock in pieces," Jer. xxiii. 29, and thereby fits it for the building, so the Spirit of God, by the word, breaks the hard heart of man, and fits it for being built on the foundation God has laid in Zion, Prov. xvi. 1.

Q. 52. Why compared to rain?

A. Because, as the rain falls irresistibly, so there is no withstanding the efficacy of the word in the hand of the Spirit, Isa. lv. 11.

Q. 53. Why compared to light?

A. Because, as light discovers things that were indiscernible in the dark, so the Spirit by the word discovers the latent wickedness of the heart, 1 Cor. xiv. 25, and the matchless glory and excellency of Christ, as IMMANUEL, "God with us," John xvi. 14.

Q. 54. What use doth the Spirit make of the reading, but especially the preaching of the word, with reference to SAINTS who are brought into a state of grace?

A. He makes use thereof as an effectual means of *building them up in holiness and comfort, through faith, unto salvation*, Acts xx. 32; Rom. xv. 4.

Q. 55. Is *holiness* necessary in order to our justification before God?

A. It is necessary in the justified, but not in order to their justification, because this would found their justification upon works, contrary to Rom. iii. 20. "By the deeds of the law shall no flesh be justified in his sight."\*

Q. 56. Is it necessary as the ground of our title to heaven?

A. It is necessary to clear our title, but our title itself can be founded only in our union with Christ, and the imputa-

\* See Part I. on Sanctification, quest. 45.

tion of his righteousness, 1 Cor. iii. 22, 23, "All are yours, and ye are Christ's," compared with Rom. viii. 30. "Whom he justified, them he also glorified."

Q. 57. Why are the saints said to be built up in holiness?

A. Because the work of sanctification, like a building, is gradually carried on towards perfection at death, Prov. iv. 18.

Q. 58. How doth the Spirit make the reading and preaching of the word an effectual mean of building up the saints in holiness?

A. By giving them, in the glass of the word, such clear and repeated discoveries of the glory of Christ, as thereby they are more and more transformed into the same image with him, 2 Cor. iii. 18.

Q. 59. How doth he, by means of these ordinances, build them up in *comfort*?

A. By conveying with power unto their souls the great and precious promises which contain all the grounds of real and lasting comfort, Gal. iii. 29, and iv. 28.

Q. 60. Through what instrument is it that the Spirit makes these means effectual for building up the saints in holiness and comfort?

A. It is *through faith*, 1 Thess. ii. 13.

Q. 61. What instrumentality has faith in the hand of the Spirit for building up the saints in holiness and comfort?

A. It rests upon God's faithful word for the promoting of both, Psal. cxxxviii. 8. "The Lord will perfect that which concerneth me."

Q. 62. Unto what end does the Spirit, by means of the word, build them up in holiness and comfort through faith?

A. It is unto their complete and eternal *salvation*, Rom. i. 16.

Q. 63. What may we learn from the Spirit's making the means effectual to salvation?

A. That as no special blessing can be expected from God in the wilful neglect of the ordinances, Prov. xxviii. 9; so we may sit all our days under a pure dispensation of the gospel, without reaping any spiritual profit, unless Divine supernatural agency concur, 1 Cor. iii. 6.

90. Q. How is the word to be read and heard that it may become effectual to salvation?

A. That the word may become effectual to salvation we must attend thereunto with diligence, preparation, and prayer; receive it with faith and love; lay it up in our hearts, and practise it in our lives.

Q. 1. What hath God enjoined us in order to our reading and hearing his word in a right manner?

A. That we *attend thereunto*, that we *receive it*, and that we *lay it up in our hearts and practise it in our lives*.

Q. 2. What is it to *attend* unto the reading and hearing of the word?

A. It is to make the reading and hearing thereof the main business of our life; to have it mostly at heart, because the word contains "that good part which shall not be taken away," Luke x. 42.

Q. 3. How ought we to attend or set about the reading and hearing of the word?

A. *With diligence, preparation, and prayer.*

Q. 4. What do you understand by attending the word *with diligence*?

A. A careful observing and embracing every seasonable opportunity that may offer in providence for reading and hearing the same, Prov. viii. 34.

Q. 5. What *preparation* should we make for reading and hearing the word?

A. We should consider that the word has the authority of God stamped upon it, 2 Tim. iii. 16; that it is himself who speaketh to us therein, Heb. xii. 25; that it is his ordinance for our salvation, John v. 39; and will be the savour either of life or death unto us, 2 Cor. ii. 16.

Q. 6. Why is *prayer* requisite for reading and hearing the word in a right manner?

A. Because as it is God alone, and none else, who can dispose our hearts for the right performance of those religious exercises, so he ought always to be addressed and supplicated for that end, Psal. cxix. 18.

Q. 7. What should we pray for when setting about the reading and hearing of the word?

A. That it may be "the power of God unto our salvation," Rom. i. 16; or an effectual means in his hand for convincing, converting, and edifying of our souls, John vi. 63.

Q. 8. What is our immediate duty when we are actually engaged in reading or hearing the word?

A. Our immediate duty in that case is to *receive it*.

Q. 9. What is it to receive the word?

A. It is with all readiness of mind to take it in as the dictates of the Holy Ghost to our souls, Acts xvii. 11.

Q. 10. Why is the right improvement of the word in time of reading and hearing thereof called a receiving it?

A. Because we can reap no real benefit to our souls by the free offer and exhibition of all the blessings that are brought nigh to us therein, unless we receive them as God's free gift to us, John iii. 27.

Q. 11. How are we to receive the word and all the good that is therein?

A. *With faith and love.*

Q. 12. When is the word received *with faith* in time of reading and hearing thereof?

A. When there is an application of it to the soul in particular, in a suitableness to the state and case of the person, and the nature of the word, whether in a way of promise, Lam. iii. 24, or threatening, Psal. cxix. 120.

Q. 13. How may a person know if he receives the word with faith?

A. By the quickening, Psal. cxix. 50, enlightening, ver. 130, sanctifying, ver. 9, and strengthening effect of it, Dan. x. 19.

Q. 14. What is the native consequence of receiving the word with faith?

A. A receiving it also with *love*; for "faith worketh by love," Gal. v. 6.

Q. 15. How may our receiving the word with love be discerned?

A. When our affections are drawn out to the blessed truths and objects revealed therein, so as to esteem them better unto us than "thousands of gold and silver," Psal. cxix. 72, or even than our "necessary food," Job xxiii. 12.

Q. 16. What improvement ought we to make of the word after reading or hearing of it?

A. We should *lay it up in our hearts and practise it in our lives.*

Q. 17. What do you understand by the heart, where the word should be laid up?

A. The soul with all its faculties, Prov. xxiii. 26; the understanding to know the word, the will to comply with it, the affections to love it, and the memory to retain it.

Q. 18. What is implied in laying up the word in our hearts?

A. That we account it the most valuable treasure, Psal. cxix. 127; that we want to keep it with the utmost care, ver. 11; and that we resolve to use it in all the future exigencies of our souls, ver. 24.

Q. 19. How may we know if the word is really laid up in our hearts?

A. By our delighting to meditate upon it, Psal. cxix. 97; by the Spirit's bringing it to our remembrance, John xiv. 26; and by our habitual desire of farther conformity and subjection unto it, Psal. cxix. 5.

Q. 20. For what end should we lay up the word in our hearts?

A. That we may *practise it in our lives.*

Q. 21. What is it to practise the word in our lives?

A. It is to have a conversation becoming the gospel, Phil. i. 27; or to have both the outward and inward man regulated according to the unerring rule of the word, Psal. cxix. 105.

Q. 22. What doth the right manner of reading and hearing the word teach us?

A. That the bare outward performance of duty will not be acceptable to God unless the heart is engaged therein, Isa. xxix. 13.

91. Q. How do the sacraments become effectual means of salvation?

A. The sacraments become effectual means of salvation, not from any virtue in them, or in him that doth administer them, but only by the blessing of Christ, and the working of his Spirit in them that by faith receive them.

Q. 1. What is meant by *effectual means of salvation*?

A. Such means as, by the blessing of God, do fully attain the end for which they are appointed, 1 Thess. ii. 13.

Q. 2. What is the meaning of these words in the answer, *not from any virtue in them*?

A. The meaning is, that the sacraments have not any virtue or efficacy in themselves to confer salvation, being only among the outward and ordinary means of grace, which can have no more efficacy of themselves to confer any saving benefit than the rainbow of itself has to prevent a deluge.

Q. 3. Who are they who maintain that the sacraments have a virtue or power in themselves to confer grace?

A. The Papists, who affirm that the sacraments of the New Testament are the true, proper, and immediate causes of grace, and that the efficacy of them flows from the sacramental action of receiving the external elements.

Q. 4. How do you prove that the sacraments have not any innate or intrinsic virtue in themselves to confer grace or salvation?

A. From this one argument, that if the sacraments had any such virtue, then grace, or salvation, would be infallibly connected with the external use of them; but it is obvious from Scripture, that after Simon Magus was baptized, he remained still "in the gall of bitterness and bond of iniquity," Acts viii. 13, 23.

Q. 5. Why is it said in the answer, that the sacraments become effectual means of salvation, not from any virtue *in him that doth administer them*?

A. It is said in opposition to the Papists, who maintain, that the efficacy of the sacraments depends upon the intention of the priest; so that any benefit by them is conferred or withheld, according to them, just as the secret will of the administrator would have it.

Q. 6. How is this error refuted?

A. If the efficacy of the sacraments depended upon the intention of the administrator, then there could be no certainty about the efficacy of them at all; because no mortal can be absolutely certain about the intention of another, the secrets of the heart being known to God only, Acts i. 24.

Q. 7. From whence then have the sacraments their efficacy and virtue?

A. *Only from the blessing of Christ and the working of his Spirit.*

Q. 8. What do you understand by *the blessing of Christ*?

A. That Divine power and life wherewith he is pleased to accompany the sacraments, and other ordinances, and without which they would be utterly ineffectual, Rom. i. 16.

Q. 9. What is *the working of the Spirit*, which is necessary to make the sacraments effectual means of salvation?

A. Not only the planting of grace in the soul at first, but the drawing of it out into suitable exercise on all sacramental occasions, Zech. iv. 6.

Q. 10. Why is the working of the Spirit necessary to the efficacy of the sacraments?

A. Because we are utterly impotent of ourselves for any thing that is spiritually good, John xv. 5.

Q. 11. In whom are the sacraments (by the blessing of Christ and the working of the Spirit) effectual means of salvation?

A. *In them that by faith receive them.*

Q. 12. What is it to *receive* the sacraments *by faith*?

A. It is to apply Christ, and the benefits of his purchase, as represented and exhibited to us in them, Luke xxii. 19, 20.

Q. 13. What may we learn from the necessity of Christ's blessing, and of the Spirit's working, in order to the efficacy of the sacraments?

A. It teacheth us, that our whole dependence for the blessing, whether upon ourselves, when we partake of the sacrament of the Supper, or upon our children when we are sponsors for them in baptism, should be only on Christ alone, and the saving influences and operations of his Spirit, held forth in the promise, to accompany his own institutions; and therefore the partaking of these solemn ordinances, dispensed by some ministers, to the slighting of them as dispensed by others equally sound and faithful, though perhaps in our esteem

somewhat inferior in outward gifts, says upon the matter, that the efficacy of the sacraments depends somehow upon the administrator, and not upon the blessing of Christ alone, quite contrary to the mind of the Spirit of God, 1 Cor. iii. 7. "So then, neither is he that planteth any thing, neither he that watereth, but God that giveth the increase."

92. Q. What is a sacrament?

A. A sacrament is a holy ordinance instituted by Christ, wherein, by sensible signs, Christ, and the benefits of the new covenant, are represented, sealed, and applied to believers.

Q. 1. From whence is the word *sacrament* derived?

A. It is of a Latin original, being anciently used by the Romans, to signify their military oath, or that oath which their soldiers took to be true and faithful to their prince, and that they would not desert his standard.

Q. 2. How is it used by the church?

A. Not only to signify something that is sacred, but likewise a solemn engagement to be the Lord's.

Q. 3. What is the general nature of a sacrament?

A. It is a *holy ordinance instituted by Christ*.

Q. 4. Why is a sacrament called a *holy ordinance*?

A. Because it is appointed, not only for holy ends and uses, but likewise for persons federally holy.

Q. 5. Is it necessary that a sacrament be *instituted by Christ*?

A. Yes; it is essentially necessary that it have his express and immediate warrant and institution, otherwise it does not deserve the name, 1 Cor. xi. 23. "For I have RECEIVED of the Lord that which also I delivered unto you," &c.

Q. 6. Why must sacraments be expressly or immediately instituted by Christ?

A. Because he alone is the head of the church, and has sole power and authority to institute sacraments and other ordinances therein, Eph. i. 22, 23.

Q. 7. "What are the parts of a sacrament?"

A. "Two; the one an outward and sensible sign, used according to Christ's own appointment, the other an inward and spiritual grace thereby signified,"\* Matth. iii. 11; 1 Pet. iii. 21.

Q. 8. What are the outward *signs* in sacraments?

A. They are the sacramental elements and the sacramental actions; but chiefly the elements, because it is about these that the sacramental actions are exercised.

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 163.

Q. 9. Why called *sensible* signs?

A. Because they are obvious to the outward senses of seeing, tasting, feeling, &c.

Q. 10. What kind of signs are sensible signs in a sacrament?

A. They are not natural, nor merely speculative, but voluntary and practical signs.

Q. 11. Why are they not natural signs?

A. Because natural signs always signify the self-same thing, as smoke is always a sign of fire, and the morning light a sign of the approaching sun; whereas the signs in a sacrament never signify what they represent in that holy ordinance, but when sacramentally used.

Q. 12. Why are they practical, and not merely speculative signs?

A. Because they are designed, not only to represent the spiritual grace signified by them, but likewise to seal and apply the same.

Q. 13. Why are the signs in a sacrament called voluntary signs?

A. Because they depend entirely upon the Divine institution to make them signs, yet so as there is some analogy or resemblance betwixt the sign and the thing signified.

Q. 14. When are sacramental signs used according to Christ's own appointment?

A. When they are dispensed with the words of institution annexed unto them, Matth. xxviii. 19; 1 Cor. xi. 23—25.

Q. 15. What do the words of institution imply or contain in them?

A. They contain "together with a precept authorizing the use" of them, "a promise of benefit to the worthy receivers,"\* Matth. xxviii. 20.

Q. 16. What is the inward and spiritual grace signified by the sensible signs in a sacrament?

A. *Christ, and the benefits of the new covenant.*

Q. 17. Why is the covenant of grace called *the new covenant*?

A. Because it is always to remain in its prime and vigour, without the least change or alteration; for "that which decayeth and waxeth old is ready to vanish away," Heb. viii. 13.

Q. 18. What are the *benefits* of the new covenant?

A. They are all the blessings contained in the promises thereof, which may be summed up in grace here and glory hereafter, Psal. lxxxiv. 11.

Q. 19. Are Christ and the benefits of the new covenant separable from one another?

A. No; for "he that hath the Son hath life," 1 John v.

\* Confession of Faith, chap. xxvii. § 3.

12; whoever hath Christ, hath all things along with him; "all are yours, and ye are Christ's," 1 Cor. iii. 22, 23.

Q. 20. What is the intention and design of sensible signs in a sacrament with reference to Christ and the benefits of the new covenant?

A. The design of them is, that Christ and his benefits may be represented, sealed, and applied by them.

Q. 21. Why are Christ and his benefits said to be represented by the signs in a sacrament?

A. Because as sacramental signs are of Divine institution, so there is a resemblance or similitude between the signs and the things signified.

Q. 22. Why are Christ and his benefits said to be sealed by these signs?

A. Because, by the sacramental signs, Christ and his benefits are confirmed to the believer, even as a seal is a confirmation of a bond or deed, Rom. iv. 11.

Q. 23. Why said to be applied?

A. Because, by the right and lawful use of the sacramental signs, Christ and his benefits are really communicated, conveyed, and made over to the worthy receiver, 1 Cor. xi. 24. "Take, eat; this is my body, which is broken for you."

Q. 24. To whom do the sacramental signs represent, seal, and apply Christ and his benefits?

A. Not to all who use them, but to *believers* only.

Q. 25. Why to believers only?

A. Because nothing but true faith can discern and apply the spiritual grace, which is represented and exhibited by sensible signs in the sacrament, Gal. iii. 26, 27.

Q. 26. Wherein consists the FORM of a sacrament?

A. In "a spiritual relation, or sacramental union between the sign and the thing signified."\*

Q. 27. What is the consequence of this sacramental union between the sign and the thing signified?

A. The consequence is, "that the names and effects of the one are attributed to the other."† Thus Christ is called "our passover," 1 Cor. v. 7; and the "bread in the supper is called Christ's body."—"This is my body," 1 Cor. xi. 24.

Q. 28. When are the signs and the things signified united in those who partake of the sacraments?

A. When, together with the signs (in virtue of Christ's institution), the blessings signified are received by faith, Gal. iii. 27.

Q. 29. How may this be illustrated by an example?

A. A little earth and stone put into a man's hand at random signify nothing; but when this is done in a regular man-

\* Confession of Faith, chap. xxvii. § 2.

† Ibid.

ner, according to the forms of law, to give a proprietor seisin and infestment of his lands, from whence these symbols were taken, it is of great availment to corroborate his right; so bread and wine in the sacrament are of small value in themselves, abstractly considered; yet, when received in faith as the instituted memorials of the death of Christ, whereby his testament was ratified and sealed, the believer's right to all the blessings of his purchase is thereby most comfortably confirmed, 1 Cor. xi. 24. "This is my body, which is broken FOR YOU."

Q. 30. Are the sacraments necessary for the confirmation of the word?

A. No; the word, being of Divine and infallible authority, needs no confirmation without itself; but they are necessary on OUR account, for helping our infirmity, and confirming and strengthening our faith, Rom. iv. 11.

Q. 31. What is the difference between the word and the sacraments?

A. The word may be profitable to the adult without the sacraments, but the sacraments cannot profit them without the word, Gal. v. 6.

Q. 32. What is the END of the sacraments?

A. It is "to represent Christ and his benefits; and to confirm our interest in him; as also to put a visible difference between those that belong unto the church and the rest of the world, and solemnly to engage them to the service of God in Christ, according to his word."\*

Q. 33. Who are they that have a right unto the sacraments?

A. They "that are within the covenant of grace," † Rom. xv. 8.

Q. 34. Who are to be reckoned within the covenant of grace in the sight of men?

N A. They who "profess their faith in Christ, and obedience to him," Acts ii. 38; and "infants descending from parents, either both or but one of them professing faith in Christ and obedience to him, are in that respect within the covenant," † Rom. xi. 16.

Q. 35. What may we learn from the nature of the sacraments in general?

A. The amazing love of the Lord Jesus, in giving us not only the word as the instrument in the hand of the Spirit, for begetting faith and all other graces, Eph. i. 13; but likewise the sacraments for strengthening and increasing the same, as well as for cherishing our love and communion one with another, 1 Cor. xii. 13.

\* Confession of Faith, chap. xxvii. § 1.

† Larger Catechism, quest. 162.

‡ Ibid. quest. 166.

93. Q. What are the sacraments of the New Testament?

A. The sacraments of the New Testament are, Baptism and the Lord's Supper.

Q. 1. What were the ordinary sacraments under the Old Testament?

A. They were two, CIRCUMCISION and the PASSOVER.

Q. 2. When was circumcision first instituted?

A. In the ninety-ninth year of Abraham's age, Gen. xvii. 24; at which time both he and "all the men of his house—were circumcised with him," ver. 26, 27.

Q. 3. At what age were the male children afterwards to be circumcised?

A. Precisely on the eighth day after they were born, Gen. xvii. 12.

Q. 4. What was the spiritual meaning of this sacramental ceremony?

A. It signified the impurity and corruption of nature, Jer. iv. 4; the necessity of regeneration, or being cut off from the first Adam as a federal head, Rom. ii. 28, 29; and of being implanted in Christ, in order to partake of the benefits of his mediation, chap. viii. 1; together with a solemn virtual engagement to be the Lord's, Gen. xvii. 11.

Q. 5. What was the other sacrament of the Old Testament?

A. The passover.

Q. 6. When was it instituted?

A. At the departure of the children of Israel out of Egypt, Exod. chap. xii.

Q. 7. Why called the PASSOVER?

A. Because the destroying angel passed over the houses of the Israelites in the night when he smote the firstborn with death in every house or family of the Egyptians, Exod. xii. 27.

Q. 8. On what account did the angel pass over the houses of the Israelites?

A. Because, according to the express command of God, the blood of the passover-lamb was stricken upon the lintels and side-posts of their doors, as a signal to the destroyer to pass over them, Exod. xii. 22, 23.

Q. 9. What was meant by striking the blood upon their lintels and door-posts?

A. It signified that it is only in virtue of the blood or satisfaction of Christ that the curse and sentence of the law (which is the wrath of God) is not executed upon the sinner, Rom. v. 9.

Q. 10. What were the significant ceremonies of Divine institution that were to be observed in this sacrament?

A. The passover-lamb was to be without blemish, Exod.

xii. 5 ; it was to be slain, ver. 6 ; it was to be roasted with fire, ver. 9 ; and it was to be eaten, and that wholly and entirely, ver. 10.

Q. 11. Why behoved the passover-lamb to be without blemish ?

A. To signify, that though our sins were imputed to Christ, yet he was in himself "holy, harmless, undefiled," Heb. vii. 26; and therefore called "a Lamb without blemish, and without spot," 1 Pet. i. 19.

Q. 12. Why behoved it to be slain, or killed by blood-shedding ?

A. To denote that the death of Christ was necessary for satisfying justice and reconciling us to God, Luke xxiv. 26. "Ought not Christ to suffer these things?"

Q. 13. Why was it to be roasted with fire ?

A. To intimate that Christ's sufferings, as our Surety, were exquisitely and inconceivably great, without the least abatement of any of that wrath which was due to our sins, Isa. liii. 10. "It pleased the Lord to bruise him," Rom. viii. 32. "God spared not his own Son."

Q. 14. Why was it to be eaten wholly and entirely, and none of it to be left ?

A. To signify that Christ was to be wholly applied, in a way of believing, as being "of God made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption," 1 Cor. i. 30.

Q. 15. Why were all the families of Israel to eat the passover at one and the same time ? Exod. xii. 8.

A. To signify that there is enough in Christ to satisfy the need of all his people at once, "for in him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily," Col. ii. 9.

Q. 16. Why was it to be eaten the very same evening wherein it was slain ? ver. 6, 8.

A. To signify that Christ ought to be applied and appropriated by faith speedily without delay. "Behold, now is the accepted time," 2 Cor. vi. 2.

Q. 17. "How many sacraments hath Christ instituted in his church under the New Testament ?

A. "Under the New Testament Christ hath instituted in his church only two sacraments, baptism and the Lord's supper."\*

Q. 18. How do these two sacraments come in the place of those under the Old Testament ?

A. Baptism comes in the place of circumcision, and the Lord's supper in the place of the passover.

Q. 19. Were the sacraments of the Old Testament no more than shadows of that grace which is actually conferred by the sacraments under the New, as the Papists would have it ?

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 164.

A. By no means, for “ the sacraments of the Old Testament, in regard of the spiritual things thereby signified and exhibited, were for substance the same with those of the New,”\* 1 Cor. x. 1—5.

Q. 20. Wherein do they differ?

A. The sacraments of the Old Testament represented Christ as yet to come, whereas those of the New hold him forth as already come, and as having finished the work of our redemption as to the purchase of it, Eph. v. 2.

Q. 21. Is there any difference between them as to clearness and perspicuity?

A. The words annexed to the outward signs in the sacraments of the New Testament make the things signified appear vastly more plain and perspicuous than in the sacraments of the Old.

Q. 22. What other sacraments do the Papists add to baptism and the Lord’s supper?

A. They boldly adventure to add other five, namely, confirmation, penance, ordination, marriage, and extreme unction.

Q. 23. How may it appear, in a word, that all these are false and spurious sacraments?

A. In regard that none of them have sacramental signs of Divine institution, signifying any inward and spiritual grace, and consequently none of them can be APPOINTED seals of God’s covenant.

Q. 24. Who may lawfully dispense the sacraments of the New Testament?

A. “ Neither of them may be dispensed by any but a minister of the word, lawfully ordained,”† 1 Cor. iv. 1.

94. Q. What is Baptism?

A. Baptism is a sacrament, wherein the washing with water in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, doth signify and seal our ingrafting into Christ, and partaking of the benefits of the covenant of grace, and our engagement to be the Lord’s.

Q. 1. What is the proper signification of the word *baptism*?

A. It is of a Greek original, and properly signifies a washing, sprinkling, or pouring out, in order to cleansing, Mark i. 8. “ I indeed baptize you with water, but he shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost;” that is, he shall pour his Spirit upon you, according to the promise, Isa. xlv. 3. “ I will pour my Spirit upon thy seed,” &c.

Q. 2. Who is the author of baptism?

\* Confession of Faith, chap. xxvii. § 5.

† Ibid. § 4.

A. The Lord Jesus Christ, the Mediator and Head of the church.

Q. 3. When did he institute and appoint it as a sacrament of the New Testament?

A. A little before his ascension into heaven, when he gave his apostles that solemn charge, Matth. xxviii. 19, "Go ye therefore and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost."

Q. 4. Was not baptizing used before that time?

A. It was used long before by the Jews in receiving their proselytes, but not by any Divine institution.

Q. 5. When came baptism to have a Divine warrant and institution?

A. When God SENT John the Baptist to baptize with water, John i. 33.

Q. 6. Was there any difference between the baptism of John and the baptism dispensed by the apostles after Christ's ascension?

A. There was no essential difference betwixt them, for both of them had the same visible sign, and the same blessings signified thereby. The difference was only circumstantial in respect of time and the objects of administration.

Q. 7. How did they differ in respect of time?

A. The baptism of John was dispensed before Christ had finished the work which his Father gave him to do; but the baptism of the apostles was mostly after Christ had suffered and had entered into his glory.

Q. 8. How did they differ as to the objects of administration?

A. The baptism of John was confined to Judea only, but the baptism of the apostles extended to all nations to whom the gospel was preached, Matth. xxviii. 19.

Q. 9. Did not Paul rebaptize some disciples at Ephesus who had been before baptized by John? Acts xix. 4, 5.

A. No; he only declares, that they who had heard John preach the doctrine of repentance and faith in Christ, were by John baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus, and so needed not to be rebaptized by any other.

Q. 10. Why did Christ, who had no need of it, condescend to be baptized by John?

A. He gives the reason himself; "It becometh us," says he, "to fulfil all righteousness," Matth. iii. 15.

Q. 11. Did Christ himself baptize any?

A. No; "Jesus himself baptized not, but his disciples," John iv. 2.

Q. 12. Why did not Christ baptize any himself?

A. That he might commend the ministry of men of like passions with ourselves, and to show that the efficacy of the

ordinance did not depend upon the administrator, but upon the Divine blessing, even as the words spoken by him on earth, when they were efficacious, they were so, not merely as spoken or uttered from his lips, but as accompanied with his own almighty power, Luke v. 17.

Q. 13. What is the visible sign or outward element in baptism?

A. Only *water*, pure and unmixed, Acts x. 47.

Q. 14. How is water to be applied to the body in baptism?

A. "Dipping of the person into the water is not necessary, but baptism is rightly administered by pouring or sprinkling water upon the person."\*

Q. 15. How doth it appear from Scripture that baptism is rightly administered by pouring or sprinkling water upon the person?

A. From repeated instances of the administration of baptism by the apostles in this manner, particularly when three thousand were baptized by them, Acts ii. 41, water behaved to be sprinkled upon them, in regard the apostles could not have time, in a part only of one day, to take them one by one and plunge them into it. Nor is it probable that the jailor, Acts xvi. 33, had such store of water in the night-season as was sufficient for himself and whole family to be dipped into; or that they went abroad in quest of some river for that purpose: it is by far more reasonable to think that in both the above instances they were baptized by sprinkling. The same may be said of Paul's baptism, Acts ix. 18; and of the baptism of Cornelius and his friends, Acts x. 47, 48.

Q. 16. Why is it most expedient to sprinkle water upon the face in baptism?

A. Because the face is the principal part of the body, and the whole person is represented by it, Exod. x. 29.

Q. 17. What is signified by water in baptism?

A. The cleansing virtue of the blood, Rev. i. 5, and Spirit of Christ, Tit. iii. 5.

Q. 18. What is the difference between cleansing by the blood and cleansing by the Spirit of Christ?

A. The blood of Christ cleanseth meritoriously, 1 John i. 7; the Spirit of Christ efficaciously, Ezek. xxxvi. 27. By the former the guilt of sin is at once taken away in justification; by the latter the blot and stain thereof is gradually carried off in sanctification.

Q. 19. What is signified by sprinkling water upon the body?

A. The application of the blood of Christ unto the soul by the Spirit of God, Tit. iii. 5, 6.

\* Confession of Faith, chap. xxviii. § 3.

Q. 20. What is the analogy or resemblance betwixt the sign in baptism and thing signified?

A. Water makes clean what before was foul and nasty; so the blood and Spirit of Christ purify from the guilt and pollution of sin, Zech. xiii. 1; water is open and free to all; so Christ and his benefits are freely offered to all the hearers of the gospel, Rev. xxii. 17.

Q. 21. In whose name are we baptized?

A. *In the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost*, Matth. xxviii. 19.

Q. 22. What is it to be baptized in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost?

A. It is not only to be baptized by the will, command, and authority of the Three-one God, but likewise to be by baptism solemnly dedicated and devoted to the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost, as our God and portion for ever, Isa. xlv. 5.

Q. 23. What is it to be baptized by the command and authority of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost?

A. It intimates, that the Trinity of persons do not only authorize and appoint baptism to be a sacrament of the New Testament, but that they become jointly engaged to make good all the blessings of the covenant signified and sealed by that ordinance, Jer. xxxi. 33. "I will be their God, and they shall be my people."

Q. 24. What is included in our being by baptism solemnly dedicated and devoted to the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, as our God and portion for ever?

A. It includes a solemn profession that these three adorable persons have the sole right to all our religious worship, Psal. v. 7; that all our hope of salvation is from them, Psal. lxii. i. 5; and that we should be wholly and for ever the Lord's, Psal. xlvi. 14.

Q. 25. Is it necessary that baptism be dispensed in these express words, "In the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost?"

A. Yes; because ministers are peremptorily commanded by Christ to baptize in this very form, Matth. xxviii. 19. "Go ye therefore and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost."

Q. 26. Did not the apostles baptize in another form when they baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus? Acts viii. 16.

A. It is not to be supposed that the apostles would alter the form so expressly delivered to them by their glorious Master; and therefore, when they are said to be baptized "in the name of the Lord Jesus," it is not designed thereby to notify to us in what form of words they were baptized, but only that

they were baptized by the authority of Christ, who appointed this sacrament, and unto faith in him and communion with him.

Q. 27. How ought the mentioning of the Holy Trinity to be introduced in baptism?

A. It is proper that it be introduced by words in the first person, expressing the present act of administration, and likewise setting forth the authority that a minister, lawfully called, has to dispense this sacrament; such as, "I baptize thee, in the name,"\* &c.

Q. 28. What are the ends and uses of baptism?

A. They are to signify and seal our ingrafting into Christ, and partaking of the benefits of the covenant of Grace.

Q. 29. What is it to signify and seal our ingrafting into Christ?

A. It is to signify and seal our union with him, and consequently the imputation of his righteousness to us, Gal. iii.

27. "As many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ."

Q. 30. What are the benefits of the covenant of grace, the partaking whereof is signified and sealed in baptism?

A. They are "remission of sins by the blood of Christ, regeneration by his Spirit, adoption, and resurrection unto everlasting life."†

Q. 31. What is the consequence of its being signified and sealed to us in baptism, that we partake of such great and glorious benefits?

A. The consequence is, that on this account "we enter into an open and professed engagement to be—the Lord's."‡

Q. 32. What is included in our engagement to be the Lord's?

A. That we shall be his "wholly and only."§

Q. 33. What is it to be his wholly?

A. It is to be his, in all that we are, soul, spirit, and body, 1 Cor. vi. 19, 20; and in all that we have, whether gifts, graces, or worldly comforts, 1 Chron. xxix. 14.

Q. 34. What is it to be the Lord's only?

A. It is to be his in opposition to all his rivals and competitors, every one of which we profess to renounce in baptism, Hos. xiv. 8.

Q. 35. Who are these rivals and competitors with God whom we profess to renounce in baptism?

A. They are sin, Rom. vi. 6; Satan, Acts xxvi. 18; and the world, John xvii. 14.

\* See the Directory for Public Worship on the head of Baptism.

† Larger Catechism, quest. 165. See all these explained, Part I. on Justification, Sanctification, Adoption, and Resurrection.

‡ Larger Catechism, quest. 165.

§ Ibid.

Q. 36. Does baptism make or constitute persons church-members?

A. No; they are supposed to be church-members before they are baptized, and if they are children of professing parents they are born members of the visible church, 1 Cor. vii. 14.

Q. 37. Why must they be church-members before they are baptized?

A. Because the seals of the covenant can never be applied to any but such as are supposed to be in the covenant; nor can the privileges of the church be confirmed to any that are without the church.

Q. 38. Why then do our Confession,\* and Larger Catechism,† say, that “the parties baptized are solemnly admitted into the visible church?”

A. Because there is a vast difference between making a person a church-member who was none before, and the solemnity of the admission of one who is already a member. All that our Confession and Catechism affirm is, that by baptism we are solemnly admitted into the visible church; that is, by baptism we are publicly declared to be church-members before, and have now our membership SOLEMNLY sealed to us thereby. “For by one Spirit we are all baptized into one body,” 1 Cor. xii. 13.

Q. 39. Is it warrantable to call the baptizing of any the christening of them?

A. No; because this is an encouraging of the superstitious Popish notion, that baptism makes even those who are born within the visible church to become Christians, and that by the want of it they remain infidels, and are left to uncovenanted mercy.

Q. 40. What are the extremes about the necessity of baptism?

A. The Socinians and Quakers deny that it is necessary at all; on the other hand, the Papists and some others maintain that it is so absolutely necessary that no salvation can be expected without it.

Q. 41. What is the doctrine of our Confession of Faith on this head?

A. That “although it be a great sin to contemn or neglect this ordinance, yet grace and salvation are not so inseparably annexed unto it as that no person can be regenerated and saved without it, or that all that are baptized are undoubtedly regenerated.”‡

Q. 42. Wherein consists the greatness of the sin of contemning and slighting this ordinance?

A. It consists in despising an express and positive institu-

\* Chap. xxviii. § 3.

† Quest. 165.

‡ Chap. xxviii. § 5.

tion of Christ, appointed to be administered in his church to the end of the world, Matth. xxviii. 19, 20; and in slighting all the great and glorious benefits and privileges signified and sealed thereby, Luke vii. 30.

Q. 43. How doth it appear that grace and salvation are not inseparably annexed to baptism?

A. From the instance of Abraham, who had "the righteousness of faith before he was circumcised," Rom. iv. 11; of Cornelius, who "feared God," and was accepted of him before he was baptized, Acts x. 2, 4; and from the instance of the "thief on the cross," who was saved without being baptized at all, Luke xxiii. 43.

Q. 44. How doth the Scriptures evince that all who are baptized are not regenerated and saved?

A. From the instance of Simon Magus, who was baptized, and yet after baptism remained "in the gall of bitterness and in the bond of iniquity," Acts viii. 13, 23.

Q. 45. Whether doth baptism give a right to covenant-blessings, or is it a declarative sign and seal of them only?

A. It is only a declarative sign and seal of them, as circumcision was, Rom. iv. 11.

Q. 46. What then gives a right?

A. The promise of the covenant, which is indorsed to the children as well as to the parents, Acts ii. 39. "The promise is unto YOU and to your CHILDREN."

Q. 47. Whether is baptism designed to make the covenant surer or our faith stronger?

A. It is designed only to make our faith stronger; for the sureness of the covenant flows from the faithfulness of God, which is inviolable and unchangeable, Psal. lxxxix. 33; Isa. liv. 10.

Q. 48. Wherein consists the efficacy of baptism?

A. It consists in sealing and ratifying the right to covenant-blessings, which persons have from the promise so infallibly that they shall certainly be put in possession of them, Eph. v. 25, 26. For according to the doctrine of our Confession, "The grace promised is not only offered but really exhibited and conferred by the Holy Ghost to such (whether of age or infants) as that grace belongeth unto, according to the counsel of God's own will, in his appointed time."\*

Q. 49. Is baptism efficacious at the time of its administration?

A. Not always; "the efficacy of baptism is not tied to that moment of time wherein it is administered,"† but may take place afterwards, as God in his sovereignty hath fixed it; "for the wind bloweth where it listeth," John iii. 8.

Q. 50. What may we learn from the nature of baptism?

\* Confession, chap. xxviii. § 6.

† Ibid.

*confess  
p. Baum*

✓

|

*M*  
 A. The infinite goodness of God, in appointing an initiating ordinance, irreversibly sealing all the blessings of the covenant to the elect seed, Gen. xvii. 7.

95. Q. To whom is baptism to be administered?

A. Baptism is not to be administered to any that are out of the visible church till they profess their faith in Christ and obedience to him; but the infants of such as are members of the visible church are to be baptized.

Q. 1. Who may administer the sacrament of baptism?

A. Neither of the two sacraments "may be dispensed by any but by a minister of the word, lawfully ordained." \*

Q. 2. How do you prove that ordination by presbyters is lawful and valid without a diocesan bishop?

A. From express scripture-testimony, asserting the validity of ordination to the ministry, by "the laying on of the hands of the PRESBYTERY," 1 Tim. iv. 14.

Q. 3. Why should ministers lawfully ordained and no other persons whatsoever dispense the sacraments of the New Testament?

A. Because they only are the "stewards of the mysteries of God," 1 Cor. iv. 1; and have the sole commission and authority from Christ to preach and baptize, Matth. xxviii. 19. "Go ye, therefore, and TEACH all nations, BAPTIZING them," &c.

Q. 4. Is public prayer requisite before the administration of baptism?

A. It is evident that our Lord, at the first institution of the supper, and his apostles afterwards, according to his example, did pray for the Divine blessing to attend the dispensation of that solemn ordinance, 1 Cor. xi. 24; and therefore, by a parity of reason, ministers ought to pray and the people to join therein for the same blessing upon the administration of the sacrament of baptism.

Q. 5. Ought not teaching or preaching of the word to go before baptism?

A. Yes; because our Lord has joined them together, Matth. xxviii. 19. "Go ye, therefore, and TEACH all nations, BAPTIZING them," &c. And accordingly it was the uniform practice of the apostles to preach when they baptized, Acts ii. 38—41, and viii. 35, 38, and xvi. 32, 33.

Q. 6. Is naming of children necessary at baptism?

*X*  
 A. No; baptism dispensed by sprinkling of water, together with the words of institution, is every way valid and complete, though the person baptized is not named at all.

\* Confession, chap. xxvii. § 4.

Q. 7. But was not the naming of children at circumcision an ancient practice among the Jews? Luke i. 59.

A. It was so; and the names of children may be published at baptism still, provided it is not looked upon as essential to that solemn ordinance; for it is the parent and not the minister who gives the name.

Q. 8. May baptism be administered in private?

A. It is more agreeable to the nature of this ordinance, when the Lord gives his people peace and opportunity for their public assemblies, that it be administered wherever the congregation is orderly called together, to wait on the dispensing of the word,\* Acts ii. 41.

Q. 9. What if the child shall be removed by death before such a regular opportunity can be had?

A. Then the parents may comfort themselves in this, that they were neither guilty of an unnecessary delay, nor of contemning the ordinance; and that in these circumstances the want of it cannot harm the child, 2 Sam. xii. 18, 23.

Q. 10. With what frame and disposition of mind ought this sacrament to be dispensed and witnessed?

A. With a firm persuasion that it is an ordinance of God; with a filial and reverential fear of him on our spirits; and with gratitude and thankfulness for the inestimable benefits that are signified and sealed therein.

Q. 11. How often is baptism to be administered to any person?

A. But once only, Acts xix. 4, 5.

Q. 12. Why but once only?

A. Because when our ingrafting into Christ (which is the comprehensive benefit signed and sealed in baptism) doth once take place, it is never repeated, but remaineth firm and inviolable for ever, John xvii. 23.

Q. 13. To whom is baptism NOT to be administered?

A. *Baptism is not to be administered to any that are out of the visible church.*

Q. 14. Whom do you understand by those *that are out of the visible church*?

A. All infidels, or such as are Jews or Heathens, and their children.

Q. 15. Why may not these be baptized?

A. Because being strangers from the covenant of promise, they can have no right to the seals thereof, Eph. ii. 12.

Q. 16. May infidels in no event be baptized?

A. Yes; they may so soon as *they profess their faith in Christ, and obedience to him.*

Q. 17. What is it to *profess faith in Christ*?

\* See Act X. Assembly 1690.

A. It is to profess a belief of the whole doctrines of the Christian religion, Acts viii. 37.

Q. 18. What is it to profess *obedience to him* ?

A. It is to yield an external subjection to all the ordinances and institutions of Christ, Acts ii. 46.

Q. 19. Whom doth such a profession respect ?

A. It respects only the adult, or such as are grown up to ripeness of age.

Q. 20. Have not INFANTS (who can make no such profession) a right to baptism ?

A. Yes ; *the infants of such as are members of the visible church are to be baptized.*

Q. 21. Who are *the members of the visible church* ?

A. They are "all such as profess the true religion, and their children." \*

Q. 22. What are we to understand by the true religion ?

A. We are to understand by it the whole of those doctrines deduced from the Holy Scriptures, which are contained in our Confession of Faith, and Catechisms, as agreeing in the main with the confessions of other reformed churches, 2 Tim. i. 13. "Hold fast the form of sound words."

Q. 23. What is it to profess the true religion ?

A. It is openly to acknowledge, on all proper occasions, a steadfast adherence to the whole of Divine truth, without espousing or countenancing any opposite error, Psal. cxix. 105 ; Rom. x. 10.

Q. 24. Is a bare profession of the true religion sufficient ?

A. No ; for "faith without works is dead," James ii. 26.

Q. 25. Upon what ground have the infants of such as are members of the visible church a right to baptism ?

A. Upon the ground of the grace and goodness of God in the promise, assuming them into the same covenant with their parents, as in the promise made to Abraham, Gen. xvii. 7. "I will establish my covenant between me and thee, and thy seed after thee,—to be a God unto thee, and to thy seed after thee."

Q. 26. But what if this promise of assuming the seed into the same covenant with the parents have a respect only to the natural offspring of Abraham, and to none else ?

A. The apostle Peter plainly affirms, that it is a promise of the covenant of grace extending to the Gentiles as well as to the Jews ; and at the same time, that it is the foundation of church-membership, and consequently of baptism, when he says, Acts ii. 38, 39, "Repent and be baptized every one of you, for the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God shall call."

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 62.

Q. 27. How doth it appear from this text that the promise of assuming the children into the same covenant with their parents extends to the Gentile nations?

A. Because the apostle says, that the promise is unto "all that are AFAR OFF, even as many as the Lord our God shall call;" namely, by the external call of the word, which is appointed to be published to "every creature," Mark xvi. 15.

Q. 28. How doth it appear that this promise is the foundation of church-membership and consequently of baptism?

A. It appears from this, that the apostle enforces his exhortation to repent and be baptized upon the adult persons to whom he is speaking, from this powerful and encouraging motive, that then their children should have a right and title to the privileges of the same covenant of promise, the seal whereof they themselves were to receive in their baptism. "Repent," says he, "and be baptized;—for the promise is unto you and to your children."

Q. 29. What promise doth the apostle here point at?

A. He points at the promise made to Abraham, Gen. xvii. 7. "I will be a God unto thee, and to thy seed after thee."

Q. 30. What seal was annexed to this promise, or promulgation of the covenant of grace, made to Abraham?

A. The seal of circumcision, ver. 10, "This is my covenant, which ye shall keep between me and you;—Every man-child among you shall be circumcised;" and ver. 12, "He that is eight days old shall be circumcised among you."

Q. 31. What connexion is there between circumcising the seed of Abraham on the eighth day under the Old Testament and baptizing the children of professing parents under the New?

A. The connexion is, that though circumcision and baptism be different signs, yet they are both of them seals of the same covenant of grace; and since the infant seed of Abraham received the seal of circumcision under the Old Testament, by parity of reason the infant children of professing parents should receive the seal of baptism under the New, especially as baptism is now come in the room of circumcision.

Q. 32. How do you prove from Scripture that baptism is come in the room of circumcision?

A. From Col. ii. 10—12. "Ye are complete in him.—In whom also ye are circumcised with the circumcision made WITHOUT hands:—"Buried with him in baptism, wherein also you are risen with him."

Q. 33. How doth it appear from this text, that baptism is now come in the room of circumcision?

A. From the plain and obvious scope of it, which is to show that there is no need now of that circumcision which

was outward in the flesh, in regard we have all the blessed fruits and effects of Christ's death and resurrection more clearly, and at the same time more extensively represented and sealed in baptism, which is dispensed equally to both sexes.

Q. 34. What would be the consequence if the infants of professing parents under the New Testament were not admitted to the initiating seal of the covenant as well as the infants of the Jews under the Old?

A. The consequence would be, that the privileges of the New Testament church would be more abridged and lessened than those of the Old, whereas they are rather increased and enlarged, Isa. liv. 2, 3.

Q. 35. How can infants be baptized when they are incapable of making a profession of their faith, which seems to be required in order to baptism? Acts viii. 37.

A. An explicit or formal profession of faith is only required of them that are adult or come to age, when they are to be baptized; but not of infants now, any more than when they were circumcised of old on the eighth day after their birth.

Q. 36. Are infants capable of the blessings signified and sealed in baptism?

A. Undoubtedly they are; for some of them have been "filled with the Holy Ghost even from their mother's womb," Luke i. 15, and consequently, by grace, capable of regeneration, pardon, and eternal life; wherefore the sign and seal of these blessings ought not to be withheld.

Q. 37. How are children of professing parents designed in Scripture?

A. If any one of the parents be a visible believer or regular church-member, the children on that account are called holy, 1 Cor. vii. 14. "The unbelieving husband is sanctified by the wife; and the unbelieving wife is sanctified by the husband, else were your children unclean, but now they are holy."

Q. 38. What holiness is here meant?

A. Federal holiness, or being admitted to church-membership together with their believing or professing parent.

Q. 39. May not this holiness be understood of legitimacy or being lawfully begotten?

A. No; because marriage being an ordinance of the law of nature, the children of married parents, though both of them infidels, are as lawfully begotten as those of professing Christians.

Q. 40. How doth federal holiness entitle an infant to baptism?

A. Federal holiness necessarily supposes a being within the covenant, in virtue of the credible profession of the parent, and consequently a right to the initiating seal thereof.

Q. 41. Is there any express precept in the New Testament for baptizing the infants of visible believers?

A. The privilege of the infant seed of visible church-members having been settled ever since Abraham's time, and never reversed, there was no need of any more than the general precept, "Go, teach and baptize," Matth. xxviii. 19.

Q. 42. Why is there need of no precept more express than this general one?

A. Because the privilege of infants, their being assumed into the same covenant with their parents, is declared to be continued in New-Testament times, Acts ii. 39. "The promise is unto you, and to your children."

Q. 43. Have we any Scripture-example for infant baptism?

A. Yes; the apostles baptized whole households or families at once, such as the household of Lydia, Acts xvi. 15; all the jailor's family, ver. 33; and the household of Stephanas, 1 Cor. i. 16.

Q. 44. But there is no mention of their baptizing infants in those families?

A. Neither is there mention of their baptizing adult persons in them; only, since they baptized the whole, it is not to be supposed but that there were some infants or young ones among them.

Q. 45. "How is our baptism to be improved by us?"

A. "By serious and thankful consideration of the nature of it, and of the ends for which Christ instituted it,—by being humbled for our sinful defilement, or falling short of, and walking contrary to our engagements,—and by endeavouring to live by faith, to have our conversation in holiness and righteousness, as those that have therein given up their names to Christ, and to walk in brotherly love, as being baptized by the same Spirit into one body."\*

Q. 46. When should we thus improve our baptism?

A. "All our life long, especially in time of temptation, and when we are present at the administration of it to others."†

96. Q. What is the Lord's supper?

A. The Lord's supper is a sacrament, wherein by giving and receiving bread and wine, according to Christ's appointment, his death is showed forth; and the worthy receivers are, not after a corporal and carnal manner, but by faith, made partakers of his body and blood, with all his benefits, to their spiritual nourishment, and growth in grace.

Q. 1. Why is this sacrament compared to a *supper*?

A. Because it was instituted immediately after eating the passover (Matth. xxvi. 26), which was always at night, Exod. xii. 6, 8.

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 167.

† Ibid.

Q. 2. Why is it called *the Lord's Supper*?

A. Because the Lord Jesus was the sole author of it, 1 Cor. xi. 23, and it was highly requisite it should be so.

Q. 3. Why was it highly requisite that the Lord Jesus should be the sole author of this holy ordinance?

A. Because all the grace that was held forth therein is treasured up wholly in him, and is conveyed and applied by him unto the soul, John i. 16.

Q. 4. When did Christ institute and appoint this sacrament?

A. The same night in which he was betrayed, 1 Cor. xi. 23.

Q. 5. What night was that?

A. It was the very last night before his death, Matth. xxvi. 47, 48, compared with chap. xxvii. 1, 35, 46, 50.

Q. 6. What is implied in his instituting this sacrament the same night in which he was betrayed?

A. It implies his infinite goodness and inviolable attachment to mankind lost, whom he represented, that in the immediate prospect of his greatest sufferings and soul-agonies in their stead, he should have their salvation and comfort so much at heart as to leave this memorial and pledge of his dying love among them till he come again, Matth. xxvi. 29.

Q. 7. Are Christians under any obligation to celebrate this ordinance at night, as our Lord and his disciples did at the first institution of it?

A. No; the substituting this sacrament in the room of the passover (which was eaten immediately before) was the occasion of its being first administered at night, and that particular occasion can never recur again.

Q. 8. In what posture should the Lord's supper be received?

A. This sacrament being called the Lord's table, 1 Cor. x. 21, a table-posture, which is sitting, seems to be most agreeable to the practice of our Lord and his disciples at the first supper, Matth. xxvi. 20, 26.

Q. 9. From whence did the practice of kneeling at the sacrament take its rise?

A. From the church of Rome, who maintain that the consecrated bread or wafer is changed into the real body of Christ, and therefore to be worshipped.

Q. 10. What are the outward ELEMENTS appointed by Christ in this sacrament?

A. They are *bread and wine*, Mark xiv. 22, 23.

Q. 11. What sort of bread and wine is proper to be used?

A. Just such as is ordinarily used in entertainments among men.

Q. 12. Is the sacrament of the supper to be received by every partaker in both elements?

A. To be sure it ought; for our Lord gave both elements to his disciples; and the apostle appoints both the elements to be dispensed to communicants, 1 Cor. xi. 28. "Let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that BREAD, and drink of that CUP." And therefore the withholding of the cup from the people, as is done by the church of Rome, is a piece of sacrilegious impiety.

Q. 13. What is signified by the bread and the wine?

A. The *body* and *blood* of Christ, 1 Cor. xi. 24, 25.

Q. 14. What is to be understood by Christ's body and blood?

A. His incarnation and satisfaction for the complete accomplishment of our redemption, John vi. 51. "The bread that I give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world."

Q. 15. What is the analogy or resemblance betwixt the bread and wine, and what is signified and represented by these elements?

A. As bread and wine make a sufficient entertainment for the nourishment of the body, so the righteousness and fullness of Christ are a full and satisfying feast for the refreshment of the soul, John vi. 55. "My flesh is meat indeed, and my blood is drink indeed."

Q. 16. What are the sacramental ACTIONS with reference to these elements?

A. They are all of them comprehended in the answer under *giving and receiving bread and wine, according to Christ's appointment.*

Q. 17. Whom do these sacramental actions respect?

A. Some of them respect the administrator, and some the partakers in this holy ordinance.

Q. 18. Who are the administrators of this sacrament?

A. Christ himself was the first administrator thereof; and after him ministers of the word, lawfully called and set apart unto that office.

Q. 19. What were the actions of Christ, the first administrator, which ministers are to imitate and copy after in dispensing this sacrament?

A. After his example they take the bread and the cup; they bless these elements; they break the bread, and give both the bread and the wine to be distributed among the communicants.

Q. 20. What is meant by taking the bread and the cup?

A. Christ's voluntarily assuming the human nature into union with his Divine person, Heb. ii. 16, that therein he might be a sacrifice of infinite value in our stead, Eph. v. 2.

Q. 21. What is implied in blessing the elements?

A. That Christ has appointed the bread and the wine in this sacrament to be the visible signs or symbols of his body

and blood ; and likewise, by his example, has warranted ministers to set apart by solemn prayer so much of these elements as shall be used in this sacrament from a common to a holy use.

Q. 22. Why is Christ's blessing the elements called his giving thanks? 1 Cor. xi. 24.

A. Because so inconceivably great was his love to lost sinners of mankind, that he was thankful he had all their debt to pay, Psal. xl. 7, 8 ; and that he was able to do it "to the uttermost," Heb. vii. 25.

Q. 23. What is to be understood by breaking the bread?

A. The most exquisite sufferings of the Son of God, Psal. xxii. 14, 15 ; and the necessity of them, as the channel wherein mercy was to be vented to the sinner, Rom. v. 21.

Q. 24. What is intimated to us by *giving* the bread and *giving* the cup? Matth. xxvi. 26, 27.

A. It intimates that Christ is the free gift of God to sinners of mankind for salvation and eternal life, John iii. 16.

Q. 25. What are the sacramental actions of the partakers in this sacrament, included in their *receiving* of bread and wine?

A. They take the bread and the cup ; they eat the bread, and drink a part of the wine in the cup.

Q. 26. What is imported in their taking the bread and the cup?

A. It imports that our receiving of Christ is founded on the gift and grant that is made of him in the word, for "a man can receive nothing except it be given him from heaven," John iii. 27.

Q. 27. What is included in their eating the bread and drinking the wine?

A. It includes that there ought to be an application of Christ to the soul in particular, in virtue of the particular indorsement of the promise to every one that hears the gospel ; "for the promise," says the apostle Peter, "is unto you (that is, unto every one of you), and to your children," Acts ii. 39.

Q. 28. For what end did Christ institute these sacramental elements and actions?

A. That thereby *his death* might be *showed forth*, 1 Cor. xi. 26, and the remembrance of it kept up, Luke xxii. 19.

Q. 29. What is it to show forth the death of Christ?

A. It is to profess (by partaking of this sacrament) that we believe his death in our room to have been most acceptable to God, Eph. v. 2 ; and that we acquiesce therein, together with his obedience, as the sole ground of our hope of salvation, Rom. iv. 25.

Q. 30. How doth it appear that his death in our room was most acceptable unto God?

A. By his resurrection from the dead, 1 Thess. i. 10, and his entrance into glory, Luke xxiv. 26.

Q. 31. How may we know if we acquiesce in the obedience and death of Christ as the sole ground of our hope of salvation?

A. If we are renouncing all other confidences, Hos. xiv. 3; and are convinced that the meritorious obedience "unto death" of the Son of God as our surety is the sole payment of the debt we were owing to law and justice, Jer. xxiii. 6. "This is his name whereby he shall be called, **THE LORD OUR RIGHTEOUSNESS.**"

Q. 32. Why has Christ appointed this sacrament to be observed in remembrance of him, Luke xxii. 19, "This do in remembrance of me?"

A. Because, though his incarnation and satisfaction be the greatest events that ever happened in the world, and the most interesting to us, yet we are apt to forget them, or at least not to have the solid and lively impression of them habitually upon our spirits, Psal. cvi. 13. "They soon forgot his works."

Q. 33. What is it about the death of Christ we ought to remember in this sacrament?

A. The truth of it, the necessity of it, and the sufficiency of it.

Q. 34. What is it to remember the truth of Christ's death?

A. It is, by a true and saving faith, to believe that Christ really did and suffered all these things for us that are recorded of him in Scripture, 1 Cor. xv. 3, 4.

Q. 35. What is it to remember the necessity of his death, Luke xxiv. 26, "Ought not Christ to have suffered these things?"

A. It is to believe that we had certainly gone "down to the pit," unless God had "found a ransom," or an atonement, Job. xxxiii. 24.

Q. 36. What is it to remember the sufficiency of it?

A. It is to believe that it is infinitely valuable, and therefore could have procured the salvation of thousands of worlds, had it been so ordained, it being the death and blood of him who is the supreme God, Acts xx. 28. "Feed the church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood."

Q. 37. In what MANNER should we show forth and remember the death of Christ in this sacrament?

A. We ought to do it fiducially, humbly, mournfully, and thankfully.

Q. 38. Why ought we to remember his death fiducially?

A. Because, as he "was delivered for our offences," Rom.

iv. 25, so "God raised him up from the dead, and gave him glory, that our faith and hope might be in God," 1 Pet. i. 21.

Q. 39. Why ought we to remember it humbly?

A. Because, when we are unworthy of the least of all God's mercies, Gen. xxxii. 10; we are much more so of the greatest that can be conferred, John iii. 16. "God so loved the world," &c.

Q. 40. Why mournfully?

A. Because our sins were the procuring cause of his sufferings, Isa. liii. 5, 6. "He was wounded for OUR transgressions, he was bruised for OUR iniquities. The Lord hath laid on him the iniquities of us all." \*

Q. 41. Why should the death of Christ be remembered thankfully?

A. Because his death was in our room, Tit. ii. 14, and was the finishing stroke of the work which his Father gave him to do, John xix. 30.

Q. 42. How often should the death of Christ be remembered by partaking of this sacrament?

A. The Scripture has not precisely determined how often, but it would appear that it ought frequently to be done.

Q. 43. How doth it appear that the death of Christ should be frequently remembered in the supper?

A. From the words of our Lord, 1 Cor. xi. 25, 26. "This do ye, AS OFT as ye drink it, in remembrance of me; for AS OFTEN as ye eat this bread," &c. plainly implying that it ought OFTEN to be done.

Q. 44. When will the death of Christ be remembered perpetually without interruption?

A. In heaven, though not in a sacramental way, Rev. xxi. 22. "I saw no temple there."

Q. 45. How may it be proved that it will be perpetually remembered in heaven?

A. From the song of the redeemed there, recorded Rev. i. 5, 6. "Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood, to him be glory;" and chap. v. 9—14. "And they sung a new song, saying, Thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood," &c.

Q. 46. Who are called *worthy receivers* in the answer?

A. None are worthy receivers of this sacrament but true believers, and even they, in order to their partaking worthily and comfortably, ought to have grace in exercise as well as in the habit, Song i. 12.

Q. 47. Why are true believers called *WORTHY* receivers?

A. Not on account of any worthiness in themselves, for they

\* Margin, "Hath made the iniquities of us all to meet on him."

have nothing of their own whereof they can boast ; but because they are united to Christ, and have all that grace from him which enables them to partake in a suitable and becoming manner, 2 Cor. iii. 5.

Q. 48. What are the worthy receivers *made partakers of* in this sacrament ?

A. They are *made partakers of Christ's body and blood, with all his benefits.*

Q. 49. What is it to be partakers of Christ's body and blood ?

A. It is to be entertained in this sacrament upon all that was transacted upon the person of Christ, as God-man, Mediator ; this being the only proper and suitable food of the soul, John vi. 51, 53.

Q. 50. In what respect is it that the worthy receivers are NOT made partakers of his body and blood ?

A. They are not made partakers thereof *after a corporal and carnal manner.*

Q. 51. Why are these words inserted in the answer, *not after a corporal and carnal manner* ?

A. They are inserted in opposition to the Popish doctrine of transubstantiation, " which maintains a change of the substance of bread and wine into the substance of Christ's body and blood, by consecration of a priest." \*

Q. 52. What is the absurdity of this doctrine ?

A. It is " repugnant, not to Scripture alone, but even to common sense and reason ; overthroweth the nature of the sacrament, and hath been and is the cause of manifold superstitions, yea, of gross idolatries." †

Q. 53. How is it repugnant to Scripture ?

A. The Scripture expressly affirms that Christ gave the same very bread and cup to his disciples, after consecration, that he had taken into his hands before, Matth. xxvi. 26, 27 ; whereas the doctrine of transubstantiation maintains that the elements, after consecration, are no more the same, having only the form, colour, taste, and smell of bread and wine, wanting the substance of either, being turned into the substance of Christ's body and blood : in opposition whereunto the apostle calls the elements, after consecration, by the same names they had before it, to intimate that there was no change of their substance, 1 Cor. xi. 26—28. " As often as ye eat this BREAD, and drink this CUP," &c.

Q. 54. How is transubstantiation repugnant to common sense and reason ?

A. Common sense and reason tell us that a body occupies but one place, and cannot be at divers places at one and the

\* Confession of Faith, chap. xxix. § 6.

† Ibid.

same time; whereas they who defend transubstantiation must allow that the body of Christ may be in a thousand places at once, even as many places as there are consecrated wafers.

Q. 55. How doth transubstantiation overthrow the nature of the sacrament?

A. By destroying the spiritual or sacramental relation that is between the sign and the thing signified; for, if the sign be turned into the thing signified, then all relation and similitude betwixt them ceases. Besides, the sacrament being a commemoration of what was done and suffered in the human nature of Christ, it supposes his body to be absent, whereas transubstantiation supposes it present.

Q. 56. How is it the cause of manifold superstitions and gross idolatries?

A. Inasmuch as strange and surprising effects are ascribed to the host, or consecrated wafer, even when not used sacramentally; and the alleged change of the bread and wine into the substance of Christ's body and blood in the sacrament is the very pretence why they pay religious worship and adoration to the elements themselves, which is gross superstition and idolatry.

Q. 57. What is the difference between the Papists and Lutherans on this head?

A. The Papists maintain that the bread and wine lose their own natural substance, and are turned into the substance of Christ's body and blood; but the Lutherans affirm that the bread and wine retain their own natural substance still, and at the same time that the substance of Christ's body and blood is in, with, or under these elements.

Q. 58. Are not both opinions equally absurd?

A. Yes; for transubstantiation supposes that one body may be in many places at the same time, and consubstantiation takes it for granted that two bodies may be together in the same very place, or that they may both occupy the same individual space at the same time.

Q. 59. Is Christ offered up in this sacrament as a sacrifice for the remission of sins?

A. No; there is therein "only a commemoration of that one offering up of himself, by himself, upon the cross, once for all; and a spiritual oblation of all possible praise unto God for the same."\*

Q. 60. Why doth our Confession say that Christ's once offering up of himself was done **BY HIMSELF**?

A. In opposition to the unbloody sacrifice of the mass, which is offered up daily by the Popish priests for remission of the sins both of the quick and the dead.

\* Confession, chap. xxix. § 2.

Q. 61. What doth our Confession of Faith affirm concerning this "Popish sacrifice of the mass," as they call it?

A. It affirms that it is "most abominably injurious to Christ's one only sacrifice, the alone propitiation for all the sins of the elect," \* Heb. vii. 27.

Q. 62. Is not Christ really present in the sacrament of the supper?

A. He is "as really, and spiritually, present to the faith of believers in that ordinance as the elements themselves are to their outward senses," † 1 Cor. xi. 29.

Q. 63. If Christ be really present in the sacrament only in a spiritual sense, and not corporally, why doth he say of the bread, "This is my body?"

A. The plain obvious meaning is, "The bread is the sign or symbol of my body;" so that the words are to be understood in the figurative, not in the literal sense.

Q. 64. How do you prove that these words, "This is my body," are to be understood in the figurative and not in the literal and proper sense?

A. From this known rule in all language, That when the strict literal sense involves a manifest absurdity or contradiction, we must of necessity have recourse to the figurative sense; as when the apostle says, 1 Cor. x. 4, "That rock was Christ," it cannot be understood literally as if that rock, materially considered, was really Christ, but figuratively, that rock signified Christ; and so of a great many other Scripture-expressions.

Q. 65. Since the worthy receivers are not made partakers of Christ's body and blood after a corporal and carnal manner, how do they partake of the same?

A. They partake of his body and blood in this sacrament only *by faith*.

Q. 66. What is it for the worthy receivers to partake of his body and blood by faith?

A. It is to apply and appropriate himself and his righteousness, *with all his benefits*, to themselves, Psal. xvi. 5, 6.

Q. 67. What are these *benefits* which faith in this sacrament applies together with Christ himself?

A. Among many others there are these three comprehensive ones, namely, an ample indemnity of all sin, Mic. vii. 19, an unquestionable security for the progress of sanctification, Job xvii. 9, and an undoubted title to eternal life, John x. 28.

Q. 68. Why are these and the like called *his* benefits?

A. Because he is the purchaser, Tit. ii. 14, proprietor, John iii. 35, and dispenser of them, Eph. iv. 8.

\* Confession, chap. xxix. § 2.

† Ibid. § 7.

Q. 69. Why are worthy receivers said to be made partakers of *all* his benefits?

A. Because where himself is received, all good things go along with him, 1 Cor. iii. 22, 23. "All are yours, and ye are Christ's."

Q. 70. What is the fruit and effect of their being by faith made partakers of Christ and all his benefits?

A. The fruit and effect thereof is, *their spiritual nourishment and growth in grace.*

Q. 71. What doth *their spiritual nourishment* imply in it?

A. That this sacrament is not a converting but a nourishing ordinance.

Q. 72. What doth their *growth in grace* imply?

A. That the worthy receivers are already in a state of grace.

Q. 73. How may spiritual nourishment and growth in grace be discerned?

A. If there is a more enlarged desire after the sincere milk of the word, 1 Pet. ii. 2; if there is more of living by faith and not by sense, 2 Cor. v. 7; and if there is more inward opposition to sin, Psal. lxvi. 18, and outward tenderness in the walk, Psal. xxxix. 1.

97. Q. What is required to the worthy receiving of the Lord's supper?

A. It is required of them that would worthily partake of the Lord's supper that they examine themselves of their knowledge to discern the Lord's body, of their faith to feed upon him, of their repentance, love, and new obedience, lest, coming unworthily, they eat and drink judgment to themselves.

Q. 1. What preparatory duty is here required of those that would partake of the Lord's supper?

A. It is *that they examine themselves*, 1 Cor. xi. 28. "But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup."

Q. 2. What is it for persons to *examine themselves*?

A. It is to make a strict inquiry into and to pass an impartial judgment upon their spiritual state and frame by the rule of the word, Psal. lxxvii. 6, and cxix. 105.

Q. 3. What is the best and most successful way of essaying this duty?

A. It is to put it into the hand of the Spirit of God to manage it for us, Psal. cxxxix. 23, 24. "Search me, O God, and know my heart," &c.

Q. 4. Why is self-examination necessary before receiving the Lord's supper?

A. Because it is peremptorily commanded, in order to discover whether we be in a gracious state, or if we have grace in any measure of exercise; without either of which there can be no comfortable partaking of this ordinance. "Let a man examine himself, and so let him eat."

Q. 5. Is this the duty of every man, or of some only?

A. It is unquestionably the duty of every man. "Let a man examine himself," that is, every man and woman, without exception, whether they think themselves gracious or graceless.

Q. 6. Why should a gracious man examine himself?

A. Because "there is not a just man upon earth, that doeth good and sinneth not," Eccl. vii. 20.

Q. 7. Why should they who think they are graceless examine themselves?

A. Because "they that be whole need not a physician, but they that are sick," Matth. ix. 12. Hereby they come to see more clearly their absolute need of Christ.

Q. 8. Is self-examination the duty of those only who are to partake for the first time?

A. It is the duty of persons every time they adventure upon this ordinance, as the words of the precept evidently bear, "SO let him eat," that is, let none approach this holy table at any time without first essaying this duty.

Q. 9. Is self-examination to be practised only about the time of a communion?

A. It ought to be practised daily or habitually, 2 Cor. xiii. 5; and especially in the view of such a solemn approach to the Lord at his table.

Q. 10. What are those things about which they that would worthily partake of the Lord's supper are required to examine themselves?

A. They are required to examine themselves *of their knowledge—of their faith—of their repentance, love, and new obedience.*

Q. 11. What are they to try or examine about their *knowledge*?

A. If they have a competent measure of it, and if the measure they have be of a saving kind.

Q. 12. What is that competent measure of knowledge which is requisite to the worthy receiving of the Lord's supper?

A. That there be some uptaking of the person, offices, and righteousness of Christ; of the fulness, freedom, and stability of the covenant of grace; of the nature, use, and

end of the sacrament of the supper; and likewise of our own manifold sins and wants.

Q. 13. Why is such a knowledge necessary?

A. It is necessary *to discern the Lord's body.*

Q. 14. What is it to discern the Lord's body in this sacrament?

A. It is to view the meritorious atonement made by the Son of God in our nature, through the veils of bread and wine, which are designed to signify and represent the same.

Q. 15. Who are they who are guilty of not discerning the Lord's body?

A. They who rest in partaking of the outward elements, without a solid belief of the mysteries that are wrapt up in them.

Q. 16. How may we know if the measure of knowledge we have attained be of a saving kind?

A. If we think we know nothing yet as we ought to know, 1 Cor. viii. 2; if we are following on to know the Lord more and more, Hos. vi. 3; and if our knowledge influences our practice, John xiii. 17. "If ye know these things, happy are ye if ye do them."

Q. 17. Why is *faith* necessary to the worthy partaking of the Lord's supper?

A. It is necessary in order to *feed upon him.*

Q. 18. What is it to feed upon Christ in the sacrament of the supper?

A. It is to receive into our souls, from his fulness, all that spiritual good which is exhibited to us in the promise, John i. 16.

Q. 19. What is it of Christ that faith feeds upon in the sacrament?

A. It feeds upon all these discoveries of him that are made in the word; such as, his person, offices, mediatorial characters, and relations, John vi. 57.

Q. 20. How may we know if we have that faith which feeds on Christ in the word and sacrament?

A. Where this true and saving faith is, it is of an appetizing nature, whetting the spiritual appetite after more and more of him, Isa. xxvi. 8, 9; it purifies the heart, Acts xv. 9; accounts all things but loss for Christ, Phil. iii. 8; and is careful to maintain good works, Tit. iii. 8.

Q. 21. What is the use of *repentance* in this sacrament?

A. Without repentance there can be no mourning for sin, which is an inseparable concomitant of faith's looking to or improving a crucified saviour in this ordinance, Zech. xii. 10. "They shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him."

Q. 22. How may we know if our repentance be genuine or of a right kind?

A. It is true and genuine if we are grieved for sin as it is offensive to God, Psal. li. 4; if we are forsaking and turning from it both in heart and life, Hos. xiv. 8; and particularly, if we are deeply affected with the sin of unbelief, John xvi. 9.

Q. 23. What necessity is there for the exercise of the grace of *love* in partaking of the Lord's supper?

A. Without love to Christ there can be no communion with him in this or any other ordinance, John xiv. 21. "He that loveth me, shall be loved of my father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him."

Q. 24. How may we know if our love to Christ be sincere and unfeigned?

A. If it puts us upon essaying the most difficult duties he may call us unto, Psal. xxiii. 4; if it engages us to put a favourable construction upon the afflicting providences we meet with in our lot, Heb. xii. 10; and if we love his members out of love to himself, or because they are "begotten of him," 1 John v. 1.

Q. 25. Why is the obedience required of worthy receivers called *new obedience*?

A. Because it flows from a new principle of faith and love, Gal. v. 6; it is performed in a new manner, namely, in the strength of "the grace that is in Christ Jesus," 2 Tim. ii. 1; and is directed to a new end, even the glory of God, 1 Cor. x. 31.

Q. 26. How may we know if our obedience is indeed new obedience?

A. If we are conscientiously diligent in the practice of all commanded duty, at the same time look on ourselves as unprofitable servants, Luke xvii. 10, and lean wholly to the surety-righteousness as the sole ground of our acceptance, Isa. xlv. 24.

Q. 27. What risk do they run who omit to examine themselves as to the above graces before they come to the Lord's table?

A. They run the risk of *coming unworthily*.

Q. 28. What is it to come unworthily?

A. It is to come without any real sense or solid uptaking of the need that we stand in of Christ, as "of God made unto us wisdom, righteousness, sanctification, and redemption," 1 Cor. i. 30.

Q. 29. What danger do they incur who thus come unworthily?

A. *They eat and drink judgment to themselves*, 1 Cor. xi. 29.

Q. 30. In what sense can they who come unworthily be said to eat and drink judgment to themselves?

A. In so far as by their eating and drinking unworthily they do that which renders them obnoxious to the righteous judgment of God.

Q. 31. What *judgment* do they render themselves obnoxious unto ?

A. To temporal judgments, or afflictions of various kinds, in a present life ; and to eternal judgment, or condemnation (if mercy prevent not), in the life to come, 1 Cor. xi. 30, 32.

Q. 32. " May not one who doubteth of his being in Christ, or of his due preparation, come to the Lord's supper ? "

A. " If he be duly affected with the apprehension of the want of " an interest in Christ, " and unfeignedly desires to be found in him, and to depart from iniquity ; " in that case, " he is to bewail his unbelief, and labour to have his doubts resolved ; and in so doing, he may and ought to come to the Lord's supper, that he may be further strengthened. " \*

Q. 33. When may a person be said to be duly affected with the apprehension of the want of an interest in Christ ?

A. When he is filled with a restless uneasiness, and can take no comfort in any outward enjoyment, while he thinks himself destitute of an interest in him ; and, at the same time, is active and diligent in the use of all the ordinary means wherein he is usually to be found, Song iii. 1—5.

Q. 34. " May any who profess the faith and desire to come to the Lord's supper be kept from it ? "

A. " Such as are found to be ignorant or scandalous, notwithstanding their profession of the faith and desire to come to the Lord's supper, may and ought to be kept from that sacrament by the power which Christ hath left in his Church until they receive instruction and manifest their reformation. " †

Q. 35. Why ought the ignorant to be kept back ?

A. Because they cannot discern the Lord's body, nor take up the end and design of this sacrament, and therefore will but eat and drink judgment to themselves, 1 Cor. xi. 29.

Q. 36. Why ought the scandalous to be kept back from this sacrament ?

A. Because, by the habitual immorality of their practice, they manifest themselves to be under the dominion of the prince of darkness, and therefore, while in that state, can have no right to the privileges which belong only to the members of Christ's family, 1 Cor. x. 21.

Q. 37. " What is required of them that receive the sacrament of the Lord's supper in the time of the administration of it ? "

A. " It is required of them that they—heedfully discern the Lord's body, and affectionately meditate on his death and sufferings, and thereby stir up themselves to a vigorous exercise of their graces, in sorrowing for sin, hungering and

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 172.

† Ibid. quest. 173.

thirsting after Christ, feeding on him by faith,—and in renewing their covenant with God, and love to all the saints.”\*

Q. 38. What is it for the Lord's people to renew their covenant with him at his table?

A. It is to acquiesce anew in the covenant of grace as made with Christ, Isa. xlv. 5; and in so doing to surrender themselves to the Lord to be wholly his, trusting that he will keep them by his power “through faith unto salvation,” 1 Pet. i. 5.

Q. 39. What is it for them to renew their love to all the saints on that occasion?

A. It is to embrace the opportunity of being at the Lord's table, to breathe out the secret and habitual desires of their souls before him, that all the saints as well as themselves may share abundantly out of the fulness of Christ, Psal. xc. 14; and that they keep themselves “in the love of God, looking for the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ unto eternal life,” Jude, ver. 21.

Q. 40. What is the duty of Christians after they have received the sacrament of the Lord's supper?

A. It is “seriously to consider how they have behaved themselves therein and with what success; if they find quickening and comfort, to bless God for it, beg the continuance of it, watch against relapses, fulfil their vows, and encourage themselves to a frequent attendance on that ordinance.”†

Q. 41. What is it to fulfil our vows?

A. It is to set about the practice of all commanded duty according to our engagement, Psal. cxvi. 16, 18; and at the same time depend upon the grace and furniture that is in Christ Jesus for the right performance thereof, Phil. iv. 13.

Q. 42. What if Christians can find no present benefit by their attendance on this ordinance?

A. Then they are “more exactly to review their preparation to and carriage at the sacrament; in both which, if they can approve themselves to God and their own consciences, they are to wait for the fruit of it in due time.”‡

Q. 43. What if they have failed in their preparation to and carriage at the sacrament?

A. Then, “they are to be humbled, and attend upon it afterward with more care and diligence.”§

Q. 44. “Wherein do the sacraments of baptism and the Lord's supper agree?”

A. “In that the author of both is God, the spiritual part of both is Christ and his benefit, both are seals of the same covenant, and to be continued in the church of Christ until his second coming.”||

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 174. † Ibid. quest. 175. ‡ Ibid. § Ibid. || Ibid. quest. 176.

Q. 45. Wherein do they differ?

A. "In that baptism is to be administered but once, with water, to be a sign and seal of our regeneration and ingrafting into Christ, and that even to infants; whereas the Lord's supper is to be administered often, in the elements of bread and wine, to represent and exhibit Christ as spiritual nourishment to the soul, and to confirm our continuance and growth in him, and that only to such as are of years and ability to examine themselves."\*

98. Q. What is prayer?

A. Prayer is an offering of our desires to God for things agreeable to his will, in the name of Christ, with confession of our sins, and thankful acknowledgment of his mercies.

Q. 1. "Are we to pray to God only?"

A. "God only being to be believed in, and worshipped with religious worship, prayer (which is a special part thereof) is to be made by all to him alone, and to none other." †

Q. 2. Why is prayer to be made by all to God alone, and to none other?

A. Because "God only is able to search the hearts, hear the requests, pardon the sins, and fulfil the desires of all." ‡

Q. 3. May we not direct our prayers to any of the persons of the adorable Trinity?

A. To be sure we may; for the Three-one God being the sole object of religious worship, whichever of the three persons we address, the other two are understood as included, 2 Cor. xiii. 14.

Q. 4. Why may we not pray to angels or saints departed?

A. Because it would be gross idolatry, they being but mere creatures; nor can they supply the wants nor remove the miseries which sin has brought upon us.

Q. 5. Do we pray to God to inform him of what he knew not before?

A. Not at all; for from eternity he knew all the thoughts that ever should pass through our minds in time, Psal. cxxxix. 2, 4.

Q. 6. Do we pray to him that we may alter his mind, or incline him to any thing which he was formerly unwilling to grant?

A. No; for with him is "no variableness, neither shadow of turning," James i. 17; but we pray to him that we may obtain what we know and believe he is willing to confer, 1 John v. 14. "This is the confidence that we have in him, that if we ask any thing according to his will, he heareth us."

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 177.

† Ibid. quest. 179.

‡ Ibid.

Q. 7. What are the several parts of prayer mentioned in this answer?

A. They are these three: petition, confession, and thanksgiving.

Q. 8. In which of these doth prayer properly consist?

A. In PETITION, or supplication.

Q. 9. How doth the answer describe our petitions, or supplications?

A. It describes them to be *an offering up of our desires to God.*

Q. 10. Why are our petitions called *our desires*?

A. Because the words of our mouth, without the desires of our heart, are nothing but empty sounds in the ears of God, Isa. xxix. 13. "This people draw near to me with their mouth,—but have removed their heart far from me."

Q. 11. Why must there be *an offering up* of our desires to God?

A. Because prayers are "spiritual sacrifices," 1 Pet. ii. 5, and all sacrifices were appointed to be offered to God only, 2 Kings xvii. 35, 36.

Q. 12. From whence flow the desires of the heart?

A. From a sense of need: we cannot have any earnest desire after that, the want whereof we are noway affected with, for "the full soul loatheth an honeycomb," Prov. xxvii. 7.

Q. 13. For what THINGS ought we to offer up our desires to God?

A. *For things agreeable to his will.*

Q. 14. What *will* of God are we to have our eye upon when we ask any thing from him?

A. We are to have our eye, not upon his secret, but upon his revealed will, Deut. xxix. 29.

Q. 15. How shall we know if what we ask be agreeable to his revealed will?

A. If we ask what he has promised we are sure it is agreeable to his revealed will to confer it, because the "promise is to us," Acts ii. 39.

Q. 16. Are we straitened or narrowed in our requests when we are confined to the promise as the subject-matter of them?

A. By no means, for the promise contains infinitely more than we are able to "ask or think," Eph. iii. 20.

Q. 17. May we ask temporal mercies at the hand of God?

A. Yes; because they are promised so far as we have any real need of them, Psal. xxxiv. 10; Isa. xxxiii. 16.

Q. 18. Whether ought temporal or spiritual mercies to have the preference in our requests?

A. Spiritual mercies ought to have the preference, Matth.

vi. 33. "SEEK ye FIRST the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you."

Q. 19. What is meant by the "kingdom of God and his righteousness?"

A. The work of grace in the soul, and the surety-righteousness imputed as the foundation thereof, Rom. viii. 4.

Q. 20. Why are these to be sought in the first place?

A. Because absolutely necessary to salvation, Rom. v. 21.

Q. 21. In whose NAME are we to ask things agreeable to God's will?

A. *In the name of Christ.*

Q. 22. "What is it to pray in the name of Christ?"

A. It is "in obedience to his command, and in confidence of his promise, to ask mercies for his sake."\*

Q. 23. Is the bare mentioning of Christ's name a praying therein?

A. No; but a "drawing our encouragement to pray, and our boldness, strength, and hope of acceptance in prayer, from Christ and his mediation."†

Q. 24. "Why are we to pray in the name of Christ?"

A. Because the "sinfulness of man, and his distance from God by reason thereof, is so great as that we can have no access into his presence without a Mediator."‡

Q. 25. Is there any other Mediator but Christ in whose name we may approach unto God?

A. No; there being none in heaven or earth appointed to or fit for that glorious work but Christ alone, we are to pray in no other name but his only,"§ Col. iii. 17.

Q. 26. Can we of ourselves pray in a right manner?

A. No; unless the spirit of supplication is poured upon us, Zech. xii. 10, to help our infirmities. "For we know not what to pray for as we ought," Rom. viii. 26.

Q. 27. "How doth the Spirit help us to pray?"

A. By enabling us to understand both for whom, and what, and how prayer is to be made."||

Q. 28. "For whom are we to pray?"

A. For the whole church of Christ upon earth; for "magistrates, and ministers; for ourselves, our brethren; yea, our enemies; and for all sorts of men living, or that shall live hereafter."¶

Q. 29. What are we to pray for in behalf of the whole church of Christ upon earth?

A. "That they all may be one" in Christ the glorious head, John xvii. 21; and that they may "grow up unto

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 180. † Ibid. ‡ Ibid. quest. 181.

§ Ibid.

|| Ibid. quest. 182.

¶ Ibid. quest. 183.

him in all things," Eph. iv. 15, till they "all come in the unity of the faith, and knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ," ver. 13.

Q. 30. What should we pray for with reference to magistrates?

A. That they may not be "a terror to good works, but to the evil," Rom. xiii. 3; and that under them we may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and honesty, 1 Tim. ii. 2.

Q. 31. What should we pray for in behalf of ministers?

A. That they may not SHUN to declare unto their hearers "all the counsel of God," Acts xx. 27; and that they may "watch for their souls, as they that must give an account," Heb. xiii. 17.

Q. 32. Can we be hearty in praying for others if we neglect to pray for ourselves?

A. No; for if we are indifferent about the state of our own souls, it is impossible we can be concerned for others any farther than our interest and affection bind us, Job xxvii. 10.

Q. 33. Who are our brethren whom we are to pray for?

A. They are not only our kindred according to the flesh, but all the members of the visible church; yea, all our fellow-creatures, 1 John iv. 21.

Q. 34. What are we to pray for in behalf of our enemies?

A. That their hearts may be changed, their tempers softened, that, however they have carried towards us, they may be made Christ's friends, and partakers of eternal salvation through him, Matth. v. 44, compared with Luke xxiii. 34.

Q. 35. If we are to pray for all sorts of men living, how may we pray about the Roman Antichrist?

A. Out of the love we should bear to our fellow-creatures, who are under the yoke and dominion of the Roman Antichrist, we ought to pray no otherwise about him than that the Lord would soon "consume him with the spirit of his mouth, and destroy him with the brightness of his coming," 2 Thess. ii. 8.

Q. 36. What do we mean when we pray for those that shall live hereafter?

A. We hereby desire that Christ's kingdom and interest may be propagated and advanced in the world until his second coming, Psal. cii. 18; John xvii. 20.

Q. 37. Whom are we not to pray for?

A. We are not to pray "for the dead, 2 Sam. xii. 23; nor for those that are known to have sinned the sin unto death,"\* 1 John v. 16.

Q. 38. Why should we not pray for the dead?

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 183.

A. Because at death the state of every man and woman is unalterably fixed, Luke xvi. 22—27.

Q. 39. How may those be known who have sinned the sin unto death ?

A. By their rejecting the gospel which they once professed to embrace ; by their malice and envy against Christ and the way of salvation through him ; by their treating the convincing evidences of Christianity, and the peculiar doctrines thereof, with blasphemy and contempt ; and by their rooted hatred of all religion and the professors of it.

Q. 40. Why are we not to pray for those who are known to have sinned this sin ?

A. Because the “sin against the Holy Ghost” is declared in Scripture to be unpardonable, Matth. xii. 31, 32, in regard it is a wilful and blasphemous opposition to the testimony of the Spirit of God concerning Christ, as the only way of salvation, Luke xii. 10.\*

Q. 41. “For what things are we to pray ?”

A. “For all things tending to the glory of God, the welfare of the church, our own or others’ good ; but not for any thing that is unlawful.”†

Q. 42. How are we to pray ?”

A. “We are to pray with understanding, faith, sincerity, fervency, love, and perseverance.”‡

Q. 43. What is it to pray with understanding ?

A. It is to have some knowledge of God who is the object of prayer, Psal. lxxv. 2 ; of our own necessities, which are the subject-matter thereof, Psal. lxx. 11 ; and of the promises, which are our encouragement therein, Numb. xiv. 17—19.

Q. 44. What is it to pray in faith ?

A. It is to believe that we receive the promised blessings we ask, because he has said, “What things soever ye desire when ye pray, believe that ye receive them, and ye shall have them,” Mark xi. 24.

Q. 45. What is it to pray with sincerity and fervency ?

A. It is to have the heart and affections earnestly intent upon what we are praying for, Psal. lxxvii. 1. “O Lord, attend unto my cry ; give ear unto my prayer, that goeth not out of feigned lips.”

Q. 46. What is that love to God which should be exercised in prayer ?

A. It is an ardent desire of his presence, Isa. xxvi. 9, and an unfeigned delight in him, as the most amiable and soul-satisfying object, Psal. lxxiii. 25.

\* See a farther account of the sin against the Holy Ghost, Part I. on the head of Sin in General.

† Larger Catechism, quest. 184.

‡ Ibid. 185.

Q. 47. What is it to pray with perseverance? Eph. vi. 18.

A. It is to continue "instant in prayer," as the word is rendered, Rom. xii. 12; or to bear up against all discouragements, and not to give over, though we have not a speedy answer or return, Matth. xv. 22—29.

Q. 48. Is there any difference betwixt praying with perseverance, and praying always, or without ceasing? 1 Thess. v. 17.

A. The difference may lie in this, that to pray with perseverance is not to weary of the duty, or desist from it, though we do not immediately obtain what we are praying for; but to pray always, or without ceasing, is to study to maintain a praying frame, Psal. lxxiii. 23, and not to neglect the seasons of prayer as they recur upon us, Psal. lxi. 2.

Q. 49. What are the several kinds of prayer pointed at in Scripture?

A. They are commonly ranked under these three, namely, secret, private, and public prayer.

Q. 50. What is SECRET prayer?

A. It is the retirement of individuals, or single persons, from all company with others for a time, that they may have free and familiar intercourse with God by themselves, Matth. vi. 6. "But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet; and, when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father which is in secret."

Q. 51. Is secret prayer incumbent on every Christian?

A. Yes; because every Christian has his own particular wants to be supplied, Psal. lxx. 5, doubts to be solved, Isa. xxxviii. 14, and difficulties to be removed, 2 Cor. xii. 8, which none but God himself can do, Psal. xxxv. 10.

Q. 52. May there not be secret prayer even in company with others?

A. Yes; there may be what is ordinarily called EJACULATORY prayer.

Q. 53. What is ejaculatory prayer?

A. It is a secret and sudden lifting up of the soul's desires to God upon any emergency that may occur in providence.

Q. 54. How may this kind of prayer be gone about?

A. Either by a simple thought darted up to heaven, as it would seem Nehemiah did, chap. ii. 4; or by words uttered in the mind, yet so as the voice cannot be heard, as we read that Hannah did, 1 Sam. i. 13.

Q. 55. What success have these ejaculatory breathings of soul met with?

A. They have met with very quick and happy returns, as in the instance of Moses, who, in the midst of the people's

murmuring at the Red Sea, despatched his desires to heaven in some short ejaculation, to which the Lord gave a present return, *Exod. xiv. 15.* "Wherefore criest thou unto me? speak unto the children of Israel that they go forward." And the sons of Reuben, &c. when fighting with the Hagarites, *1 Chron. v. 20.* "They cried to God in the battle, and he was entreated of them."

Q. 56. What is the usefulness of ejaculatory prayer?

A. It tends to maintain fellowship with God, without any interruption of our lawful callings, *Psal. lxxiii. 23*; it is also a mean to repel sudden temptations, *2 Cor. xii. 8, 9*; and to dispose the heart for the more solemn performance of the stated duties of prayer and praise in the season of them, *Psal. xlii. verses 6th and 8th compared.*

Q. 57. What is PRIVATE prayer?

A. It is prayer among a few Christians met together for joining in that solemn exercise, *Rom. xvi. 5.*

Q. 58. How is it commonly distinguished?

A. Into family\* and social prayer.

Q. 59. What is social prayer?

A. It is to pray in a fellowship society of Christians out of several families, intermixed with spiritual conference upon soul-edifying subjects, and that at such times as they mutually agree upon among themselves, *Mal. iii. 16.*

Q. 60. What is PUBLIC prayer?

A. It is the solemn worshipping of God by the church in her public assemblies, wherein a pastor, or one authorized to preach the gospel, is always the mouth of the people to God, *Acts xx. 36.*

Q. 61. What is it to JOIN in private or public prayer where one is the mouth of the rest?

A. It is to offer up the desires that come from the mouth of the speaker (for things agreeable to God's will), as if uttered by ourselves.

Q. 62. What is incumbent on those who are the mouth of others in prayer to God?

A. They are called to take very special care that their prayers be regulated exactly by the revealed will of God, in which case all present will be encouraged to join in every part of the duty.

Q. 63. What is requisite for joining in prayer in a right manner?

A. It is highly requisite in order hereunto that there be close attention without wandering, *Acts ii. 42.* "And they continued steadfastly in prayers;" that there be lively faith without doubting, *James i. 6*; and a series of ejaculation

\* About family-prayer, see on the head of Sanctifying the Sabbath.

concurring with the words of God that may be spoken, 1 Chron. xvi. 36.

Q. 64. What is the SECOND PART of prayer mentioned in the answer?

A. It is *confession of our sins*.

Q. 65. Why is confession of sin mentioned as a part of prayer?

A. Because being sinners, we cannot pray in faith for any promised mercy without acknowledging our unworthiness of it, or that it is infinitely above our desert, Dan. ix. 18.

Q. 66. What then doth the confession of sin necessarily suppose?

A. It supposes guilt, and deserved punishment on account of it, Ezra ix. 13.

Q. 67. Why is confession of sin necessary in prayer?

A. Because we cannot be cordial and hearty in asking forgiveness of our sins, unless we are some way affected by a sense of them, Psal. xxv. 11.

Q. 68. For what end should we confess our sins in prayer?

A. That God may be justified, and have the glory of his judgments, as being all of them just and righteous, Psal. li. 4; and that we may be humbled, and disposed to receive undeserved favours with gratitude, Psal. xxxii. 5.

Q. 69. In what manner should we confess our sins?

A. With grief and hatred of them, Luke xviii. 13; and with full purpose (in the strength of grace) to forsake them, Job xxxiv. 32.

Q. 70. What is the THIRD PART of prayer mentioned in the answer?

A. It is a *thankful acknowledgment of his mercies*.

Q. 71. Are prayer and thanksgiving joined together in Scripture?

A. Yes; Psal. cxvi. 17. "I will offer to thee the sacrifice of thanksgiving, and will call upon the name of the Lord."

Q. 72. What is the subject-matter of thankfulness?

A. It is *mercies* or benefits, whether offered or received.

Q. 73. Why are the blessings we want called mercies?

A. Because, having made ourselves miserable by sin, we are most unworthy and undeserving of them, Gen. xxxii. 10.

Q. 74. Why called *his* mercies?

A. Because God himself is the author of them, and they are his free gift unto us, 1 Tim. vi. 17.

Q. 75. What mercies ought we to be thankful for?

A. Both for temporal and spiritual, common and special mercies, Psal. cxlv. 9.

Q. 76. What is the best evidence of thankfulness to God for his mercies of any kind?

A. It is to be thankful for Christ, his unspeakable gift, 2 Cor. ix. 15.

Q. 77. When ought we to make thankful acknowledgment to God for his mercies?

A. At all times and on all occasions, there being no condition of life but what has some mixture of mercy in it, Job xi. 6; Psal. ci. 1.

Q. 78. Is there ground of thankfulness under afflictions or chastisements?

A. "Though no chastening for the present be joyous but grievous," nevertheless it is ground of thankfulness, if "afterward it yieldeth the peaceable fruit of righteousness, and be for our profit, that we may be partakers of his holiness," Heb. xii. 10, 11.

Q. 79. Why ought prayer to be joined with a thankful acknowledgment of God's mercies?

A. That the mercies we receive may be blessed to us in the use of them, and that we may not, by our ingratitude, provoke God to deny us the mercies we may ask for the future, Isa. i. 15.

Q. 80. How may we know if our prayers are accepted and heard?

A. If we have been helped to enlargement and importunity in prayer, and yet have attained to a holy submission to the will of God as to the particular we are asking, it is a good evidence that he has heard the voice of our supplication, 2 Chron. xx. 12, 17.

Q. 81. How may we know whether mercies come to us in the course of common providence or as an answer of prayer?

A. This may be known both from the manner and from the time in which mercies are received.

Q. 82. How may it appear from the manner in which mercies are received that they are in answer to our prayers?

A. It may be known by these two signs; namely, if the mercy is granted speedily and unexpectedly, Isa. lxxv. 24; and if other mercies are conferred together with and over and above that which we desired, 1 Kings iii. 12, 13.

Q. 83. How may it be known from the time in which mercies are received that they are given in return of prayer?

A. If they are granted at the time when we need them most, or at the time when we are most earnest and importunate about them; as Peter's deliverance from prison was on the very night which Herod had determined should be his last, and likewise when the church was assembled to wrestle in prayer for him, Acts xii. 6, 7, 12.

Q. 84. Why doth the Lord delay mercies which he designs afterward to confer?

A. He delays granting them that we may be the more thankful for them when they come, and in the mean time to make us more assiduous and ardent supplicants for them, 2 Cor. xii. 8, 9.

99. Q. What rule hath God given for our direction in prayer?

A. The whole word of God is of use to direct us in prayer, but the special rule of direction is that form of prayer which Christ taught his disciples, commonly called, The Lord's Prayer.

Q. 1. Why do we need *direction* in prayer?

A. Because man is naturally a stranger both to God and himself, being ignorant both of the glorious perfections of God, Rom. iii. 11, and of his own sins and wants, Rev. iii. 17.

Q. 2. From whence are we to take direction in prayer?

A. From *the whole word of God* which is of use to direct us therein.

Q. 3. Is every part of the word of equal use for our direction in prayer?

A. Though "all things in the Scripture are not alike plain in themselves, nor alike clear unto all,"\* yet there is no part of the word from whence an intelligent person, in a due use of the ordinary means, may not gather something that may be proper matter either for petition, confession, or thanksgiving in prayer, 1 John v. 14.

Q. 4. Of what use in prayer are the sins which we read in Scripture that other churches before us have been guilty of, and the judgments which have been inflicted for the same?

A. They are of use to direct us to pray that the Lord would keep his church and people in the day wherein we live, from running into the same snares, and thereby exposing themselves to the same judgments, 1 Cor. x. 11.

Q. 5. Of what use in prayer are the doctrines of the word in general?

A. They are of use to instruct us in the principles of religion or chain of Divine truth; without some knowledge whereof it is impossible to pray to the edification either of ourselves or others, Rom. x. 14.

Q. 6. Of what use is the doctrine of the blessed Trinity in particular for our direction in prayer?

A. It is of singular use to point out the method in which we are to hope for the blessings we pray for, namely, from the Father, through Christ, by the Spirit, according to Eph.

\* Confession of Faith, chap. i. § 7.

ii. 18. "Through him (that is, through Christ) we have an access by one Spirit unto the Father."

Q. 7. Of what use are the offices of Christ for our direction in prayer?

A. They are of use to direct us to pray, that of God he may be made unto us wisdom, as a prophet; righteousness, as a priest; sanctification, as a king; and complete redemption, as being all the three in one person, 1 Cor. i. 30.

Q. 8. Of what use are the promises for this end?

A. They contain the very matter of prayer; and the pleading of them by faith is also the right manner in which the duty should be performed, James i. 6.

Q. 9. What is *the special rule of direction* for the duty of prayer?

A. It is *that form of prayer which Christ taught his disciples, commonly called the Lord's prayer.*

Q. 10. Why is this called *the special rule* of direction?

A. Because there is not any one portion of Scripture where the petitory part of prayer is so comprehensively and methodically laid down as in the Lord's prayer.

Q. 11. Could Christ use this prayer for himself?

A. No; he could not put up the Fifth petition, "Forgive us our debts," because he had no sins of his own to forgive, being "separate from sinners," Heb. vii. 26.

Q. 12. Why then is it *commonly called the Lord's Prayer*?

A. Because it was dictated by him to his disciples in answer to their request, Luke xi. 1. "Lord, teach us to pray, as John also taught his disciples."

Q. 13. Whether did Christ prescribe this prayer as a form or as a pattern?

A. He prescribed it as a PATTERN, for direction in the duty of prayer, Matth. vi. 9. "After this MANNER pray ye."

Q. 14. What is the difference between a form and a pattern of prayer?

A. A form of prayer is a certain mode of expression, which must be used without the least variation; whereas a pattern is only a directory as to the matter, leaving to the supplicant himself to clothe his desires with such words as are most adapted to his present circumstances.

Q. 15. Why then is the Lord's prayer called in the answer, *that form of prayer which Christ taught his disciples*?

A. Because the words of this prayer "may be used as a prayer" to God equally with other Scriptures, so "that it be done with understanding, faith, reverence, and other graces necessary to the right performance of the duty of prayer."\*

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 187.

Q. 16. How doth it appear that this prayer is not designed for a form to the precise words whereof Christ's disciples and followers are to be tied strictly down in all after-ages?

A. This plainly appears from its not containing expressly all the parts of prayer, and from its not being related by Matthew and Luke in the same manner.

Q. 17. What are those parts of prayer which are not expressly contained in the Lord's prayer?

A. They are the confession of our sins, and the thankful acknowledgment of God's mercies, neither of which are in express terms, but by consequence only, contained in the said prayer.

Q. 18. From what part of this prayer may confession of sins be deduced?

A. From the fifth petition; for when we pray, "Forgive us our debts," we by consequence confess that we have debts to be forgiven.

Q. 19. How is a thankful acknowledgment of mercies included in the Lord's prayer?

A. When we pray, "Hallowed be thy name," we of consequence make a thankful acknowledgment of all those known instances wherein God's name has been glorified; and when we pray, "Give us this day our daily bread," we upon the matter acknowledge the bounty of his providence, which has hitherto so kindly supplied our wants.

Q. 20. How do the evangelists Matthew and Luke differ as to the manner in which they relate this prayer?

A. Though there be a perfect harmony betwixt them as to the sense or matter of the prayer, yet there is some difference as to the mode of expression, particularly in the fourth and fifth petitions.

Q. 21. How do they differ in the fourth petition?

A. Matthew has it, "Give us this day our daily bread," chap. vi. 11; Luke, "Give us day by day our daily bread," chap. xi. 3.

Q. 22. What is the meaning of "give us this day?"

A. It is a petition of what we want at present.

Q. 23. What is imported in "give us day by day?"

A. The expression imports, that the wants which need to be supplied will daily recur.

Q. 24. How do the two evangelists differ as to their manner of expressing the fifth petition?

A. Matthew says, "Forgive us our debts as we forgive our debtors," chap. vi. 12; Luke expresses it, "Forgive us our sins as we forgive every one that is indebted to us," chap. xi. 4.

Q. 25. How do they differ as to the conclusion?

A. Matthew has it, Luke leaves it out.

Q. 26. What is the argument from all this against the Lord's prayer being designed for a set form?

A. The argument is, that if it had been designed for a set form, the two evangelists would have expressed it in the same very words, without the least variation.

Q. 27. What argument is there from the practice of the apostles against its being a set form?

A. That though several prayers of theirs are recorded in the New Testament, yet none of them use the express words of the Lord's prayer.

Q. 28. Would it not seem that this prayer is commanded to be used as a form, from our Lord's prefixing these words to it, "When ye pray, SAY Our Father," &c.? Luke xi. 2.

A. No more can be intended by this expression in Luke, "When ye pray, SAY," than what is meant in the parallel place, Matth. vi. 9, "AFTER THIS MANNER pray ye," namely, to use the Lord's prayer as a directory, otherwise Luke's form, and not Matthew's, should be followed.

Q. 29. May none at any rate use set forms, however sound?

A. If set forms are sound, or agreeable to the will of God, they may be used by children, or such as are weak in knowledge, till they acquire some insight in the principles of religion, and then they ought to be laid aside, and extemporary prayer practised and improved.

Q. 30. But may not they who are weak in knowledge read sound forms as their prayers to God?

A. No; they ought to repeat them, because the committing them to memory will tend to imprint the matter of them more deeply on the mind than the bare reading can possibly do; besides, there is not the least shadow of an example in Scripture for reading prayers to God on any account whatsoever.

Q. 31. Why is the continued practice of set forms unwarrantable?

A. Because the case and circumstance of the church in general, and every member thereof in particular, are so exceeding various, that it is impossible any set form can correspond thereunto. Moreover, the continued practice of a set form, as it is an encouraging of sloth, so it is an overlooking the aid of the Spirit, whose office it is to help our infirmities, when "we know not what we should pray for as we ought," Rom. viii. 26.

Q. 32. "Of how many parts doth the Lord's prayer consist?"

A. "The Lord's prayer consists of three parts,—a preface, petitions, and a conclusion."\*

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 188.

100. Q. What doth the preface of the Lord's prayer teach us ?

A. The preface of the Lord's prayer (which is " Our Father which art in heaven ") teacheth us to draw near to God with all holy reverence and confidence, as children to a Father, able and ready to help us ; and that we should pray with and for others.

Q. 1. In what words is the *preface* of the Lord's prayer contained ?

A. It is contained in these words, *Our Father which art in heaven.*

Q. 2. What is the end and design of this preface ?

A. It is to give us a directory how to invoke or address the true object of all religious worship.

Q. 3. What is it to invoke or address God in prayer ?

A. It is in a believing and reverential manner, to make mention of some of his names, titles, or attributes, in a suitableness to the nature of the duty in which we are engaged, as in 1 Kings viii. 23 ; Dan. ix. 4.

Q. 4. Whom do we invoke or call upon when we address the *Father* ?

A. We invoke the Three-one God ; because, though each person of the Trinity be the object of worship, 2 Cor. xiii. 14, yet when any one of these adorable persons is addressed, we are, in our minds, to include the other two, in regard the very same Divine nature and essence is in them all, 1 Chron. xxix. 10.

Q. 5. Why are we directed to address the Three-one God as a *Father* ?

A. To teach us that the object of true and acceptable worship is a reconciled God, Psal. cxxx. 4.

Q. 6. In what respect is God called a *Father* with reference to men ?

A. He is called a *Father*, with reference to them, either in respect of creation, external covenant-relation, or the grace of adoption.

Q. 7. To whom is he a *Father* in respect of creation ?

A. In this respect he is a *Father* to all mankind in general, Mal. ii. 10.

Q. 8. To whom is he a *Father* in respect of external covenant-relation ?

A. To all the members of the visible church, or such as profess the true religion, and their children, 2 Cor. vi. 18.

Q. 9. To whom is he a *Father* in respect of the grace of adoption ?

A. To believers only, or such as are “the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus,” Gal. iii. 26.

Q. 10. May not every one who hears the gospel warrantably cry unto God, “My Father,” according to Jer. iii. 4?

A. No doubt but it is their duty to do so upon the call and command of God; but none will actually do it in faith but they into whose hearts “God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son,” Gal. iv. 6.

Q. 11. What are we taught when we are directed to invoke God in prayer by the title of Father?

A. We are hereby taught *to draw near to God—as children to a Father.*

Q. 12. In what manner should God’s children draw near to him as their Father?

A. *With all holy reverence and confidence.*

Q. 13. Why called *holy* reverence?

A. To distinguish it from that dutiful regard and respect which children owe to their parents by the dictates of nature’s light.

Q. 14. Wherein consists the nature of this *holy reverence*?

A. It consists in a most profound inward esteem of God as a Father, accompanied with “other child-like dispositions,”\* becoming that relation, Isa. lxiv. 9.

Q. 15. What are these other child-like dispositions which accompany the reverence wherewith God’s children approach unto him?

A. Among others, there are patience under his rebukes, Mic. vii. 9, obedience to his commands, Acts ix. 6, and a fervent zeal for his honour and glory, Mal. i. 6.

Q. 16. What is that *confidence* which God’s children have in him as their Father?

A. It is that entire trust they repose in him as *able and ready to help* them.

Q. 17. Whence are they persuaded of his ability and readiness to help them?

A. From his all-sufficiency, Luke xi. 13, and boundless liberality, Psal. lxxxiv. 11, as laid out in the promise for their behoof.

Q. 18. What help doth he afford them?

A. Such a help as to do all; “for it is God that worketh in us, both to will and to do of his good pleasure,” Phil. ii. 13.

Q. 19. Why are we directed to address our Father *in heaven*?

A. To teach us to draw near to him with “heavenly affections, Lam. iii. 41, and due apprehensions of his sovereign power, majesty, and gracious condescension, Isa. lxiii. 15, 16.”†

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 189.

† Ibid.

Q. 20. What doth the consideration of his being in heaven more particularly teach us?

A. It teacheth us from whence to expect our blessings and benefits, and likewise the manner in which we ought to address God for them.

Q. 21. From whence are we to expect our blessings?

A. "From above," Jam. i. 17, because they are in "heavenly places," Eph. i. 3.

Q. 22. Why are our blessings said to be in heavenly places?

A. Because their original is from thence, and there will the full enjoyment of them at last be, Psal. xvi. 11.

Q. 23. What doth the consideration of God's being in heaven teach us with reference to the manner in which we ought to address him for our blessings?

A. It teacheth us to be modest, humble, and cautious in our conceptions of and applications to him, as being a God of such inconceivable greatness and glorious majesty, Eccl. v. 2. "Be not rash with thy mouth, and let not thine heart be hasty to utter any thing before God; for God is in heaven, and thou upon earth, therefore let thy words be few."

Q. 24. Whom doth the relative pronoun *our* in the preface refer unto?

A. It refers both to ourselves and others.

Q. 25. What is the import of it as it refers to ourselves?

A. When we are directed to say *our Father*, it imports the faith and confidence we are warranted to express in him as standing in such an amiable relation."

Q. 26. Upon what grounds are we warranted to express our faith and confidence in him as standing in the amiable relation of our Father?

A. Upon the ground of his being "the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ," Eph. i. 3; and upon the ground of our new-covenant Head calling him my Father, in the name of all his spiritual seed, Psal. lxxxix. 26. "He shall cry unto me, Thou art MY FATHER."

Q. 27. What do these words, our Father, import as they have a respect unto others?

A. They import *that we should pray with and for others*.

Q. 28. What is it to pray *with* others?

A. It is to be the mouth of others to God, or to join with them in family or social worship.

Q. 29. What is it to pray *for* others?

A. It is to express our concern about them, or our sympathy with them before God, as sincerely and ingenuously as we would do with reference to ourselves were we in the same circumstances, Psal. xxxv. 13.

Q. 30. Who are these *others* we should pray for?

A. We should pray for "all men," 1 Tim. ii. 1; yea, for them which despitefully use us and persecute us, Matth. v. 44; but especially for "all saints," Eph. vi. 18.

Q. 31. Why have all the saints a special claim to our prayers?

A. Because they are the special favourites of heaven, John xv. 9; and therefore the very butt of the keenest resentment of hell, 1 Pet. v. 8.

101. Q. What do we pray for in the First Petition?

A. In the First Petition (which is, "Hallowed be thy name"), we pray, That God would enable us and others to glorify him in all that whereby he maketh himself known, and that he would dispose all things to his own glory.

Q. 1. What is the meaning of the word *petition*?

A. It signifies asking or desiring of any thing.

Q. 2. How many petitions are there in the Lord's prayer?

A. There are six.

Q. 3. In what order are these six petitions ranged?

A. The three first bear a more immediate respect unto God, and the three last unto ourselves.

Q. 4. What are we taught by this order of ranking the petitions?

A. Hereby we are taught, first to pray for what concerns the glory of God, as being the highest and most valuable end; and then for what respects our own advantage, as being only subordinate thereunto, Matth. vi. 33.

Q. 5. Which is the first of these petitions?

A. It is in these words, *Hallowed be thy name*.

Q. 6. What is signified by the *name* of God in this petition?

A. It is explained in the answer to be *all that whereby he maketh himself known*.

Q. 7. What is our duty with reference to this name of God?

A. It is to pray that it may be *hallowed*.

Q. 8. What is the meaning of the word HALLOWED?

A. It is explained in the answer to be the same with glorified; when we pray "Hallowed be thy name," we pray that God himself may be glorified.

Q. 9. By whom should we pray that God's name may be hallowed or glorified?

A. We should pray that his name may be glorified by himself, and likewise that he *would enable us and others to glorify him*.

Q. 10. What do we mean when we pray that God's name may be glorified by himself?

A. We mean that he would be pleased daily to demonstrate it more and more to the world to be what it really is, most holy and most glorious, so as to excite that adoration and esteem which is due to him ; for, says he, “ I will be sanctified in them that come nigh me, and before all the people will I be glorified,” Lev. x. 3.

Q. 11. Where doth he thus demonstrate the glory of his own name ?

A. In his word, and by his works, both of creation and providence, particularly by the glorious device of redemption.

Q. 12. What do we acknowledge when we pray that God would enable us and others to glorify him ?

A. We thereby acknowledge “ the utter inability and indisposition that is in ourselves and all men to honour God aright.”\* 2 Cor. iii. 5.

Q. 13. What is requisite in order to our honouring God aright ?

A. In order hereunto, it is requisite that we diligently attend to the several ways whereby God *maketh himself known*, such as, his attributes, ordinances, word, and works, and see if we are studying to glorify him in all these.

Q. 14. How do we glorify him in his attributes or perfections ?

A. When we think or speak of them with becoming reverence, and endeavour to exercise suitable acts of faith upon them, such as admiring his wisdom, depending on his power, and trusting to his faithfulness that he will do as he has said.

Q. 15. How do we glorify him in his ordinances ?

A. When we attend upon them, and improve them for our spiritual nourishment and growth in grace, Psal. lxxxiv. 10.

Q. 16. How do we glorify him in his word ?

A. When we believe it as the record of God, John xx. 31.

Q. 17. How do we glorify him in his work of creation ?

A. When we take up and admire “ his eternal power and Godhead ” as shining therein, Rom. i. 20.

Q. 18. How do we glorify him in his works of providence ?

A. When we have a grateful sense of his mercies, Gen. xxxii. 10, and tremble at his judgments, Psal. cxix. 120.

Q. 19. How do we honour him in his glorious device of redemption ?

A. When we receive and rest upon Christ alone for salvation, as he is offered to us in the gospel, Acts xv. 11.

Q. 20. What do we mean when we pray that God would enable OTHERS to glorify him as well as ourselves ?

A. We thereby in effect pray that the “ earth may be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea,”

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 190.

Isa. xi. 9, that so "from the uttermost part of the earth may be heard songs, even glory to the righteous," chap. xxiv. 16.

Q. 21. What are those things we should pray God would prevent and remove, that his name may be glorified?

A. We should pray "that he would prevent and remove Atheism, ignorance, idolatry, and whatever is dishonourable to him."\*

Q. 22. What should we pray God would do, in the course of his providence, for glorifying his own name?

A. *That he would dispose all things to his own glory.*

Q. 23. How doth God dispose all things to his own glory?

A. By bringing a revenue of glory to himself, even out of those things that seem most opposite thereunto, Isa. xliii. 20.

Q. 24. What are those seemingly opposite things out of which God brings a revenue of glory to himself?

A. Among others, there are persecutions and the falls of believers.

Q. 25. How doth he bring a revenue of glory to himself out of persecutions?

A. By overruling them to the furtherance of the gospel, Acts xi. 19—21.

Q. 26. How doth he bring glory to himself out of the falls of believers?

A. By overruling their falls and miscarriages in such a manner as that thereby they are made more humble, watchful, and circumspect for the future, Psal. li. 3.

102. Q. What do we pray for in the Second Petition?

A. In the Second Petition (which is, "Thy kingdom come"), we pray, That Satan's kingdom may be destroyed; and that the kingdom of grace may be advanced, ourselves and others brought into it, and kept in it; and that the kingdom of glory may be hastened.

Q. 1. How manifold is God's *kingdom* in this world?

A. **TWOFOLD**; namely, his general, essential, or providential kingdom, and his special kingdom.

Q. 2. What is his general kingdom?

A. It is the absolute power and sovereignty which he exercises over all things in heaven, earth, and hell, for the purposes of his own glory, Psal. ciii. 19. "His kingdom ruleth over all."

Q. 3. What is his special kingdom?

A. It is the government and care which he exercises in and over his church and people, as a society distinct from

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 190.

the rest of the world, Psal. lix. 13. "God ruleth in Jacob unto the ends of the earth."

Q. 4. Into whose hands is the management of God's special kingdom committed?

A. Into the hands of Christ as Mediator, Psal. ii. 6.

Q. 5. How is this kingdom, as committed into his hands, usually called?

A. His mediatory or donative kingdom.

Q. 6. Why called his mediatory kingdom?

A. Because he holds it as Mediator, Luke xxii. 29.

Q. 7. Why called his donative kingdom?

A. Because it is given him of the Father as a reward of his meritorious obedience and suffering, Matth. xxviii. 18, and to distinguish it from his essential kingdom.

Q. 8. May his essential kingdom be said to be given him?

A. By no means; because it is natural to him as God equal with the Father, and can no more be given him than his Divine nature and personality can.

Q. 9. What are we directed to pray for in this petition with reference to God's kingdom in general?

A. That it may COME: *Thy kingdom come.*

Q. 10. In what sense may we pray for the coming of his essential kingdom?

A. Only in this sense, that he would more and more demonstrate his supreme power and sovereignty over all things; and that the same may be more and more acknowledged by the children of men, Psal. lxxxiii. 18.

Q. 11. Would it be warrantable for us to pray that he would govern the world, or actually exercise his supreme power?

A. It would be no more warrantable to pray for this than to pray that he would be an infinite Sovereign, which he cannot but be, and act agreeable to his nature, which he cannot but do.

Q. 12. Whether is it the coming of God's general or special kingdom that is chiefly intended in the answer?

A. It is the coming of his special kingdom of grace here and of glory hereafter.

Q. 13. Are the kingdoms of grace and glory different kingdoms?

A. They are not so much different kingdoms as different STATES in the same kingdom; according to the common maxim, "Grace is glory begun, and glory is grace consummated, or in perfection."

Q. 14. How may the kingdom of grace in this world be viewed?

A. Either as to outward dispensation or inward operation.

Q. 15. What is it as to outward dispensation?

A. It is just the preaching of the gospel, Mark i. 14. "Jesus came—preaching the gospel of the kingdom of God."

Q. 16. What is it as to inward operation?

A. It is the work of saving grace in the soul, Luke xvii. 21. "Behold, the kingdom of God is within you."

Q. 17. Why called *the kingdom of grace*?

A. Because the gathering of sinners into this kingdom for their salvation is of grace, both as to the means and end, Eph. ii. 8.

Q. 18. What do we pray for, with reference to the kingdom of grace, when we say, *Thy kingdom come*?

A. We do not pray that it may be erected as a new thing in the world, but that it may be *advanced* therein.

Q. 19. Why should we not pray that Christ's kingdom of grace may be erected, or set up as a new thing in the world?

A. Because this would be in effect to deny that Christ had ever a church upon this earth; whereas it is most certain that ever since the first promise he has always had a church therein, and will have it unto the end of time, Isa. lix. 21.

Q. 20. But is it not our duty to pray that the kingdom of grace may be set up in those parts of the world where it is not at present?

A. To be sure it is; for we should pray "That the word of the Lord may have free course, and be glorified," 2 Thess. iii. 1, and that "the earth may be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea," Isa. xi. 9; which is the same with praying, "That the kingdom of grace may be advanced."

Q. 21. What should we pray for as pre-requisite to the advancing of the kingdom of grace?

A. In order hereunto we should pray *That Satan's kingdom may be destroyed.*

Q. 22. What is the meaning of the name SATAN?

A. It is a Hebrew word, signifying adversary; as indeed the devil is an implacable adversary, burning with hatred and enmity, both against God, and therefore called "his enemy," Matth. xiii. 25, and against man, 1 Pet. v. 8. "Your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour."

Q. 23. What do you understand by *Satan's kingdom*?

A. That power and dominion which he usurps over mankind-sinners, who are by nature lawful captives, Isa. xlix. 24, 25.

Q. 24. If sinners of mankind are by nature lawful captives, how can Satan's dominion over them be said to be usurped?

A. Though they be justly delivered into his hands as a jailor, yet he has no right to rule over them as a prince.

Q. 25. Do they not voluntarily subject themselves to his dominion?

A. Yes; and this is both their sin and their judgment, John viii. 44.

Q. 26. What is the principal seat of Satan's kingdom?

A. The HEART of every man and woman by nature, Eph. ii. 2.

Q. 27. What is the foundation and bulwark of this kingdom?

A. SIN, both original and actual, Eph. ii. 3.

Q. 28. What should we pray for with reference to this kingdom of Satan?

A. That it *may be destroyed*.

Q. 29. Why should we pray for the destruction of this kingdom?

A. Because the work of grace cannot take place, nor succeed in the soul, but upon the ruins of Satan's interest in it, Luke xi. 21, 22.

Q. 30. How then is Satan's kingdom destroyed in the world?

A. By the advancement of the kingdom of grace therein.

Q. 31. When may the kingdom of grace be said to be *advanced*?

A. When *ourselves and others are brought into it and kept in it*.

Q. 32. How are we and others *brought* into this kingdom?

A. By the gracious influences of the Spirit of God, accompanying the dispensation of the gospel with irresistible power, Psal. cx. 2, 3.

Q. 33. How are we and others *kept in it*?

A. By continued emanations of grace out of the fulness of Christ, whereby the principle of grace is quickened, strengthened, and preserved, Hos. xiv. 5.

Q. 34. What should we pray for as the means of bringing into this kingdom?

A. We should pray "That the gospel may be propagated throughout the world, the Jews called, the fulness of the Gentiles brought in; that the ordinances of Christ may be purely dispensed, and made effectual to the converting of those that are yet in their sins."\*

Q. 35. What should we pray for as means of being kept in it?

A. That the same ordinances may be effectual to the "confirming, comforting, and building up of those that are already converted."†

Q. 36. Can any subject of this kingdom ever apostatize from it?

A. No; they are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation, 1 Pet. i. 5.

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 191.

† Ibid.

Q. 37. Why then should we pray to be kept in it?

A. Because perseverance, being a promised privilege, should, on that account, be prayed for, Psal. cxix. 28. "Strengthen thou me according to thy word."

Q. 38. What security have the saints that they shall be kept in this kingdom?

A. They have the stability of the promise, Jer. xxxii. 40; the efficacy of Christ's obedience to the death in their stead, Eph. v. 25, 27; the prevalency of his intercession, John xvii. 24; and the inhabitation of his Spirit, Rom. viii. 11, for their security in this matter.

Q. 39. What is the *kingdom of glory*?

A. It is that state of inconceivable happiness and bliss into which the saints shall be brought after death, John xiv. 2, 3.

Q. 40. Wherein will the *glory* of this kingdom consist?

A. In a perfect conformity unto, and the immediate and uninterrupted vision and fruition of God through all eternity, 1 John iii. 2.

Q. 41. When will the kingdom of glory come in the full manifestation thereof?

A. At the second coming of Christ to judgment, Matth. xxv. 31, 34.

Q. 42. What are we to pray for with reference to this kingdom?

A. That it *may be hastened*.

Q. 43. When we pray that it may be *hastened*, do we mean that the set time for the second coming of Christ may be anticipated, or come sooner than the moment fixed for it in infinite wisdom?

A. No; we wish it no sooner, but only express our ardent desire to depart and to be with Christ, which is far better than to be here always, Phil. i. 23.

Q. 44. Why do the saints so earnestly desire to be with Christ in glory?

A. That an eternal period may be put to all their sinning, and to every thing that has a tendency to detract from the glory of his kingdom and the happiness of his subjects: wherefore, as he saith, "Surely I come quickly;" so they pray, "Amen. Even so, come, Lord Jesus," Rev. xxii. 20.

103. Q. What do we pray for in the Third Petition?

A. In the Third Petition (which is, "Thy will be done on earth, as it is in heaven"), we pray, That God by his grace would make us able and willing to know, obey, and submit to his will in all things, as the angels do in heaven.

Q. 1. How manifold is the *will* of God ?

A. TWOFOLD; his will of purpose, or disposing will, and his will of precept, or revealed will.

Q. 2. What is his will of purpose, or disposing will ?

A. It is what he himself proposes to be done, as the final determination of the event of things, Isa. xlvi. 10. "My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure."

Q. 3. How is this will commonly called ?

A. It is called his will of Providence, because he infallibly brings it about, or accomplishes it, in the course of his adorable providence, Psal. cxxxv. 6.

Q. 4. What is God's will of precept, or his revealed will ?

A. It is the rule of our duty, prescribing what he would have us to do or not to do, Matth. xxvi. 39. "O my Father, if it be possible let this cup pass from me: nevertheless, not as I will, but as thou wilt."

Q. 5. Whether is it God's will of purpose or precept that is meant in this petition ?

A. Both are included, but chiefly his will of precept.

Q. 6. When we say, "Thy will be done," what do we pray for with reference to God's will of purpose ?

A. We pray that God by his grace would make us able and willing to submit thereto, and acquiesce therein so soon as it is discovered or made known unto us, Acts xxi. 14. "And when he would not be persuaded, we ceased, saying, The will of the Lord be done."

Q. 7. What doth our praying for submission to God's will of purpose or providence necessarily imply in it ?

A. It implies, that we are "by nature prone to repine and murmur against his providence,"\* especially in afflicting dispensations, Numb. xiv. 2.

Q. 8. When do we submit to afflicting dispensations ?

A. When we justify God in them, Dan. ix. 7; and acknowledge that he "hath punished us less than our iniquities deserve," Ezra ix. 13.

Q. 9. What do we pray for when we pray that God's will of precept may be done ?

A. We pray that God by his grace would make us able and willing to *know and obey* the same.

Q. 10. Why do we pray that God would *make us able and willing* to know and obey his revealed will ?

A. Because "by nature, we and all men are not only utterly unable and unwilling to know and do the will of God, but prone to rebel against his word, and wholly inclined to do the will of the flesh and of the devil." †

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 192.

† Ibid.

Q. 11. Why do we pray that God would make us able and willing *by his grace*?

A. Because it is wholly of his free love and sovereign grace that he worketh in us either to will or to do, Phil. ii. 13. "It is God which worketh in you, both to will and to do of his good pleasure."

Q. 12. What do we pray for when we pray that God would make us able and willing to *know* his revealed will?

A. We pray, that by his Spirit he would take away our natural blindness, and open our understanding, that we may "understand the Scriptures," Luke xxiv. 45.

Q. 13. What do we pray for when we pray that God would make us able and willing to *obey* his will?

A. We pray that he would remove the weakness, indisposedness, and perverseness of our hearts, and by his grace incline us to set about and keep up the practice of every commanded duty, in the strength of that furniture which is secured in the promise, Ezek. xxxvi. 27. "I will cause you to walk in my statutes, 2 Cor. xii. 9. And he said unto me, My grace is sufficient for thee, for my strength is made perfect in weakness."

Q. 14. Why is knowing the will of God mentioned before the obeying of it?

A. Because there can be no true acceptable obedience but what flows from that saving knowledge which is inseparable from the faith of God's operation, John xiii. 17. "If ye know these things, happy are ye if ye do them."

Q. 15. Where should we desire that the will of God may be done?

A. We should desire that it may *be done on earth* by all persons, and in all places thereon, Psal. cl. 6.

Q. 16. In what things should we pray that the will of God may be done on earth?

A. We should pray that it may be done in *all things*, Psal. cxix. 6.

Q. 17. Why in *ALL THINGS*?

A. Because we may be quite sure that God's will, both of precept and providence, is perfectly, or in every respect, equal and just, Ezek. xviii. 25.

Q. 18. Whom should we resemble in our obedience?

A. The holy angels: we should study to do the will of God *as the angels do in heaven*.

Q. 19. Can we know and obey the will of God as perfectly on earth as the angels do in heaven?

A. No; but we should copy after them as to the manner of their obedience.

Q. 20. What is it to copy after them as to the manner of their obedience?

A. It is to essay obedience “with the like humility, cheerfulness, faithfulness, diligence, zeal, sincerity, and constancy, as the angels do in heaven.”\*

104. Q. What do we pray for in the Fourth Petition?

A. In the Fourth Petition (which is, “Give us this day our daily bread”), we pray, That of God’s free gift we may receive a competent portion of the good things of this life, and enjoy his blessing with them.

Q. 1. What doth our Catechism mean by *bread* in this Petition?

A. It explains it to be *the good things of this life*.

Q. 2. What do you understand by the good things of this life?

A. Not only meat and drink, but clothes to cover us, houses to shelter us, sleep to refresh us, and the like, which are called “things needful to the body,” James ii. 16.

Q. 3. May not spiritual mercies, or food to our souls, be intended by the bread here mentioned?

A. No; the petition respects temporal mercies, or the good things of a present life.

Q. 4. How do you prove that the good things of this life, and not spiritual mercies, are intended in this petition?

A. From the completeness and compendiousness of the Lord’s prayer: for it cannot be supposed that in a prayer so complete the good things of this life would be quite omitted; or that, in a prayer so compendious, spiritual mercies would without necessity be repeated in this petition, when the other petitions are so full of them.

Q. 5. Why are these good things called by the general name of BREAD?

A. Because though bread be the most common, yet it is the most useful and necessary support of natural life, and therefore called the staff or stay of bread, Isa. iii. 1.

Q. 6. Why called *daily* bread?

A. Both because our need of the supports of nature recurs daily, and likewise to teach us contentment with our present allowance in providence, Phil. iv. 11.

Q. 7. What quantity of daily bread, or of the good things of this life, may we lawfully pray for?

A. For a *competent portion* of them.

Q. 8. What is meant by a competent portion?

A. Such a measure of temporal comforts as our necessities may require, or will tend to our good, Prov. xxx. 8. “Give

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 192.

me neither poverty nor riches; feed me with food convenient for me."

Q. 9. What is imported in our praying that God would *give* us this competent portion?

A. It imports our desire to receive it *of God's free gift*.

Q. 10. What do we acknowledge, when we pray to receive temporal comforts of God's free gift?

A. We thereby acknowledge, "that in Adam, and by our own sin, we have forfeited our right to all the outward blessings of this life, and deserve to be wholly deprived of them by God."\*

Q. 11. How doth it appear that we have by sin forfeited our right to outward blessings?

A. It appears from this, that we have thereby forfeited our life itself, Gen. ii. 17, and therefore, by necessary consequence, all the supports of it, Jer. v. 25.

Q. 12. Why do we say, *Give us this day*?

A. Because if God shall be pleased to afford us the necessary supplies of each day when it comes, we ought not to be anxiously solicitous about to-morrow, Matth. vi. 34.

Q. 13. May we not lawfully pray for what respects the future condition of ourselves or families in this world?

A. Yes; if God shall continue us or them in life, then in this case we may lawfully beg of him, that neither we nor they may ever be destitute of what is necessary for our glorifying God, in the respective stations wherein he has placed or may place us while in it, Gen. xxviii. 20—22.

Q. 14. Doth God's giving us our daily bread exclude the use of means for the obtaining of it?

A. No; "for if any provide not for his own, and specially for those of his own house, he hath denied the faith, and is worse than an infidel," 1 Tim. v. 8.

Q. 15. May we not then ascribe our daily bread to our own diligence and industry?

A. No; because it is God who gives us ability to pursue our respective callings, and it is he who succeeds our lawful endeavours in them, Deut. viii. 17, 18. "Thou shalt remember the Lord thy God; for it is he that giveth thee power to get wealth."

Q. 16. Why do we say, Give us *our* daily bread?—why do we call it *OURS*?

A. Because whatever measure or proportion of outward blessings God in his providence thinks fit we should receive is properly *OURS*, whether it be more or less, 1 Tim. vi. 8. "Having food and raiment, let us therewith be content."

Q. 17. Since both the godly and the wicked have their daily

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 193.

provision from God, what difference is there as to the manner in which the one and the other hold their outward comforts?

A. There is a wide difference as to the manner in which the godly and the wicked hold their outward comforts, whether we consider their respective right and title, their present enjoyment, or their future expectation.

Q. 18. What is the difference as to their respective right and title?

A. The wicked have only a civil and common right, but the godly have besides this a spiritual and covenant right also, 1 Tim. iv. 8.

Q. 19. What is the difference as to their present enjoyment?

A. The godly have God's blessing on what they presently enjoy, but the wicked his curse. In this respect "a little that a righteous man hath is better than the riches of many wicked," Psal. xxxvii. 16.

Q. 20. What is the difference as to their future expectation?

A. The godly have the good things of this world as pledges of the far better things of another; but the wicked have them as their whole pay, for they "have their portion in this life," Psal. xvii. 14.

Q. 21. What should we pray for in order to have the comfortable use of the good things of this life which God may confer upon us?

A. That we may *enjoy his blessing with them.*

Q. 22. Why is the blessing of God necessary to all our outward comforts?

A. Because, without this, none of them could reach the end for which they are used; our food could not nourish us, nor our clothes warm us, nor medicines, however skilfully applied, give any relief from our ailments, Job xx. 22, 23.

Q. 23. Will God's blessing make the meanest fare answer the end of comfortable nourishment?

A. Yes; as is evident from the example of Daniel and the other three children of the captivity, who desired to be proven ten days with no better cheer than pulse and water. "And at the end of ten days their countenances appeared fairer and fatter in flesh than all the children which did eat the portion of the king's meat," Dan. i. 12, 15.

Q. 24. Why do we pray in the plural number, Give *us*?

A. To express a concern for the good things of this life to the rest of our fellow-creatures as well as to ourselves, 1 Kings viii. 35—40.

105. Q. What do we pray for in the Fifth Petition?

A. In the Fifth Petition (which is "And forgive us

our debts as we forgive our debtors"), we pray, That God for Christ's sake would freely pardon all our sins; which we are the rather encouraged to ask, because by his grace we are enabled from the heart to forgive others.

Q. 1. Why is this petition connected with the former by the copulative particle *and*?

A. To teach us that we can have no outward comfort with God's blessing unless our sins are pardoned and our persons accepted in Christ, 1 Cor. iii. 22, 23.

Q. 2. What are we to understand by *debts* in this petition?

A. By debts we are to understand our *SINS*, whether original or actual, of omission or commission, Luke xi. 4.

Q. 3. Why are these called debts?

A. Because of the debt of punishment we owe to the justice of God on account of them, Rom. vi. 23. "The wages of sin is death."

Q. 4. Can we pay any part of this debt to the justice of God?

A. No; "neither we nor any other creature can make the least satisfaction" for it, Psal. cxxx. 3,\* or pay the least farthing thereof, Matth. xviii. 25.

Q. 5. What other debts are we naturally owing beside the debt of punishment as transgressors?

A. We are likewise owing a debt of obedience to the law as a covenant, wherein we are also utterly insolvent, "being unto every good work reprobate," Tit. i. 16.

Q. 6. What are we to pray for with reference to our sins or debts?

A. *That God for Christ's sake, would freely pardon them all.*

Q. 7. Whose prerogative is it to pardon?

A. It is God's only, Micah vii. 18.

Q. 8. From what spring or fountain in God doth pardon flow?

A. From his own gracious nature, Psal. lxxxvi. 5, and sovereign will, Exod. xxxiii. 19.

Q. 9. What is it for God to pardon?

A. It is to "acquit us both from the guilt and punishment of sin,"† Rom. iii. 26.

Q. 10. For whose sake doth he pardon?

A. *Only for Christ's sake.*

Q. 11. What is it for God to pardon for Christ's sake?

A. It is to vent his pardoning grace "through the obedience and satisfaction of Christ, apprehended and applied by faith,"‡ Rom. iii. 25.

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 194.

† Ibid.

‡ Ibid.

Q. 12. Could God pardon sin without any respect to the obedience and satisfaction of Christ?

A. No; because justice behoved to be satisfied, for "without shedding of blood is no remission," Heb. ix. 22.

Q. 13. What is the extent of pardoning grace?

A. It extends to *all our sins*, Psal. ciii. 3.

Q. 14. In what manner should we expect that God will pardon all our sins?

A. We should expect that he will do it *freely*, for his own name's sake, Psal. xxv. 11.

Q. 15. How can God be said to pardon our sins freely, when he doth it on account of the surety-righteousness imputed to us?

A. God's accepting of Christ as our surety, and his fulfilling all righteousness in our room, were both of them acts of rich, free, and sovereign grace, Psal. lxxxix. 19; Luke xii. 50. Though the pardon of our sins be of debt to Christ, yet it is free to us, Eph. i. 7.

Q. 16. When a believer prays for the forgiveness of his daily sins, does he pray for a new formal pardon of them?

A. Whatever may be the believer's practice as to this matter at some times, through the prevalency of darkness and unbelief, yet it is certain that the pardon of sin in justification is one perfect act, completed at once, and never needs to be repeated, Mic. vii. 19. "Thou wilt cast all their sins into the depths of the sea."

Q. 17. If daily sins are already forgiven in justification, in so far as the not imputing of them is secured therein, why is the believer here directed to pray for the pardon of them?

A. As the evidences of pardon may be frequently eclipsed, and fatherly displeasure incurred by our daily failings, it is therefore our duty to pray that God's fatherly displeasure may be removed, and the joy of his salvation restored, by his "giving us daily more and more assurance of forgiveness."\* Psal. li. 8, 9, 10, 12.

Q. 18. Upon what ground may we be encouraged to ask and expect from God the intimation of the pardon of our daily sins and failings?

A. *Because by his grace we are enabled from the heart to forgive others.*

Q. 19. What is it we forgive in others?

A. Personal injuries, or injuries as committed against ourselves, Matth. xviii. 15.

Q. 20. Have personal injuries an offence done to God in them?

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 194.

A. To be sure they have, and it is our duty to pray that God would forgive it, Psal. xxxv. 13.

Q. 21. In what manner should we forgive personal injuries?

A. We should do it *from the heart*.

Q. 22. What is it to forgive our fellow-creatures from the heart?

A. It is not only to lay aside all resentment against them, but to wish and do them all offices of kindness that lie in our power, as if they had never done us any injury, Matth. v. 44.

Q. 23. Have we such a disposition in us naturally?

A. No; God enables us to it *by his grace*.

Q. 24. What are we naturally inclined unto with reference to personal injuries?

A. We are naturally inclined to harbour hatred and malice in our hearts on account of them, and to revenge them if we can, as was the case with Esau against his brother Jacob, Gen. xxvii. 41.

Q. 25. What should excite us to the duty of forgiving personal injuries?

A. The examples of this disposition recorded in Scripture for our imitation, such as the example of Joseph, Gen. l. 17, 21; of Stephen, Acts vii. 60; and of our Lord himself, Luke xxiii. 34.

Q. 26. Can it ever be dishonourable to forgive a personal injury?

A. No; it is a man's "glory to pass over a transgression," Prov. xix. 11.

Q. 27. Can forgiving the person infer an approbation of his crime?

A. No; we may forgive the person, and yet charge his sin close home upon his conscience, as Joseph did to his brethren, Gen. xlv. 4, and l. 20.

Q. 28. What if forgiveness embolden the offender in the like injuries for the future?

A. The fear of this should not be an excuse for omitting the present duty of forgiveness, because we should leave events to the Lord.

Q. 29. When we say, "Forgive us our debts as we forgive our debtors," do we mean to state a comparison between our forgiving others and God's forgiving us?

A. No; there is an infinite disproportion between the one and the other; the injuries our fellow-creatures do us are but few and small in comparison of the innumerable and aggravated crimes we are guilty of against God, Matth. xviii. verses 24th and 28th compared.

Q. 30. Can we, in a consistency with the scope of this pe-

tition, make our forgiving of others the ground and reason of God's forgiving us?

A. No; for this would be to put our forgiving of others in the room of Christ's righteousness, on the account of which alone it is that God forgives us.

Q. 31. What then is the true meaning of these words, *as we forgive our debtors*?

A. The meaning is, that we take encouragement to hope that God will forgive us the sins of our daily walk, from this evidence or "testimony in ourselves, that we from the heart forgive others their offences, Matth. vi. 14, 15. 'If ye forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you; but if ye forgive not men their trespasses, neither will your heavenly Father forgive your trespasses.'"\*

Q. 32. What may we learn from the verses just now quoted for illustrating the meaning of this petition?

A. We may learn this from them, as the meaning of it, that our forgiving others may be an evidence of God's forgiving us; and that our being of an implacable and unrelenting disposition toward our fellow-creatures who have injured us is a sad sign that our sins are not forgiven us of God, Matth. xviii. 35.

106. Q. What do we pray for in the Sixth Petition?

A. In the Sixth Petition (which is, "And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil"), we pray, That God would either keep us from being tempted to sin, or support and deliver us when we are tempted.

Q. 1. What doth this petition necessarily suppose?

A. It supposes, "that the most wise, righteous, and gracious God, for divers holy and just ends, may so order things, that we may be assaulted, foiled, and for a time led captive by temptations,"† 2 Chron. xxxii. 31.

Q. 2. How many ways may God be said to *lead* a person *into temptation*, and yet not be the author of sin?

A. Two ways; objectively and permissively.

Q. 3. How may he be said to lead into temptation objectively?

A. When his providential dispensations, which in themselves are holy, just, and good, do offer or lay before us occasions for sin.

Q. 4. May these occasions be called incitements or motives to sin?

A. No; only our corrupt hearts abuse them thereunto: thus David was envious when he "saw the prosperity of the wicked," Psal. lxxiii. 3.

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 194.

† Ibid. quest. 195.

*Of the Sixth Petition.*

Q. 5. When may God be said to lead his people into temptation permissively?

A. When he suffers them to be assaulted by the tempter, and at the same time withholds those aids of grace which would prevent their compliance with the temptation; as in the case of David's numbering the people, 2 Sam. xxiv. 1, compared with 1 Chron. xxi. 1.

Q. 6. What is the *evil* we pray to be delivered from, and the temptations we pray against in this petition?

A. The evil of *sin*, and temptations to sin.

Q. 7. What is it to be *tempted to sin*?

A. It is to be strongly solicited, instigated, and enticed thereunto, Prov. vii. 16—24.

Q. 8. Can God be the author or efficient of such instigations and allurements?

A. By no means; "for God cannot be tempted with evil, neither tempteth he any man," James i. 13.

Q. 9. Why then doth he permit them to take place?

A. That he may direct and overrule them to the purposes of his own glory, as in the instance of Peter, Luke xxii. 31, 32. "The Lord said, Simon, Simon, behold, Satan hath desired to have you, that he may sift you as wheat; but I have prayed for thee that thy faith fail not."

Q. 10. From whence do all temptations to sin spring or take their rise?

A. All of them flow from "Satan, 1 Chron. xxi. 1, the world, Luke xxi. 34, and the flesh, which are ready powerfully to draw us aside and ensnare us,"\* James i. 14.

Q. 11. Are we liable to be drawn aside and ensnared by these enemies after we are in a state of grace?

A. Yes; "even after the pardon of our sins, by reason of our corruption, Gal. v. 17; weakness and want of watchfulness, Matth. xxvi. 41; we are both subject to be tempted, and forward to expose ourselves unto temptations,"† ver. 69—72.

Q. 12. Are we able to resist temptations when assaulted with them?

A. No; we are "of ourselves unable and unwilling to resist them, to recover out of them, and to improve them,"‡ Rom. vii. 23, 24.

Q. 13. How is Satan denominated in Scripture with reference to temptations?

A. He is called, by way of eminence, THE TEMPTER, Matth. iv. 3.

Q. 14. Why is he so called?

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 195.

† Ibid.

‡ Ibid.

A. Because of his strong and violent instigation and solicitation to sin, Acts v. 8.

Q. 15. When did he begin this trade of tempting?

A. He began in paradise, Gen. iii. 1, 4, 5, and has been making his assaults upon all ranks of mankind ever since, 1 Pet. v. 8.

Q. 16. Can Satan force or compel the will to yield to his temptations?

A. No; otherwise all his temptations would be irresistible.

Q. 17. How do you know that they are not irresistible?

A. Because the saints are exhorted to resist them, James iv. 7, and have actually been enabled by grace to do it, 2 Cor. xii. 8, 9.

Q. 18. How many are the ways whereby Satan manages his temptations?

A. Two ways chiefly, either in a way of *SUBTILTY*, using wiles and devices, hence called "that old serpent which deceiveth the whole world," Rev. xx. 2, compared with chap. xii. 9, or in a way of *FURIOUS ASSAULT*, throwing his "fiery darts," Eph. vi. 16; in both which respects he is called in the Greek tongue, *APOLLYON*; that is, a destroyer, Rev. ix. 11.

Q. 19. Why called a destroyer?

A. Because he aims at nothing less than the eternal ruin and destruction of all mankind, 1 Pet. v. 8. "Your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour."

Q. 20. What are some of those chief wiles and stratagems wherein he displays his *SUBTILTY*?

A. He makes choice of the most advantageous seasons for tempting; he employs the fittest instruments for carrying on his designs, and sometimes gilds over the foulest sins with the fairest names.

Q. 21. What are those advantageous seasons for tempting which Satan makes choice of?

A. When a person is under sore affliction and distress, Job ii. 9; when the object is present that will enforce the temptation, 2 Sam. xi. 2, 4; and after some remarkable manifestation of Divine love, 2 Cor. xii. 2, 7.

Q. 22. Who are the instruments he employs for carrying on his temptations?

A. Men of the greatest power and policy, 1 Kings xii. 26—30, and sometimes men of reputed piety and godliness; thus he employed the old prophet to seduce the man of God with a lie, 1 Kings xiii. 18.

Q. 23. What are those fair names under which Satan wants to make the vilest sins pass among men?

A. He allures to covetousness, under the name of frugality, Eccl. iv. 8; to profuseness, under the specious title of generosity, chap. v. 13, 14; he tempts to drunkenness, under the disguise of good fellowship, Prov. xxiii. 29, 30; and to neutrality and indifference in religion, under the colour of a prudent and peaceable spirit, Acts xviii. 14, 15, 17.

Q. 24. What are those temptations which Satan endeavours to throw in upon the soul in the way of FURIOUS ASSAULT?

A. They are his temptations to blasphemous and atheistical thoughts.

Q. 25. What is his plot by injecting these horrid suggestions?

A. Either to beget unbecoming thoughts of God, or to disturb, vex, and distract the Christian.

Q. 26. Does he ever gain his design in begetting unbecoming thoughts of God, in the minds of any of God's children?

A. Yes; as would appear by their speaking sometimes very unadvisedly with their lips, Psal. lxxvii. 8, 9. "Is his mercy clean gone for ever? doth his promise fail for evermore? hath God forgotten to be gracious?"

Q. 27. Are the saints suffered to continue long in such sentiments?

A. No; for as such words are far from their stated judgment, and only flow from their lips in the hour of temptation, so the Lord by his grace will soon make them change their speech, as in the words immediately following. "And I said, This is mine infirmity; but I will remember the years of the right hand of the Most High," Psal. lxxvii. 10.

Q. 28. Do blasphemous and atheistical thoughts ever take their rise in our own hearts?

A. Frequently they do, as our Lord testifies, Matth. xv. 19. "Out of the HEART proceed—blasphemies."

Q. 29. When may we charge ourselves with such thoughts, as arising in our hearts?

A. When we make no resistance, but give way unto them, contrary to the command of God. "Resist the devil, and he will flee from you," James iv. 7.

Q. 30. Can the saints of God distinguish between blasphemous and atheistical thoughts suggested by Satan and those that arise in their own hearts?

A. Yes they can in some measure, otherwise they would frequently be deprived of the comfortable use of those consolations that are allowed them in the word.

Q. 31. How may they know the one by the other?

A. If they are violent and sudden, coming in like a flash of lightning upon the mind, Matth. xvi. 22, 23; if their souls tremble at such thoughts, and oppose them with the

utmost abhorrence, Psal. lxxiii. 15, and if nothing is more grievous than to be assaulted with them, ver. 21, 22, then they may conclude that they are rather to be charged on Satan than themselves.

Q. 32. What are the extremes to which Satan labours to drive sinners by his temptations?

A. Either to presumption or despair.

Q. 33. What is PRESUMPTION?

A. It is a confident hope of the favour of God, and of obtaining eternal life, without any sufficient foundation to support it, like the foolish virgins, Matth. xxv. 11, 12.

Q. 34. What is Satan's conduct with reference to presumption?

A. He does all he can to foster and cherish it, and is sure to give it no disturbance, Luke xi. 21. "When a strong man armed keepeth his palace his goods are in peace."

Q. 35. What is DESPAIR?

A. It is the melancholy apprehension of a person's case as being quite hopeless, and of there being no help for him in God, Jer. ii. 25.

Q. 36. By what artifices doth Satan labour to drive persons to this deplorable extreme?

A. By suggesting that their sins are too many and too heinously aggravated to be pardoned, that the time of forgiveness is past, or that they have been guilty of the sin against the Holy Ghost.

Q. 37. Is it possible that our sins can be more numerous and more heinously aggravated than that they can be pardoned?

A. No; because no bounds or limits can be set to the infinite mercy of God, as vented through the meritorious obedience and satisfaction of Jesus, "for he will abundantly pardon," margin, "he will multiply to pardon," Isa. lv. 7; and he declares, that though our "sins be as scarlet, or red like crimson, they shall be white as snow, and as wool," Isa. i. 18.

Q. 38. Can any be certain in this life that the time of forgiveness is past as to them, or that their day of grace is over?

A. No; because, while the gospel continues to be published unto them, it is their unquestionable duty to believe the report made therein concerning salvation for them in Christ, without diving into the secret counsels of God, 1 John v. 11. "This is the record that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son."

Q. 39. How may a person know that he is not guilty of the sin against the Holy Ghost?

A. If he is deeply concerned and perplexed about this

matter, and has an habitual desire after salvation by grace, he may be verily assured he is not guilty of this, for "they that be whole need not a physician, but they that are sick," Matth. ix. 12.

Q. 40. What is the second spring of our temptations above mentioned?

A. The **WORLD**, Mark iv. 19.

Q. 41. What are the things of the world which give rise to temptations?

A. Both the good things and the bad things of it.

Q. 42. What are the good things of the world which may prove a snare and occasion to sin?

A. The profits, pleasures, and preferments of the world, when trusted to and rested in, Matth. xiii. 22.

Q. 43. What should we pray for in order to be delivered from such temptations?

A. That God would incline our hearts unto his "testimonies, and not to covetousness," Psal. cxix. 36, and that he would set our "affections on things above, not on things on earth," Col. iii. 2.

Q. 44. What are the evil things of this world which may prove temptations?

A. The outward troubles and afflictions we meet with therein, John xvi. 33. "In the world ye shall have tribulation."

Q. 45. Is God the author of all outward afflictions?

A. Yes; Amos iii. 6. "Shall there be evil in a city, and the Lord hath not done it?" though men may have an instrumental and sinful hand in their own troubles and distresses, Jer. ii. 17. "Hast thou not procured this unto thyself in that thou hast forsaken the Lord thy God?"

Q. 46. When do afflictions prove temptations?

A. When we either "despise the chastening of the Lord, or faint when we are rebuked of him," Heb. xii. 5.

Q. 47. What should we pray for when trysted with afflictions?

A. That when the Lord is pleased to chasten us, it may be "for our profit, that we may be partakers of his holiness," Heb. xii. 10.

Q. 48. Which is the third spring or fountain of our temptations?

A. The **FLESH**, Gal. v. 17.

Q. 49. What is meant by the flesh?

A. Our corrupt and depraved nature, Rom. viii. 8. "They that are in the flesh cannot please God."

Q. 50. How is the flesh or corrupt nature the spring of temptation?

A. As it entices thereunto, James i. 14, and is the inlet to temptations from Satan and the world, Jer. xvii. 9.

Q. 51. How should we pray against such temptations as have their rise from corrupt nature?

A. That God would not only restrain the pernicious tendency of our natural dispositions, Psal. xix. 13, but likewise fortify our souls, by the powerful influence of his grace, against all those evils to which we are naturally addicted, Eph. iii. 16.

Q. 52. May we pray absolutely against temptations?

A. No; but we may put an alternative into God's hand with reference to them.

Q. 53. What alternative may we put into God's hand with reference to temptations?

A. That he *would either keep us from being tempted to sin, or support and deliver us when tempted.*

Q. 54. What do we mean when we pray, *that God would keep us from being tempted to sin?*

A. We mean by it, that since the event of a temptation with respect unto us is so dangerous and uncertain, if God has not some gracious ends to answer thereby, he would rather be pleased by his providence to prevent the temptation, than suffer us to fall into it, Psal. xix. 13.

Q. 55. What do we mean when we pray that God would *support and deliver us when we are tempted?*

A. We thereby desire, "that if tempted we may by his Spirit be powerfully enabled to stand in the hour of temptation, Eph. iii. 16; or, if fallen, raised again and recovered out of it, Psal. li. 12; and have a sanctified use and improvement thereof,"\* 1 Pet. v. 8.

Q. 56. How doth the Lord enable his people to stand in the hour of temptation?

A. By making his grace sufficient for them, and perfecting his strength in their weakness, 2 Cor. xii. 9.

Q. 57. How does he raise and recover them out of temptation when fallen into it?

A. By discovering the corrupt and natural bias of their heart toward the temptation, humbling them on account thereof, and the offence done to God by their compliance; and by quickening their faith, to draw virtue from the righteousness of the Surety, for a fresh intimation of pardon, Psal. li. 4, 5, 7.

Q. 58. When have they a sanctified use and improvement of temptations?

A. When they are made more circumspect, watchful, and dependent on Christ for the future, as being sensible of their inability to resist the least temptation without him; for he has said, "without me ye can do nothing," John xv. 5.

Q. 59. What should be our habitual scope and general end,

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 195.

in offering up this petition, *Lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil?*

A. Our aim and end therein should be “that our sanctification and salvation may be perfected, 2 Cor. xiii. 9; Satan trodden under feet, Rom. xvi. 20; and we fully freed from sin, temptation, and all evil for ever,”\* 1 Thess. v. 23.

107. Q. What doth the conclusion of the Lord’s prayer teach us?

A. The conclusion of the Lord’s prayer (which is, “For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, for ever. Amen.”) teacheth us to take our encouragement in prayer from God only, and in our prayers to praise him, ascribing kingdom, power, and glory to him. And in testimony of our desire and assurance to be heard we say, AMEN.

Q. 1. What doth the particle *for*, which ushers in the conclusion of the Lord’s prayer, teach us?

A. It “teacheth us to enforce our petitions with arguments,”† Rom. xv. 30.

Q. 2. From whence are these arguments to be taken?

A. “Not from any worthiness in ourselves, or in any other creature, but from God,”‡ Dan. ix. 19.

Q. 3. What argument, for instance, may we fetch from God to enforce our petitions?

A. That “mercy and truth have met together; righteousness and peace have kissed each other,” Psal. lxxxv. 10.

Q. 4. What force is there in this argument?

A. A very great force; namely, that all the perfections and excellencies of the Divine nature harmoniously agree in conferring all promised blessings upon sinners of mankind on account of the meritorious obedience and satisfaction of Christ imputed to them, 1 Cor. iii. 22, 23. “All things are yours, and ye are Christ’s.”

Q. 5. For what end should we use arguments with God in prayer?

A. Not to prevail with him to grant what he does not see fit for us, but to quicken our own faith, and encourage our hope to expect the good things of the promise which we want, in his own time and way, Dan. ix. 18.

Q. 6. Why should we essay *in our prayers to praise him?*

A. Because “praise glorifies God,” Psal. 1. 23, and engageth him to hear our prayers, Psal. lxviii. 5, 6.

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 195.

† Ibid. quest. 196.

‡ Ibid.

Q. 7. What way should we praise him in our prayers?

A. By *ascribing kingdom, power, and glory to him.*

Q. 8. What is meant by *kingdom, power, and glory*?

A. "Eternal sovereignty, omnipotency, and glorious excellency," as appertaining "to God alone,"\* 1 Chron. xxix. 10—14.

Q. 9. What *kingdom* do we ascribe unto God as his?

A. The kingdom of nature, as God-Creator, and the kingdom of grace, as God-Redeemer.

Q. 10. What encouragement may we take in prayer from the kingdom both of nature and grace being his?

A. That we shall want nothing that is good for us, either as we are his creatures, Psal. cxlv. 16, or his children, Matth. vii. 11.

Q. 11. Why do we ascribe *power* to God as well as kingdom?

A. Because without power his sovereignty could not be maintained, or his kingdom managed, Psal. lxvi. 3, 7.

Q. 12. What encouragement may we take in prayer from the power being his?

A. That no difficulty whatsoever shall hinder the accomplishment of the promise, Rom. iv. 21.

Q. 13. What do we mean by ascribing *glory* to him?

A. We thereby acknowledge that he is possessed of all those excellencies that render him glorious in the eyes of men and angels, and that the praise and honour of every thing that is great and excellent, or has a tendency to raise our esteem and admiration, is due unto him, Psal. lxxviii. 4.

Q. 14. What encouragement may we take in prayer from the glory being his?

A. That the accomplishing his glorious purposes, and performing his gracious promises, will bring in a revenue of glory and praise unto him, Psal. xlv. 17.

Q. 15. How long will the kingdom, power, and glory be his?

A. *For ever*, without intermission through eternity, Exod. xv. 18.

Q. 16. What is the difference in this respect between God and all earthly kings and potentates whatsoever?

A. Their kingdom, power, and glory are only of a short duration, Psal. lxxxii. 6, 7; whereas the God with whom we have to do changeth not, but is ever the same, James i. 17.

Q. 17. Why do we say *Amen* in our prayers?

A. We should do it *in testimony of our desire and assurance to be heard.*

Q. 18. How may we know we say *Amen in testimony of our desire*?

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 196.

A. When "by faith we are emboldened to plead with God, that he would—fulfil our requests,"\* 2 Chron. xx. 6, 11.

Q. 19. What doth the word signify, when we say it in testimony of our desire?

A. In this view it properly signifies so be it, or so let it be.

Q. 20. When do we say Amen in testimony of our assurance to be heard?

A. When "by faith we are emboldened—quietly to rely upon him that he will fulfil our requests,"† 2 Chron. xiv. 11.

Q. 21. What doth the word signify when we say it in testimony of our assurance to be heard?

A. In this sense it denotes so it is, or so it shall be.

Q. 22. In which of these views is the word Amen to be understood in the conclusion of this prayer?

A. It is to be understood as signifying both; namely, as including a testimony of our desire, and likewise assurance of being heard.

Q. 23. How doth this appear?

A. Because there cannot be a desire of any promised blessing in faith, but there must be some measure of assurance that it will be granted in God's time and order, Psal. x. 17.

\* Larger Catechism, quest. 196.

† Ibid.

# INDEX

OF THE

## PRINCIPAL TOPICS CONTAINED IN BOTH PARTS OF THIS CATECHISM.

---

---

*The first figure stands for the page, and the second for the number of the question in that page.*

### A

AARON'S rod that budded, what it signified, 224. 73.  
Adam, four reasons why the man and the woman were so called, 60. 20. A covenant-head to all his posterity proven by two arguments, 83. 10. His posterity in him when he first sinned two ways, 83. 18.  
Adoption, the proper meaning of it, 178. 1. General adoption, what, 178. 4. Special, what, 178. 6.  
Adultery, what, 322. 28. The aggravations of it, 322. 31.  
Agency, the peculiar agency of each person of the Trinity in the formation of the body of Christ, 117. 22.  
Aggravations, four sources from whence sins receive their aggravations, 347. 9—30.  
Altar, brazen, what typified by it, 222. 57. Of incense, what it typified, 223. 64.  
Amen, what it properly signifies, 457, 17—23.  
Appearances, ten bodily appearances of Christ after his resurrection, 144. 16.  
Apocrypha, four reasons why it ought not to be received as a part of the canon of Scripture, 19. 50.  
Apostle, why Christ so called, 122. 4.  
Arguments, nine of them, for convincing infidels that the Scriptures are the Word of God, 13. 9.  
Ark in the tabernacle and temple, what was within it, 223. 70.  
Ascension of Christ, three ends of it, 148. 49.  
Assurance, difference between the assurance of faith and the assurance of sense, 189. 8. Assurance of God's love attainable, proven by two arguments, 189. 12. Three

evidences of it, 190. 17. The difference betwixt it and presumption, 190. 18.

Atheist, no such thing in the world as a direct speculative Atheist, proven, 246. 8—11.

Attributes of God not distinct from God himself, 24. 22, nor from one another, 24. 23.

### B

BAPTISM, the proper signification of the word, 391. 1. When Christ appointed it as a sacrament of the New Testament, 392. 3. Difference between the baptism of John and the baptism dispensed by the apostles after Christ's ascension, 392. 6—8. Proved that it is rightly administered by sprinkling, 393. 15. Analogy betwixt the sign in baptism and the thing signified, 394. 20. The ends and uses of baptism, 395. 28—35. The efficacy of it, wherein it consists, 397. 48. Why but once administered, 399. 12.

Baptize, why did not Christ baptize any himself, 392. 12.

Blasphemy, what, 276. 3. The aggravations of it, 276. 4.

Blasphemous thoughts, three ways whereby to know when they are suggested by Satan, 452. 31.

Blood of Jesus, why called the blood of sprinkling, 129. 43.

Body that Christ had, a true and real body, proven, 116. 17. Why Christ's body was not created immediately out of nothing, 116. 19.

Bodies, four properties of the bodies of the saints at the resurrection explained, 204. 19—23.

Bondage, a twofold right that Christ had to be our Redeemer

- from spiritual bondage, 239. 32—34.
- Books, four books will be opened at the day of judgment, 153. 94, &c.
- Brazen altar, see Altar.
- C
- CAIN, why not put to death for the murder of his brother, 314. 25.
- Candlestick, what it signified, 222. 62.
- Chastity, what, 316. 1. Three ways whereby to preserve our chastity, 316. 6.
- Cherubims of glory, what represented by them, 225. 82. What was signified by the posture of their faces, 225. 86.
- Children, six duties incumbent upon them to their parents, 304. 20.
- Christ, why he is not the cause of election, 97. 7. Why called the last Adam, 99. 26. As a prophet, hath revealed the will of God two ways, 123. 12, &c. As a surety made under the moral law, 139. 12, and that is a covenant of works, proven, 139. 14. How Christ is offered and to be received in three particulars, 360. 46—56.
- Circumcision, when first instituted, 389. 2. The spiritual meaning of it, 389. 4.
- Cleansing, the difference betwixt cleansing by the blood and cleansing by the Spirit of Christ, in two particulars, 393. 18.
- Concourse, God's immediate concurrence with every action of the creature, proven, 64. 20. How he concurs with the sinful actions of men without sin, 64. 21.
- Connexion between the preface and the First Commandment, 241. 6.
- Contentment with our own condition, what, 338. 6. Four cross dispensations under which it is required, 338. 10—14.
- Corruption of the whole nature, what, 88. 19. Wherein doth it appear, 88. 20. How proven from Scripture, 88. 22. Four inward evidences of the universal corruption of nature, 88. 24.
- Covenant of grace, why so called, 98. 18. How made with Christ, 99. 27. Why made with him as the head, 100. 40. The proper condition of it, what, 102. 59. Difference between the covenant of grace and the covenant of works, illustrated in nine particulars, 108. 111—120. The principal part of the Sinai transaction, though the covenant of works was most conspicuous, 230. 26. Why called a new covenant, 386. 17.
- Covetousness, what, 340. 2.
- D
- DEATH, how it may be proved that the precise moment of every one's death is fixed in the decree, 51. 24. The difference betwixt the death of believers and the death of the wicked, in five particulars, 94. 28.
- Death of Christ, what about it should we remember in the Supper in three particulars, 407. 33—36. Four ways whereby we should show forth his death in that Sacrament, 407. 37—41.
- Debts, why sins are so called, 446. 3.
- Decrees, why is God's eternal purpose called his decrees, in the plural number, 49. 5. The absurdity of conditional decrees, 50. 13. How the decree is permissive and efficacious at the same time, 52. 30.
- Delighting in the glory of God, whether it is to be reckoned our chief end, 11. 46.
- Deliverance of Israel out of Egypt represents our spiritual redemption in four particulars, 238. 23.
- Despair, what, 453. 35. Three ways whereby Satan labours to drive persons to despair, 453. 36—39.
- Dipping not necessary in baptism, 393. 14, 15.
- Discipline of Christ's kingdom, what, 136. 41.
- Discontentment with our own estate, what, 340. 6. The aggravations of this sin, 340. 7.
- Disposition, the difference between a federal and a testamentary disposition, 107. 100.
- Divorce, the grounds upon which it may be obtained, 320. 18.
- Duelling, the sin of it, 313. 20.
- E
- ELECTION, what, 52. 38.
- End, men make themselves their own end and happiness in three instances, 248. 21.
- Eternity, the difference betwixt God's eternity and the eternity of angels and the souls of men, 27. 6.
- Eutyrians, their error, 113. 28.

Exaltation of Christ, what, 143. 1.  
 Excellency, the incomparable excellency of the Scriptures, in four articles, 19. 51.  
 Extent of the grant that God makes of himself to us illustrated in nine particulars, 236. 11.

## F

**FAITH**, the place it has in the covenant of grace, 104. 74. What right it gives to the promise, 105. 84. The difference between saving and justifying faith, 176. 59. How connected with salvation, 354. 20. Four kinds of faith mentioned in Scripture, 355. 1—9. The appropriating persuasion, in the nature of faith, necessary, to answer the gospel-offer, what, 361. 58. Why thus appropriating persuasion is necessary to the nature of saving faith, 361. 59. Three evidences of a strong faith, 362. 64. Three evidences of the weakness of faith, 362. 65. Three marks of a true faith, however weak, 362. 66. Three ways in which faith views its objects, 363. 74—77. What is it for the worthy receivers of the sacrament of the Supper to partake of the body and blood of Christ by faith, 411. 66. Four ways how we know if we have that faith which feeds on Christ in the word and sacrament, 414. 20.

Fasting, religious fasting, what, 256. 22. Three arguments, proving it to be of divine appointment, 256. 24. The occurrences which call for it, 256. 27.

Father proven to be God, 46. 28. Not properly the fountain of the Deity, 46. 29. Three respects in which God is called Father with reference to men, 431. 6—9.

Fatherly chastisements, why they may not be called a penalty in the covenant of grace, 106. 88.

Flesh, what meant by it, 454. 49. How is it the spring of temptation, 454. 50.

Freedom of will since the fall, what, 75. 21.

## G

**GLORIFYING** God, why set before the enjoying of him, 11. 44. Glorifying God, what, 244. 31. How we glorify him in his attributes,

ordinances, word, and works, 435. 13—19.

Glory, God's essential glory, what, 8. 8. His declarative glory, what, 8. 9. Four similitudes whereunto the future glory of believers is compared, 199. 22.

God, how doth it appear from Scripture and reason that there can be but one only, 40. 1, 2. Why said to be living, 42. 15. Why called true, 42. 16.

Godhead, the meaning of the word, 44. 8.

Golden pot that had manna, what it signified, 224. 72.

Goodness of God, what, 36. 1. His absolute goodness, what, 36. 3. His relative, what, 36. 4. How his goodness is manifested in the contrivance of redemption, 37. 13. How in the execution of it, 37. 14.

Gospel-offer, the faith of it, what, 165. 14.

Gospel-precepts, the absurdity of making faith and repentance new gospel-precepts, 244. 26, 27.

Growth, believers grow four ways, 194. 12, &c. Four evidences of growth in grace, 194. 18.

## H

**HIGH-FRIEST**, a type of Christ in two respects, 219. 35.

Holiness of God, what, 32. 1. How it appears in everything pertaining to God, 33. 6, &c.

Holy Ghost, five arguments proving that he proceedeth from the Son as well as from the father, 45. 19. His supreme Deity proven by four arguments, 47. 36.

Holy resting on the Sabbath, what, 294. 19.

Human nature of Christ, why it never subsisted by itself, 114. 3. Difference between the human nature and a human person, 115. 7.

Humiliation of Christ, what it was, 137. 1.

## I

**IDEA**, an imaginary idea of Christ as man, no way helpful to the faith of his being God-man, 117. 30.

Illumination, saving, four distinguishing properties of it, 167. 40.

Image of God, wherein it consists, 61. 25, &c.

Immanuel, the import of the name, 112. 25.

- Immensity, what, 26. 4.  
 Immortality of the soul proved by four arguments, 60. 17.  
 Imputation of Adam's first sin to his posterity proved by two Scripture arguments, 87. 10.  
 Incomprehensibility of God, what, 25. 3.  
 Infants, the right that the infants of such as are members of the visible church have to baptism, proven at great length, and objections answered, 400. 25—44.  
 Infinite, what it is for God to be so, 25. 1.  
 Intercession of Christ, the nature of it described, 129. 51. The grounds of its perpetuity, 131. 64. Difference between the intercession of Christ and the intercession of the Spirit, 131. 69.  
 Joy in the Holy Ghost, four seasons of it, 192. 5. Four evidences of it, 192. 9.  
 Journey, Sabbath day's journey, what, 294. 13.  
 Judge, four qualities of the Judge at the last day, 152. 82.  
 Judgment, that there will be a general judgment proven, 150. 69, &c.  
 Justice of God, what, 34. 1.  
 Justice, legislative, what, 34. 6. Distributive, what, 35. 9. Vindictive, essential to God proven by four arguments, 36. 22.  
 Justification and sanctification connected in six respects, 182. 7. The difference betwixt them in twelve particulars, 182. 9—21.  
 Justify, what it is to justify a person, 170. 3.
- K
- KINGDOM, the twofold kingdom of Christ, essential and mediatorial, explained, 134. 17—20. Kingdom of God and his righteousness, what meant by the expression, 420. 19. God's kingdom of grace, why so called, 438. 17. What this kingdom of grace is as to outward dispensation, 437. 15. What as to inward operation, 438. 16. Kingdom of glory, what, 440. 39.  
 Knowledge, God's. How doth it appear that God hath a certain knowledge of contingent actions, 30. 9. How doth he know things only possible, 30. 10. How doth he know things future, 30. 11.  
 Knowledge, man's saving knowledge of God, wherein it consists, 24. 19, &c. Four evidences of it, 242. 16. Three ways how we may know if the measure of knowledge we have attained be of a saving kind, 414. 16.
- L
- LAST day, why the day of judgment is so called, 151. 76.  
 Law, natural, what, 215. 2. Some general principles of the law of nature mentioned, 215. 7. Difference between the law of nature and the moral law, 216. 11. Whether is the moral law of immutable obligation, 217. 16. How is it a schoolmaster to bring to Christ, 218. 26. How Christ sweetens it to his subjects, 135. 36.  
 Lie, what is the formal nature of it, 333. 3. How it is aggravated, 333. 4. Three sorts of it, and each of them described, 334. 8—18.  
 Light, why is God so called, 23. 10.  
 Long life, three things that tend to make it happy and comfortable, 308. 7.  
 Lotting, what, 274. 65, 66. Why only to be used in cases of absolute necessity, 275. 69.  
 Love, why God is said to be love, 23. 11. Three marks of supreme love to God, 233. 14. Three ways how to know if our love to Christ be sincere and unfeigned, 415. 24.  
 Lust, six remedies against all incentives to it, 323. 39.
- M
- MAN, how he ought to glorify God, 8. 12.  
 Marriage, why instituted before the fall, 59. 11. Three ends of its institution, 317. 13.  
 Matter and form of an action, the difference betwixt them illustrated by an example, 64. 23.  
 Mediator, why is he God and man in one person, 114. 40.  
 Melchisedec, order of, what, 126. 11. Why is Christ called a priest after this order, 126. 13.  
 Mercy, four kinds of mercy God shows to them that love him, 266. 31.  
 Mercy-seat, what signified by it, 255. 80.  
 Messiah, Christ proven to be the true Messiah, 110. 6, &c.

Ministers, six duties incumbent upon them to their people, 305. 26.  
 Miracle, what is the true notion of it, 66. 33.  
 Morality of the Fourth commandment, wherein it consists, 284. 24.  
 Murderer, is it lawful for the supreme magistrate to pardon or relieve a wilful and convicted murderer, 312. 11.

## N

NAME, the former and present name of the adopted children of God, in three particulars, 180. 22. How a good name may be obtained, 331. 11. How it ought to be maintained, 332. 15.  
 Names, three sorts of names, whereby God conveys the knowledge of himself to us, 268. 7.  
 Nature, Christ's human nature not represented in the first Adam, 84. 22, but legally derived, 84. 23.  
 Necessity of a farther revelation than nature's light, illustrated by five reasons, 14. 16.  
 Nestorians, their error, 113. 29.

## O

OATH, the definition of it, 269. 17. The definition explained, 269. 18—21. The three qualifications of it, 269. 22—27. The obligation thereof, 271. 46—54.  
 Oaths, distinguished into assertory and promissory, both of which are illustrated, 270. 33—44.  
 Obedience, Christ's active and passive obedience described, 174. 40, 41. Difference between the obedience due to God and to lawful superiors, 214. 11. Three qualities of acceptable obedience, 214. 14. Four reasons why the obedience of believers is called new obedience, 369. 43—48. Three ways how to know if our obedience is indeed new obedience, 415. 26.  
 Offices of Christ not the proper fountain of the promises, 120. 23.  
 Order of doctrine laid down in the standards of the church of Scotland illustrated, 19. 4—18.  
 Ordinances, nine religious ordinances mentioned from the Larger Catechism, and explained, 254. 5—30.  
 Ordination by presbyters, without diocesan bishop, proven lawful and valid, 375. 14.

Original sin proven to be damning, 90. 30. The evidences of it antecedent to the commission of any actual transgression, 90. 40.

## P

PARENTS, five duties incumbent upon them to their children, 303. 19.  
 Passover, when first instituted, 389. 6. Why so called, 389. 7. What were the significant ceremonies in that sacrament, 389. 10—16.  
 Peace, three things that mar the peace of believers, 191. 8.  
 People, five duties incumbent upon them to their ministers, 305. 27.  
 Perfection not attainable by the saints in this life, proven by three arguments, 344. 12, 13.  
 Perfections of God, why called attributes, 25. 24. How distinguished, 25. 25, &c.  
 Perjury, what, 276. 7. The aggravations of it, 277. 11.  
 Perseverance of the saints, six infallible securities for it, 195. 3. See also 440. 38.  
 Person in the Godhead, what is meant by it, 44. 9. Four arguments proving that there are three persons in the Godhead, 44. 13.  
 Picture or image of Christ, why it is to be abhorred, 259. 9, 10.  
 Polygamy, what, 319. 8. How God has testified his displeasure against it even in the godly, 320. 15.  
 Portion, what meant by a competent portion of the good things of this life, 443. 8. Three differences as to the manner in which the godly and the wicked hold their outward comforts, 444. 17—20.  
 Power of God, what, 31. 1. How manifested in creation, 32. 5. How in providence, 32. 6. How in redemption, 32. 7.  
 Pray, what is it to pray in Christ's name, 420. 22. For whom are we to pray, in eight particulars, 420. 28—36. How we are to pray in six particulars, 422. 42—49.  
 Prayer, to be made to God only, 418. 1. Four reasons of it, 418. 2. Three kinds of prayer, secret, private, and public, explained, 423. 49. Two reasons for confessing sins in prayer, 425. 68. How may we know that our prayers are heard, 426. 80. Two

- ways whereby we may know if mercies come to us in the course of common providence, or as an answer of prayer, 426. 81—84. Lord's Prayer, why called the special rule of direction in prayer, 428. 10. Proven by two arguments, that it is not designed for a mere form, to the precise words whereof we are strictly tied down, 429. 16—28.
- Predestinated, what, 52. 35.
- Present, how God is present with his church on earth, 26. 8. How he is present in heaven, 26. 9. How in hell, 26. 10.
- Presumption, what, 453. 33.
- Priest, what, 125. 1.
- Privileges, five privileges of God's children, 180. 25, &c.
- Probation, state of, when applicable to man, 73. 8.
- Promise of eternal life, what, 105. 79—81.
- Property, difference between a personal and an essential property, 45. 20.
- Providence, Divine, proved by five arguments from reason, 62. 3. Extends to the smallest as well as to the greatest of the creatures, 63. 7. How conversant about good actions, 63. 12. How about sinful ones, two ways, 63. 13.
- Providences of God, how to be observed, 66. 43.
- Punishment of loss in hell, set forth in four particulars, 95. 36. Of sense, described from some Scripture-expressions, 95. 37. Both proven to be eternal, 95. 38. Eternity of punishment, whence it arises, 96. 40.
- R
- RECORD of God, a ground of faith to all the hearers of the gospel, proven, 40. 12.
- Redemption, covenant of redemption, not a distinct covenant from that of grace, proved, 101. 50—58.
- Regeneration, why called a creation, 378. 46. Why a resurrection, 378. 47.
- Repentance, whether a transient action, or an abiding principle, 364. 3, 4. Flows from faith, 366. 16, 17. The formal nature of evangelical repentance, 367. 26—37. Two differences between gospel and legal repentance, 369. 49. Seven evidences of true repentance, 370. 51—58. Three special seasons for the exercise of it in the Lord's people, 370. 61. Three ways how we may know if our repentance be genuine, or of a right kind, 367. 22.
- Reprobation, what, 53. 40.
- Resurrection of Christ proven, 144. 9—16. The necessity of it in three respects, 146. 23, &c. The general resurrection of the dead, proven by two arguments, both of which are explained at large, 202. 2—8. Difference between the resurrection of the godly and of the wicked, 204. 17.
- Righteousness of Christ, wherein it consists, 102. 60—71.
- Rule, how men make themselves their own rule, in three instances, 248. 20.
- S
- SABBATH, when first instituted, 284. 28. The first day of the week proven to be the Christian Sabbath, of Divine institution, by five arguments, each of which is illustrated, 289. 19—24.
- Sacrament, the two parts of it explained, 385. 7—16. The form of a sacrament, wherein it consists, 387. 26—29.
- Sacramental elements in the Supper described, 404. 10—15. The sacramental actions explained, 405. 16—27. The end of these sacramental elements and actions unfolded, 406. 28—32. Who ought to be kept from the Lord's supper, 416. 34—36. Four things wherein baptism and the Lord's supper agree, 417. 44. Four things wherein they differ, 418. 45.
- Saints, the reason why saints in heaven cannot be intercessors, 260. 22.
- Samson, whether guilty of self-murder, 312. 6.
- Sanctification, habitual and actual, how they differ, 185. 33. Sanctification, useful and necessary in ten respects, 187. 45. Six marks of it, 187. 51. Four motives there-to, 188. 52.
- Satan, his policy in enticing our first parents to eat the forbidden fruit, in five instances, 80. 9. The way how to distinguish his sug-

gestions from the dictates of the Spirit of God, 251. 47.

Satisfaction to justice necessary, 127. 30—33. Three reasons why it was demanded from Christ, 128. 34.

School of affliction, what learned at it, 124. 26.

Scriptures, why called a testament, 15. 23. A threefold use of them, 374. 5. The manner of reading them, in three particulars, 374. 8—11.

Self, what it is for a man to deny himself, 250. 39—42.

Show-bread, what meant by it, 222. 63.

Similitudes. To explain the doctrine of the Trinity by similitudes, proven to be unlawful, 47. 38.

Sin, that there is such a thing as sin in the world proven by four arguments, 77. 2. Why called want of conformity to the law, 77. 9. Why a transgression of it, 78. 10. First sin, the nature of it, in six particulars, 80. 111, &c. The aggravations of it, in six instances, 81. 19.

Sin against the Holy Ghost, what, 78. 20, &c. Four evidences whereby a person may know he is not guilty of it, 79. 26. Four ways whereby it may be known that persons are guilty of it, 422. 39.

Sinai covenant opened, 102. 54, and 228. 14—26.

Sinfulness of an action, wherein it properly consists, 64. 22.

Son, Christ the Son, proven to be truly and properly the supreme God by four arguments, 46. 30, &c.

Son of God, the danger of asserting that Christ is so called merely with respect to his mediatory office, 112. 20.

Sonship, Christ's, distinguished from his office, 112. 22.

Spirit, why is God so called, 23. 12.

State, five Scripture characters of the state of sin and misery into which man has fallen, 85. 8.

Subjects, five duties incumbent upon them to their magistrates, 304. 24.

Supper, why this sacrament is called a supper, and why the Lord's supper, 403. 1, 2.

Surety, in what sense Christ is so for his spiritual seed, 100. 38.

## T

TABLES of the covenant and ark of the covenant, why so called, 224. 77.

Tables of the law, what are signified by their being written on both sides, 227. 7, 8.

Testament, the New Testament excels the Old, in five instances, 16. 32, &c.

Testament, Christ's, what time made, 107. 103. Who are the legatees, 108, 105. Who is the executor, 108. 106.

Temptation, two ways whereby God may be said to lead a person into temptation, and yet not be the author of sin, 449. 2—6. How he recovers his people out of temptation, 455. 57.

Tempter, why Satan is so called, 449. 13, 14. Two ways whereby he manages his temptations enlarged upon, 451. 18—27.

Thoughts, the proper remedy and antidote against sinful ones, 346. 26.

Titles, four of them that are ascribed to God as the God of nature, 268. 10. And six that belonged to him as the God of grace, 268. 11. His New Testament title, what, 268. 12.

Transubstantiation, what, 409. 51. The absurdity of it, in four particulars, 409. 52—56. The difference betwixt it and consubstantiation, 410. 57.

Trinity of persons proven from the Old Testament, 43. 3; from the New, 43. 7.

Truth of God, what, 39. 1. Wherein manifested, 39. 7.

## U

UNCHANGEABLE, what is meant by God's being so, 27. 1. How proved from Scripture and reason, 28. 2, 3.

Unction of Christ, what, 119. 15.

Union with Christ, five properties of it, 162. 22, &c. The two bonds of it, 162. 29—34. Four resemblances of it, 163. 37.

Unition, what, 161. 18.

## V

VENIAL, what do the Papists mean by venial sins, 351. 9. No sins venial in their sense, 351. 10.

Virgin, why was Christ born of a virgin, 117. 23.

Virgin Mary proven to be a sinner as well as others, 117. 26.  
 Vow, the nature of it, 273. 55. Difference between an oath and a vow, 273. 56. The subject-matter of vows, 273. 57.

## W

WANT of original righteousness, what, 87. 12.  
 Wealth, six ways whereby our neighbour's wealth may be unjustly hindered, and each of them explained, 327. 9—38.  
 Will of God, twofold, and both of them unfolded, 441. 1—4.  
 Will of man, in a state of innocence, whether indifferent to good and evil, 61. 29.  
 Wisdom, how doth the wisdom of God appear in creation, 31. 15. How in providence, 31. 16. How in redemption, 31. 17.  
 Witness, why is Christ so called, 122. 5.  
 Witness, five sorts of persons who may be guilty of bearing false witness against their neighbour in public judicature, and the manner how they may be so, 336. 26—32.  
 Word of God, why committed to writing, 15. 19. The manner in

which it ought to be preached, in six particulars, 375. 15—22. Four metaphors whereunto the efficacy of the word is compared in Scripture, 379. 49—53. Four effects of receiving the word with faith, 382. 13. Three things implied in laying it up in our hearts, 382. 18. Three evidences of our laying it up there, 382. 19.

Works of necessity on the Sabbath, what, 296. 36. Instances of them, 296. 37.

World, five things in the world which men naturally incline to idolize, 251. 44. Two things in it which give rise to temptations, 454. 41—47.

Worship, how are we to worship God inwardly in our hearts, in six particulars, 245. 36. How outwardly in our lives, in five duties, 245. 37.

Worship, family, what, 295. 25. Proven to be a duty from Scripture-precept, 295. 27, and from Scripture-example, 295. 28.

## Z

ZEAL, what is it for God to have zeal for his worship, 264. 12. Two ways whereby he manifests his zeal for his worship, 264. 13—34.

---

P. S.—If the reader would be pleased now and then to peruse the preceding Index, he would readily at every time meet with some article or other that would induce him to consult the book itself, till he were gradually led on to a tolerable acquaintance with the whole; which was indeed my principal design in the composing this alphabetical summary of the contents.

JAMES FISHER.

GLASGOW, Nov. 25, 1765.

THE END.

WORKS PUBLISHED BY OLIVER & BOYD, EDINBURGH;

AND SOLD BY SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO., LONDON.

---

## A Dictionary of the English Language,

Containing the Pronunciation, Etymology, and Explanation of all Words authorized by eminent Writers: to which are added, a Vocabulary of the Roots of English Words, and an Accented List of Greek, Latin, and Scripture Proper Names. By ALEXANDER REID, LL.D., Rector of the Circus Place School, Edinburgh. *Fifth Edition.* Large 12mo, price 6s. 6d. strongly bound, 564 pages.

“This is the most complete School Dictionary we have yet seen.”—*Academic and Collegiate Circular.*

“This work is, beyond dispute, the best of its class that has yet appeared.”—*Christian Witness.*

“As a school-book it is superior to any which has yet made its appearance, and there is no doubt that it will quickly supersede the dictionaries at present in use.”—*National.*

\*.\* This Dictionary has been reprinted in the United States of America, where it has been introduced into many public schools.

---

## Standard Pronouncing Dictionary of the French and English Languages,

In Two Parts. Part I., FRENCH and ENGLISH, comprehending Words in common Use, Terms connected with Science, Terms belonging to the Fine Arts, 4000 Historical Names, 4000 Geographical Names, 11,000 Terms lately published: with the Pronunciation of every Word according to the French Academy and the most eminent Lexicographers and Grammarians; together with 750 Critical Remarks, in which the various Methods of Pronouncing employed by different Authors are investigated and compared with each other. Part II., ENGLISH and FRENCH, containing a copious Vocabulary of English Words and Expressions, with the Pronunciation according to Walker. The whole preceded by a Practical and Comprehensive System of French Pronunciation. By GABRIEL SURENNE, F.A.S.E., French Teacher in Edinburgh, Corresponding Member of the French Grammatical Society of Paris, &c. *Seventh Edition.* Large 12mo, 10s. 6d., strongly bound, 882 pages.

“This is perhaps the very best French dictionary ever published. M. Surenne is an eminent French teacher in Edinburgh, and his practice in that capacity has enabled him to construct a work on the French language that is invaluable to the English student, and as a standard work of reference.”—*Atlas.*

“It is accurate, critical, and comprehensive.”—*Athenæum.*

“The work is complete, got up with great zeal and diligence, and must be eminently useful wherever it is employed.”—*Britannia.*

\*.\* This Work has also been reprinted in the United States of America.

WORKS BY DR MERLE D'AUBIGNE.

---

I.

Germany, England, and Scotland ;

OR, RECOLLECTIONS of a SWISS MINISTER.

8vo, cloth, 12s.

II.

The Protector: A Vindication.

LARGE TYPE LIBRARY EDITION,

8vo, cloth, 9s.

CHEAP EDITION, foolscap 8vo ; sewed, 2s. 6d. ; cloth, 3s.

III.

History of the Reformation of the Sixteenth Century,

OLIVER & BOYD'S REVISED EDITIONS,

Vols. 1, 2, and 3, being the only Translation corrected and authenticated by the Author, to which he has also written a new Preface, and made numerous important Additions not to be found in any other Translation ; and Vol. 4, being the English Original.

THE VERY CHEAP EDITION, Four Vols. in One. Demy 8vo, cloth, gilt back, 6s. ; or 7s. rich cloth, gilt edges, very suitable for a Present.

THE LIBRARY EDITION, Large Type, in Four Vols. post 8vo, cloth, price 14s.

*Both Editions have Autographs of Dr Merle D'Aubigné.*

---

**Dr Merle D'Aubigne's Declaration.**

*Extract from new Preface.*—"I have revised this translation line by line, and word by word ; and I have restored the sense wherever I did not find it clearly rendered. It is the only one which I have corrected. I declare in consequence, that I acknowledge this translation as the only faithful expression of my thoughts in the English language, and I recommend it as such to all my readers."

N. B.—Vol. IV. separately, Demy 8vo, large type, 12s. cloth, and in Medium 8vo, double columns, 3s. 6d. sewed, may still be had.

---

EDINBURGH: OLIVER & BOYD.

LONDON: SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO.







